



# **Intel(R) IXP400 Software API Reference Manual**

Automatically generated from sources, July 12, 2006.

INFORMATION IN THIS DOCUMENT IS PROVIDED IN CONNECTION WITH INTEL® PRODUCTS. NO LICENSE, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, BY ESTOPPEL OR OTHERWISE, TO ANY INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY RIGHTS IS GRANTED BY THIS DOCUMENT. EXCEPT AS PROVIDED IN INTEL'S TERMS AND CONDITIONS OF SALE FOR SUCH PRODUCTS, INTEL ASSUMES NO LIABILITY WHATSOEVER, AND INTEL DISCLAIMS ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTY, RELATING TO SALE AND/OR USE OF INTEL PRODUCTS INCLUDING LIABILITY OR WARRANTIES RELATING TO FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, MERCHANTABILITY, OR INFRINGEMENT OF ANY PATENT, COPYRIGHT OR OTHER INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY RIGHT. Intel products are not intended for use in medical, life saving, life sustaining, critical control or safety systems, or in nuclear facility applications.

Intel may make changes to specifications and product descriptions at any time, without notice.

Intel Corporation may have patents or pending patent applications, trademarks, copyrights, or other intellectual property rights that relate to the presented subject matter. The furnishing of documents and other materials and information does not provide any license, express or implied, by estoppel or otherwise, to any such patents, trademarks, copyrights, or other intellectual property rights.

Designers must not rely on the absence or characteristics of any features or instructions marked "reserved" or "undefined." Intel reserves these for future definition and shall have no responsibility whatsoever for conflicts or incompatibilities arising from future changes to them.

Intel processor numbers are not a measure of performance. Processor numbers differentiate features within each processor family, not across different processor families. See [http://www.intel.com/products/processor\\_number](http://www.intel.com/products/processor_number) for details.

Intel® IXP400 Software may contain design defects or errors known as errata which may cause the product to deviate from published specifications. Current characterized errata are available on request.

MPEG is an international standard for video compression/decompression promoted by ISO. Implementations of MPEG CODECs, or MPEG enabled platforms may require licenses from various entities, including Intel Corporation.

This document and the software described in it are furnished under license and may only be used or copied in accordance with the terms of the license. The information in this document is furnished for informational use only, is subject to change without notice, and should not be construed as a commitment by Intel Corporation. Intel Corporation assumes no responsibility or liability for any errors or inaccuracies that may appear in this document or any software that may be provided in association with this document. Except as permitted by such license, no part of this document may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted in any form or by any means without the express written consent of Intel Corporation.

Except as permitted by such license, no part of this document may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted in any form or by any means without the express written consent of Intel Corporation.

Contact your local Intel sales office or your distributor to obtain the latest specifications and before placing your product order.

Copies of documents which have an order number and are referenced in this document, or other Intel literature, may be obtained by calling 1-800-548-4725, or by visiting Intel's website at <http://www.intel.com>.

Intel, the Intel logo, and Intel XScale are trademarks or registered trademarks of Intel Corporation or its subsidiaries in the United States and other countries.

\*Other names and brands may be claimed as the property of others.

Copyright © Intel Corporation 2006

# Table of Contents

<b>Intel (R) IXP400 Software Component Co-exist.....</b>	<b>1</b>
Defines.....	1
Detailed Description.....	1
Define Documentation.....	1
<b>Intel (R) IXP400 Software ADSL Driver API.....</b>	<b>2</b>
Typedefs.....	2
Enumerations.....	2
Functions.....	3
Detailed Description.....	3
Typedef Documentation.....	4
Enumeration Type Documentation.....	4
Function Documentation.....	5
<b>Intel (R) IXP400 Software Assertion Macros (IxAssert) API.....</b>	<b>13</b>
<b>Intel (R) IXP400 Software ATM Driver Access (IxAtmdAcc) API.....</b>	<b>14</b>
Defines.....	14
Typedefs.....	15
Enumerations.....	15
Functions.....	16
Detailed Description.....	17
Define Documentation.....	18
Typedef Documentation.....	19
Enumeration Type Documentation.....	22
Function Documentation.....	23
<b>Intel (R) IXP400 Software ATM Driver Access (IxAtmdAcc) Control API.....</b>	<b>37</b>
Modules.....	37
Defines.....	37
Typedefs.....	37
Functions.....	38
Detailed Description.....	40
Define Documentation.....	40
Typedef Documentation.....	40
Function Documentation.....	44
<b>Intel (R) IXP400 Software ATM Driver Access (IxAtmdAcc) Utopia Control API [Intel (R) IXP400 Software ATM Driver Access (IxAtmdAcc) Control API].....</b>	<b>59</b>
Data Structures.....	59
Detailed Description.....	60
<b>Intel (R) IXP400 Software ATM Manager (IxAtmm) API.....</b>	<b>61</b>
Data Structures.....	61
Defines.....	61
Typedefs.....	62
Enumerations.....	62
Functions.....	63

# Table of Contents

<b>Intel (R) IXP400 Software ATM Manager (IxAtmm) API</b>	
Detailed Description.....	64
Define Documentation.....	64
Typedef Documentation.....	66
Enumeration Type Documentation.....	66
Function Documentation.....	67
<b>Intel (R) IXP400 Software ATM Transmit Scheduler (IxAtmSch) API.....</b>	<b>78</b>
Defines.....	78
Functions.....	78
Detailed Description.....	79
Define Documentation.....	79
Function Documentation.....	80
<b>Intel (R) IXP400 Software ATM Types (IxAtmTypes).....</b>	<b>87</b>
Data Structures.....	87
Defines.....	87
Typedefs.....	88
Enumerations.....	89
Detailed Description.....	89
Define Documentation.....	89
Typedef Documentation.....	92
Enumeration Type Documentation.....	93
<b>Intel (R) IXP400 Software Security (IxCryptoAcc) API.....</b>	<b>95</b>
Data Structures.....	95
Defines.....	95
Typedefs.....	97
Enumerations.....	98
Functions.....	100
Detailed Description.....	102
Define Documentation.....	102
Typedef Documentation.....	106
Enumeration Type Documentation.....	109
Function Documentation.....	113
<b>Intel (R) IXP400 Software DMA Types (IxDmaTypes).....</b>	<b>132</b>
Enumerations.....	132
Detailed Description.....	133
Enumeration Type Documentation.....	133
<b>Intel (R) IXP400 Software DMA Access Driver (IxDmaAcc) API.....</b>	<b>136</b>
Defines.....	136
Typedefs.....	136
Functions.....	136
Detailed Description.....	137
Define Documentation.....	137
Typedef Documentation.....	137

# Table of Contents

<b>Intel (R) IXP400 Software DMA Access Driver (IxDmaAcc) API</b>	
Function Documentation.....	137
<b>IXP400 Soft-Error Handler Driver (ixErrHdlAcc) APL.....</b>	<b>140</b>
Data Structures.....	140
Defines.....	140
Typedefs.....	140
Enumerations.....	140
Functions.....	141
Detailed Description.....	142
Define Documentation.....	142
Typedef Documentation.....	143
Enumeration Type Documentation.....	143
Function Documentation.....	144
<b>Intel (R) IXP400 Software Ethernet Access (IxEthAcc) API.....</b>	<b>151</b>
Data Structures.....	151
Defines.....	151
Typedefs.....	153
Enumerations.....	154
Functions.....	155
Detailed Description.....	159
Define Documentation.....	159
Typedef Documentation.....	169
Enumeration Type Documentation.....	171
Function Documentation.....	174
<b>Intel (R) IXP400 Software Ethernet Database (IxEthDB) APL.....</b>	<b>202</b>
Data Structures.....	202
Defines.....	202
Typedefs.....	204
Enumerations.....	204
Functions.....	206
Detailed Description.....	212
Define Documentation.....	212
Typedef Documentation.....	216
Enumeration Type Documentation.....	217
Function Documentation.....	221
<b>Intel (R) IXP400 Software Ethernet Database Port Definitions (IxEthDBPortDefs).....</b>	<b>269</b>
Data Structures.....	269
Defines.....	269
Enumerations.....	270
Variables.....	270
Detailed Description.....	270
Define Documentation.....	270
Enumeration Type Documentation.....	272
Variable Documentation.....	273

# Table of Contents

<b>Intel (R) IXP400 Software Ethernet Phy Access (IxEthMii) API.....</b>	<b>274</b>
Functions.....	274
Detailed Description.....	274
Function Documentation.....	275
<b>Intel(R) IXP Software Feature Control (featureCtrl) Public API.....</b>	<b>279</b>
Modules.....	279
Defines.....	279
Typedefs.....	280
Functions.....	281
Detailed Description.....	281
Define Documentation.....	281
Typedef Documentation.....	284
Function Documentation.....	285
<b>Software Configuration for featureCtrl Component [Intel(R) IXP Software Feature Control (featureCtrl) Public API].....</b>	<b>288</b>
Defines.....	288
Enumerations.....	288
Detailed Description.....	289
Define Documentation.....	289
Enumeration Type Documentation.....	290
<b>Intel (R) IXP400 Software HSS Access (IxHssAcc) API.....</b>	<b>292</b>
Data Structures.....	292
Defines.....	292
Typedefs.....	293
Enumerations.....	294
Functions.....	297
Detailed Description.....	300
Define Documentation.....	301
Typedef Documentation.....	304
Enumeration Type Documentation.....	306
Function Documentation.....	313
<b>Intel (R) IXP400 Software I2C Driver(IxI2cDrv) API.....</b>	<b>324</b>
Data Structures.....	324
Defines.....	324
Typedefs.....	324
Enumerations.....	325
Functions.....	326
Detailed Description.....	328
Define Documentation.....	328
Typedef Documentation.....	328
Enumeration Type Documentation.....	330
Function Documentation.....	332

# Table of Contents

<b>Intel (R) IXP NPE–Downloader (IxNpeDI) APL.....</b>	<b>341</b>
Modules.....	341
Defines.....	341
Functions.....	341
Detailed Description.....	342
Define Documentation.....	342
Function Documentation.....	343
<b>Intel (R) IXP Image ID Definition [Intel (R) IXP NPE–Downloader (IxNpeDI) API].....</b>	<b>349</b>
Data Structures.....	349
Defines.....	349
Typedefs.....	349
Enumerations.....	350
Detailed Description.....	350
Define Documentation.....	350
Typedef Documentation.....	351
Enumeration Type Documentation.....	352
<b>Intel (R) IXP Software NPE Message Handler (IxNpeMh) APL.....</b>	<b>354</b>
Data Structures.....	354
Defines.....	354
Typedefs.....	354
Enumerations.....	354
Functions.....	355
Detailed Description.....	356
Define Documentation.....	356
Typedef Documentation.....	356
Enumeration Type Documentation.....	357
Function Documentation.....	358
<b>IXP400 NPE Microcode Image Library.....</b>	<b>364</b>
Defines.....	364
Detailed Description.....	367
Define Documentation.....	367
<b>Intel (R) IXP400 Software Parity Error Notifier (IxParityENAcc) APL.....</b>	<b>375</b>
Data Structures.....	375
Typedefs.....	377
Enumerations.....	377
Functions.....	379
Detailed Description.....	380
Typedef Documentation.....	380
Enumeration Type Documentation.....	381
Function Documentation.....	384
<b>Intel (R) IXP400 Software Performance Profiling (IxPerfProfAcc) APL.....</b>	<b>391</b>
Data Structures.....	391
Defines.....	391



# Table of Contents

<b>Intel (R) IXP400 Software Performance Profiling (IxPerfProfAcc) API</b>	
Enumerations.....	392
Functions.....	396
Detailed Description.....	398
Define Documentation.....	398
Enumeration Type Documentation.....	399
Function Documentation.....	409
<b>IXP Queue Manager (qmgr) Public API.....</b>	<b>421</b>
Defines.....	421
Typedefs.....	421
Enumerations.....	421
Functions.....	421
Detailed Description.....	422
Define Documentation.....	422
Typedef Documentation.....	423
Enumeration Type Documentation.....	423
Function Documentation.....	424
<b>Intel (R) IXP400 Software Queue Assignments.....</b>	<b>426</b>
Defines.....	426
Detailed Description.....	428
Define Documentation.....	428
<b>Intel (R) IXP400 Software SSP Serial Port Access (IxSspAcc) API.....</b>	<b>435</b>
Data Structures.....	435
Typedefs.....	435
Enumerations.....	435
Functions.....	438
Detailed Description.....	440
Typedef Documentation.....	440
Enumeration Type Documentation.....	441
Function Documentation.....	443
<b>Intel (R) IXP400 Software Timer Control (IxTimerCtrl) API.....</b>	<b>458</b>
Defines.....	458
Typedefs.....	458
Enumerations.....	458
Functions.....	458
Detailed Description.....	459
Define Documentation.....	459
Typedef Documentation.....	459
Enumeration Type Documentation.....	460
Function Documentation.....	460
<b>Intel (R) IXP400 Software Time Sync Access Component API.....</b>	<b>463</b>
Data Structures.....	463
Typedefs.....	464

# Table of Contents

<b>Intel (R) IXP400 Software Time Sync Access Component API</b>	
Enumerations.....	464
Functions.....	465
Detailed Description.....	466
Typedef Documentation.....	467
Enumeration Type Documentation.....	467
Function Documentation.....	469
<b>Intel (R) IXP400 Software Types (IxTypes).....</b>	<b>478</b>
Defines.....	478
Typedefs.....	478
Detailed Description.....	478
<b>Intel (R) IXP400 Software UART Access (IxUARTAcc) APL.....</b>	<b>479</b>
Modules.....	479
Data Structures.....	479
Enumerations.....	479
Functions.....	479
Detailed Description.....	480
Enumeration Type Documentation.....	480
Function Documentation.....	480
<b>Defines for Default Values [Intel (R) IXP400 Software UART Access (IxUARTAcc) API].....</b>	<b>483</b>
Defines.....	483
Detailed Description.....	483
Define Documentation.....	483
<b>Defines for IOCTL Commands [Intel (R) IXP400 Software UART Access (IxUARTAcc) API].....</b>	<b>485</b>
Defines.....	485
Detailed Description.....	485
Define Documentation.....	485
<b>Defines for IOCTL Arguments [Intel (R) IXP400 Software UART Access (IxUARTAcc) API].....</b>	<b>487</b>
Defines.....	487
Detailed Description.....	487
Define Documentation.....	488
<b>Intel (R) IXP400 Software Version ID (IxVersionId).....</b>	<b>490</b>
Defines.....	490
Detailed Description.....	490
Define Documentation.....	490
<b>Intel (R) IXP400 Software Codelets.....</b>	<b>493</b>
Modules.....	493
Detailed Description.....	493

# Table of Contents

<b>Intel (R) IXP400 Software Crypto Access Codelet [Intel (R) IXP400 Software Codelets].....</b>	<b>494</b>
Defines.....	494
Functions.....	495
Detailed Description.....	495
Define Documentation.....	500
Function Documentation.....	504
 <b>IX_OSAL_ATTRIBUTE_PACKED Struct Reference [Intel (R) IXP400 Software Ethernet</b>	
<b>Database (IxEthDB) API].....</b>	<b>506</b>
Data Fields.....	506
Detailed Description.....	506
 <b>IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig Struct Reference [Intel (R) IXP400 Software ATM Driver Access</b>	
<b>(IxAtmdAcc) Utopia Control API].....</b>	<b>507</b>
Data Fields.....	507
Detailed Description.....	508
Field Documentation.....	508
 <b>IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtRxConfig_ Struct Reference [Intel (R) IXP400 Software ATM</b>	
<b>Driver Access (IxAtmdAcc) Utopia Control API].....</b>	<b>512</b>
Data Fields.....	512
Detailed Description.....	513
Field Documentation.....	513
 <b>IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtRxDefineIdle_ Struct Reference [Intel (R) IXP400 Software ATM</b>	
<b>Driver Access (IxAtmdAcc) Utopia Control API].....</b>	<b>518</b>
Data Fields.....	518
Detailed Description.....	518
Field Documentation.....	519
 <b>IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtRxEnableFields_ Struct Reference [Intel (R) IXP400 Software ATM</b>	
<b>Driver Access (IxAtmdAcc) Utopia Control API].....</b>	<b>520</b>
Data Fields.....	520
Detailed Description.....	522
Field Documentation.....	522
 <b>IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtRxStatsConfig_ Struct Reference [Intel (R) IXP400 Software ATM</b>	
<b>Driver Access (IxAtmdAcc) Utopia Control API].....</b>	<b>528</b>
Data Fields.....	528
Detailed Description.....	528
Field Documentation.....	529
 <b>IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtRxTransTable0_ Struct Reference [Intel (R) IXP400 Software ATM</b>	
<b>Driver Access (IxAtmdAcc) Utopia Control API].....</b>	<b>530</b>
Data Fields.....	530
Detailed Description.....	530
Field Documentation.....	530

# Table of Contents

<b>IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtRxTransTable1_ Struct Reference [Intel (R) IXP400 Software ATM Driver Access (IxAtmdAcc) Utopia Control API].....</b>	<b>533</b>
Data Fields.....	533
Detailed Description.....	533
Field Documentation.....	533
 <b>IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtRxTransTable2_ Struct Reference [Intel (R) IXP400 Software ATM Driver Access (IxAtmdAcc) Utopia Control API].....</b>	 <b>536</b>
Data Fields.....	536
Detailed Description.....	536
Field Documentation.....	536
 <b>IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtRxTransTable3_ Struct Reference [Intel (R) IXP400 Software ATM Driver Access (IxAtmdAcc) Utopia Control API].....</b>	 <b>539</b>
Data Fields.....	539
Detailed Description.....	539
Field Documentation.....	539
 <b>IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtRxTransTable4_ Struct Reference [Intel (R) IXP400 Software ATM Driver Access (IxAtmdAcc) Utopia Control API].....</b>	 <b>542</b>
Data Fields.....	542
Detailed Description.....	542
Field Documentation.....	542
 <b>IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtRxTransTable5_ Struct Reference [Intel (R) IXP400 Software ATM Driver Access (IxAtmdAcc) Utopia Control API].....</b>	 <b>545</b>
Data Fields.....	545
Detailed Description.....	545
Field Documentation.....	545
 <b>IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtSysConfig_ Struct Reference [Intel (R) IXP400 Software ATM Driver Access (IxAtmdAcc) Utopia Control API].....</b>	 <b>546</b>
Data Fields.....	546
Detailed Description.....	547
Field Documentation.....	547
 <b>IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtTxConfig_ Struct Reference [Intel (R) IXP400 Software ATM Driver Access (IxAtmdAcc) Utopia Control API].....</b>	 <b>549</b>
Data Fields.....	549
Detailed Description.....	550
Field Documentation.....	550
 <b>IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtTxDefineIdle_ Struct Reference [Intel (R) IXP400 Software ATM Driver Access (IxAtmdAcc) Utopia Control API].....</b>	 <b>554</b>
Data Fields.....	554
Detailed Description.....	554
Field Documentation.....	555

# Table of Contents

<b>IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtTxEnableFields_ Struct Reference [Intel (R) IXP400 Software ATM Driver Access (IxAtmdAcc) Utopia Control API].....</b>	<b>556</b>
Data Fields.....	556
Detailed Description.....	557
Field Documentation.....	557
<b>IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtTxStatsConfig_ Struct Reference [Intel (R) IXP400 Software ATM Driver Access (IxAtmdAcc) Utopia Control API].....</b>	<b>561</b>
Data Fields.....	561
Detailed Description.....	561
Field Documentation.....	562
<b>IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtTxTransTable0_ Struct Reference [Intel (R) IXP400 Software ATM Driver Access (IxAtmdAcc) Utopia Control API].....</b>	<b>563</b>
Data Fields.....	563
Detailed Description.....	563
Field Documentation.....	563
<b>IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtTxTransTable1_ Struct Reference [Intel (R) IXP400 Software ATM Driver Access (IxAtmdAcc) Utopia Control API].....</b>	<b>566</b>
Data Fields.....	566
Detailed Description.....	566
Field Documentation.....	566
<b>IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtTxTransTable2_ Struct Reference [Intel (R) IXP400 Software ATM Driver Access (IxAtmdAcc) Utopia Control API].....</b>	<b>569</b>
Data Fields.....	569
Detailed Description.....	569
Field Documentation.....	569
<b>IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtTxTransTable3_ Struct Reference [Intel (R) IXP400 Software ATM Driver Access (IxAtmdAcc) Utopia Control API].....</b>	<b>572</b>
Data Fields.....	572
Detailed Description.....	572
Field Documentation.....	572
<b>IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtTxTransTable4_ Struct Reference [Intel (R) IXP400 Software ATM Driver Access (IxAtmdAcc) Utopia Control API].....</b>	<b>575</b>
Data Fields.....	575
Detailed Description.....	575
Field Documentation.....	575
<b>IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtTxTransTable5_ Struct Reference [Intel (R) IXP400 Software ATM Driver Access (IxAtmdAcc) Utopia Control API].....</b>	<b>578</b>
Data Fields.....	578
Detailed Description.....	578
Field Documentation.....	578

# Table of Contents

<b>IxAtmdAccUtopiaStatus Struct Reference [Intel (R) IXP400 Software ATM Driver Access (IxAtmdAcc) Utopia Control API].....</b>	<b>579</b>
Data Fields.....	579
Detailed Description.....	579
Field Documentation.....	580
<b>IxAtmdAccUtopiaStatus::UtRxCellConditionStatus_ Struct Reference [Intel (R) IXP400 Software ATM Driver Access (IxAtmdAcc) Utopia Control API].....</b>	<b>582</b>
Data Fields.....	582
Detailed Description.....	583
Field Documentation.....	583
<b>IxAtmdAccUtopiaStatus::UtTxCellConditionStatus_ Struct Reference [Intel (R) IXP400 Software ATM Driver Access (IxAtmdAcc) Utopia Control API].....</b>	<b>585</b>
Data Fields.....	585
Detailed Description.....	585
Field Documentation.....	585
<b>IxAtmmPortCfg Struct Reference [Intel (R) IXP400 Software ATM Manager (IxAtmm) API].....</b>	<b>588</b>
Data Fields.....	588
Detailed Description.....	588
Field Documentation.....	588
<b>IxAtmmVc Struct Reference [Intel (R) IXP400 Software ATM Manager (IxAtmm) API].....</b>	<b>590</b>
Data Fields.....	590
Detailed Description.....	590
Field Documentation.....	590
<b>IxAtmScheduleTable Struct Reference [Intel (R) IXP400 Software ATM Types (IxAtmTypes)].....</b>	<b>592</b>
Data Fields.....	592
Detailed Description.....	592
Field Documentation.....	592
<b>IxAtmScheduleTableEntry Struct Reference [Intel (R) IXP400 Software ATM Types (IxAtmTypes)].....</b>	<b>594</b>
Data Fields.....	594
Detailed Description.....	594
Field Documentation.....	594
<b>IxAtmTrafficDescriptor Struct Reference [Intel (R) IXP400 Software ATM Types (IxAtmTypes)]... </b>	<b>596</b>
Data Fields.....	596
Detailed Description.....	596
Field Documentation.....	597
<b>IxCryptoAccAuthCtx Struct Reference [Intel (R) IXP400 Software Security (IxCryptoAcc) API].....</b>	<b>599</b>
Data Fields.....	599
Detailed Description.....	599
Field Documentation.....	600

# Table of Contents

<b>IxCryptoAccCipherCtx Struct Reference [Intel (R) IXP400 Software Security (IxCryptoAcc) API]</b>	<b>602</b>
Data Fields.....	602
Detailed Description.....	602
Field Documentation.....	603
<b>IxCryptoAccCtx Struct Reference [Intel (R) IXP400 Software Security (IxCryptoAcc) API]</b>	<b>605</b>
Data Fields.....	605
Detailed Description.....	605
Field Documentation.....	605
<b>IxCryptoAccPkeEauBnAddSubMulOperands Struct Reference [Intel (R) IXP400 Software Security (IxCryptoAcc) API]</b>	<b>607</b>
Data Fields.....	607
Detailed Description.....	607
Field Documentation.....	607
<b>IxCryptoAccPkeEauBnModOperands Struct Reference [Intel (R) IXP400 Software Security (IxCryptoAcc) API]</b>	<b>608</b>
Data Fields.....	608
Detailed Description.....	608
Field Documentation.....	608
<b>IxCryptoAccPkeEauInOperands Union Reference [Intel (R) IXP400 Software Security (IxCryptoAcc) API]</b>	<b>609</b>
Data Fields.....	609
Detailed Description.....	609
Field Documentation.....	609
<b>IxCryptoAccPkeEauModExpOperands Struct Reference [Intel (R) IXP400 Software Security (IxCryptoAcc) API]</b>	<b>611</b>
Data Fields.....	611
Detailed Description.....	611
Field Documentation.....	611
<b>IxCryptoAccPkeEauOperand Struct Reference [Intel (R) IXP400 Software Security (IxCryptoAcc) API]</b>	<b>613</b>
Data Fields.....	613
Detailed Description.....	613
Field Documentation.....	613
<b>IxCryptoCodeletServiceParam Struct Reference</b>	<b>614</b>
Data Fields.....	614
Detailed Description.....	615
Field Documentation.....	615

# Table of Contents

<b>IxErrHdlAccRecoveryStatistics Struct Reference [IXP400 Soft–Error Handler Driver (IxErrHdlAcc) API].....</b>	<b>618</b>
Data Fields.....	618
Detailed Description.....	618
<b>IxEthAccMacAddr Struct Reference [Intel (R) IXP400 Software Ethernet Access (IxEthAcc) API ].....</b>	<b>619</b>
Data Fields.....	619
Detailed Description.....	619
Field Documentation.....	619
<b>IxEthAccNe Struct Reference [Intel (R) IXP400 Software Ethernet Access (IxEthAcc) API, Intel (R) IXP400 Software Ethernet Access (IxEthAcc) API, Intel (R) IXP400 Software Ethernet Access (IxEthAcc) API].....</b>	<b>620</b>
Data Fields.....	620
Detailed Description.....	621
Field Documentation.....	621
<b>IxEthDBPortDefinition Struct Reference [Intel (R) IXP400 Software Ethernet Database Port Definitions (IxEthDBPortDefs)].....</b>	<b>623</b>
Data Fields.....	623
Detailed Description.....	623
<b>IxEthDBWiFiRecData Struct Reference [Intel (R) IXP400 Software Ethernet Database (IxEthDB) API].....</b>	<b>624</b>
Data Fields.....	624
Detailed Description.....	624
<b>IxEthEthObjStats Struct Reference [Intel (R) IXP400 Software Ethernet Access (IxEthAcc) API]....</b>	<b>625</b>
Data Fields.....	625
Detailed Description.....	626
Field Documentation.....	627
<b>IxHssAccConfigParams Struct Reference [Intel (R) IXP400 Software HSS Access (IxHssAcc) API ].....</b>	<b>631</b>
Data Fields.....	631
Detailed Description.....	631
Field Documentation.....	631
<b>IxHssAccHdlcMode Struct Reference [Intel (R) IXP400 Software HSS Access (IxHssAcc) API].....</b>	<b>634</b>
Data Fields.....	634
Detailed Description.....	634
Field Documentation.....	634
<b>IxHssAccPktHdlcFraming Struct Reference [Intel (R) IXP400 Software HSS Access (IxHssAcc) API].....</b>	<b>636</b>
Data Fields.....	636
Detailed Description.....	636



# Table of Contents

<b>IxHssAccPktHdlcFraming Struct Reference [Intel (R) IXP400 Software HSS Access (IxHssAcc) API]</b>	
Field Documentation.....	636
<b>IxHssAccPortConfig Struct Reference [Intel (R) IXP400 Software HSS Access (IxHssAcc) API].....</b>	<b>638</b>
Data Fields.....	638
Detailed Description.....	639
Field Documentation.....	639
<b>IxI2cInitVars Struct Reference [Intel (R) IXP400 Software I2C Driver(IxI2cDrv) API].....</b>	<b>643</b>
Data Fields.....	643
Detailed Description.....	643
Field Documentation.....	644
<b>IxI2cStatsCounters Struct Reference [Intel (R) IXP400 Software I2C Driver(IxI2cDrv) API].....</b>	<b>646</b>
Data Fields.....	646
Detailed Description.....	646
Field Documentation.....	647
<b>IxNpeDllImageId Struct Reference [Intel (R) IXP Image ID Definition].....</b>	<b>649</b>
Data Fields.....	649
Detailed Description.....	649
Field Documentation.....	649
<b>IxNpeMhMessage Struct Reference [Intel (R) IXP Software NPE Message Handler (IxNpeMh) API].....</b>	<b>651</b>
Data Fields.....	651
Detailed Description.....	651
Field Documentation.....	651
<b>IxParityENAccAHBErrorTransaction Struct Reference [Intel (R) IXP400 Software Parity Error Notifier (IxParityENAcc) API, Intel (R) IXP400 Software Parity Error Notifier (IxParityENAcc) API, Intel (R) IXP400 Software Parity Error Notifier (IxParityENAcc) API].....</b>	<b>652</b>
Data Fields.....	652
Detailed Description.....	652
Field Documentation.....	652
<b>IxParityENAccEbcConfig Struct Reference [Intel (R) IXP400 Software Parity Error Notifier (IxParityENAcc) API, Intel (R) IXP400 Software Parity Error Notifier (IxParityENAcc) API, Intel (R) IXP400 Software Parity Error Notifier (IxParityENAcc) API].....</b>	<b>654</b>
Data Fields.....	654
Detailed Description.....	654
Field Documentation.....	655
<b>IxParityENAccEbcParityErrorStats Struct Reference [Intel (R) IXP400 Software Parity Error Notifier (IxParityENAcc) API, Intel (R) IXP400 Software Parity Error Notifier (IxParityENAcc) API, Intel (R) IXP400 Software Parity Error Notifier (IxParityENAcc) API].....</b>	<b>657</b>
Data Fields.....	657
Detailed Description.....	657

# Table of Contents

<b>IxParityENAccEbcParityErrorStats Struct Reference [Intel (R) IXP400 Software Parity Error Notifier (IxParityENAcc) API, Intel (R) IXP400 Software Parity Error Notifier (IxParityENAcc) API, Intel (R) IXP400 Software Parity Error Notifier (IxParityENAcc) API]</b>	
Field Documentation.....	657
<b>IxParityENAccHWParityConfig Struct Reference [Intel (R) IXP400 Software Parity Error Notifier (IxParityENAcc) API, Intel (R) IXP400 Software Parity Error Notifier (IxParityENAcc) API, Intel (R) IXP400 Software Parity Error Notifier (IxParityENAcc) API]</b>	<b>658</b>
Data Fields.....	658
Detailed Description.....	658
Field Documentation.....	658
<b>IxParityENAccMcuConfig Struct Reference [Intel (R) IXP400 Software Parity Error Notifier (IxParityENAcc) API, Intel (R) IXP400 Software Parity Error Notifier (IxParityENAcc) API, Intel (R) IXP400 Software Parity Error Notifier (IxParityENAcc) API]</b>	<b>661</b>
Data Fields.....	661
Detailed Description.....	661
Field Documentation.....	661
<b>IxParityENAccMcuParityErrorStats Struct Reference [Intel (R) IXP400 Software Parity Error Notifier (IxParityENAcc) API, Intel (R) IXP400 Software Parity Error Notifier (IxParityENAcc) API, Intel (R) IXP400 Software Parity Error Notifier (IxParityENAcc) API]</b>	<b>663</b>
Data Fields.....	663
Detailed Description.....	663
Field Documentation.....	663
<b>IxParityENAccNpeConfig Struct Reference [Intel (R) IXP400 Software Parity Error Notifier (IxParityENAcc) API, Intel (R) IXP400 Software Parity Error Notifier (IxParityENAcc) API, Intel (R) IXP400 Software Parity Error Notifier (IxParityENAcc) API]</b>	<b>665</b>
Data Fields.....	665
Detailed Description.....	665
Field Documentation.....	665
<b>IxParityENAccNpeParityErrorStats Struct Reference [Intel (R) IXP400 Software Parity Error Notifier (IxParityENAcc) API, Intel (R) IXP400 Software Parity Error Notifier (IxParityENAcc) API, Intel (R) IXP400 Software Parity Error Notifier (IxParityENAcc) API]</b>	<b>666</b>
Data Fields.....	666
Detailed Description.....	666
Field Documentation.....	666
<b>IxParityENAccParityErrorContextMessage Struct Reference [Intel (R) IXP400 Software Parity Error Notifier (IxParityENAcc) API, Intel (R) IXP400 Software Parity Error Notifier (IxParityENAcc) API, Intel (R) IXP400 Software Parity Error Notifier (IxParityENAcc) API]</b>	<b>668</b>
Data Fields.....	668
Detailed Description.....	668
Field Documentation.....	668

# Table of Contents

<b>IxParityENAccParityErrorStats Struct Reference [Intel (R) IXP400 Software Parity Error Notifier (IxParityENAcc) API, Intel (R) IXP400 Software Parity Error Notifier (IxParityENAcc) API, Intel (R) IXP400 Software Parity Error Notifier (IxParityENAcc) API].....</b>	<b>670</b>
Data Fields.....	670
Detailed Description.....	670
Field Documentation.....	670
<b>IxParityENAccPbcConfig Struct Reference [Intel (R) IXP400 Software Parity Error Notifier (IxParityENAcc) API, Intel (R) IXP400 Software Parity Error Notifier (IxParityENAcc) API, Intel (R) IXP400 Software Parity Error Notifier (IxParityENAcc) API].....</b>	<b>672</b>
Data Fields.....	672
Detailed Description.....	672
Field Documentation.....	672
<b>IxParityENAccPbcParityErrorStats Struct Reference [Intel (R) IXP400 Software Parity Error Notifier (IxParityENAcc) API, Intel (R) IXP400 Software Parity Error Notifier (IxParityENAcc) API, Intel (R) IXP400 Software Parity Error Notifier (IxParityENAcc) API].....</b>	<b>673</b>
Data Fields.....	673
Detailed Description.....	673
Field Documentation.....	673
<b>IxPerfProfAccBusPmuResults Struct Reference [Intel (R) IXP400 Software Performance Profiling (IxPerfProfAcc) API].....</b>	<b>674</b>
Data Fields.....	674
Detailed Description.....	674
Field Documentation.....	674
<b>IxPerfProfAccXcycleResults Struct Reference [Intel (R) IXP400 Software Performance Profiling (IxPerfProfAcc) API].....</b>	<b>675</b>
Data Fields.....	675
Detailed Description.....	675
Field Documentation.....	675
<b>IxPerfProfAccXscalePmuEvtCnt Struct Reference [Intel (R) IXP400 Software Performance Profiling (IxPerfProfAcc) API].....</b>	<b>677</b>
Data Fields.....	677
Detailed Description.....	677
Field Documentation.....	677
<b>IxPerfProfAccXscalePmuResults Struct Reference [Intel (R) IXP400 Software Performance Profiling (IxPerfProfAcc) API].....</b>	<b>678</b>
Data Fields.....	678
Detailed Description.....	678
Field Documentation.....	679
<b>IxPerfProfAccXscalePmuSamplePcProfile Struct Reference [Intel (R) IXP400 Software Performance Profiling (IxPerfProfAcc) API].....</b>	<b>681</b>
Data Fields.....	681

# Table of Contents

<b>IxPerfProfAccXscalePmuSamplePcProfile Struct Reference [Intel (R) IXP400 Software Performance Profiling (IxPerfProfAcc) API]</b>	
Detailed Description.....	681
Field Documentation.....	681
<b>IxSspAccStatsCounters Struct Reference [Intel (R) IXP400 Software SSP Serial Port Access (IxSspAcc) API, Intel (R) IXP400 Software SSP Serial Port Access (IxSspAcc) API]</b>	<b>682</b>
Data Fields.....	682
Detailed Description.....	682
Field Documentation.....	682
<b>IxSspInitVars Struct Reference [Intel (R) IXP400 Software SSP Serial Port Access (IxSspAcc) API, Intel (R) IXP400 Software SSP Serial Port Access (IxSspAcc) API]</b>	<b>684</b>
Data Fields.....	684
Detailed Description.....	685
Field Documentation.....	685
<b>IxTimeSyncAccPtpMsgData Struct Reference [Intel (R) IXP400 Software Time Sync Access Component API, Intel (R) IXP400 Software Time Sync Access Component API, Intel (R) IXP400 Software Time Sync Access Component API]</b>	<b>688</b>
Data Fields.....	688
Detailed Description.....	688
Field Documentation.....	688
<b>IxTimeSyncAccStats Struct Reference [Intel (R) IXP400 Software Time Sync Access Component API, Intel (R) IXP400 Software Time Sync Access Component API, Intel (R) IXP400 Software Time Sync Access Component API]</b>	<b>690</b>
Data Fields.....	690
Detailed Description.....	690
Field Documentation.....	690
<b>IxTimeSyncAccTimeValue Struct Reference [Intel (R) IXP400 Software Time Sync Access Component API, Intel (R) IXP400 Software Time Sync Access Component API, Intel (R) IXP400 Software Time Sync Access Component API]</b>	<b>691</b>
Data Fields.....	691
Detailed Description.....	691
Field Documentation.....	691
<b>IxTimeSyncAccUuid Struct Reference [Intel (R) IXP400 Software Time Sync Access Component API, Intel (R) IXP400 Software Time Sync Access Component API, Intel (R) IXP400 Software Time Sync Access Component API]</b>	<b>692</b>
Data Fields.....	692
Detailed Description.....	692
Field Documentation.....	692
<b>ixUARTDev Struct Reference [Intel (R) IXP400 Software UART Access (IxUARTAcc) API, Intel (R) IXP400 Software UART Access (IxUARTAcc) API]</b>	<b>693</b>
Data Fields.....	693

# Table of Contents

<b>ixUARTDev Struct Reference [Intel (R) IXP400 Software UART Access (IxUARTAcc) API, Intel (R) IXP400 Software UART Access (IxUARTAcc) API]</b>	
Detailed Description.....	693
Field Documentation.....	693
 <b>ixUARTStats Struct Reference [Intel (R) IXP400 Software UART Access (IxUARTAcc) API, Intel (R) IXP400 Software UART Access (IxUARTAcc) API].....</b>	
Data Fields.....	695
Detailed Description.....	695

# Intel (R) IXP400 Software Component Co-exist

component coexist information

## Defines

```
#define IX_ETH_HSS_COM_MUT_UNLOCK()  
    macros for common mutex control for ETH & HSS co-existence  
  
#define IX_ETH_HSS_COM_MUT_LOCK(result)  
    macros for common mutex control for ETH & HSS co-existence
```

---

## Detailed Description

component coexist information

---

## Define Documentation

```
#define IX_ETH_HSS_COM_MUT_LOCK ( result )
```

macros for common mutex control for ETH & HSS co-existence

Definition at line **77** of file **IxAccCommon.h**.

```
#define IX_ETH_HSS_COM_MUT_UNLOCK ( )
```

macros for common mutex control for ETH & HSS co-existence

Definition at line **65** of file **IxAccCommon.h**.

# Intel (R) IXP400 Software ADSL Driver API

The public API for the IXP400 ADSL Driver.

## Typedefs

```
typedef void(* IxAdslStateChangeCallback )(UINT32 lineNum, IxAdslLineState lineState)
```

*Callback function to indicate of the changes on the line state.*

## Enumerations

```
enum IxAdslStatus {  
    IX_ADSL_STATUS_SUCCESS,  
    IX_ADSL_STATUS_FAIL,  
    IX_ADSL_STATUS_UNSUPPORTED_MODE,  
    IX_ADSL_STATUS_ALREADY_DOWN  
}
```

*These status will be used by the APIs to return to the client.*

```
enum IxAdslLineState {  
    IX_ADSL_LINE_STATE_UP_DUAL_LATENCY,  
    IX_ADSL_LINE_STATE_WAIT_FOR_ACTIVATING,  
    IX_ADSL_LINE_STATE_ACTIVATING,  
    IX_ADSL_LINE_STATE_DOWN,  
    IX_ADSL_LINE_STATE_UP_FASTCHANNEL,  
    IX_ADSL_LINE_STATE_UP_INTERLEAVECHANNEL,  
    IX_ADSL_LINE_STATE_INVALID  
}
```

*These status will be used to indicate the line state.*

```
enum IxAdslLineType {  
    IX_ADSL_AUTOSELECT,  
    IX_ADSL_GLITE,  
    IX_ADSL_DMT,  
    IX_ADSL_ANSI,  
    IX_ADSL_LOOPBACK,  
    IX_ADSL_INVALID_MODE  
}
```

*Used to indicate the type of ADSL line type used.*

```
enum IxAdslPhyType {  
    IX_ADSL_PHY_CPE,  
    IX_ADSL_PHY_INVALID  
}
```

*Used to indicate the ADSL physical type – CPE.*

## Functions

**PUBLIC** **ixAdslLineOpen** (UINT32 lineNum, **ixAdslLineType** lineType, **ixAdslPhyType** phyType)  
**ixAdslStatus**

*Open the given ADSL line in the specified mode and type.*

**PUBLIC**

**ixAdslStatus** **ixAdslLineClose** (UINT32 lineNum)

*Closes a previously opened ADSL line.*

**PUBLIC** **ixAdslLineStateChangeCallbackRegister** (UINT32 lineNum,  
**ixAdslStatus** **ixAdslStateChangeCallback** lineChangeCallbackFn)

*This is a notification registration procedure that gets called if the line state of the given ADSL line changes. The maximum callbacks that can be registered is defined as IX\_ADSL\_SIZEOF\_CALLBACK\_LIST (The default value is 10).*

**PUBLIC**

**ixAdslLineState** **ixAdslLineStateGet** (UINT32 lineNum)

*Returns the current state of the given ADSL line.*

**PUBLIC** **UINT32** **ixAdslLineRateUpstreamGet** (UINT32 lineNum)

*Return the current upstream line speed of the given ADSL line.*

**PUBLIC** **UINT32** **ixAdslLineRateDownstreamGet** (UINT32 lineNum)

*Return the current downstream line speed of the given ADSL line.*

**PUBLIC**

**ixAdslStatus** **ixAdslDyingGaspEnable** (UINT32 lineNum)

*Enables the function that informs ATU-C when condition that leads to shutdown of the given Adsl line has been detected.*

**PUBLIC** **ixAdslVendorCodeSet** (UINT32 lineNum, **UINT8** ixAdslItuVendoridCountrycode,  
**ixAdslStatus** **UINT8** ixAdslItuVendoridVendorcode1, **UINT8** ixAdslItuVendoridVendorcode2, **UINT8** ixAdslItuVendoridVendorcode3, **UINT8** ixAdslItuVendoridVendorcode4, **UINT8** ixAdslItuVendoridVendorspecific1, **UINT8** ixAdslItuVendoridVendorspecific2)

*Set the vendor specific bytes in the given ADSL line.*

**PUBLIC** **void** **ixAdslShow** (UINT32 lineNum)

*This function will show the current statistics associated with the given ADSL Line.*

**PUBLIC** **void** **ixAdslMemoryUnmap** (**void**)

*This function will unmap the dynamically allocated addresses.*

---

## Detailed Description

The public API for the IXP400 ADSL Driver.

---



# Typedef Documentation

```
typedef void(* IxAdslStateChangeCallback)( UINT32 lineNum, IxAdslLineState lineState)
```

Callback function to indicate of the changes on the line state.

Definition at line **142** of file **IxAdsl.h**.

---

## Enumeration Type Documentation

```
enum IxAdslLineState
```

These status will be used to indicate the line state.

### *Enumeration values:*

<i>IX_ADSL_LINE_STATE_UP_DUAL_LATENCY</i>	The line is in showtime state.
<i>IX_ADSL_LINE_STATE_WAIT_FOR_ACTIVATING</i>	Fast & Interleaved Channel The line is waiting for the peer to activate.
<i>IX_ADSL_LINE_STATE_ACTIVATING</i>	The line is negotiating with its peer.
<i>IX_ADSL_LINE_STATE_DOWN</i>	The line is down.
<i>IX_ADSL_LINE_STATE_UP_FASTCHANNEL</i>	The line is in showtime state.  Fast Channel
<i>IX_ADSL_LINE_STATE_UP_INTERLEAVECHANNEL</i>	The line is in showtime state.  Interleaved Channel
<i>IX_ADSL_LINE_STATE_INVALID</i>	ADSL line in an unknown state.

Definition at line **55** of file **IxAdsl.h**.

```
enum IxAdslLineType
```

Used to indicate the type of ADSL line type used.

### *Enumeration values:*

<i>IX_ADSL_AUTOSELECT</i>	This is an auto-select mode for the CPE to auto-configure based on the CO/DSLAM line type; DMT, ANSI or G.lite.
<i>IX_ADSL_GLITE</i>	G.lite line type.
<i>IX_ADSL_DMT</i>	DMT line type.
<i>IX_ADSL_ANSI</i>	ANSI line type.
<i>IX_ADSL_LOOPBACK</i>	Utopia Loopback line type.

*IX\_ADSL\_INVALID\_MODE* Used internally to indicate last valid enum.

Definition at line **96** of file **IxAdsl.h**.

enum IxAdslPhyType

Used to indicate the ADSL physical type – CPE.

**Note:**

IxAdslPhyType is declared as an enum due to forward compatibility to support CO (fast and interleaved mode) in the future.

**Enumeration values:**

*IX\_ADSL\_PHY\_CPE* Adsl type is CPE.

*IX\_ADSL\_PHY\_INVALID* Adsl type is invalid.

Definition at line **125** of file **IxAdsl.h**.

enum IxAdslStatus

These status will be used by the APIs to return to the client.

**Enumeration values:**

*IX\_ADSL\_STATUS\_SUCCESS* Successful API execution.

*IX\_ADSL\_STATUS\_FAIL* Failed API execution.

*IX\_ADSL\_STATUS\_UNSUPPORTED\_MODE* Unsupported mode type for IxAdslLineOpen function.

*IX\_ADSL\_STATUS\_ALREADY\_DOWN* Line is already down.

Definition at line **34** of file **IxAdsl.h**.

---

## Function Documentation

ixAdslDyingGaspEnable ( UINT32 *lineNum* )

Enables the function that informs ATU–C when condition that leads to shutdown of the given Adsl line has been detected.

**Note:**

The parameter lineNum exists for future Multi–PHY support. Only lineNum = 0 is valid.

Blocking : This call is a non–blocking

Impacts On Global Data: None

Pre–Conditions: Task level calls only. Only Available in ATU–R.

Post-Conditions: None.

Exceptions: None.

**Parameters:**

*lineNum* UINT32 [in] – is the parameter showing which ADSL line is being used.

**Returns:**

◇ IX\_ADSL\_STATUS\_SUCCESS – Dying Gasp is enabled. successfully.

◇ IX\_ADSL\_STATUS\_FAILED – Failed to enable Dying Gasp.

```
ixAdslLineClose ( UINT32 lineNum )
```

Closes a previously opened ADSL line.

The line will closed and put in the idle state.

**Note:**

The parameter *lineNum* exists for future Multi-PHY support. Only *lineNum* = 0 is valid.

Blocking : Non-blocking

Impacts On Global Data: Sets the lineEnable State . Notifies a callback routine.

Pre-Conditions: Code should only be called from task level.

Post-Conditions: No cleanup after this call is required.

**Parameters:**

*lineNum* UINT32 [in] – is the parameter showing which ADSL line is being used and to be closed.

**Returns:**

◇ IX\_ADSL\_STATUS\_SUCCESS – Line was closed successfully.

◇ IX\_ADSL\_STATUS\_FAILED – Line failed to close properly.

◇ IX\_ADSL\_STATUS\_ALREADY\_DOWN – Line was not open before close.

```
ixAdslLineOpen ( UINT32 lineNum,  
                  IxAdslLineType lineType,  
                  IxAdslPhyType phyType  
                  )
```

Open the given ADSL line in the specified mode and type.

Opens the given ADSL line in the specified mode and puts it in the 'Showtime' state, i.e. available to carry user data.

**Note:**

- The parameter lineNum exists for future Multi-PHY support. Only lineNum = 0 is valid.
- The parameter phyType exists for future CO support.

Blocking : This call may block for several seconds while the link is established.

Impacts On Global Data: Sets the lineEnable State .

Pre-Conditions: The code must only be called once the operating system is running, i.e. do not call as part of the hardware init as this code requires base services such as Atmd, Atmm, Atm scheduler and Utopia. The code should only be called from task level.

Post-Conditions: No cleanup after this call is required.

Exceptions: None.

**Parameters:**

*lineNum* **UINT32** [in] – is the parameter showing which ADSL line is being used.

*lineType* **IxAdslLineType** [in] – indicates type of ADSL to be opened.

*phyType* **IxAdslPhyType** [in] – is the type of Phy used – CPE.

**Returns:**

◇ **IX\_ADSL\_STATUS\_SUCCESS** – Line was opened and is in 'showtime' state

◇ **IX\_ADSL\_STATUS\_FAILED** – Line failed to open properly.

◇ **IX\_ADSL\_STATUS\_UNSUPPORTED\_MODE** – Illegal ADSL type for IxAdslLineOpen function.

**ixAdslLineRateDownstreamGet ( **UINT32** *lineNum* )**

Return the current downstream line speed of the given ADSL line.

The data returned by this API is the received (Rx) rate of the line the ATU device.

**Note:**

The parameter lineNum exists for future Multi-PHY support. Only lineNum = 0 is valid.

Blocking : This call is a non-blocking

Impacts On Global Data: None

Pre-Conditions: Task level calls only.

Post-Conditions: None.

Exceptions: None.

**Parameters:**

*lineNum* UINT32 [in] – is the parameter showing which ADSL line is being used.

**Returns:**

◇ Integer – bit rate in kbits/second. N.B. Returns zero if the line is not in 'Showtime' state.

```
ixAdslLineRateUpstreamGet ( UINT32 lineNum )
```

Return the current upstream line speed of the given ADSL line.

**Note:**

The parameter *lineNum* exists for future Multi-PHY support. Only *lineNum* = 0 is valid.

The data returned by this API represents the transmit (Tx) rate of the line from the ATU device.

Blocking : This call is a non-blocking

Impacts On Global Data: None

Pre-Conditions: Task level calls only.

Post-Conditions: None.

Exceptions: None.

**Parameters:**

*lineNum* UINT32 [in] – is the parameter showing which ADSL line is being used.

**Returns:**

◇ Integer – bit rate in kbits/second. N.B. Returns zero if the line is not in 'Showtime' state.

```
ixAdslLineStateChangeCallbackRegister ( UINT32 lineNum,  
                                         IxAdslStateChangeCallback lineChangeCallbackFn  
                                         )
```

This is a notification registration procedure that gets called if the line state of the given ADSL line changes. The maximum callbacks that can be registered is defined as IX\_ADSL\_SIZEOF\_CALLBACK\_LIST (The default value is 10).

**Note:**

The parameter *lineNum* exists for future Multi-PHY support. Only *lineNum* = 0 is valid.

Blocking : This call is a non-blocking function.

Impacts On Global Data: This sets a global callback handler.

Pre-Conditions: There are no pre conditions to this call.

Post-Conditions: A global line state handler for ADSL line state changes shall be registered. It is advisable to register the callback before the given ADSL line is opened.

Exceptions: None.

**Parameters:**

*lineNum*                      UINT32 [in] – is the parameter showing which ADSL line is being used.  
*lineChangeCallbackFn* **IxAdslStateChangeCallback** [in] – is the callback function that will be invoked when there is a state change

**Returns:**

- ◇ IX\_ADSL\_STATUS\_SUCCESS – The callback function was registered successfully.
- ◇ IX\_ADSL\_STATUS\_FAILED – Internal error, registration of the callback function failed.

```
ixAdslLineStateGet ( UINT32 lineNum )
```

Returns the current state of the given ADSL line.

**Note:**

The parameter lineNum exists for future Multi-PHY support. Only lineNum = 0 is valid.

Blocking : This call is a non-blocking

Impacts On Global Data: None

Pre-Conditions: Task level calls only.

Post-Conditions: None.

Exceptions: None.

**Parameters:**

*lineNum*    UINT32 [in] – is the parameter showing which ADSL line is being used.

**Returns:**

- ◇ IX\_ADSL\_LINE\_STATE\_UP\_FAST – The line is in show time state.
- ◇ IX\_ADSL\_LINE\_STATE\_WAIT\_FOR\_ACTIVATING – The line is waiting fo the peer to activate.
- ◇ IX\_ADSL\_LINE\_STATE\_ACTIVATING – The line is negotiating with its peer.
- ◇ IX\_ADSL\_LINE\_STATE\_DOWN – The line is idle.
- ◇ IX\_ADSL\_LINE\_STATE\_INVALID – The line is in an unknown state.

## ixAdslMemoryUnmap ( void )

This function will unmap the dynamically allocated addresses.

Blocking : This call is non-blocking.

Impacts On Global Data: None

Pre-Conditions: Task level calls only.

Post-Conditions: None.

Exceptions: None.

### **Parameters:**

None

### **Returns:**

None

## ixAdslShow ( UINT32 lineNum )

This function will show the current statistics associated with the given ADSL Line.

### **Note:**

The parameter lineNum exists for future Multi-PHY support. Only lineNum = 0 is valid.

The list of statistics to be shown by IxAdslShow:

- Controller SW Version
- ADSL Line State
- Line Number
- Upstream and Downstream Rate
- Training Statistics for Upstream and Downstream Rates
- ADSL Near End Operational Data such as Upstream Relative Capacity Occupancy, Noise Margin Upstream, Output Pwr Downstream, Attenuation Upstream, Downstream Fast Bitrate, Downstream Interleaved Bitrate, Near-end defect bitmap, Loss of Frame (secs), Loss of Cell delineation (secs), Loss of Signal (secs), Loss of Margin (secs), Errored seconds, HEC and FEC Errors.
- ADSL Far End Operational Data such as Downstream Relative Capacity Occupancy, Noise Margin Downstream, Output Pwr Upstream, Attenuation Downstream, Upstream Fast Bitrate, Upstream Interleaved Bitrate, Far-end defect bitmap
- Tx and Rx ATM Cell Counters

Blocking : This call is non-blocking.

Impacts On Global Data: None

Pre-Conditions: Task level calls only.

Post-Conditions: None.

Exceptions: None.

**Parameters:**

*lineNum* UINT32 [in] – is the parameter showing which ADSL line is being used.

**Returns:**

None

```
ixAdslVendorCodeSet ( UINT32 lineNum,  
                      UINT8  ixAdslItuVendoridCountrycode,  
                      UINT8  ixAdslItuVendoridVendorcode1,  
                      UINT8  ixAdslItuVendoridVendorcode2,  
                      UINT8  ixAdslItuVendoridVendorcode3,  
                      UINT8  ixAdslItuVendoridVendorcode4,  
                      UINT8  ixAdslItuVendoridVendorspecific1,  
                      UINT8  ixAdslItuVendoridVendorspecific2  
                      )
```

Set the vendor specific bytes in the given ADSL line.

The vendor ID must be set before the line is open, if not the default vendor ID shall be sent to the peer modem upon request.

**Note:**

- Vendor specific values are taken by the phy and linked together to form a single code
- Note that the parameter lineNum exists for future Multi-PHY support. Only lineNum = 0 is valid.

Blocking : This call is a non-blocking

Impacts On Global Data: Sets an internal ADSL global data structure. This shall be used for all subsequent ADSL line open commands.

Pre-Conditions: Task level calls only.

Post-Conditions: None.

Exceptions: None.

**Parameters:**

<i>lineNum</i>	UINT32 [in] – is the parameter showing which ADSL line is being used.
<i>ixAdslItuVendoridCountrycode</i>	UINT8 [in] – is the vendor country code that are predefined in standards.
<i>ixAdslItuVendoridVendorcode1</i>	UINT8 [in] – is the vendor code 1 that are predefined in



	standards.
<i>ixAdslItuVendoridVendorcode2</i>	UINT8 [in] – is the vendor code 2 that are predefined in standards.
<i>ixAdslItuVendoridVendorcode3</i>	UINT8 [in] – is the vendor code 3 that are predefined in standards.
<i>ixAdslItuVendoridVendorcode4</i>	UINT8 [in] – is the vendor code 4 that are predefined in standards.
<i>ixAdslItuVendoridVendorspecific1</i>	UINT8 [in] – is the vendor specific 1 that are predefined in standards.
<i>ixAdslItuVendoridVendorspecific2</i>	UINT8 [in] – is the vendor specific 2 that are predefined in standards.

**Returns:**

- ◇ IX\_ADSL\_STATUS\_SUCCESS – Set Vendor Code successful.
- ◇ IX\_ADSL\_STATUS\_FAILED – Set Vendor Code failed because the line is up.

# Intel (R) IXP400 Software Assertion Macros (IxAssert) API

Assertion support.

# Intel (R) IXP400 Software ATM Driver Access (IxAtmdAcc) API

The public API for the IXP400 Atm Driver Data component.

## Defines

**#define IX\_ATMDACC\_WARNING**  
*Warning return code.*

**#define IX\_ATMDACC\_BUSY**  
*Busy return code.*

**#define IX\_ATMDACC\_RESOURCES\_STILL\_ALLOCATED**  
*Disconnect return code.*

**#define IX\_ATMDACC\_DEFAULT\_REPLENISH\_COUNT**  
*Default resources usage for RxVcFree replenish mechanism.*

**#define IX\_ATMDACC\_OAM\_TX\_VPI**  
*The reserved value used for the dedicated OAM Tx connection. This "well known" value is used by atmdAcc and its clients to discriminate the OAM channel, and should be chosen so that it does not coincide with the VPI value used in an AAL0/AAL5 connection. Any attempt to connect a service type other than OAM on this VPI will fail.*

**#define IX\_ATMDACC\_OAM\_TX\_VCI**  
*The reserved value used for the dedicated OAM Tx connection. This "well known" value is used by atmdAcc and its clients to discriminate the OAM channel, and should be chosen so that it does not coincide with the VCI value used in an AAL0/AAL5 connection. Any attempt to connect a service type other than OAM on this VCI will fail.*

**#define IX\_ATMDACC\_OAM\_RX\_PORT**  
*The reserved dummy PORT used for all dedicated OAM Rx connections. Note that this is not a real port but must have a value that lies within the valid range of port values.*

**#define IX\_ATMDACC\_OAM\_RX\_VPI**  
*The reserved value value used for the dedicated OAM Rx connection. This value should be chosen so that it does not coincide with the VPI value used in an AAL0/AAL5 connection. Any attempt to connect a service type other than OAM on this VPI will fail.*

**#define IX\_ATMDACC\_OAM\_RX\_VCI**  
*The reserved value value used for the dedicated OAM Rx connection. This value should be chosen so that it does not coincide with the VCI value used in an AAL0/AAL5 connection. Any attempt to connect a service type other than OAM on this VCI will fail.*

## Typedefs

```
typedef
unsigned int IxAtmdAccUserId
    User-supplied Id.

typedef void(* IxAtmdAccRxVcRxCallback )(IxAtmLogicalPort port, IxAtmdAccUserId userId,
IxAtmdAccPduStatus status, IxAtmdAccClpStatus clp, IX_OSAL_MBUF *mbufPtr)
    Rx callback prototype.

typedef void(* IxAtmdAccRxVcFreeLowCallback )(IxAtmdAccUserId userId)
    Callback prototype for free buffer level is low.

typedef void(* IxAtmdAccTxVcBufferReturnCallback )(IxAtmdAccUserId userId, IX_OSAL_MBUF
*mbufPtr)
    Buffer callback prototype.
```

## Enumerations

```
enum IxAtmdAccPduStatus {
    IX_ATMDACC_AAL0_VALID,
    IX_ATMDACC_OAM_VALID,
    IX_ATMDACC_AAL2_VALID,
    IX_ATMDACC_AAL5_VALID,
    IX_ATMDACC_AAL5_PARTIAL,
    IX_ATMDACC_AAL5_CRC_ERROR,
    IX_ATMDACC_MBUF_RETURN
}
IxAtmdAcc Pdu status :.

enum IxAtmdAccAalType {
    IX_ATMDACC_AAL5,
    IX_ATMDACC_AAL2,
    IX_ATMDACC_AAL0_48,
    IX_ATMDACC_AAL0_52,
    IX_ATMDACC_OAM,
    IX_ATMDACC_MAX_SERVICE_TYPE
}
IxAtmdAcc AAL Service Type :.

enum IxAtmdAccClpStatus {
    IX_ATMDACC_CLP_NOT_SET,
    IX_ATMDACC_CLP_SET
}
IxAtmdAcc CLP indication.
```

# Functions

PUBLIC

IX\_STATUS **ixAtmdAccInit** (void)  
*Initialise the IxAtmdAcc Component.*

PUBLIC

IX\_STATUS **ixAtmdAccUninit** (void)  
*Uninitialise the IxAtmdAcc Component.*

PUBLIC void **ixAtmdAccShow** (void)  
*Show IxAtmdAcc configuration on a per port basis.*

PUBLIC void **ixAtmdAccStatsShow** (void)  
*Show all IxAtmdAcc stats.*

PUBLIC void **ixAtmdAccStatsReset** (void)  
*Reset all IxAtmdAcc stats.*

PUBLIC **ixAtmdAccRxVcConnect** (**IxAtmLogicalPort** port, unsigned int vpi, unsigned int vci, IX\_STATUS **ixAtmdAccAalType** aalServiceType, **IxAtmRxQueueId** rxQueueId, **IxAtmdAccUserId** userCallbackId, **IxAtmdAccRxVcRxCallback** rxCallback, unsigned int minimumReplenishCount, **IxAtmConnId** \*connIdPtr, **IxAtmNpeRxVcId** \*npeVcIdPtr)  
*Connect to a Aal Pdu receive service for a particular port/vpi/vci, and service type.*

PUBLIC

IX\_STATUS **ixAtmdAccRxVcFreeReplenish** (**IxAtmConnId** connId, IX\_OSAL\_MBUF \*mbufPtr)  
*Provide free mbufs for data reception on a connection.*

PUBLIC **ixAtmdAccRxVcFreeLowCallbackRegister** (**IxAtmConnId** connId, unsigned int IX\_STATUS numberOfMbufs, **IxAtmdAccRxVcFreeLowCallback** callback)  
*Configure the RX Free threshold value and register a callback to handle threshold notifications.*

PUBLIC **ixAtmdAccRxVcFreeEntriesQuery** (**IxAtmConnId** connId, unsigned int IX\_STATUS \*numberOfMbufsPtr)  
*Get the number of rx mbufs the system can accept to replenish the the rx reception mechanism on a particular channel.*

PUBLIC

IX\_STATUS **ixAtmdAccRxVcEnable** (**IxAtmConnId** connId)  
*Start the RX service on a VC.*

PUBLIC

IX\_STATUS **ixAtmdAccRxVcDisable** (**IxAtmConnId** connId)  
*Stop the RX service on a VC.*

PUBLIC

IX\_STATUS **ixAtmdAccRxVcTryDisconnect** (**IxAtmConnId** connId)  
*Disconnect a VC from the RX service.*

**PUBLIC****ixAtmdAccTxVcConnect** (**ixAtmLogicalPort** port, unsigned int vpi, unsigned int vci, IX\_STATUS **ixAtmdAccAalType** aalServiceType, **ixAtmdAccUserId** userId, **ixAtmdAccTxVcBufferReturnCallback** bufferFreeCallback, **ixAtmConnId** \*connIdPtr)  
*Connect to a Aal Pdu transmit service for a particular port/vpi/vci and service type.*

**PUBLIC****ixAtmdAccTxVcPduSubmit** (**ixAtmConnId** connId, IX\_OSAL\_MBUF \*mbufPtr, IX\_STATUS **ixAtmdAccClpStatus** clp, unsigned int numberOfCells)  
*Submit a Pdu for transmission on connection.*

**PUBLIC**  
**IX\_STATUS ixAtmdAccTxVcTryDisconnect** (**ixAtmConnId** connId)  
*Disconnect from a Aal Pdu transmit service for a particular port/vpi/vci.*

---

## Detailed Description

The public API for the IXP400 Atm Driver Data component.

ixAtmdAcc is the low level interface by which AAL0/AAL5 and OAM data gets transmitted to, and received from the Utopia bus.

For AAL0/AAL5 services transmit and receive connections may be established independently for unique combinations of port, VPI, and VCI.

Two AAL0 services supporting 48 or 52 byte cell data are provided. Submitted AAL0 PDUs must be a multiple of the cell data size (48/52). AAL0\_52 is a raw cell service the client must format the PDU with an ATM cell header (excluding HEC) at the start of each cell, note that AtmdAcc does not validate the cell headers in a submitted PDU.

OAM cells cannot be received over the AAL0 service but instead are received over a dedicated OAM service.

For the OAM service an "OAM Tx channel" may be enabled for a port by establishing a single dedicated OAM Tx connection on that port. A single "OAM Rx channel" for all ports may be enabled by establishing a dedicated OAM Rx connection.

The OAM service allows buffers containing 52 byte OAM F4/F5 cells to be transmitted and received over the dedicated OAM channels. HEC is appended/removed, and CRC-10 performed by the NPE. The OAM service offered by AtmdAcc is a raw cell transport service. It is assumed that ITU I.610 procedures that make use of this service are implemented above AtmdAcc.

Note that the dedicated OAM connections are established on reserved VPI, VCI, and (in the case of Rx) port values defined below. These values are used purely to discriminate the dedicated OAM channels and do not identify a particular OAM F4/F5 flow. F4/F5 flows may be realised for particular VPI/VCIs by manipulating the VPI, VCI fields of the ATM cell headers of cells in the buffers passed to AtmdAcc. Note that AtmdAcc does not validate the cell headers in a submitted OAM PDU.

This part is related to the User datapath processing

---

# Define Documentation

```
#define IX_ATMDACC_BUSY
```

Busy return code.

This constant is used to tell IxAtmDACC user that the request is correct, but cannot be processed because the IxAtmAcc resources are already used. The user has to retry its request later

Definition at line **107** of file **IxAtmdAcc.h**.

```
#define IX_ATMDACC_DEFAULT_REPLENISH_COUNT
```

Default resources usage for RxVcFree replenish mechanism.

This constant is used to tell IxAtmDACC to allocate and use the minimum of resources for rx free replenish.

*See also:*

**ixAtmdAccRxVcConnect**

Definition at line **138** of file **IxAtmdAcc.h**.

```
#define IX_ATMDACC_OAM_RX_PORT
```

The reserved dummy PORT used for all dedicated OAM Rx connections. Note that this is not a real port but must have a value that lies within the valid range of port values.

Definition at line **179** of file **IxAtmdAcc.h**.

```
#define IX_ATMDACC_OAM_RX_VCI
```

The reserved value value used for the dedicated OAM Rx connection. This value should be chosen so that it does not coincide with the VCI value used in an AAL0/AAL5 connection. Any attempt to connect a service type other than OAM on this VCI will fail.

Definition at line **203** of file **IxAtmdAcc.h**.

```
#define IX_ATMDACC_OAM_RX_VPI
```

The reserved value value used for the dedicated OAM Rx connection. This value should be chosen so that it does not coincide with the VPI value used in an AAL0/AAL5 connection. Any attempt to connect a service type other than OAM on this VPI will fail.

Definition at line **191** of file **IxAtmdAcc.h**.

```
#define IX_ATMDACC_OAM_TX_VCI
```

The reserved value used for the dedicated OAM Tx connection. This "well known" value is used by atmDAcc and its clients to discriminate the OAM channel, and should be chosen so that it does not coincide with the VCI value used in an AAL0/AAL5 connection. Any attempt to connect a service type other than OAM on this VCI will fail.

Definition at line **167** of file **IxAtmdAcc.h**.

```
#define IX_ATMDACC_OAM_TX_VPI
```

The reserved value used for the dedicated OAM Tx connection. This "well known" value is used by atmDAcc and its clients to discriminate the OAM channel, and should be chosen so that it does not coincide with the VPI value used in an AAL0/AAL5 connection. Any attempt to connect a service type other than OAM on this VPI will fail.

Definition at line **154** of file **IxAtmdAcc.h**.

```
#define IX_ATMDACC_RESOURCES_STILL_ALLOCATED
```

Disconnect return code.

This constant is used to tell IxAtmDAcc user that the disconnect functions are not complete because the resources used by the driver are not yet released. The user has to retry the disconnect call later.

Definition at line **123** of file **IxAtmdAcc.h**.

```
#define IX_ATMDACC_WARNING
```

Warning return code.

This constant is used to tell IxAtmDAcc user about a special case.

Definition at line **92** of file **IxAtmdAcc.h**.

---

## Typedef Documentation

```
typedef void(* IxAtmdAccRxVcFreeLowCallback)(IxAtmdAccUserId userId)
```

Callback prototype for free buffer level is low.

IxAtmdAccRxVcFreeLowCallback is the prototype of the user function which get called on a per-VC basis, when more mbufs are needed to continue the ATM data reception. This function is likely to supply more available mbufs by one or many calls to the replenish function ***ixAtmdAccRxVcFreeReplenish()***



This function is called when the number of available buffers for reception is going under the threshold level as defined in *ixAtmdAccRxVcFreeLowCallbackRegister()*

This function is called inside an Qmgr dispatch context. No system resource or interrupt–unsafe feature should be used inside this callback.

*See also:*

**ixAtmdAccRxVcFreeLowCallbackRegister**

**IxAtmdAccRxVcFreeLowCallback**

**ixAtmdAccRxVcFreeReplenish**

**ixAtmdAccRxVcFreeEntriesQuery**

**ixAtmdAccRxVcConnect**

*Parameters:*

*userId* **IxAtmdAccUserId** [in] – user Id provided in the call to *ixAtmdAccRxVcConnect()*

*Returns:*

None

Definition at line **372** of file **IxAtmdAcc.h**.

```
typedef void(* IxAtmdAccRxVcRxCallback)(IxAtmLogicalPort port, IxAtmdAccUserId userId,
IxAtmdAccPduStatus status, IxAtmdAccClpStatus clp, IX_OSAL_MBUF * mbufPtr)
```

Rx callback prototype.

IxAtmdAccRxVcRxCallback is the prototype of the Rx callback user function called once per PDU to pass a receive Pdu to a user on a particular connection. The callback is likely to push the mbufs to a protocol layer, and recycle the mbufs for a further use.

*Note:*

–This function is called ONLY in the context of the *ixAtmdAccRxDispatch()* function

*See also:*

**ixAtmdAccRxDispatch**

**ixAtmdAccRxVcConnect**

*Parameters:*

*port* **IxAtmLogicalPort** [in] – the port on which this PDU was received a logical PHY port [IX\_UTOPIA\_PORT\_0 .. IX\_UTOPIA\_MAX\_PORTS – 1]

*userId* **IxAtmdAccUserId** [in] – user Id provided in the call to *ixAtmdAccRxVcConnect()*

*status* **IxAtmdAccPduStatus** [in] – an indication about the PDU validity. In the case of AAL0 the only possible value is AAL0\_VALID, in this case the client may optionally determine that an rx timeout occurred by checking if the mbuf is completely or only

partially filled, the later case indicating a timeout. In the case of OAM the only possible value is OAM valid. The status is set to `IX_ATMDACC_MBUF_RETURN` when the mbuf is released during a disconnect process.

- clp*      **IxAtmdAccClpStatus** [in] – clp indication for this PDU. For AAL5/AAL0\_48 this information is set if the clp bit of any rx cell is set For AAL0–52/OAM the client may inspect the CLP in individual cell headers in the PDU, and this parameter is set to 0.
- \*mbufPtr* [in] – depending on the servive type a pointer to an mbuf (AAL5/AAL0/OAM) or mbuf chain (AAL5 only), that comprises the complete PDU data.

This parameter is guaranteed not to be a null pointer.

Definition at line **334** of file **IxAtmdAcc.h**.

```
typedef void(* IxAtmdAccTxVcBufferReturnCallback)(IxAtmdAccUserId userId, IX_OSAL_MBUF *
mbufPtr)
```

Buffer callback prototype.

This function is called to relinquish ownership of a transmitted buffer chain to the user.

**Note:**

–In the case of a chained mbuf the AmtdAcc component can chain many user buffers together and pass ownership to the user in one function call.

**Parameters:**

- userId*    **IxAtmdAccUserId** [in] – user If provided at registration of this callback.
- mbufPtr* [in] – a pointer to mbufs or chain of mbufs and is guaranteed not to be a null pointer.

Definition at line **397** of file **IxAtmdAcc.h**.

**IxAtmdAccUserId**

User-supplied Id.

IxAtmdAccUserId is passed through callbacks and allows the IxAtmdAcc user to identify the source of a call back. The range of this user-owned Id is  $[0...2^{32}-1]$ .

The user provides this own Ids on a per-channel basis as a parameter in a call to *ixAtmdAccRxVcConnect()* or *ixAtmdAccRxVcConnect()*

**See also:**

**ixAtmdAccRxVcConnect**

**ixAtmdAccTxVcConnect**

Definition at line **286** of file **IxAtmdAcc.h**.

# Enumeration Type Documentation

## enum IxAtmdAccAalType

IxAtmdAcc AAL Service Type :.

IxAtmdAccAalType defines the type of traffic to run on this VC

### **Enumeration values:**

<i>IX_ATMDACC_AAL5</i>	ITU-T AAL5.
<i>IX_ATMDACC_AAL2</i>	ITU-T AAL2 <b>reserved</b> for future use.
<i>IX_ATMDACC_AAL0_48</i>	AAL0 48 byte payloads (cell header is added by NPE).
<i>IX_ATMDACC_AAL0_52</i>	AAL0 52 byte cell data (HEC is added by NPE).
<i>IX_ATMDACC_OAM</i>	OAM cell transport service (HEC is added by NPE).
<i>IX_ATMDACC_MAX_SERVICE_TYPE</i>	not a service, used for parameter validation

Definition at line **241** of file **IxAtmdAcc.h**.

## enum IxAtmdAccClpStatus

IxAtmdAcc CLP indication.

IxAtmdAccClpStatus defines the CLP status of the current PDU

### **Enumeration values:**

<i>IX_ATMDACC_CLP_NOT_SET</i>	CLP indication is not set.
<i>IX_ATMDACC_CLP_SET</i>	CLP indication is set.

Definition at line **262** of file **IxAtmdAcc.h**.

## enum IxAtmdAccPduStatus

IxAtmdAcc Pdu status :.

IxAtmdAccPduStatus is used during a RX operation to indicate the status of the received PDU

### **Enumeration values:**

<i>IX_ATMDACC_AAL0_VALID</i>	aal0 pdu
<i>IX_ATMDACC_OAM_VALID</i>	OAM pdu.

<i>IX_ATMDACC_AAL2_VALID</i>	aal2 pdu <b>reserved</b> for future use
<i>IX_ATMDACC_AAL5_VALID</i>	aal5 pdu complete and trailer is valid
<i>IX_ATMDACC_AAL5_PARTIAL</i>	aal5 pdu not complete, trailer is missing
<i>IX_ATMDACC_AAL5_CRC_ERROR</i>	aal5 pdu not complete, crc error/length error
<i>IX_ATMDACC_MBUF_RETURN</i>	empty buffer returned to the user

Definition at line **218** of file **IxAtmdAcc.h**.

## Function Documentation

```
ixAtmdAccInit ( void )
```

Initialise the IxAtmdAcc Component.

This function initialise the IxAtmdAcc component. This function shall be called before any other function of the API. Its role is to initialise all internal resources of the IxAtmdAcc component.

The ixQmgr component needs to be initialized prior the use of ***ixAtmdAccInit()***

### Parameters:

*none* Failing to initialize the IxAtmdAcc API before any use of it will result in a failed status. If the specified component is not present, a success status will still be returned, however, a warning indicating the NPE to download to is not present will be issued.

### Returns:

- ◇ **IX\_SUCCESS** initialisation is complete (in case of component not being present, a warning is clearly indicated)
- ◇ **IX\_FAIL** unable to process this request either because this IxAtmdAcc is already initialised or some unspecified error has occurred.

```
ixAtmdAccRxVcConnect ( IxAtmLogicalPort      port,
                      unsigned int             vpi,
                      unsigned int             vci,
                      IxAtmdAccAalType        aalServiceType,
                      IxAtmRxQueueId          rxQueueId,
                      IxAtmdAccUserId         userCallbackId,
                      IxAtmdAccRxVcRxCallback rxCallback,
                      unsigned int             minimumReplenishCount,
                      IxAtmConnId *          connIdPtr,
                      IxAtmNpeRxVcId *       npeVcIdPtr
                      )
```

Connect to a Aal Pdu receive service for a particular port/vpi/vci, and service type.

This function allows a user to connect to an Aal5/Aal0/OAM Pdu receive service for a particular port/vpi/vci. It registers the callback and allocates internal resources and a Connection Id to be used in further API calls related to this VCC.

The function will setup VC receive service on the specified rx queue.

This function is blocking and makes use internal locks, and hence should not be called from an interrupt context.

On return from ***ixAtmdAccRxVcConnect()*** with a failure status, the connection Id parameter is unspecified. Its value cannot be used. A connId is the reference by which IxAtmdAcc refers to a connected VC. This identifier is the result of a succesful call to a connect function. This identifier is invalid after a sucessful call to a disconnect function.

Calling this function for the same combination of Vpi, Vci and more than once without calling ***ixAtmdAccRxVcTryDisconnect()*** will result in a failure status.

If this function returns success the user should supply receive buffers by calling ***ixAtmdAccRxVcFreeReplenish()*** and then call ***ixAtmdAccRxVcEnable()*** to begin receiving pdus.

There is a choice of two receive Qs on which the VC pdus could be receive. The user must associate the VC with one of these. Essentially having two qs allows more flexible system configuration such as have high prioriy traffic on one q (e.g. voice) and low priority traffic on the other (e.g. data). The high priority Q could be serviced in preference to the low priority Q. One queue may be configured to be serviced as soon as there is traffic, the other queue may be configured to be serviced by a polling mechanism running at idle time.

Two AAL0 services supporting 48 or 52 byte cell data are provided. Received AAL0 PDUs will be be a multiple of the cell data size (48/52). AAL0\_52 is a raw cell service and includes an ATM cell header (excluding HEC) at the start of each cell.

A single "OAM Rx channel" for all ports may be enabled by establishing a dedicated OAM Rx connection.

The OAM service allows buffers containing 52 byte OAM F4/F5 cells to be transmitted and received over the dedicated OAM channels. HEC is appended/removed, and CRC-10 performed by the NPE. The OAM service offered by AtmdAcc is a raw cell transport service. It is assumed that ITU I.610 procedures that make use of this service are implemented above AtmdAcc.

Note that the dedicated OAM connections are established on reserved VPI,VCI, and (in the case of Rx) port values. These values are used purely to descriminate the dedicated OAM channels and do not identify a particular OAM F4/F5 flow. F4/F5 flows may be realised for particluar VPI/VCIs by manipulating the VPI,VCI fields of the ATM cell headers of cells in the buffers passed to AtmdAcc.

Calling this function prior to enable the port will fail.

*See also:*

***ixAtmdAccRxDispatch***

***ixAtmdAccRxVcEnable***

**ixAtmdAccRxVcDisable**

**ixAtmdAccRxVcTryDisconnect**

**ixAtmdAccPortEnable**

**Parameters:**

<i>port</i>	<b>IxAtmLogicalPort</b> [in] – VC identification : logical PHY port [IX_UTOPIA_PORT_0 .. IX_UTOPIA_MAX_PORTS – 1]
<i>vpi</i>	unsigned int [in] – VC identification : ATM Vpi [0..255] or IX_ATMDACC_OAM_VPI
<i>vci</i>	unsigned int [in] – VC identification : ATM Vci [0..65535] or IX_ATMDACC_OAM_VCI
<i>aalServiceType</i>	<b>IxAtmdAccAalType</b> [in] – type of service: AAL5, AAL0_48, AAL0_52, or OAM
<i>rxQueueId</i>	<b>IxAtmRxQueueId</b> [in] – this identifies which of two Qs the VC should use when incoming traffic is processed
<i>userCallbackId</i>	<b>IxAtmdAccUserId</b> [in] – user Id used later as a parameter to the supplied rxCallback.
<i>rxCallback</i>	[in] – function called when mbufs are received. This parameter cannot be a null pointer.
<i>bufferFreeCallback</i>	[in] – function to be called to return ownership of buffers to IxAtmdAcc user.
<i>minimumReplenishCount</i>	unsigned int [in] – For AAL5/AAL0 the number of free mbufs to be used with this channel. Use a high number when the expected traffic rate on this channel is high, or when the user's mbufs are small, or when the RxVcFreeLow Notification has to be invoked less often. When this value is IX_ATMDACC_DEFAULT_REPLENISH_COUNT, the minimum of resources will be used. Depending on traffic rate, pdu size and mbuf size, rxfree queue size, polling/interrupt rate, this value may require to be replaced by a different value in the range 1–128 For OAM the rxFree queue size is fixed by atmdAcc and this parameter is ignored.
<i>connIdPtr</i>	<b>IxAtmConnId</b> [out] – pointer to a connection Id This parameter cannot be a null pointer.
<i>npeVcIdPtr</i>	<b>IxAtmNpeRxVcId</b> [out] – pointer to an npe Vc Id This parameter cannot be a null pointer.

**Returns:**

- ◇ IX\_SUCCESS successful call to IxAtmdAccRxVcConnect
- ◇ IX\_ATMDACC\_BUSY cannot process this request : no VC is available
- ◇ IX\_FAIL parameter error, VC already in use, attempt to connect AAL service on reserved OAM VPI/VCI, attempt to connect OAM service on VPI/VCI other than the reserved OAM VPI/VCI, port is not initialised, or some other error occurs during processing.

ixAtmdAccRxVcDisable ( **IxAtmConnId** *connId* )

Stop the RX service on a VC.

This functions stops the traffic reception for a particular VC connection.

Once invoked, incoming Pdus are discarded by the hardware. Any Pdus pending will be freed to the user

Hence once this function returns no more receive callbacks will be called for that VC. However, buffer free callbacks will be invoked until such time as all buffers supplied by the user have been freed back to the user

Calling this function doe not invalidate the connId. ***ixAtmdAccRxVcEnable()*** can be invoked to enable Pdu reception again.

If the traffic is already stopped, this function returns IX\_SUCCESS.

This function is not reentrant and should not be used inside an interrupt context.

*See also:*

***ixAtmdAccRxVcConnect***

***ixAtmdAccRxVcEnable***

***ixAtmdAccRxVcDisable***

***Parameters:***

*connId* ***IxAtmConnId*** [in] – connection Id as resulted from a succesfull call to *IxAtmdAccRxVcConnect()*

***Returns:***

- ◇ IX\_SUCCESS successful call to ***ixAtmdAccRxVcDisable()***.
- ◇ IX\_ATMDACC\_WARNING the channel is already disabled
- ◇ IX\_FAIL invalid parameters or some unspecified internal error occurred

```
ixAtmdAccRxVcEnable ( IxAtmConnId connId )
```

Start the RX service on a VC.

This functions kicks–off the traffic reception for a particular VC. Once invoked, incoming PDUs will be made available by the hardware and are eventually directed to the ***IxAtmdAccRxVcRxCallback()*** callback registered for the connection.

If the traffic is already running, this function returns IX\_SUCCESS. This function can be invoked many times.

IxAtmdAccRxVcFreeLowCallback event will occur only after ***ixAtmdAccRxVcEnable()*** function is invoked.

Before using this function, the ***ixAtmdAccRxVcFreeReplenish()*** function has to be used to replenish the

RX Free queue. If not, incoming traffic may be discarded. and in the case of interrupt driven reception the ***IxAtmdAccRxVcFreeLowCallback()*** callback may be invoked as a side effect during a replenish action.

This function is not reentrant and should not be used inside an interrupt context.

For an VC connection this function can be called after a call to ***ixAtmdAccRxVcDisable()*** and should not be called after ***ixAtmdAccRxVcTryDisconnect()***

***See also:***

***ixAtmdAccRxVcDisable***

***ixAtmdAccRxVcConnect***

***ixAtmdAccRxVcFreeReplenish***

***Parameters:***

*connId* ***IxAtmConnId*** [in] – connection Id as resulted from a succesfull call to ***IxAtmdAccRxVcConnect()***

***Returns:***

◇ IX\_SUCCESS successful call to ixAtmdAccRxVcEnable

◇ IX\_ATMDACC\_WARNING the channel is already enabled

◇ IX\_FAIL invalid parameters or some unspecified internal error occurred.

```
ixAtmdAccRxVcFreeEntriesQuery ( IxAtmConnId connId,  
                                unsigned int * numberOfMbufsPtr  
                                )
```

Get the number of rx mbufs the system can accept to replenish the the rx reception mechanism on a particular channel.

The ixAtmdAccRxVcFreeEntriesQuery function is used to retrieve the current number of available mbuf entries for reception, on a per-VC basis. This function can be used to know the number of mbufs which can be provided using ***ixAtmdAccRxVcFreeReplenish()***.

This function can be used from a timer context, or can be associated with a threshold event, or can be used inside an active polling mechanism which is under user control.

This function is reentrant and does not use system resources and can be invoked from an interrupt context.

***Parameters:***

*connId* ***IxAtmConnId*** [in] – connection Id as resulted from a succesfull call to ***IxAtmdAccRxVcConnect()***

*numberOfMbufsPtr* unsigned int [out] – Pointer to the number of available entries. . This parameter cannot be a null pointer.

***Returns:***



◇ IX\_SUCCESS the current number of mbufs not yet used for incoming traffic

◇ IX\_FAIL invalid parameter

*See also:*

**ixAtmdAccRxVcFreeReplenish**

```
ixAtmdAccRxVcFreeLowCallbackRegister ( IxAtmConnId                connId,  
                                         unsigned int                numberOfMbufs,  
                                         IxAtmdAccRxVcFreeLowCallback callback  
                                         )
```

Configure the RX Free threshold value and register a callback to handle threshold notifications.

The function `ixAtmdAccRxVcFreeLowCallbackRegister` sets the threshold value for a particular RX VC. When the number of buffers reaches this threshold the callback is invoked.

This function should be called once per VC before RX traffic is enabled. This function will fail if the current level of the free buffers is equal or less than the threshold value.

*See also:*

**ixAtmdAccRxVcFreeLowCallbackRegister**

**IxAtmdAccRxVcFreeLowCallback**

**ixAtmdAccRxVcFreeReplenish**

**ixAtmdAccRxVcFreeEntriesQuery**

**ixAtmdAccRxVcConnect**

**Parameters:**

<i>connId</i>	<b>IxAtmConnId</b> [in] – connection Id as resulted from a successful call to <code>IxAtmdAccRxVcConnect()</code>
<i>numberOfMbufs</i>	unsigned int [in] – threshold number of buffers. This number has to be a power of 2, one of the values 0,1,2,4,8,16,32.... The maximum value cannot be more than half of the rxFree queue size (which can be retrieved using <code>ixAtmdAccRxVcFreeEntriesQuery()</code> before any use of the <code>ixAtmdAccRxVcFreeReplenish()</code> function)
<i>callback</i>	<b>IxAtmdAccRxVcFreeLowCallback</b> [in] – function telling the user that the number of free buffers has reduced to the threshold value.

**Returns:**

◇ IX\_SUCCESS Threshold set successfully.

◇ IX\_FAIL parameter error or the current number of free buffers is less than or equal to the threshold supplied or some unspecified error has occurred.

**Note:**

- the callback will be called when the threshold level will drop from exactly (numberOfMbufs + 1) to (numberOfMbufs).

```
ixAtmdAccRxVcFreeReplenish ( IxAtmConnId      connId,  
                             IX_OSAL_MBUF * mbufPtr  
                             )
```

Provide free mbufs for data reception on a connection.

This function provides mbufs for data reception by the hardware. This function needs to be called by the user on a regular basis to ensure no packet loss. Providing free buffers is a connection-based feature; each connection can have different requirements in terms of buffer size number of buffers, recycling rate. This function could be invoked from within the context of a ***IxAtmdAccRxVcFreeLowCallback()*** callback for a particular VC

Mbufs provided through this function call can be chained. They will be unchained internally. A call to this function with chained mbufs or multiple calls with unchained mbufs are equivalent, but calls with unchained mbufs are more efficient.

Mbufs provided to this interface need to be able to hold at least one full cell payload (48/52 bytes, depending on service type). Chained buffers with a size less than the size supported by the hardware will be returned through the rx callback provided during the connect step.

Failing to invoke this function prior to enabling the RX traffic can result in packet loss.

This function is not reentrant for the same connId.

This function does not use system resources and can be invoked from an interrupt context.

**Note:**

- Over replenish is detected, and extra mbufs are returned through the rx callback provided during the connect step.
- Mbuf provided to the replenish function should have a length greater or equal to 48/52 bytes according to service type.
- The memory cache of mMbuf payload should be invalidated prior to Mbuf submission. Flushing the Mbuf headers is handled by IxAtmdAcc.
- When a chained mbuf is provided, this function process the mbufs up to the hardware limit and invokes the user-supplied callback to release extra buffers.

**See also:**

**ixAtmdAccRxVcFreeLowCallbackRegister**

**IxAtmdAccRxVcFreeLowCallback**

**ixAtmdAccRxVcConnect**

**Parameters:**

*connId* **IxAtmConnId** [in] – connection Id as returned from a successful call to *IxAtmdAccRxVcConnect()*  
*mbufPtr* [in] – pointer to a mbuf structure to be used for data reception. The mbuf pointed to by this parameter can be chained to an other mbuf.

**Returns:**

- ◇ IX\_SUCCESS successful call to *ixAtmdAccRxVcFreeReplenish()* and the mbuf is now ready to use for incoming traffic.
- ◇ IX\_ATMDACC\_BUSY cannot process this request because the max number of outstanding free buffers has been reached or the internal resources have exhausted for this VC. The user is responsible for retrying this request later.
- ◇ IX\_FAIL cannot process this request because of parameter errors or some unspecified internal error has occurred.

**Note:**

- It is not always guaranteed the replenish step to be as fast as the hardware is consuming Rx Free mbufs. There is nothing in *IxAtmdAcc* to guarantee that replenish reaches the rxFree threshold level. If the threshold level is not reached, the next rxFree low notification for this channel will not be triggered. The preferred ways to replenish can be as follows (depending on applications and implementations) :
  - ◇ Replenish in a rxFree low notification until the function *ixAtmdAccRxVcFreeReplenish()* returns IX\_ATMDACC\_BUSY
  - ◇ Query the queue level using

**See also:**

- ixAtmdAccRxVcFreeEntriesQuery*, then , replenish using *ixAtmdAccRxVcFreeReplenish()*, then query the queue level again, and replenish if the threshold is still not reached.
  - ◇ Trigger replenish from an other event source and use rxFree starvation to throttle the Rx traffic.

*ixAtmdAccRxVcTryDisconnect* ( **IxAtmConnId** *connId* )

Disconnect a VC from the RX service.

This function deregisters the VC and guarantees that all resources associated with this VC are free. After its execution, the connection Id is not available.

This function will fail until such time as all resources allocated to the VC connection have been freed. The user is responsible to delay and call again this function many times until a success status is returned.

This function needs internal locks and should not be called from an interrupt context

**Parameters:**

*connId* **IxAtmConnId** [in] – connection Id as resulted from a successful call to *IxAtmdAccRxVcConnect()*

**Returns:**

- ◇ IX\_SUCCESS successful call to ixAtmdAccRxVcDisable
- ◇ IX\_ATMDACC\_RESOURCES\_STILL\_ALLOCATED not all resources associated with the connection have been freed.
- ◇ IX\_FAIL cannot process this request because of a parameter error

**ixAtmdAccShow ( void )**

Show IxAtmdAcc configuration on a per port basis.

**Parameters:**

*none*

**Returns:**

*none*

**Note:**

- Display use printf() and are redirected to stdout

**ixAtmdAccStatsReset ( void )**

Reset all IxAtmdAcc stats.

**Parameters:**

*none*

**Returns:**

*none*

**ixAtmdAccStatsShow ( void )**

Show all IxAtmdAcc stats.

**Parameters:**

*none*

**Returns:**

*none*

**Note:**

- Stats display use printf() and are redirected to stdout

```

ixAtmdAccTxVcConnect ( IxAtmLogicalPort                port,
                        unsigned int                      vpi,
                        unsigned int                      vci,
                        IxAtmdAccAalType                aalServiceType,
                        IxAtmdAccUserId                userId,
                        IxAtmdAccTxVcBufferReturnCallback bufferFreeCallback,
                        IxAtmConnId *                  connIdPtr
                        )

```

Connect to a Aal Pdu transmit service for a particular port/vpi/vci and service type.

This function allows a user to connect to an Aal5/Aal0/OAM Pdu transmit service for a particular port/vpi/vci. It registers the callback and allocates internal resources and a Connection Id to be used in further API calls related to this VC.

The function will setup VC transmit service on the specified on the specified port. A connId is the reference by which IxAtmdAcc refers to a connected VC. This identifier is the result of a succesful call to a connect function. This identifier is invalid after a sucessful call to a disconnect function.

This function needs internal locks, and hence should not be called from an interrupt context.

On return from **ixAtmdAccTxVcConnect()** with a failure status, the connection Id parameter is unspecified. Its value cannot be used.

Calling this function for the same combination of port, Vpi, Vci and more than once without calling **ixAtmdAccTxVcTryDisconnect()** will result in a failure status.

Two AAL0 services supporting 48 or 52 byte cell data are provided. Submitted AAL0 PDUs must be a multiple of the cell data size (48/52). AAL0\_52 is a raw cell service the client must format the PDU with an ATM cell header (excluding HEC) at the start of each cell, note that AtmdAcc does not validate the cell headers in a submitted PDU.

For the OAM service an "OAM Tx channel" may be enabled for a port by establishing a single dedicated OAM Tx connection on that port.

The OAM service allows buffers containing 52 byte OAM F4/F5 cells to be transmitted and received over the dedicated OAM channels. HEC is appended/removed, and CRC-10 performed by the NPE. The OAM service offered by AtmdAcc is a raw cell transport service. It is assumed that ITU I.610 procedures that make use of this service are implemented above AtmdAcc.

Note that the dedicated OAM connections are established on reserved VPI,VCI, and (in the case of Rx) port values. These values are used purely to descriminate the dedicated OAM channels and do not identify a particular OAM F4/F5 flow. F4/F5 flows may be realised for particluar VPI/VCI by manipulating the VPI,VCI fields of the ATM cell headers of cells in the buffers passed to AtmdAcc.

Calling this function before enabling the port will fail.

*See also:*

**ixAtmdAccTxVcTryDisconnect**

## **ixAtmdAccPortTxScheduledModeEnable**

## **ixAtmdAccPortEnable**

### **Parameters:**

<i>port</i>	<b>IxAtmLogicalPort</b> [in] – VC identification : logical PHY port [IX_UTOPIA_PORT_0 .. IX_UTOPIA_MAX_PORTS – 1]
<i>vpi</i>	unsigned int [in] – VC identification : ATM Vpi [0..255] or IX_ATMDACC_OAM_VPI
<i>vci</i>	unsigned int [in] – VC identification : ATM Vci [0..65535] or IX_ATMDACC_OAM_VCI
<i>aalServiceType</i>	<b>IxAtmdAccAalType</b> [in] – type of service AAL5, AAL0_48, AAL0_52, or OAM
<i>userId</i>	<b>IxAtmdAccUserId</b> [in] – user id to be used later during callbacks related to this channel
<i>bufferFreeCallback</i>	<b>IxAtmdAccTxVcBufferReturnCallback</b> [in] – function called when mbufs transmission is complete. This parameter cannot be a null pointer.
<i>connIdPtr</i>	<b>IxAtmConnId</b> [out] – Pointer to a connection Id. This parameter cannot be a null pointer.

### **Returns:**

- ◇ IX\_SUCCESS successful call to *IxAtmdAccRxVcConnect()*.
- ◇ IX\_ATMDACC\_BUSY cannot process this request because no VC is available
- ◇ IX\_FAIL parameter error, VC already in use, attempt to connect AAL service on reserved OAM VPI/VCI, attempt to connect OAM service on VPI/VCI other than the reserved OAM VPI/VCI, port is not initialised, or some other error occurs during processing.

```
ixAtmdAccTxVcPduSubmit ( IxAtmConnId      connId,  
                        IX_OSAL_MBUF * mbufPtr,  
                        IxAtmdAccClpStatus clp,  
                        unsigned int      numberOfCells  
                        )
```

Submit a Pdu for transmission on connection.

A data user calls this function to submit an mbufs containing a Pdu to be transmitted. The buffer supplied can be chained and the Pdu it contains must be complete.

The transmission behavior of this call depends on the operational mode of the port on which the connection is made.

In unscheduled mode the mbuf will be submitted to the hardware immediately if sufficient resource is available. Otherwise the function will return failure.

In scheduled mode the buffer is queued internally in IxAtmdAcc. The cell demand is made known to the traffic shaping entity. Cells from the buffers are MUXed onto the port some time later as dictated by the traffic shaping entity. The traffic shaping entity does this by sending transmit schedules to IxAtmdAcc via

***ixAtmdAccPortTxProcess()*** function call.

Note that the dedicated OAM channel is scheduled just like any other channel. This means that any OAM traffic relating to an active AAL0/AAL5 connection will be scheduled independantly of the AAL0/AAL5 traffic for that connection.

When transmission is complete, the TX Done mechanism will give the ownnership of these buffers back to the customer. The tx done mechanism must be in operation before transmission is attempted.

For AAL0/OAM submitted AAL0 PDUs must be a multiple of the cell data size (48/52). AAL0\_52 and OAM are raw cell services, and the client must format the PDU with an ATM cell header (excluding HEC) at the start of each cell, note that AtmdAcc does not validate the cell headers in a submitted PDU.

***See also:***

***ixAtmdAccTxVcBufferReturnCallback***

***ixAtmdAccTxDoneDispatch***

***Parameters:***

<i>connId</i>	<b><i>ixAtmConnId</i></b> [in] – connection Id as resulted from a succesfull call to <b><i>ixAtmdAccTxVcConnect()</i></b>
<i>mbufPtr</i>	[in] – pointer to a chained structure of mbufs to transmit. This parameter cannot be a null pointer.
<i>clp</i>	<b><i>ixAtmdAccClpStatus</i></b> [in] – clp indication for this PDU. All cells of this pdu will be sent with the clp bit set
<i>numberOfCells</i>	unsigned int [in] – number of cells in the PDU.

***Returns:***

- ◇ IX\_SUCCESS successful call to ***ixAtmdAccTxVcPduSubmit()*** The pdu pointed by the mbufPtr parameter will be transmitted
- ◇ IX\_ATMDACC\_BUSY unable to process this request because internal resources are all used. The caller is responsible for retrying this request later.
- ◇ IX\_FAIL unable to process this request because of error in the parameters (wrong connId supplied, or wrong mbuf pointer supplied), the total length of all buffers in the chain should be a multiple of the cell size ( 48/52 depending on the service type ), or unspecified error during processing

***Note:***

- This function in not re–entrant for the same VC (e.g. : two thread cannot send PDUs for the same VC). But two threads can safely call this function with a different connection Id
- In unscheduled mode, this function is not re–entrant on a per port basis. The size of pdus is limited to 8Kb.
- 0–length mbufs should be removed from the chain before submission. The total length of the pdu (sdu + padding +trailer) has to be updated in the header of the first mbuf of a chain of mbufs.
- Aal5 trailer information (UUI, CPI, SDU length) has to be supplied before submission.

- The payload memory cache should be flushed, if needed, prior to transmission. Mbuf headers are flushed by `IxAtmdAcc`
- This function does not use system resources and can be used inside an interrupt context

`ixAtmdAccTxVcTryDisconnect ( IxAtmConnId connId )`

Disconnect from a Aal Pdu transmit service for a particular port/vpi/vci.

This function deregisters the VC and guarantees that all resources associated with this VC are free. After its execution, the connection Id is not available.

This function will fail until such time as all resources allocated to the VC connection have been freed. The user is responsible to delay and call again this function many times until a success status is returned.

After its execution, the connection Id is not available.

**Parameters:**

*connId* **IxAtmConnId** [in] – connection Id as resulted from a successful call to `ixAtmdAccTxVcConnect()`

**Returns:**

- ◇ `IX_SUCCESS` successful call to `ixAtmdAccTxVcTryDisconnect()`
- ◇ `IX_ATMDACC_RESOURCES_STILL_ALLOCATED` not all resources associated with the connection have been freed. This condition will disappear after Tx and TxDone is complete for this channel.
- ◇ `IX_FAIL` unable to process this request because of errors in the parameters (wrong *connId* supplied)

**Note:**

- This function needs internal locks and should not be called from an interrupt context
- If the `IX_ATMDACC_RESOURCES_STILL_ALLOCATED` error does not clear after a while, this may be linked to a previous problem of cell overscheduling. Disabling the port and retry a disconnect will free the resources associated with this channel.

**See also:**

**ixAtmdAccPortTxProcess**

`ixAtmdAccUninit ( void )`

Uninitialise the `IxAtmdAcc` Component.

This function uninitialises the `IxAtmdAcc` component. Its role is to uninitialise all internal resources of the `IxAtmdAcc` component. It de-allocates all the buffers allocated during initialization and also destroys the mutex taken. This should be the last function to be called to clean up all resources.



***Parameters:***

*none*

***Returns:***

- ◇ IX\_SUCCESS uninitialisation is complete
- ◇ IX\_FAIL unable to process this request either because this IxAtmdAcc is already uninitialised or some unspecified error has occurred.

# Intel (R) IXP400 Software ATM Driver Access (IxAtmdAcc) Control API

The public API for the IXP400 Atm Driver Control component.

## Modules

Intel (R) IXP400 Software ATM Driver Access  
(IxAtmdAcc) Utopia Control API

*The public API for the IXP400 Atm Driver Control component.*

## Defines

#define **IX\_ATMDACC\_PORT\_DISABLE\_IN\_PROGRESS**  
*Port enable return code.*

#define **IX\_ATMDACC\_ALLPDUS**  
*All PDUs.*

## Typedefs

typedef **IxAtmdAccRxDispatcher** )(IxAtmRxQueueId rxQueueId, unsigned int  
IX\_STATUS(\* numberOfPdusToProcess, unsigned int \*reservedPtr)  
*Callback prototype for notification of available PDUs for an Rx Q.*

typedef **IxAtmdAccTxDoneDispatcher** )(unsigned int numberOfPdusToProcess, unsigned int  
IX\_STATUS(\* \*reservedPtr)  
*Callback prototype for transmitted mbuf when threshold level is crossed.*

typedef void(\* **IxAtmdAccPortTxLowCallback** )(IxAtmLogicalPort port, unsigned int  
numberOfAvailableCells)  
*Notification that the threshold number of scheduled cells remains in a port's transmit Q.*

typedef **IxAtmdAccTxVcDemandUpdateCallback** )(IxAtmLogicalPort port, int vcId, unsigned  
IX\_STATUS(\* int numberOfCells)  
*Prototype to submit cells for transmission.*

typedef void(\* **IxAtmdAccTxVcDemandClearCallback** )(IxAtmLogicalPort port, int vcId)  
*prototype to remove all currently queued cells from a registered VC*

typedef **IxAtmdAccTxSchVcIdGetCallback** )(IxAtmLogicalPort port, unsigned int vpi, unsigned  
IX\_STATUS(\* int vci, **IxAtmConnId** connId, int \*vcId)  
*prototype to get a scheduler vc id*

## Functions

**PUBLIC**  
**IX\_STATUS** **IxAtmdAccRxDispatcherRegister** (**IxAtmRxQueueId** queueId,  
IX\_STATUS **IxAtmdAccRxDispatcher** callback)  
*Register a notification callback to be invoked when there is at least one entry on a particular Rx queue.*

**PUBLIC**  
**IX\_STATUS** **IxAtmdAccRxDispatcherUnregister** (**IxAtmRxQueueId** atmdQueueId)  
*UnRegister a notification callback to be invoked when there is at least one entry on a particular Rx queue.*

**PUBLIC****IxAtmdAccRxDispatch** (**IxAtmRxQueueId** rxQueueId, unsigned int  
IX\_STATUS numberOfPdusToProcess, unsigned int \*numberOfPdusProcessedPtr)  
*Control function which executes Rx processing for a particular Rx stream.*

**PUBLIC****IxAtmdAccRxLevelQuery** (**IxAtmRxQueueId** rxQueueId, unsigned int  
IX\_STATUS \*numberOfPdusPtr)  
*Query the number of entries in a particular RX queue.*

**PUBLIC****IxAtmdAccRxQueueSizeQuery** (**IxAtmRxQueueId** rxQueueId, unsigned int  
IX\_STATUS \*numberOfPdusPtr)  
*Query the size of a particular RX queue.*

**PUBLIC****IxAtmdAccPortTxFreeEntriesQuery** (**IxAtmLogicalPort** port, unsigned int  
IX\_STATUS \*numberOfCellsPtr)  
*Get the number of available cells the system can accept for transmission.*

**PUBLIC****IxAtmdAccPortTxCallbackRegister** (**IxAtmLogicalPort** port, unsigned int  
IX\_STATUS numberOfCells, **IxAtmdAccPortTxLowCallback** callback)  
*Configure the Tx port threshold value and register a callback to handle threshold notifications.*

**PUBLIC** void **IxAtmdAccPortTxCallbackUnregister** (**IxAtmLogicalPort** port)  
*Unregister a callback to handle threshold notifications.*

**PUBLIC****IxAtmdAccPortTxScheduledModeEnable** (**IxAtmLogicalPort** port,  
IX\_STATUS **IxAtmdAccTxVcDemandUpdateCallback** vcDemandUpdateCallback,  
**IxAtmdAccTxVcDemandClearCallback** vcDemandClearCallback,  
**IxAtmdAccTxSchVcIdGetCallback** vcIdGetCallback)  
*Put the port into Scheduled Mode.*

**PUBLIC**  
IX\_STATUS **IxAtmdAccPortTxScheduledModeDisable** (**IxAtmLogicalPort** port)  
*Put the port into UnScheduled Mode.*

**PUBLIC****IxAtmdAccPortTxProcess** (**IxAtmLogicalPort** port, **IxAtmScheduleTable**  
IX\_STATUS \*scheduleTablePtr)

*Transmit queue cells to the H/W based on the supplied schedule table.*

**PUBLIC**  
**IX\_STATUS** **ixAtmdAccTxDoneDispatch** (unsigned int numberOfPdsToProcess, unsigned int  
\*numberOfPdsProcessedPtr)

*Process a number of pending transmit done pdus from the hardware.*

**PUBLIC**  
**IX\_STATUS** **ixAtmdAccTxDoneLevelQuery** (unsigned int \*numberOfPdsPtr)  
*Query the current number of transmit pdus ready for recycling.*

**PUBLIC**  
**IX\_STATUS** **ixAtmdAccTxDoneQueueSizeQuery** (unsigned int \*numberOfPdsPtr)  
*Query the TxDone queue size.*

**PUBLIC**  
**IX\_STATUS** **ixAtmdAccTxDoneDispatcherRegister** (unsigned int numberOfPds,  
**IX\_STATUS** **ixAtmdAccTxDoneDispatcher** notificationCallback)  
*Configure the Tx Done stream threshold value and register a callback to handle threshold notifications.*

**PUBLIC** void **ixAtmdAccTxDoneDispatcherUnregister** (void)  
*Unregister a callback to handle threshold notifications.*

**PUBLIC**  
**IX\_STATUS** **ixAtmdAccUtopiaConfigSet** (const **ixAtmdAccUtopiaConfig**  
\*ixAtmdAccUtopiaConfigPtr)  
*Send the configuration structure to the Utopia interface.*

**PUBLIC**  
**IX\_STATUS** **ixAtmdAccUtopiaStatusGet** (**ixAtmdAccUtopiaStatus** \*ixAtmdAccUtopiaStatus)  
*Get the Utopia interface configuration.*

**PUBLIC**  
**IX\_STATUS** **ixAtmdAccPortEnable** (**ixAtmLogicalPort** port)  
*enable a PHY logical port*

**PUBLIC**  
**IX\_STATUS** **ixAtmdAccPortDisable** (**ixAtmLogicalPort** port)  
*disable a PHY logical port*

**PUBLIC** **BOOL** **ixAtmdAccPortDisableComplete** (**ixAtmLogicalPort** port)  
*disable a PHY logical port*

**PUBLIC**  
**IX\_STATUS** **ixAtmdAccUtopiaConfigReset** (const **ixAtmdAccUtopiaConfig** \*utConfig)  
*Reset the configuration structure to the Utopia interface initializes configuration registers and write to NPE-A Load and get response from NPE-A and resets the Utopia interface.*

## Detailed Description

The public API for the IXP400 Atm Driver Control component.

`IxAtmdAcc` is the low level interface by which AAL PDU get transmitted to, and received from the Utopia bus

This part is related to the Control configuration

---

## Define Documentation

```
#define IX_ATMDACC_ALLPDUS
```

All PDUs.

This constant is used to tell `IxAtmdAcc` to process all PDUs from the RX queue or the TX Done

*See also:*

**`IxAtmdAccRxDispatcher`**

**`IxAtmdAccTxDoneDispatcher`**

Definition at line **74** of file **`IxAtmdAccCtrl.h`**.

```
#define IX_ATMDACC_PORT_DISABLE_IN_PROGRESS
```

Port enable return code.

This constant is used to tell `IxAtmdAcc` user that the port disable functions are not complete. The user can call **`ixAtmdAccPortDisableComplete()`** to find out when the disable has finished. The port enable can then proceed.

Definition at line **57** of file **`IxAtmdAccCtrl.h`**.

---

## Typedef Documentation

```
typedef void(* IxAtmdAccPortTxLowCallback)(IxAtmLogicalPort port, unsigned int  
numberOfAvailableCells)
```

Notification that the threshold number of scheduled cells remains in a port's transmit Q.

This is the prototype for the user notification function which gets called on a per-port basis, when the number of remaining scheduled cells to be transmitted decreases to the threshold level. The number of cells passed as a parameter can be used for scheduling purposes as the maximum number of cells that can be passed in a schedule table to the **`ixAtmdAccPortTxProcess()`** function.

*See also:*

**ixAtmdAccPortTxCallbackRegister**

**ixAtmdAccPortTxProcess**

**ixAtmdAccPortTxFreeEntriesQuery**

*Parameters:*

*port*

**IxAtmLogicalPort** [in] – logical PHY port [IX\_UTOPIA\_PORT\_0 .. IX\_UTOPIA\_MAX\_PORTS – 1]

*numberOfAvailableCells* unsigned int [in] – number of available cell entries.for the port

*Note:*

– This functions shall not use system resources when used inside an interrupt context.

Definition at line **188** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

```
typedef IX_STATUS(* IxAtmdAccRxDispatcher)(IxAtmRxQueueId rxQueueId, unsigned int  
numberOfPdusToProcess, unsigned int *reservedPtr)
```

Callback prototype for notification of available PDUs for an Rx Q.

This a prototype for a function which is called when there is at least one Pdu available for processing on a particular Rx Q.

This function should call *ixAtmdAccRxDispatch()* with the appropriate number of parameters to read and process the Rx Q.

*See also:*

**ixAtmdAccRxDispatch**

**ixAtmdAccRxVcConnect**

**ixAtmdAccRxDispatcherRegister**

*Parameters:*

*rxQueueId*

**IxAtmRxQueueId** [in] indicates which RX queue to has Pdus to process.

*numberOfPdusToProcess* unsigned int [in] indicates the minimum number of PDUs available to process all PDUs from the queue.

*reservedPtr*

unsigned int\* [out] pointer to a int location which can be written to, but does not retain written values. This is provided to make this prototype compatible with *ixAtmdAccRxDispatch()*

*Returns:*

◇ int – ignored.

Definition at line **108** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

```
typedef IX_STATUS(* IxAtmdAccTxDoneDispatcher)(unsigned int numberOfPdusToProcess, unsigned int
*reservedPtr)
```

Callback prototype for transmitted mbuf when threshold level is crossed.

*IxAtmdAccTxDoneDispatcher* is the prototype of the user function which get called when pdus are completely transmitted. This function is likely to call the *ixAtmdAccTxDoneDispatch()* function.

This function is called when the number of available pdus for reception is crossing the threshold level as defined in *ixAtmdAccTxDoneDispatcherRegister()*

This function is called inside an Qmgr dispatch context. No system resource or interrupt–unsafe feature should be used inside this callback.

Transmitted buffers recycling implementation is a sytem–wide mechanism and needs to be set before any traffic is started. If this threshold mechanism is not used, the user is responsible for polling the transmitted buffers with *ixAtmdAccTxDoneDispatch()* and *ixAtmdAccTxDoneLevelQuery()* functions.

*See also:*

***ixAtmdAccTxDoneDispatcherRegister***

***ixAtmdAccTxDoneDispatch***

***ixAtmdAccTxDoneLevelQuery***

*Parameters:*

*numberOfPdusToProcess* unsigned int [in] – The current number of pdus currently available for recycling  
*\*reservedPtr* unsigned int [out] – pointer to a int location which can be written to but does not retain written values. This is provided to make this prototype compatible with *ixAtmdAccTxDoneDispatch()*

*Returns:*

- ◇ **IX\_SUCCESS** This is provided to make this prototype compatible with *ixAtmdAccTxDoneDispatch()*
- ◇ **IX\_FAIL** invalid parameters or some unspecified internal error occurred. This is provided to make this prototype compatible with *ixAtmdAccTxDoneDispatch()*

Definition at line **159** of file ***IxAtmdAccCtrl.h***.

```
typedef IX_STATUS(* IxAtmdAccTxSchVcIdGetCallback)(IxAtmLogicalPort port, unsigned int vpi,
unsigned int vci, IxAtmConnId connId, int *vcId)
```

prototype to get a scheduler vc id

*IxAtmdAccTxSchVcIdGetCallback* is the prototype of the function to get a scheduler vcId

*See also:*

**IxAtmdAccTxVcDemandUpdateCallback**

**IxAtmdAccTxVcDemandClearCallback**

**IxAtmdAccTxSchVcIdGetCallback**

**ixAtmdAccPortTxScheduledModeEnable**

**Parameters:**

*port*    **IxAtmLogicalPort** [in] – Specifies the ATM logical port on which the VC is established  
*vpi*    unsigned int [in] – For AAL0/AAL5 specifies the ATM vpi on which the VC is established.  
For OAM specifies the dedicated "OAM Tx channel" VPI.  
*vci*    unsigned int [in] – For AAL0/AAL5 specifies the ATM vci on which the VC is established.  
For OAM specifies the dedicated "OAM Tx channel" VCI.  
*connId* **IxAtmConnId** [in] – specifies the IxAtmdAcc connection Id already associated with this VC  
*vcId*    int\* [out] – pointer to a vcId

**Returns:**

◇ IX\_SUCCESS the function is returning a Scheduler vcId for this VC  
  
◇ IX\_FAIL the function cannot process scheduling for this VC. the contents of vcId is unspecified

Definition at line **288** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

```
typedef void(* IxAtmdAccTxVcDemandClearCallback)(IxAtmLogicalPort port, int vcId)
```

prototype to remove all currently queued cells from a registered VC

IxAtmdAccTxVcDemandClearCallback is the prototype of the function to remove all currently queued cells from a registered VC. The pending cell count for the specified VC is reset to zero. After the use of this callback, the scheduler shall not schedule more cells for this VC.

This callback function is called during a VC disconnection *ixAtmdAccTxVcTryDisconnect()*

**See also:**

**IxAtmdAccTxVcDemandUpdateCallback**

**IxAtmdAccTxVcDemandClearCallback**

**IxAtmdAccTxSchVcIdGetCallback**

**ixAtmdAccPortTxScheduledModeEnable**

**ixAtmdAccTxVcTryDisconnect**

**Parameters:**

*port*



**IxAtmLogicalPort** [in] – Specifies the ATM port on which the VC to be cleared is established

*vcId* int [in] – Identifies the VC to be cleared. This is the value returned by the **IxAtmdAccTxSchVcIdGetCallback()** call .

**Returns:**

none

Definition at line **253** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

```
typedef IX_STATUS(* IxAtmdAccTxVcDemandUpdateCallback)(IxAtmLogicalPort port, int vcId, unsigned int numberOfCells)
```

Prototype to submit cells for transmission.

IxAtmdAccTxVcDemandUpdateCallback is the prototype of the callback function used by AtmD to notify an ATM Scheduler that the user of a VC has submitted cells for transmission.

**See also:**

**IxAtmdAccTxVcDemandUpdateCallback**

**IxAtmdAccTxVcDemandClearCallback**

**IxAtmdAccTxSchVcIdGetCallback**

**ixAtmdAccPortTxScheduledModeEnable**

**Parameters:**

*port* **IxAtmLogicalPort** [in] – Specifies the ATM port on which the VC to be updated is established

*vcId* int [in] – Identifies the VC to be updated. This is the value returned by the **IxAtmdAccTxSchVcIdGetCallback()** call .

*numberOfCells* unsigned int [in] – Indicates how many ATM cells should be added to the queue for this VC.

**Returns:**

◇ IX\_SUCCESS the function is registering the cell demand for this VC.

◇ IX\_FAIL the function cannot register cell for this VC : the scheduler maybe overloaded or misconfigured

Definition at line **219** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

---

## Function Documentation

```
ixAtmdAccPortDisable ( IxAtmLogicalPort port )
```

disable a PHY logical port

This function disable the transmission over one port.

When a port is disabled, the cell transmission to the Utopia interface is stopped.

**Parameters:**

*port* **IxAtmLogicalPort** [in] – logical PHY port [IX\_UTOPIA\_PORT\_0 .. IX\_UTOPIA\_MAX\_PORTS – 1]

**Returns:**

- ◇ IX\_SUCCESS disable is complete
- ◇ IX\_ATMDACC\_WARNING port already disabled
- ◇ IX\_FAIL disable failed, wrong parameter .

**Note:**

- This function needs internal locks and should not be called from an interrupt context
- The response from hardware is done through the txDone mechanism to ensure the synchronisation with tx resources. Therefore, the txDone mechanism needs to be serviced to make a PortDisable complete.

**See also:**

**ixAtmdAccPortEnable**

**ixAtmdAccPortDisableComplete**

**ixAtmdAccTxDoneDispatch**

```
ixAtmdAccPortDisableComplete ( IxAtmLogicalPort port )
```

disable a PHY logical port

This function indicates if the port disable for a port has completed. This function will return TRUE if the port has never been enabled.

**Parameters:**

*port* **IxAtmLogicalPort** [in] – logical PHY port [IX\_UTOPIA\_PORT\_0 .. IX\_UTOPIA\_MAX\_PORTS – 1]

**Returns:**

- ◇ TRUE disable is complete
- ◇ FALSE disable failed, wrong parameter .

**Note:**

- This function needs internal locks and should not be called from an interrupt context

*See also:*

**ixAtmdAccPortEnable**

**ixAtmdAccPortDisable**

```
ixAtmdAccPortEnable ( IxAtmLogicalPort port )
```

enable a PHY logical port

This function enables the transmission over one port. It should be called before accessing any resource from this port and before the establishment of a VC.

When a port is enabled, the cell transmission to the Utopia interface is started. If there is no traffic already running, idle cells are sent over the interface.

This function can be called multiple times.

**Parameters:**

*port* **IxAtmLogicalPort** [in] – logical PHY port [IX\_UTOPIA\_PORT\_0 .. IX\_UTOPIA\_MAX\_PORTS – 1]

**Returns:**

◇ IX\_SUCCESS enable is complete

◇ IX\_ATMDACC\_WARNING port already enabled

◇ IX\_FAIL enable failed, wrong parameter, or cannot initialise this port (the port is maybe already in use, or there is a hardware issue)

**Note:**

– This function needs internal locks and should not be called from an interrupt context

*See also:*

**ixAtmdAccPortDisable**

```
ixAtmdAccPortTxCallbackRegister ( IxAtmLogicalPort port,  
                                unsigned int numberOfCells,  
                                IxAtmdAccPortTxLowCallback callback  
                                )
```

Configure the Tx port threshold value and register a callback to handle threshold notifications.

This function sets the threshold in cells

*See also:*

**ixAtmdAccPortTxCallbackRegister**

**ixAtmdAccPortTxProcess**

## **ixAtmdAccPortTxFreeEntriesQuery**

### **Parameters:**

- port*                **IxAtmLogicalPort** [in] – logical PHY port [*IX\_UTOPIA\_PORT\_0* .. *IX\_UTOPIA\_MAX\_PORTS* – 1]
- numberOfCells* unsigned int [in] – threshold value which triggers the callback invocation, This number has to be one of the values 0,1,2,4,8,16,32 .... The maximum value cannot be more than half of the txVc queue size (which can be retrieved using **ixAtmdAccPortTxFreeEntriesQuery()** before any Tx traffic is sent for this port)
- callback*           **IxAtmdAccPortTxLowCallback** [in] – callback function to invoke when the threshold level is reached. This parameter cannot be a null pointer.

### **Returns:**

- ◇ **IX\_SUCCESS** Successful call to **ixAtmdAccPortTxCallbackRegister()**
- ◇ **IX\_FAIL** error in the parameters, Tx channel already set for this port threshold level is not correct or within the range regarding the queue size:or unspecified error during processing:

### **Note:**

- This callback function get called when the threshold level drops from (numberOfCells+1) cells to (numberOfCells) cells
- This function should be called during system initialisation, outside an interrupt context

```
ixAtmdAccPortTxCallbackUnregister ( IxAtmLogicalPort port )
```

Unregister a callback to handle threshold notifications.

### **Parameters:**

- port*   **IxAtmLogicalPort** [in] – logical PHY port [*IX\_UTOPIA\_PORT\_0* .. *IX\_UTOPIA\_MAX\_PORTS* – 1]

### **Returns:**

- ◇ none

### **Note:**

- This function should be called during system un-initialisation, outside an interrupt context

```
ixAtmdAccPortTxFreeEntriesQuery ( IxAtmLogicalPort port,  
                                unsigned int * numberOfCellsPtr  
                                )
```

Get the number of available cells the system can accept for transmission.

The function is used to retrieve the number of cells that can be queued for transmission to the hardware.

This number is based on the worst schedule table where one cell is stored in one schedule table entry, depending on the pdu size and mbuf size and fragmentation.

This function doesn't use system resources and can be used from a timer context, or can be associated with a threshold event, or can be used inside an active polling mechanism

**Parameters:**

*port*                      **IxAtmLogicalPort** [in] – logical PHY port [*IX\_UTOPIA\_PORT\_0* .. *IX\_UTOPIA\_MAX\_PORTS* – 1]  
*numberOfCellsPtr* unsigned int\* [out] – number of available cells. This parameter cannot be a null pointer.

**See also:**

**ixAtmdAccPortTxProcess**

**Returns:**

- ◇ *IX\_SUCCESS* *numberOfCellsPtr* contains the number of cells that can be scheduled for this port.
- ◇ *IX\_FAIL* error in the parameters, or some processing error occurred.

```
ixAtmdAccPortTxProcess ( IxAtmLogicalPort     port,  
                         IxAtmScheduleTable * scheduleTablePtr  
                         )
```

Transmit queue cells to the H/W based on the supplied schedule table.

This function **ixAtmdAccPortTxProcess()** process the schedule table provided as a parameter to the function. As a result cells are sent to the underlaying hardware for transmission.

The schedule table is executed in its entirety or not at all. So the onus is on the caller not to submit a table containing more cells than can be transmitted at that point. The maximum numbers that can be transmitted is guaranteed to be the number of cells as returned by the function **ixAtmdAccPortTxFreeEntriesQuery()**.

When the scheduler is invoked on a threshold level, IxAtmdAcc gives the minimum number of cells (to ensure the callback will fire again later) and the maximum number of cells that **ixAtmdAccPortTxProcess()** will be able to process (assuming the ATM scheduler is able to produce the worst-case schedule table, i.e. one entry per cell).

When invoked outside a threshold level, the overall number of cells of the schedule table should be less than the number of cells returned by the **ixAtmdAccPortTxFreeEntriesQuery()** function.

After invoking the **ixAtmdAccPortTxProcess()** function, it is the user choice to query again the queue level with the function **ixAtmdAccPortTxFreeEntriesQuery()** and, depending on a new cell number, submit an other schedule table.

IxAtmdAcc will check that the number of cells in the schedule table is compatible with the current transmit level. If the

Obsolete or invalid connection Id will be silently discarded.

This function is not reentrant for the same port.

This functions doesn't use system resources and can be used inside an interrupt context.

This function is used as a response to the hardware requesting more cells to transmit.

*See also:*

**ixAtmdAccPortTxScheduledModeEnable**

**ixAtmdAccPortTxFreeEntriesQuery**

**ixAtmdAccPortTxCallbackRegister**

**ixAtmdAccPortEnable**

*Parameters:*

*port*                    **IxAtmLogicalPort** [in] – logical PHY port [*IX\_UTOPIA\_PORT\_0* .. *IX\_UTOPIA\_MAX\_PORTS* – 1]

*scheduleTablePtr* **IxAtmScheduleTable\*** [in] – pointer to a scheduler update table. The content of this table is not modified by this function. This parameter cannot be a null pointer.

*Returns:*

- ◇ **IX\_SUCCESS** the schedule table process is complete and cells are transmitted to the hardware
- ◇ **IX\_ATMDACC\_WARNING** : Traffic will be dropped: the schedule table exceed the hardware capacity If this error is ignored, further traffic and schedule will work correctly. Overscheduling does not occur when the schedule table does not contain more entries that the number of free entries returned by **ixAtmdAccPortTxFreeEntriesQuery()**. However, Disconnect attempts just after this error will fail permanently with the error code **IX\_ATMDACC\_RESOURCES\_STILL\_ALLOCATED**, and it is necessary to disable the port to make **ixAtmdAccTxVcTryDisconnect()** successful.
- ◇ **IX\_FAIL** a wrong parameter is supplied, or the format of the schedule table is invalid, or the port is not Enabled, or an internal severe error ocured. No cells is transmitted to the hardware

*Note:*

- If the failure is linked to an overschedule of data cells the result is an inconsistency in the output traffic (one or many cells may be missing and the traffic contract is not respected).

```
ixAtmdAccPortTxScheduledModeDisable ( IxAtmLogicalPort port )
```

Put the port into UnScheduled Mode.

*Parameters:*

*port*   **IxAtmLogicalPort** [in] – logical PHY port [*IX\_UTOPIA\_PORT\_0* .. *IX\_UTOPIA\_MAX\_PORTS* – 1]

*Returns:*

- ◇ IX\_SUCCESS scheduler unregistration is complete and the port is now in unscheduled mode.
- ◇ IX\_FAIL failed (wrong parameters)

```

ixAtmdAccPortTxScheduledModeEnable ( IxAtmLogicalPort port,
                                     IxAtmdAccTxVcDemandUpdateCallback vcDemandUpdateCallback,
                                     IxAtmdAccTxVcDemandClearCallback vcDemandClearCallback,
                                     IxAtmdAccTxSchVcIdGetCallback vcIdGetCallback
                                     )

```

Put the port into Scheduled Mode.

This function puts the specified port into scheduled mode of transmission which means an external s/w entity controls the transmission of cells on this port. This facilitates traffic shaping on the port.

Any buffers submitted on a VC for this port will be queued in IxAtmdAcc. The transmission of these buffers to and by the hardware will be driven by a transmit schedule submitted regularly in calls to **ixAtmdAccPortTxProcess()** by traffic shaping entity.

The transmit schedule is expected to be dynamic in nature based on the demand in cells for each VC on the port. Hence the callback parameters provided to this function allow IxAtmdAcc to inform the shaping entity of demand changes for each VC on the port.

By default a port is in Unscheduled Mode so if this function is not called, transmission of data is done without scheduling rules, on a first-come, first-out basis.

Once a port is put in scheduled mode it cannot be reverted to un-scheduled mode.

**Note:**

- This function should be called before any VCs have be connected on a port. Otherwise this function call will return failure.
- This function uses internal locks and should not be called from an interrupt context

**See also:**

**IxAtmdAccTxVcDemandUpdateCallback**

**IxAtmdAccTxVcDemandClearCallback**

**IxAtmdAccTxSchVcIdGetCallback**

**ixAtmdAccPortTxProcess**

**Parameters:**

- port* **IxAtmLogicalPort** [in] – logical PHY port [*IX\_UTOPIA\_PORT\_0* .. *IX\_UTOPIA\_MAX\_PORTS* – 1]
- vcDemandUpdateCallback* **IxAtmdAccTxVcDemandUpdateCallback** [in] – callback function used to update the number of outstanding cells for transmission. This

parameter cannot be a null pointer.

*vcDemandClearCallback* **IxAtmdAccTxVcDemandClearCallback** [in] – callback function used to remove all clear the number of outstanding cells for a VC. This parameter cannot be a null pointer.

*vcIdGetCallback* **IxAtmdAccTxSchVcIdGetCallback** [in] – callback function used to exchange vc Identifiers between IxAtmdAcc and the entity supplying the transmit schedule. This parameter cannot be a null pointer.

**Returns:**

- ◊ IX\_SUCCESS scheduler registration is complete and the port is now in scheduled mode.
- ◊ IX\_FAIL failed (wrong parameters, or traffic is already enabled on this port, possibly without ATM shaping)

```

ixAtmdAccRxDispatch ( IxAtmRxQueueId rxQueueId,
                      unsigned int      numberOfPdusToProcess,
                      unsigned int *     numberOfPdusProcessedPtr
                      )

```

Control function which executes Rx processing for a particular Rx stream.

The *IxAtmdAccRxDispatch()* function is used to process received Pdus available from one of the two incoming RX streams. When this function is invoked, the incoming traffic (up to the number of PDUs passed as a parameter) will be transferred to the IxAtmdAcc users through the callback ***IxAtmdAccRxVcRxCallback()***, as registered during the ***ixAtmdAccRxVcConnect()*** call.

The user receive callbacks will be executed in the context of this function.

Failing to use this function on a regular basis when there is traffic will block incoming traffic and can result in Pdus being dropped by the hardware.

This should be used to control when received pdus are handed off from the hardware to Aal users from a particular stream. The function can be used from a timer context, or can be registered as a callback in response to an rx stream threshold event, or can be used inside an active polling mechanism which is under user control.

**Note:**

- The signature of this function is directly compatible with the callback prototype which can be register with ***ixAtmdAccRxDispatcherRegister()***.

**See also:**

**ixAtmdAccRxDispatcherRegister**

**IxAtmdAccRxVcRxCallback**

**ixAtmdAccRxVcFreeEntriesQuery**

**Parameters:**

*rxQueueId* **IxAtmRxQueueId** [in] – indicates which RX queue to process.



*numberOfPdusToProcess* unsigned int [in] – indicates the maximum number of PDU to remove from the RX queue. A value of IX\_ATMDACC\_ALLPDUS indicates to process all PDUs from the queue. This includes at least the PDUs in the queue when the function is invoked. Because of real-time constraints, there is no guarantee that the queue will be empty when the function exits. If this parameter is greater than the number of entries of the queues, the function will succeed and the parameter *numberOfPdusProcessedPtr* will reflect the exact number of PDUs processed.

*\*numberOfPdusProcessedPtr* unsigned int [out] – indicates the actual number of PDU processed during this call. This parameter cannot be a null pointer.

**Returns:**

- ◇ IX\_SUCCESS the number of PDUs as indicated in *numberOfPdusProcessedPtr* are removed from the RX queue and the VC callback are called.
- ◇ IX\_FAIL invalid parameters or some unspecified internal error occurred.

```
ixAtmdAccRxDispatcherRegister ( IxAtmRxQueueId      queueId,
                                IxAtmdAccRxDispatcher callback
                                )
```

Register a notification callback to be invoked when there is at least one entry on a particular Rx queue.

This function registers a callback to be invoked when there is at least one entry in a particular queue. The registered callback is called every time when the hardware adds one or more pdus to the specified Rx queue.

This function cannot be used when a Rx Vc using this queue is already existing.

**Note:**

–The callback function can be the API function *ixAtmdAccRxDispatch()* : every time the threshold level of the queue is reached, the *ixAtmdAccRxDispatch()* is invoked to remove all entries from the queue.

**See also:**

**ixAtmdAccRxDispatch**

**IxAtmdAccRxDispatcher**

**Parameters:**

*queueId* **IxAtmRxQueueId** [in] RX queue identification

*callback* **IxAtmdAccRxDispatcher** [in] function triggering the delivery of incoming traffic. This parameter cannot be a null pointer.

**Returns:**

- ◇ IX\_SUCCESS Successful call to *ixAtmdAccRxDispatcherRegister()*
- ◇ IX\_FAIL error in the parameters, or there is an already active RX VC for this queue or

some unspecified internal error occurred.

```
ixAtmdAccRxDispatcherUnregister ( IxAtmRxQueueId atmdQueueId )
```

UnRegister a notification callback to be invoked when there is at least one entry on a particular Rx queue.

**Parameters:**

*queueId* **IxAtmRxQueueId** [in] RX queue identification

**Returns:**

- ◇ IX\_SUCCESS Successful call
- ◇ IX\_FAIL error in the parameters

```
ixAtmdAccRxLevelQuery ( IxAtmRxQueueId rxQueueId,  
                        unsigned int * numberOfPdusPtr  
                        )
```

Query the number of entries in a particular RX queue.

This function is used to retrieve the number of pdus received by the hardware and ready for distribution to users.

**Parameters:**

*rxQueueId* **IxAtmRxQueueId** [in] – indicates which of two RX queues to query.  
*numberOfPdusPtr* unsigned int\* [out] – Pointer to store the number of available PDUs in the RX queue. This parameter cannot be a null pointer.

**Returns:**

- ◇ IX\_SUCCESS the value in numberOfPdusPtr specifies the number of incoming pdus waiting in this queue
- ◇ IX\_FAIL an error occurs during processing. The value in numberOfPdusPtr is unspecified.

**Note:**

- This function is reentrant, doesn't use system resources and can be used from an interrupt context.

```
ixAtmdAccRxQueueSizeQuery ( IxAtmRxQueueId rxQueueId,  
                           unsigned int * numberOfPdusPtr  
                           )
```

Query the size of a particular RX queue.

This function is used to retrieve the number of pdus the system is able to queue when reception is complete.

**Parameters:**

*rxQueueId* **IxAtmRxQueueId** [in] – indicates which of two RX queues to query.

*numberOfPduPtr* unsigned int\* [out] – Pointer to store the number of pdus the system is able to queue in the RX queue. This parameter cannot be a null pointer.

**Returns:**

◇ IX\_SUCCESS the value in *numberOfPduPtr* specifies the number of pdus the system is able to queue.

◇ IX\_FAIL an error occurs during processing. The value in *numberOfPduPtr* is unspecified.

**Note:**

– This function is reentrant, doesn't use system resources and can be used from an interrupt context.

```
ixAtmdAccTxDoneDispatch ( unsigned int    numberOfPduToProcess,  
                          unsigned int * numberOfPduProcessedPtr  
                          )
```

Process a number of pending transmit done pdus from the hardware.

As a by-product of Atm transmit operation buffers which transmission is complete need to be recycled to users. This function is invoked to service the outstanding list of transmitted buffers and pass them to VC users.

Users are handed back pdus by invoking the free callback registered during the *ixAtmdAccTxVcConnect()* call.

There is a single Tx done stream servicing all active Atm Tx ports which can contain a maximum of 64 entries. If this stream fills port transmission will stop so this function must be call sufficently frequently to ensure no disruption to the transmit operation.

This function can be used from a timer context, or can be associated with a TxDone level threshold event (see *ixAtmdAccTxDoneDispatcherRegister()* ), or can be used inside an active polling mechanism under user control.

For ease of use the signature of this function is compatible with the TxDone threshold event callback prototype.

This functions can be used inside an interrupt context.

**See also:**

***ixAtmdAccTxDoneDispatcherRegister***

***IxAtmdAccTxVcBufferReturnCallback***

***ixAtmdAccTxDoneLevelQuery***

**Parameters:**

*numberOfPduToProcess* unsigned int [in] – maximum number of pdus to remove from the TX Done queue

*\*numberOfPduProcessedPtr* unsigned int [out] – number of pdus removed from the TX Done

queue. This parameter cannot be a null pointer.

**Returns:**

- ◇ IX\_SUCCESS the number of pdus as indicated in numberOfPdusToProcess are removed from the TX Done hardware and passed to the user through the Tx Done callback registered during a call to *ixAtmdAccTxVcConnect()*
- ◇ IX\_FAIL invalid parameters or numberOfPdusProcessedPtr is a null pointer or some unspecified internal error occurred.

```
ixAtmdAccTxDoneDispatcherRegister ( unsigned int          numberOfPdus,  
                                   IxAtmdAccTxDoneDispatcher notificationCallback  
                                   )
```

Configure the Tx Done stream threshold value and register a callback to handle threshold notifications.

This function sets the threshold level in term of number of pdus at which the supplied notification function should be called.

The higher the threshold value is, the less events will be necessary to process transmitted buffers.

Transmitted buffers recycling implementation is a system-wide mechanism and needs to be set prior any traffic is started. If this threshold mechanism is not used, the user is responsible for polling the transmitted buffers thanks to *ixAtmdAccTxDoneDispatch()* and *ixAtmdAccTxDoneLevelQuery()* functions.

This function should be called during system initialisation outside an interrupt context

**See also:**

**ixAtmdAccTxDoneDispatcherRegister**

**ixAtmdAccTxDoneDispatch**

**ixAtmdAccTxDoneLevelQuery**

**Parameters:**

*numberOfPdus*

unsigned int [in] – The number of TxDone pdus which triggers the callback invocation This number has to be a power of 2, one of the values 0,1,2,4,8,16,32 ... The maximum value cannot be more than half of the txDone queue size (which can be retrieved using *ixAtmdAccTxDoneQueueSizeQuery()*)

*notificationCallback*

**IxAtmdAccTxDoneDispatcher** [in] – The function to invoke. (This parameter can be *ixAtmdAccTxDoneDispatch()*). This parameter must not be a null pointer.

**Returns:**

- ◇ IX\_SUCCESS Successful call to ixAtmdAccTxDoneDispatcherRegister

◇ IX\_FAIL error in the parameters:

**Note:**

- The notificationCallback will be called exactly when the threshold level will increase from (numberOfPdus) to (numberOfPdus+1)
- If there is no Tx traffic, there is no guarantee that TxDone Pdus will be released to the user (when txDone level is permanently under the threshold level. One of the preferred way to return resources to the user is to use a mix of txDone notifications, used together with a slow rate timer and an exclusion mechanism protecting from re-entrancy
- The TxDone threshold will only hand back buffers when the threshold level is crossed. Setting this threshold to a great number reduce the interrupt rate and the cpu load, but also increase the number of outstanding mbufs and has a system wide impact when these mbufs are needed by other components.

```
ixAtmdAccTxDoneDispatcherUnregister ( void )
```

Unregister a callback to handle threshold notifications.

**Parameters:**

NONE.

**Returns:**

NONE

```
ixAtmdAccTxDoneLevelQuery ( unsigned int * numberOfPdusPtr )
```

Query the current number of transmit pdus ready for recycling.

This function is used to get the number of transmitted pdus which the hardware is ready to hand back to user.

This function can be used from a timer context, or can be associated with a threshold event, on can be used inside an active polling mechanism

**See also:**

**ixAtmdAccTxDoneDispatch**

**Parameters:**

\*numberOfPdusPtr      unsigned int [out] – Pointer to the number of pdus transmitted at the time of this function call, and ready for recycling This parameter cannot be a null pointer.

**Returns:**

◇ IX\_SUCCESS numberOfPdusPtr contains the number of pdus ready for recycling at the time of this function call

◇ IX\_FAIL wrong parameter (null pointer as parameter).or unspecified rocessing error occurs..The value in numberOfPdusPtr is unspecified.

```
ixAtmdAccTxDoneQueueSizeQuery ( unsigned int * numberOfPdusPtr )
```

Query the TxDone queue size.

This function is used to get the number of pdus which the hardware is able to store after transmission is complete

The returned value can be used to set a threshold and enable a callback to be notified when the number of pdus is going over the threshold.

**See also:**

**ixAtmdAccTxDoneDispatcherRegister**

**Parameters:**

*\*numberOfPdusPtr* unsigned int [out] – Pointer to the number of pdus the system is able to queue after transmission

**Returns:**

◇ IX\_SUCCESS numberOfPdusPtr contains the the number of pdus the system is able to queue after transmission

◇ IX\_FAIL wrong parameter (null pointer as parameter).or unspecified rocessing error occurs..The value in numberOfPdusPtr is unspecified.

**Note:**

– This function is reentrant, doesn't use system resources and can be used from an interrupt context.

```
ixAtmdAccUtopiaConfigReset ( const IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig * utConfig )
```

Reset the configuration structure to the Utopia interface initializes configuration registers and write to NPE–A Load and get response from NPE–A and resets the Utopia interface.

**Parameters:**

*\*ixAtmdAccNPEConfigPtr* **IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig** [in] – pointer to a structure to download to

**Returns:**

◇ IX\_SUCCESS successful unload

◇ IX\_FAIL error in the parameters

```
ixAtmdAccUtopiaConfigSet ( const IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig * ixAtmdAccUtopiaConfigPtr )
```

Send the configuration structure to the Utopia interface.

This function downloads the ***IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig*** structure to the Utopia and has the following effects

- setup the Utopia interface
- initialise the NPE
- reset the Utopia cell counters and status registers to known values

This action has to be done once at initialisation. A lock is preventing the concurrent use of ***ixAtmdAccUtopiaStatusGet()*** and ***ixAtmdAccUtopiaConfigSet()***

**Parameters:**

*\*ixAtmdAccNPEConfigPtr* **IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig** [in] – pointer to a structure to download to Utopia. This parameter cannot be a null pointer.

**Returns:**

- ◇ IX\_SUCCESS successful download
- ◇ IX\_FAIL error in the parameters, or configuration is not complete or failed

**See also:**

**ixAtmdAccUtopiaStatusGet**

```
ixAtmdAccUtopiaStatusGet ( IxAtmdAccUtopiaStatus * ixAtmdAccUtopiaStatus )
```

Get the Utopia interface configuration.

This function reads the Utopia registers and the Cell counts and fills the ***IxAtmdAccUtopiaStatus*** structure

A lock is preventing the concurrent use of ***ixAtmdAccUtopiaStatusGet()*** and ***ixAtmdAccUtopiaConfigSet()***

**Parameters:**

*ixAtmdAccUtopiaStatus* **IxAtmdAccUtopiaStatus** [out] – pointer to structure to be updated from internal hardware counters. This parameter cannot be a NULL pointer.

**Returns:**

- ◇ IX\_SUCCESS successful read
- ◇ IX\_FAIL error in the parameters null pointer, or configuration read is not complete or failed

**See also:**

**ixAtmdAccUtopiaConfigSet**

# Intel (R) IXP400 Software ATM Driver Access (IxAtmdAcc) Utopia Control API

## [Intel (R) IXP400 Software ATM Driver Access (IxAtmdAcc) Control API]

The public API for the IXP400 Atm Driver Control component.

### Data Structures

struct **IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig**  
*Utopia configuration.*

struct **IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtRxConfig\_**  
*Utopia Rx config Register.*

struct **IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtRxDefineIdle\_**  
*Utopia Rx idle cells config Register.*

struct **IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtRxEnableFields\_**  
*Utopia Rx enable Register.*

struct **IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtRxStatsConfig\_**  
*Utopia Rx stats config Register.*

struct **IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtRxTransTable0\_**  
*Utopia Rx translation table Register.*

struct **IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtRxTransTable1\_**  
*Utopia Rx translation table Register.*

struct **IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtRxTransTable2\_**  
*Utopia Rx translation table Register.*

struct **IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtRxTransTable3\_**  
*Utopia Rx translation table Register.*

struct **IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtRxTransTable4\_**  
*Utopia Rx translation table Register.*

struct **IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtRxTransTable5\_**  
*Utopia Rx translation table Register.*

struct **IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtSysConfig\_**  
*NPE setup Register.*

struct **IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtTxConfig\_**  
*Utopia Tx Config Register.*



```

struct IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtTxDefineIdle_
    Utopia Tx idle cells Register.

struct IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtTxEnableFields_
    Utopia Tx ienable fields Register.

struct IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtTxStatsConfig_
    Utopia Tx stats Register.

struct IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtTxTransTable0_
    Utopia Tx translation table Register.

struct IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtTxTransTable1_
    Utopia Tx translation table Register.

struct IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtTxTransTable2_
    Utopia Tx translation table Register.

struct IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtTxTransTable3_
    Utopia Tx translation table Register.

struct IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtTxTransTable4_
    Utopia Tx translation table Register.

struct IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtTxTransTable5_
    Utopia Tx translation table Register.

struct IxAtmdAccUtopiaStatus
    Utopia status.

struct IxAtmdAccUtopiaStatus::UtRxCellConditionStatus_
    Utopia Rx Status Register.

struct IxAtmdAccUtopiaStatus::UtTxCellConditionStatus_
    Utopia Tx Status Register.

```

---

## Detailed Description

The public API for the IXP400 Atm Driver Control component.

IxAtmdAcc is the low level interface by which AAL PDU get transmitted to, and received from the Utopia bus

This part is related to the UTOPIA configuration.

# Intel (R) IXP400 Software ATM Manager (IxAtmm) API

IXP400 ATM Manager component Public API.

## Data Structures

struct **IxAtmmPortCfg**

*Structure contains port-specific information required to initialize IxAtmm, and specifically, the IXP400 UTOPIA Level-2 device.*

struct **IxAtmmVc**

*This structure describes the required attributes of a virtual connection.*

## Defines

#define **IX\_ATMM\_RET\_ALREADY\_INITIALIZED**

*Component has already been initialized.*

#define **IX\_ATMM\_RET\_INVALID\_PORT**

*Specified port does not exist or is out of range.*

#define **IX\_ATMM\_RET\_INVALID\_VC\_DESCRIPTOR**

*The VC description does not adhere to ATM standards.*

#define **IX\_ATMM\_RET\_VC\_CONFLICT**

*The VPI/VCI values supplied are either reserved, or they conflict with a previously registered VC on this port.*

#define **IX\_ATMM\_RET\_PORT\_CAPACITY\_IS\_FULL**

*The virtual connection cannot be established on the port because the remaining port capacity is not sufficient to support it.*

#define **IX\_ATMM\_RET\_NO\_SUCH\_VC**

*No registered VC, as described by the supplied VCI/VPI or VC identifier values, exists on this port.*

#define **IX\_ATMM\_RET\_INVALID\_VC\_ID**

*The specified VC identifier is out of range.*

#define **IX\_ATMM\_RET\_INVALID\_PARAM\_PTR**

*A pointer parameter was NULL.*

#define **IX\_ATMM\_UTOPIA\_SPHY\_ADDR**

*The phy address when in SPHY mode.*

```
#define IX_ATMM_THREAD_PRI_HIGH  
    The value of high priority thread.
```

## Typedefs

```
typedef void(* IxAtmmVcChangeCallback )(IxAtmmVcChangeEvent eventType, IxAtmLogicalPort  
    port, const IxAtmmVc *vcChanged)  
    Callback type used with ixAtmmVcChangeCallbackRegister interface Defines a callback  
    type which will be used to notify registered users of registration/deregistration events on a  
    particular port.
```

## Enumerations

```
enum IxAtmmVcDirection {  
    IX_ATMM_VC_DIRECTION_TX,  
    IX_ATMM_VC_DIRECTION_RX,  
    IX_ATMM_VC_DIRECTION_INVALID  
}  
    Definition for use in the IxAtmmVc structure. Indicates the direction of a VC.
```

```
enum IxAtmmVcChangeEvent {  
    IX_ATMM_VC_CHANGE_EVENT_REGISTER,  
    IX_ATMM_VC_CHANGE_EVENT_DEREGISTER,  
    IX_ATMM_VC_CHANGE_EVENT_INVALID  
}  
    Definition for use with IxAtmmVcChangeCallback callback. Indicates that the event type  
    represented by the callback for this VC.
```

```
enum IxAtmmUtopiaLoopbackMode {  
    IX_ATMM_UTOPIA_LOOPBACK_DISABLED,  
    IX_ATMM_UTOPIA_LOOPBACK_ENABLED,  
    IX_ATMM_UTOPIA_LOOPBACK_INVALID  
}  
    Definitions for use with interface to indicate that UTOPIA loopback should be enabled or  
    disabled on initialisation.
```

```
enum IxAtmmPhyMode {  
    IX_ATMM_MPHY_MODE,  
    IX_ATMM_SPHY_MODE,  
    IX_ATMM_PHY_MODE_INVALID  
}  
    Definitions for use with ixAtmmUtopiaInit interface to indicate that UTOPIA  
    multi-phy/single-phy mode is used.
```

# Functions

- PUBLIC**  
**IX\_STATUS ixAtmmInit** (void)  
*Interface to initialize the IxAtmm software component. Can be called once only.*
- PUBLIC**  
**IX\_STATUS ixAtmmUninit** (void)  
*Interface to uninitialize the IxAtmm software component. This function deallocates/destroys the allocated buffer/Mutex done during initialization. Should be the last function to be called.*
- PUBLIC**  
**IX\_STATUS ixAtmmUtopiaInit** (unsigned numPorts, **IxAtmmPhyMode** phyMode, **IxAtmmPortCfg** portCfgs[], **IxAtmmUtopiaLoopbackMode** loopbackMode)  
*Interface to initialize the UTOPIA Level-2 ATM coprocessor for the specified number of physical ports. The function must be called before the ixAtmmPortInitialize interface can operate successfully.*
- PUBLIC**  
**IX\_STATUS ixAtmmUtopiaUninit** (void)  
*Interface to uninitialize the UTOPIA Level-2 ATM coprocessor.*
- PUBLIC**  
**IX\_STATUS ixAtmmPortInitialize** (**IxAtmLogicalPort** port, unsigned txPortRate, unsigned rxPortRate)  
*The interface is called following **ixAtmmUtopiaInit** () and before calls to any other IxAtmm interface. It serves to activate the registered ATM port with IxAtmm.*
- PUBLIC**  
**IX\_STATUS ixAtmmPortUninitialize** (**IxAtmLogicalPort** port)  
*It serves to uninitialise the respective port passed as a parameter. Executes only if Utopia Initialization is done. Uninitializes the Data Path. Uninitializes the specified port.*
- PUBLIC**  
**IX\_STATUS ixAtmmPortModify** (**IxAtmLogicalPort** port, unsigned txPortRate, unsigned rxPortRate)  
*A client may call this interface to change the existing port rate (expressed in bits/second) on an established ATM port.*
- PUBLIC**  
**IX\_STATUS ixAtmmPortQuery** (**IxAtmLogicalPort** port, unsigned \*txPortRate, unsigned \*rxPortRate)  
*The client may call this interface to request details on currently registered transmit and receive rates for an ATM port.*
- PUBLIC**  
**IX\_STATUS ixAtmmPortEnable** (**IxAtmLogicalPort** port)  
*The client call this interface to enable transmit for an ATM port. At initialisation, all the ports are disabled.*
- PUBLIC**  
**IX\_STATUS ixAtmmPortDisable** (**IxAtmLogicalPort** port)  
*The client call this interface to disable transmit for an ATM port. At initialisation, all the ports are disabled.*

**PUBLIC**  
**IX\_STATUS IxAtmmVcRegister (IxAtmLogicalPort port, IxAtmmVc \*vcToAdd,**  
**IxAtmSchedulerVcId \*vcId)**  
*This interface is used to register an ATM Virtual Connection on the specified ATM port.*

**PUBLIC**  
**IX\_STATUS IxAtmmVcDeregister (IxAtmLogicalPort port, IxAtmSchedulerVcId vcId)**  
*Function called by a client to deregister a VC from the system.*

**PUBLIC**  
**IX\_STATUS IxAtmmVcQuery (IxAtmLogicalPort port, unsigned vpi, unsigned vci,**  
**IxAtmmVcDirection direction, IxAtmSchedulerVcId \*vcId, IxAtmmVc \*vcDesc)**  
*This interface supplies information about an active VC on a particular port when supplied with the VPI, VCI and direction of that VC.*

**PUBLIC**  
**IX\_STATUS IxAtmmVcIdQuery (IxAtmLogicalPort port, IxAtmSchedulerVcId vcId, IxAtmmVc**  
**\*vcDesc)**  
*This interface supplies information about an active VC on a particular port when supplied with a vcId for that VC.*

**PUBLIC**  
**IX\_STATUS IxAtmmVcChangeCallbackRegister (IxAtmmVcChangeCallback callback)**  
*This interface is invoked to supply a function to IxAtmm which will be called to notify the client if a new VC is registered with IxAtmm or an existing VC is removed.*

**PUBLIC**  
**IX\_STATUS IxAtmmVcChangeCallbackDeregister (IxAtmmVcChangeCallback callback)**  
*This interface is invoked to deregister a previously supplied callback function.*

**PUBLIC**  
**IX\_STATUS IxAtmmUtopiaStatusShow (void)**  
*Display utopia status counters.*

**PUBLIC**  
**IX\_STATUS IxAtmmUtopiaCfgShow (void)**  
*Display utopia information(config registers and status registers).*

---

## Detailed Description

IXP400 ATM Manager component Public API.

---

## Define Documentation

```
#define IX_ATMM_RET_ALREADY_INITIALIZED
```

Component has already been initialized.

Definition at line **40** of file **IxAtmm.h**.

```
#define IX_ATMM_RET_INVALID_PARAM_PTR
```

A pointer parameter was NULL.

Definition at line **86** of file **IxAtmm.h**.

```
#define IX_ATMM_RET_INVALID_PORT
```

Specified port does not exist or is out of range.

Definition at line **46** of file **IxAtmm.h**.

```
#define IX_ATMM_RET_INVALID_VC_DESCRIPTOR
```

The VC description does not adhere to ATM standards.

Definition at line **52** of file **IxAtmm.h**.

```
#define IX_ATMM_RET_INVALID_VC_ID
```

The specified VC identifier is out of range.

Definition at line **80** of file **IxAtmm.h**.

```
#define IX_ATMM_RET_NO_SUCH_VC
```

No registered VC, as described by the supplied VCI/VPI or VC identifier values, exists on this port.

Definition at line **74** of file **IxAtmm.h**.

```
#define IX_ATMM_RET_PORT_CAPACITY_IS_FULL
```

The virtual connection cannot be established on the port because the remaining port capacity is not sufficient to support it.

Definition at line **67** of file **IxAtmm.h**.

```
#define IX_ATMM_RET_VC_CONFLICT
```

The VPI/VCI values supplied are either reserved, or they conflict with a previously registered VC on this port.

Definition at line **59** of file **IxAtmm.h**.

```
#define IX_ATMM_THREAD_PRI_HIGH
```

The value of high priority thread.

Definition at line **98** of file **IxAtmm.h**.

```
#define IX_ATMM_UTOPIA_SPHY_ADDR
```

The phy address when in SPHY mode.

Definition at line **92** of file **IxAtmm.h**.

---

## Typedef Documentation

```
typedef void(* IxAtmmVcChangeCallback)(IxAtmmVcChangeEvent eventType, IxAtmLogicalPort port,  
const IxAtmmVc* vcChanged)
```

Callback type used with **ixAtmmVcChangeCallbackRegister** interface Defines a callback type which will be used to notify registered users of registration/deregistration events on a particular port.

### *Parameters:*

<i>eventType</i>	<b>IxAtmmVcChangeEvent</b> [in] – Event indicating whether the VC supplied has been added or removed
<i>port</i>	<b>IxAtmLogicalPort</b> [in] – Specifies the port on which the event has occurred
<i>vcChanged</i>	<b>IxAtmmVc*</b> [in] – Pointer to a structure which gives details of the VC which has been added or removed on the port

Definition at line **189** of file **IxAtmm.h**.

---

## Enumeration Type Documentation

```
enum IxAtmmPhyMode
```

Definitions for use with **ixAtmmUtopiaInit** interface to indicate that UTOPIA multi-phy/single-phy mode is used.

### *Enumeration values:*

<b>IX_ATMM_MPHY_MODE</b>	Atmm phy mode mphy.
<b>IX_ATMM_SPHY_MODE</b>	Atmm phy mode sphy.
<b>IX_ATMM_PHY_MODE_INVALID</b>	Atmm phy mode invalid.

Definition at line **150** of file **IxAtmm.h**.

enum IxAtmmUtopiaLoopbackMode

Definitions for use with interface to indicate that UTOPIA loopback should be enabled or disabled on initialisation.

**Enumeration values:**

<i>IX_ATMM_UTOPIA_LOOPBACK_DISABLED</i>	Atmm Utopia loopback mode disabled.
<i>IX_ATMM_UTOPIA_LOOPBACK_ENABLED</i>	Atmm Utopia loopback mode enabled.
<i>IX_ATMM_UTOPIA_LOOPBACK_INVALID</i>	Atmm Utopia loopback mode invalid.

Definition at line **126** of file **IxAtmm.h**.

enum IxAtmmVcChangeEvent

Definition for use with **IxAtmmVcChangeCallback** callback. Indicates that the event type represented by the callback for this VC.

**Enumeration values:**

<i>IX_ATMM_VC_CHANGE_EVENT_REGISTER</i>	Atmm Vc event register.
<i>IX_ATMM_VC_CHANGE_EVENT_DEREGISTER</i>	Atmm Vc event de-register.
<i>IX_ATMM_VC_CHANGE_EVENT_INVALID</i>	Atmm Vc event invalid.

Definition at line **116** of file **IxAtmm.h**.

enum IxAtmmVcDirection

Definition for use in the **IxAtmmVc** structure. Indicates the direction of a VC.

**Enumeration values:**

<i>IX_ATMM_VC_DIRECTION_TX</i>	Atmm Vc direction transmit.
<i>IX_ATMM_VC_DIRECTION_RX</i>	Atmm Vc direction receive.
<i>IX_ATMM_VC_DIRECTION_INVALID</i>	Atmm Vc direction invalid.

Definition at line **106** of file **IxAtmm.h**.

---

## Function Documentation

ixAtmmInit ( void )

Interface to initialize the IxAtmm software component. Can be called once only.

Must be called before any other IxAtmm API is called.



**Parameters:**

*none*

**Returns:**

- ◇ IX\_SUCCESS : IxAtmm has been successfully initialized. Calls to other IxAtmm interfaces may now be performed.
- ◇ IX\_FAIL : IxAtmm has already been initialized.

**ixAtmmPortDisable ( IxAtmLogicalPort port )**

The client call this interface to disable transmit for an ATM port. At initialisation, all the ports are disabled.

**Parameters:**

*port* **IxAtmLogicalPort** [in] – Value identifies the port

**Returns:**

- ◇ IX\_SUCCESS : Transmission over this port is stopped.
- ◇ IX\_FAIL : The port parameter is not valid, or the port is already disabled

**Note:**

- When a port is disabled, Rx and Tx VC Connect requests will fail
- This function call does not stop RX traffic. It is supposed that this function is invoked when a serious problem is detected (e.g. physical layer broken). Then, the RX traffic is not passing.
- This function is blocking until the hw acknowledge that the transmission is stopped.
- This function uses system resources and should not be used inside an interrupt context.

**See also:**

**ixAtmmPortEnable**

**ixAtmmPortEnable ( IxAtmLogicalPort port )**

The client call this interface to enable transmit for an ATM port. At initialisation, all the ports are disabled.

**Parameters:**

*port* **IxAtmLogicalPort** [in] – Value identifies the port

**Returns:**

- ◇ IX\_SUCCESS : Transmission over this port is started.
- ◇ IX\_FAIL : The port parameter is not valid, or the port is already enabled

**Note:**

- When a port is disabled, Rx and Tx VC Connect requests will fail

– This function uses system resources and should not be used inside an interrupt context.

**See also:**

**ixAtmmPortDisable**

```
ixAtmmPortInitialize ( IxAtmLogicalPort port,  
                      unsigned          txPortRate,  
                      unsigned          rxPortRate  
                      )
```

The interface is called following **ixAtmmUtopiaInit ()** and before calls to any other IxAtmm interface. It serves to activate the registered ATM port with IxAtmm.

The transmit and receive port rates are specified in bits per second. This translates to ATM cells per second according to the following formula:  $\text{CellsPerSecond} = \text{portRate} / (53 * 8)$  The IXP400 device supports only 53 byte cells. The client shall make sure that the off-chip physical layer device has already been initialized.

IxAtmm will configure IxAtmdAcc and IxAtmSch to enable scheduling on the port.

This interface must be called once for each active port in the system. The first time the interface is invoked, it will configure the mechanism by which the handling of transmit, transmit-done and receive are driven with the IxAtmdAcc component.

This function is reentrant.

**Note:**

The minimum tx rate that will be accepted is 424 bit/s which equates to 1 cell (53 bytes) per second.

**Parameters:**

*port*            **IxAtmLogicalPort** [in] – Identifies the port which is to be initialized.  
*txPortRate* unsigned [in] – Value specifies the transmit port rate for this port in bits/second. This value is used by the ATM Scheduler component is evaluating VC access requests for the port.  
*rxPortRate* unsigned [in] – Value specifies the receive port rate for this port in bits/second.

**Returns:**

- ◇ **IX\_SUCCESS** : The specified ATM port has been successfully initialized. IxAtmm is ready to accept VC registrations on this port.
- ◇ **IX\_ATMM\_RET\_ALREADY\_INITIALIZED** : ixAtmmPortInitialize has already been called successfully on this port. The current call is rejected.
- ◇ **IX\_ATMM\_RET\_INVALID\_PORT** : The port value indicated in the input is not valid. The request is rejected.
- ◇ **IX\_FAIL** : IxAtmm could not initialize the port because the inputs are not understood.

**See also:**

## **ixAtmmPortEnable, ixAtmmPortDisable**

```
ixAtmmPortModify ( IxAtmLogicalPort port,  
                  unsigned txPortRate,  
                  unsigned rxPortRate  
                  )
```

A client may call this interface to change the existing port rate (expressed in bits/second) on an established ATM port.

### **Parameters:**

*port* **IxAtmLogicalPort** [in] – Identifies the port which is to be initialized.  
*txPortRate* unsigned [in] – Value specifies the transmit port rate for this port in bits/second. This value is used by the ATM Scheduler component is evaluating VC access requests for the port.  
*rxPortRate* unsigned [in] – Value specifies the receive port rate for this port in bits/second.

### **Returns:**

- ◇ IX\_SUCCESS : The indicated ATM port rates have been successfully modified.
- ◇ IX\_ATMM\_RET\_INVALID\_PORT : The port value indicated in the input is not valid. The request is rejected.
- ◇ IX\_FAIL : IxAtmm could not update the port because the inputs are not understood, or the interface was called before the port was initialized.

```
ixAtmmPortQuery ( IxAtmLogicalPort port,  
                 unsigned * txPortRate,  
                 unsigned * rxPortRate  
                 )
```

The client may call this interface to request details on currently registered transmit and receive rates for an ATM port.

### **Parameters:**

*port* **IxAtmLogicalPort** [in] – Value identifies the port from which the rate details are requested.  
*\*txPortRate* unsigned [out] – Pointer to a value which will be filled with the value of the transmit port rate specified in bits/second.  
*\*rxPortRate* unsigned [out] – Pointer to a value which will be filled with the value of the receive port rate specified in bits/second.

### **Returns:**

- ◇ IX\_SUCCESS : The information requested on the specified port has been successfully supplied in the output.
- ◇ IX\_ATMM\_RET\_INVALID\_PORT : The port value indicated in the input is not valid. The request is rejected.

◇ IX\_ATMM\_RET\_INVALID\_PARAM\_PTR : A pointer parameter was NULL.

◇ IX\_FAIL : IxAtmm could not update the port because the inputs are not understood, or the interface was called before the port was initialized.

**ixAtmmPortUninitialize ( IxAtmLogicalPort port )**

It serves to uninitialise the respective port passed as a parameter. Excutes only if Utopia Intialization is done. Uninitializes the Data Path. Unintializes the specified port.

**Parameters:**

*port* **IxAtmLogicalPort** [in] – Identifies the port which is to be uninitialized.

**Returns:**

◇ IX\_SUCCESS : The specificed ATM port has been successfully uninitialized.

◇ IX\_FAIL : IxAtmm could not uninitialized the port because the inputs are not understood or because of some other internal error.

**ixAtmmUninit ( void )**

Interface to uninitialized the IxAtmm software component. This function deallocates/destroys the allocated buffer/Mutex done during initialization Should be the last function to be called.

**Parameters:**

*none*

**Returns:**

◇ IX\_SUCCESS : IxAtmm has been successfully uninitialized. Calls to other IxAtmm interfaces cannot be performed after this.

◇ IX\_FAIL : IxAtmm has already been uninitialized.

**ixAtmmUtopiaCfgShow ( void )**

Display utopia information(config registers and status registers).

**Parameters:**

*none*

**Returns:**

◇ IX\_SUCCESS : Show function was successful

◇ IX\_FAIL : Internal failure

```

ixAtmmUtopiaInit ( unsigned          numPorts,
                   IxAtmmPhyMode      phyMode,
                   IxAtmmPortCfg      portCfgs[],
                   IxAtmmUtopiaLoopbackMode loopbackMode
                   )

```

Interface to initialize the UTOPIA Level-2 ATM coprocessor for the specified number of physical ports. The function must be called before the ixAtmmPortInitialize interface can operate successfully.

**Parameters:**

*numPorts*      unsigned [in] – Indicates the total number of logical ports that are active on the device. Up to 12 ports are supported.

*phyMode*      **IxAtmmPhyMode** [in] – Put the Utopia coprocessor in SPHY or MPHY mode.

*portCfgs[]*    **IxAtmmPortCfg** [in] – Pointer to an array of elements detailing the UTOPIA specific port characteristics. The length of the array must be equal to the number of ports activated. ATM ports are referred to by the relevant offset in this array in all subsequent IxAtmm interface calls.

*loopbackMode* **IxAtmmUtopiaLoopbackMode** [in] – Value must be one of **IX\_ATMM\_UTOPIA\_LOOPBACK\_ENABLED** or **IX\_ATMM\_UTOPIA\_LOOPBACK\_DISABLED** indicating whether loopback should be enabled on the device. Loopback can only be supported on a single PHY, therefore the numPorts parameter must be 1 if loopback is enabled.

**Returns:**

- ◇ **IX\_SUCCESS** : Indicates that the UTOPIA device has been successfully initialized for the supplied ports.
- ◇ **IX\_ATMM\_RET\_ALREADY\_INITIALIZED** : The UTOPIA device has already been initialized.
- ◇ **IX\_FAIL** : The supplied parameters are invalid or have been rejected by the UTOPIA-NPE device.

**Warning:**

This interface may only be called once. Port identifiers are assumed to range from 0 to (numPorts – 1) in all instances. In all subsequent calls to interfaces supplied by IxAtmm, the specified port value is expected to represent the offset in the portCfgs array specified in this interface. i.e. The first port in this array will subsequently be represented as port 0, the second port as port 1, and so on.

```

ixAtmmUtopiaStatusShow ( void )

```

Display utopia status counters.

**Parameters:**

*none*

**Returns:**

- ◇ **IX\_SUCCESS** : Show function was successful

◇ IX\_FAIL : Internal failure

**ixAtmmUtopiaUninit ( void )**

Interface to uninitialized the UTOPIA Level-2 ATM coprocessor.

**Parameters:**

*none*

**Returns:**

◇ IX\_SUCCESS : Indicates that the UTOPIA device has been successfully uninitialized .

◇ IX\_FAIL :Uninitialise of the UTOPIA-NPE device did not work.

**ixAtmmVcChangeCallbackDeregister ( IxAtmmVcChangeCallback callback )**

This interface is invoked to deregister a previously supplied callback function.

**Parameters:**

*callback* **IxAtmmVcChangeCallback** [in] – Callback which complies with the **IxAtmmVcChangeCallback** definition. This function will removed from the table of callbacks.

**Returns:**

◇ IX\_SUCCESS : The specified callback has been deregistered successfully from IxAtmm.

◇ IX\_FAIL : Either the supplied callback is invalid, or is not currently registered with IxAtmm.

**ixAtmmVcChangeCallbackRegister ( IxAtmmVcChangeCallback callback )**

This interface is invoked to supply a function to IxAtmm which will be called to notify the client if a new VC is registered with IxAtmm or an existing VC is removed.

The callback, when invoked, will run within the context of the call to **ixAtmmVcRegister** or **ixAtmmVcDeregister** which caused the change of state.

A maximum of 32 calbacks may be registered in with IxAtmm.

**Parameters:**

*callback* **IxAtmmVcChangeCallback** [in] – Callback which complies with the **IxAtmmVcChangeCallback** definition. This function will be invoked by IxAtmm with the appropriate parameters for the relevant VC when any VC has been registered or deregistered with IxAtmm.

**Returns:**

- ◇ IX\_SUCCESS : The specified callback has been registered successfully with IxAtmm and will be invoked when appropriate.
- ◇ IX\_FAIL : Either the supplied callback is invalid, or IxAtmm has already registered 32 and cannot accommodate any further registrations of this type. The request is rejected.

**Warning:**

The client must not call either the **ixAtmmVcRegister** or **ixAtmmVcDeregister** interfaces from within the supplied callback function.

```
ixAtmmVcDeregister ( IxAtmLogicalPort    port,
                    IxAtmSchedulerVcId vclId
                    )
```

Function called by a client to deregister a VC from the system.

With the removal of each new VC from a port, a series of registered callback functions are invoked by the IxAtmm component to notify possible external components of the change. The callback functions are registered using the **ixAtmmVcChangeCallbackRegister**.

The IxAtmSch component is notified of the removal of transmit VCs.

**Parameters:**

*port* **IxAtmLogicalPort** [in] – Identifies port on which the VC to be removed is currently registered.

*vclId* **IxAtmSchedulerVcId** [in] – VC identifier value of the VC to be deregistered. This value was supplied to the client when the VC was originally registered. This value can also be queried from the IxAtmm component through the **ixAtmmVcQuery** interface.

**Returns:**

- ◇ IX\_SUCCESS : The specified VC has been successfully removed from this port.
- ◇ IX\_ATMM\_RET\_INVALID\_PORT : The port value indicated in the input is not valid or has not been initialized. The request is rejected.
- ◇ IX\_FAIL : There is no registered VC associated with the supplied identifier registered on this port.

```
ixAtmmVcIdQuery ( IxAtmLogicalPort    port,
                  IxAtmSchedulerVcId vclId,
                  IxAtmmVc *          vcDesc
                  )
```

This interface supplies information about an active VC on a particular port when supplied with a vclId for that VC.

**Parameters:**

*port*

- IxAtmLogicalPort** [in] – Identifies port on which the VC to be queried is currently registered.
- vcId* **IxAtmSchedulerVcId** [in] – Value returned by **ixAtmmVcRegister** which uniquely identifies the requested VC on this port.
- \*vcDesc* **IxAtmmVc** [out] – Pointer to an **IxAtmmVc** structure which will be filled with the specific details of the requested VC, if it exists on this port.

**Returns:**

- ◇ **IX\_SUCCESS** : The specified VC has been found on this port and the requested details have been returned.
- ◇ **IX\_ATMM\_RET\_INVALID\_PORT** : The port value indicated in the input is not valid or has not been initialized. The request is rejected.
- ◇ **IX\_ATMM\_RET\_NO\_SUCH\_VC** : No VC exists on the specified port which matches the supplied identifier. No data is returned.
- ◇ **IX\_ATMM\_RET\_INVALID\_PARAM\_PTR** : A pointer parameter was NULL.

```

ixAtmmVcQuery ( IxAtmLogicalPort    port,
                unsigned              vpi,
                unsigned              vci,
                IxAtmmVcDirection    direction,
                IxAtmSchedulerVcId * vcId,
                IxAtmmVc *          vcDesc
                )

```

This interface supplies information about an active VC on a particular port when supplied with the VPI, VCI and direction of that VC.

**Parameters:**

- port* **IxAtmLogicalPort** [in] – Identifies port on which the VC to be queried is currently registered.
- vpi* unsigned [in] – ATM VPI value of the requested VC.
- vci* unsigned [in] – ATM VCI value of the requested VC.
- direction* **IxAtmmVcDirection** [in] – One of **IX\_ATMM\_VC\_DIRECTION\_TX** or **IX\_ATMM\_VC\_DIRECTION\_RX** indicating the direction (Tx or Rx) of the requested VC.
- \*vcId* **IxAtmSchedulerVcId** [out] – Pointer to an integer value which will be filled with the VC identifier value for the requested VC (as returned by **ixAtmmVcRegister**), if it exists on this port.
- \*vcDesc* **IxAtmmVc** [out] – Pointer to an **IxAtmmVc** structure which will be filled with the specific details of the requested VC, if it exists on this port.

**Returns:**

- ◇ **IX\_SUCCESS** : The specified VC has been found on this port and the requested details have been returned.



- ◇ IX\_ATMM\_RET\_INVALID\_PORT : The port value indicated in the input is not valid or has not been initialized. The request is rejected.
- ◇ IX\_ATMM\_RET\_NO\_SUCH\_VC : No VC exists on the specified port which matches the search criteria (VPI, VCI, direction) given. No data is returned.
- ◇ IX\_ATMM\_RET\_INVALID\_PARAM\_PTR : A pointer parameter was NULL.

```

ixAtmmVcRegister ( IxAtmLogicalPort      port,
                   IxAtmmVc *          vcToAdd,
                   IxAtmSchedulerVcId * vcId
                   )

```

This interface is used to register an ATM Virtual Connection on the specified ATM port.

Each call to this interface registers a unidirectional virtual connection with the parameters specified. If a bi-directional VC is needed, the function should be called twice (once for each direction, Tx & Rx) where the VPI and VCI and port parameters in each call are identical.

With the addition of each new VC to a port, a series of callback functions are invoked by the IxAtmm component to notify possible external components of the change. The callback functions are registered using the **ixAtmmVcChangeCallbackRegister** interface.

The IxAtmSch component is notified of the registration of transmit VCs.

**Parameters:**

- port*      **IxAtmLogicalPort** [in] – Identifies port on which the specified VC is to be registered.
- \*vcToAdd* **IxAtmmVc** [in] – Pointer to an **IxAtmmVc** structure containing a description of the VC to be registered. The client shall fill the vpi, vci and direction and relevant trafficDesc members of this structure before calling this function.
- \*vcId*     **IxAtmSchedulerVcId** [out] – Pointer to an integer value which is filled with the per-port unique identifier value for this VC. This identifier will be required when a request is made to deregister or change this VC. VC identifiers for transmit VCs will have a value between 0–43, i.e. 32 data Tx VCs + 12 OAM Tx Port VCs. Receive VCs will have a value between 44–66, i.e. 32 data Rx VCs + 1 OAM Rx VC.

**Returns:**

- ◇ IX\_SUCCESS : The VC has been successfully registered on this port. The VC is ready for a client to configure IxAtmdAcc for receive and transmit operations on the VC.
- ◇ IX\_ATMM\_RET\_INVALID\_PORT : The port value indicated in the input is not valid or has not been initialized. The request is rejected.
- ◇ IX\_ATMM\_RET\_INVALID\_VC\_DESCRIPTOR : The descriptor pointed to by vcToAdd is invalid. The registration request is rejected.
- ◇ IX\_ATMM\_RET\_VC\_CONFLICT : The VC requested conflicts with reserved VPI and/or VCI values or with another VC already activated on this port.

◇ IX\_ATMM\_RET\_PORT\_CAPACITY\_IS\_FULL : The VC cannot be registered in the port because the port capacity is insufficient to support the requested ATM traffic contract. The registration request is rejected.

◇ IX\_ATMM\_RET\_INVALID\_PARAM\_PTR : A pointer parameter was NULL.

***Warning:***

IxAtmm has no capability of signaling or negotiating a virtual connection. Negotiation of the admission of the VC to the network is beyond the scope of this function. This is assumed to be performed by the calling client, if appropriate, before or after this function is called.

# Intel (R) IXP400 Software ATM Transmit Scheduler (IxAtmSch) API

IXP400 ATM scheduler component Public API.

## Defines

**#define IX\_ATMSCH\_RET\_NOT\_ADMITTED**

*Indicates that CAC function has rejected VC registration due to insufficient line capacity.*

**#define IX\_ATMSCH\_RET\_QUEUE\_FULL**

*Indicates that the VC queue is full, no more demand can be queued at this time.*

**#define IX\_ATMSCH\_RET\_QUEUE\_EMPTY**

*Indicates that all VC queues on this port are empty and therefore there are no cells to be scheduled at this time.*

## Functions

**PUBLIC**

**IX\_STATUS ixAtmSchInit (void)**

*This function is used to initialize the ixAtmSch component. It should be called before any other IxAtmSch API function.*

**PUBLIC**

**IX\_STATUS ixAtmSchUninit (void)**

*This function is used to uninitialize the ixAtmSch component.*

**PUBLIC ixAtmSchPortModelInitialize (IxAtmLogicalPort port, UINT64 portRate, unsigned int IX\_STATUS minCellsToSchedule)**

*This function shall be called first to initialize an ATM port before any other ixAtmSch API calls may be made for that port.*

**PUBLIC**

**IX\_STATUS ixAtmSchPortModelUninitialize (IxAtmLogicalPort port)**

*This function shall be called to uninitialize an ATM port.*

**PUBLIC**

**IX\_STATUS ixAtmSchPortRateModify (IxAtmLogicalPort port, UINT64 portRate)**

*This function is called to modify the portRate on a previously initialized port, typically in the event that the line condition of the port changes.*

**PUBLIC ixAtmSchVcModelSetup (IxAtmLogicalPort port, IxAtmTrafficDescriptor \*trafficDesc, IX\_STATUS IxAtmSchedulerVcId \*vcId)**

*A client calls this interface to set up an upstream (transmitting) virtual connection model (VC) on the specified ATM port. This function also provides the virtual \* connection*

*admission control (CAC) service to the client.*

**PUBLIC**  
**IX\_STATUS IxAtmSchVcConnIdSet** (**IxAtmLogicalPort** port, **IxAtmSchedulerVcId** vcId, **IxAtmConnId** vcUserConnId)

*A client calls this interface to set the vcUserConnId for a VC on the specified ATM port. This vcUserConnId will default to IX\_ATM\_IDLE\_CELLS\_CONNID if this function is not called for a VC. Hence if the client does not call this function for a VC then only idle cells will be scheduled for this VC.*

**PUBLIC**  
**IX\_STATUS IxAtmSchVcModelRemove** (**IxAtmLogicalPort** port, **IxAtmSchedulerVcId** vcId)

*Interface called by the client to remove a previously established VC on a particular port.*

**PUBLIC**  
**IX\_STATUS IxAtmSchVcQueueUpdate** (**IxAtmLogicalPort** port, **IxAtmSchedulerVcId** vcId, **UINT64** numberOfCells)

*The client calls this function to notify IxAtmSch that the user of a VC has submitted cells for transmission.*

**PUBLIC**  
**IX\_STATUS IxAtmSchVcQueueClear** (**IxAtmLogicalPort** port, **IxAtmSchedulerVcId** vcId)

*The client calls this function to remove all currently queued cells from a registered VC. The pending cell count for the specified VC is reset to zero.*

**PUBLIC**  
**IX\_STATUS IxAtmSchTableUpdate** (**IxAtmLogicalPort** port, **UINT64** maxCells, **IxAtmScheduleTable** \*\*rettable)

*The client calls this function to request an update of the schedule table for a particular ATM port.*

**PUBLIC void IxAtmSchShow** (void)

*Utility function which will print statistics on the current and accumulated state of VCs and traffic in the ATM scheduler component. Output is sent to the default output device.*

**PUBLIC void IxAtmSchStatsClear** (void)

*Utility function which will reset all counter statistics in the ATM scheduler to zero.*

---

## Detailed Description

IXP400 ATM scheduler component Public API.

---

## Define Documentation

```
#define IX_ATMSCH_RET_NOT_ADMITTED
```

Indicates that CAC function has rejected VC registration due to insufficient line capacity.

Definition at line 52 of file **IxAtmSch.h**.

```
#define IX_ATMSCH_RET_QUEUE_EMPTY
```

Indicates that all VC queues on this port are empty and therefore there are no cells to be scheduled at this time.

Definition at line **70** of file **IxAtmSch.h**.

```
#define IX_ATMSCH_RET_QUEUE_FULL
```

Indicates that the VC queue is full, no more demand can be queued at this time.

Definition at line **61** of file **IxAtmSch.h**.

---

## Function Documentation

```
ixAtmSchInit ( void )
```

This function is used to initialize the ixAtmSch component. It should be called before any other IxAtmSch API function.

**Parameters:**

*None*

**Returns:**

- ◇ **IX\_SUCCESS** : indicates that
  1. The ATM scheduler component has been successfully initialized.
  2. The scheduler is ready to accept Port modelling requests.
- ◇ **IX\_FAIL** : Some internal error has prevented the scheduler component from initialising.

```
ixAtmSchPortModelInitialize ( IxAtmLogicalPort port,  
                               UINT64 portRate,  
                               unsigned int minCellsToSchedule  
                               )
```

This function shall be called first to initialize an ATM port before any other ixAtmSch API calls may be made for that port.

**Parameters:**

<i>port</i>	<b>IxAtmLogicalPort</b> [in] – The specific port to initialize. Valid values range from 0 to IX_UTOPIA_MAX_PORTS – 1, representing a maximum of IX_UTOPIA_MAX_PORTS possible ports.
<i>portRate</i>	UINT64 [in] – Value indicating the upstream capacity of the indicated port. The value should be supplied in units of ATM (53 bytes) cells per second. A port rate of 800Kbits/s is the equivalent of 1886 cells per second
<i>minCellsToSchedule</i>	unsigned int [in] – This parameter specifies the minimum number of cells

which the scheduler will put in a schedule table for this port. This value sets the worst case CDVT for VCs on this port i.e.  $CDVT = 1 * \text{minCellsToSchedule} / \text{portRate}$ .

**Returns:**

- ◇ **IX\_SUCCESS** : indicates that
  1. The ATM scheduler has been successfully initialized.
  2. The requested port model has been established.
  3. The scheduler is ready to accept VC modelling requests on the ATM port.
- ◇ **IX\_FAIL** : indicates the requested port could not be initialized.

```
ixAtmSchPortModelUninitialize ( IxAtmLogicalPort port )
```

This function shall be called to uninitialize an ATM port.

**Parameters:**

*port* **IxAtmLogicalPort** [in] – The specific port to uninitialize. Valid values range from 0 to **IX\_UTOPIA\_MAX\_PORTS** – 1, representing a maximum of **IX\_UTOPIA\_MAX\_PORTS** possible ports.

**Returns:**

- ◇ **IX\_SUCCESS** : indicates that
  1. The ATM scheduler has been successfully uninitialized.
- ◇ **IX\_FAIL** : indicates the requested port could not be uninitialized.

```
ixAtmSchPortRateModify ( IxAtmLogicalPort port,  
                        UINT64 portRate  
                        )
```

This function is called to modify the portRate on a previously initialized port, typically in the event that the line condition of the port changes.

**Parameters:**

*port* **IxAtmLogicalPort** [in] – Specifies the ATM port which is to be modified.  
*portRate* **UINT64** [in] – Value indicating the new upstream capacity for this port in cells/second. A port rate of 800Kbits/s is the equivalent of 1886 cells per second

**Returns:**

- ◇ **IX\_SUCCESS** : The port rate has been successfully modified.
- ◇ **IX\_FAIL** : The port rate could not be modified, either because the input data was invalid, or the new port rate is insufficient to support established ATM VC contracts on this port.

**Warning:**

The IxAtmSch component will validate the supplied port rate is sufficient to support all established VC contracts on the port. If the new port rate is insufficient to support all established contracts then the request to modify the port rate will be rejected. In this event, the user is expected to remove established contracts using the ixAtmSchVcModelRemove interface and then retry this interface.

*See also:*

**ixAtmSchVcModelRemove()**

**ixAtmSchShow ( void )**

Utility function which will print statistics on the current and accumulated state of VCs and traffic in the ATM scheduler component. Output is sent to the default output device.

**Parameters:**

*none*

**Returns:**

*none*

**ixAtmSchStatsClear ( void )**

Utility function which will reset all counter statistics in the ATM scheduler to zero.

**Parameters:**

*none*

**Returns:**

*none*

```
ixAtmSchTableUpdate ( IxAtmLogicalPort      port,  
                      UINT64                  maxCells,  
                      IxAtmScheduleTable ** rettable  
                      )
```

The client calls this function to request an update of the schedule table for a particular ATM port.

This is called when the client decides it needs a new sequence of cells to send (probably because the transmit queue is near to empty for this ATM port). The scheduler will use its stored information on the cells submitted for transmit (i.e. data supplied via **ixAtmSchVcQueueUpdate** function) with the traffic descriptor information of all established VCs on the ATM port to decide the sequence of cells to be sent and fill the schedule table for a period of time into the future.

IxAtmSch will guarantee a minimum of minCellsToSchedule if there is at least one cell ready to send. If there are no cells then IX\_ATMSCH\_RET\_QUEUE\_EMPTY is returned.

This implementation of ixAtmSchTableUpdate uses no operating system or external facilities, either directly or indirectly. This allows clients to call this function from within an FIQ interrupt handler.

**Parameters:**

*port*      **IxAtmLogicalPort** [in] – Specifies the ATM port for which requested schedule table is to be generated.

*maxCells*

UINT64 [in] – Specifies the maximum number of cells that must be scheduled in the supplied table during any call to the interface.

**\*\*table IxAtmScheduleTable** [out] – A pointer to an area of storage is returned which contains the generated schedule table. The client should not modify the contents of this table.

**Returns:**

- ◇ **IX\_SUCCESS** : The schedule table has been published. Currently there is at least one VC queue that is nonempty.
- ◇ **IX\_ATMSCH\_RET\_QUEUE\_EMPTY** : Currently all VC queues on this port are empty. The schedule table returned is set to NULL. The client is not expected to invoke this function again until more cells have been submitted on this port through the **ixAtmSchVcQueueUpdate** function.
- ◇ **IX\_FAIL** : The input are invalid. No action is taken.

**Warning:**

IxAtmSch assumes that the calling software ensures that calls to ixAtmSchVcQueueUpdate, ixAtmSchVcQueueClear and ixAtmSchTableUpdate are both self and mutually exclusive for the same port.

Subsequent calls to this function for the same port will overwrite the contents of previously supplied schedule tables. The client must be completely finished with the previously supplied schedule table before calling this function again for the same port.

**See also:**

**ixAtmSchVcQueueUpdate(), ixAtmSchVcQueueClear(), ixAtmSchTableUpdate().**

```
ixAtmSchUninit ( void )
```

This function is used to uninitialize the ixAtmSch component.

**Parameters:**

*None*

**Returns:**

- ◇ **IX\_SUCCESS** : indicates that
  1. The ATM scheduler component has been successfully uninitialized.
- ◇ **IX\_FAIL** : Some internal error has prevented the scheduler component from uninitialising.

```
ixAtmSchVcConnIdSet ( IxAtmLogicalPort    port,  
                     IxAtmSchedulerVcId  vcId,  
                     IxAtmConnId         vcUserConnId  
                     )
```

A client calls this interface to set the vcUserConnId for a VC on the specified ATM port. This vcUserConnId will default to IX\_ATM\_IDLE\_CELLS\_CONNID if this function is not called for a VC. Hence if the client does not call this function for a VC then only idle cells will be scheduled for this VC.



**Parameters:**

- port* **IxAtmLogicalPort** [in] – Specifies the ATM port on which the upstream VC is has been established.
- vcId* **IxAtmSchedulerVcId** [in] – This is the unique identifier for this virtual connection. A valid identification is a non-negative number and is all ports.
- vcUserConnId* **IxAtmConnId** [in] – The connId is used to refer to a VC in schedule table entries. It is treated as the Id by which the scheduler client knows the VC. It is used in any communications from the Scheduler to the scheduler user e.g. schedule table entries.

**Returns:**

- ◇ **IX\_SUCCESS** : The id has successfully been set.
- ◇ **IX\_FAIL** :Input data are invalid. connId id is not established.

```
ixAtmSchVcModelRemove ( IxAtmLogicalPort    port,  
                        IxAtmSchedulerVcId vcId  
                        )
```

Interface called by the client to remove a previously established VC on a particular port.

**Parameters:**

- port* **IxAtmLogicalPort** [in] – Specifies the ATM port on which the VC to be removed is established.
- vcId* **IxAtmSchedulerVcId** [in] – Identifies the VC to be removed. This is the value returned by the **ixAtmSchVcModelSetup** call which established the relevant VC.

**Returns:**

- ◇ **IX\_SUCCESS** : The VC has been successfully removed from this port. It is no longer modelled on this port.
- ◇ **IX\_FAIL** :Input data are invalid. The VC is still being modeled by the traffic shaper.

**See also:**

**ixAtmSchVcModelSetup()**

```
ixAtmSchVcModelSetup ( IxAtmLogicalPort    port,  
                      IxAtmTrafficDescriptor * trafficDesc,  
                      IxAtmSchedulerVcId *   vcId  
                      )
```

A client calls this interface to set up an upstream (transmitting) virtual connection model (VC) on the specified ATM port. This function also provides the virtual \* connection admission control (CAC) service to the client.

**Parameters:**

- port* **IxAtmLogicalPort** [in] – Specifies the ATM port on which the upstream VC is to be established.
- \*trafficDesc* **IxAtmTrafficDescriptor** [in] – Pointer to a structure describing the requested traffic contract of the VC to be established. This structure contains the typical ATM traffic

descriptor values (e.g. PCR, SCR, MBS, CDVT, etc.) defined by the ATM standard.

*\*vcId* **IxAtmSchedulerVcId** [out] – This value will be filled with the port–unique identifier for this virtual connection. A valid identification is a non–negative number.

**Returns:**

- ◇ **IX\_SUCCESS** : The VC has been successfully established on this port. The client may begin to submit demand on this VC.
- ◇ **IX\_ATMSCH\_RET\_NOT\_ADMITTED** : The VC cannot be established on this port because there is insufficient upstream capacity available to support the requested traffic contract descriptor
- ◇ **IX\_FAIL** : Input data are invalid. VC has not been established.

```
ixAtmSchVcQueueClear ( IxAtmLogicalPort    port,  
                      IxAtmSchedulerVcId vcId  
                      )
```

The client calls this function to remove all currently queued cells from a registered VC. The pending cell count for the specified VC is reset to zero.

This interface is structurally compatible with the `IxAtmdAccSchQueueClear` callback type definition required for IXP400 ATM scheduler interoperability.

**Parameters:**

- port* **IxAtmLogicalPort** [in] – Specifies the ATM port on which the VC to be cleared is established.
- vcId* **IxAtmSchedulerVcId** [in] – Identifies the VC to be cleared. This is the value returned by the **ixAtmSchVcModelSetup** call which established the relevant VC.

**Returns:**

- ◇ **IX\_SUCCESS** : The VC queue has been successfully cleared.
- ◇ **IX\_FAIL** : The input are invalid. No VC queue is modified.

**Warning:**

IxAtmSch assumes that the calling software ensures that calls to `ixAtmSchVcQueueUpdate`, `ixAtmSchVcQueueClear` and `ixAtmSchTableUpdate` are both self and mutually exclusive for the same port.

**See also:**

**ixAtmSchVcQueueUpdate()**, **ixAtmSchVcQueueClear()**, **ixAtmSchTableUpdate()**.

```
ixAtmSchVcQueueUpdate ( IxAtmLogicalPort    port,  
                      IxAtmSchedulerVcId vcId,  
                      UINT64                numberOfCells  
                      )
```

The client calls this function to notify IxAtmSch that the user of a VC has submitted cells for transmission.

This information is stored, aggregated from a number of calls to `ixAtmSchVcQueueUpdate` and eventually used in the call to `ixAtmSchTableUpdate`.

Normally `IxAtmSch` will update the VC queue by adding the number of cells to the current queue length. However, if `IxAtmSch` determines that the user has over-submitted for the VC and exceeded its transmission quota the queue request can be rejected. The user should resubmit the request later when the queue has been depleted.

This implementation of `ixAtmSchVcQueueUpdate` uses no operating system or external facilities, either directly or indirectly. This allows clients to call this function from within an interrupt handler.

This interface is structurally compatible with the `IxAtmdAccSchQueueUpdate` callback type definition required for IXP400 ATM scheduler interoperability.

**Parameters:**

<i>port</i>	<b>IxAtmLogicalPort</b> [in] – Specifies the ATM port on which the VC to be updated is established.
<i>vcId</i>	<b>IxAtmSchedulerVcId</b> [in] – Identifies the VC to be updated. This is the value returned by the <b>ixAtmSchVcModelSetup</b> call which established the relevant VC.
<i>numberOfCells</i>	UINT64 [in] – Indicates how many ATM cells should be added to the queue for this VC.

**Returns:**

- ◇ **IX\_SUCCESS** : The VC queue has been successfully updated.
- ◇ **IX\_ATMSCH\_RET\_QUEUE\_FULL** : The VC queue has reached a preset limit. This indicates the client has over-submitted and exceeded its transmission quota. The request is rejected. The VC queue is not updated. The VC user is advised to resubmit the request later.
- ◇ **IX\_FAIL** : The input are invalid. No VC queue is updated.

**Warning:**

`IxAtmSch` assumes that the calling software ensures that calls to `ixAtmSchVcQueueUpdate`, `ixAtmSchVcQueueClear` and `ixAtmSchTableUpdate` are both self and mutually exclusive for the same port.

**See also:**

`ixAtmSchVcQueueUpdate()`, `ixAtmSchVcQueueClear()`, `ixAtmSchTableUpdate()`.

# Intel (R) IXP400 Software ATM Types (IxAtmTypes)

The common set of types used in many Atm components.

## Data Structures

struct **IxAtmScheduleTable**

*This structure defines a schedule table which gives details on which data (from which VCs) should be transmitted for a forthcoming period of time for a particular port and the order in which that data should be transmitted.*

struct **IxAtmScheduleTableEntry**

*ATM Schedule Table entry.*

struct **IxAtmTrafficDescriptor**

*Structure describing an ATM traffic contract for a Virtual Connection (VC).*

## Defines

#define **IX\_ATM\_CELL\_PAYLOAD\_SIZE**

*Size of a ATM cell payload.*

#define **IX\_ATM\_CELL\_SIZE**

*Size of a ATM cell, including header.*

#define **IX\_ATM\_CELL\_SIZE\_NO\_HEC**

*Size of a ATM cell, excluding HEC byte.*

#define **IX\_ATM\_OAM\_CELL\_SIZE\_NO\_HEC**

*Size of a OAM cell, excluding HEC byte.*

#define **IX\_ATM\_AAL0\_48\_CELL\_PAYLOAD\_SIZE**

*Size of a AAL0 48 Cell payload.*

#define **IX\_ATM\_AAL5\_CELL\_PAYLOAD\_SIZE**

*Size of a AAL5 Cell payload.*

#define **IX\_ATM\_AAL0\_52\_CELL\_SIZE\_NO\_HEC**

*Size of a AAL0 52 Cell, excluding HEC byte.*

#define **IX\_ATM\_MAX\_VPI**

*Maximum value of an ATM VPI.*

#define **IX\_ATM\_MAX\_VCI**

*Maximum value of an ATM VCI.*

#define **IX\_ATM\_MAX\_NUM\_AAL\_VCS**

*Maximum number of active AAL5/AAL0 VCs in the system.*

**#define IX\_ATM\_MAX\_NUM\_VC**

*Maximum number of active AAL5/AAL0 VCs in the system The use of this macro is depreciated, it is retained for backward compatiblity. For current software release and beyond the define IX\_ATM\_MAX\_NUM\_AAL\_VC should be used.*

**#define IX\_ATM\_MAX\_NUM\_OAM\_TX\_VCS**

*Maximum number of active OAM Tx VCs in the system, 1 OAM VC per port.*

**#define IX\_ATM\_MAX\_NUM\_OAM\_RX\_VCS**

*Maximum number of active OAM Rx VCs in the system, 1 OAM VC shared accross all ports.*

**#define IX\_ATM\_MAX\_NUM\_AAL\_OAM\_TX\_VCS**

*Maximum number of active AAL5/AAL0/OAM Tx VCs in the system.*

**#define IX\_ATM\_MAX\_NUM\_AAL\_OAM\_RX\_VCS**

*Maximum number of active AAL5/AAL0/OAM Rx VCs in the system.*

**#define IX\_ATM\_IDLE\_CELLS\_CONNID**

*VC Id used to indicate idle cells in the returned schedule table.*

**#define IX\_ATM\_CELL\_HEADER\_VCI\_GET(cellHeader)**

*get the VCI field from a cell header*

**#define IX\_ATM\_CELL\_HEADER\_VPI\_GET(cellHeader)**

*get the VPI field from a cell header*

**#define IX\_ATM\_CELL\_HEADER\_PTI\_GET(cellHeader)**

*get the PTI field from a cell header*

## Typedefs

typedef

unsigned

int **IxAtmCellHeader**

*ATM Cell Header, does not contain 4 byte HEC, added by NPE-A.*

typedef

unsigned

int **IxAtmConnId**

*ATM VC data connection identifier.*

typedef int **IxAtmSchedulerVcId**

*ATM VC scheduling connection identifier.*

typedef

unsigned

int **IxAtmNpeRxVcId**

*ATM Rx VC identifier used by the ATM Npe.*

## Enumerations

```
enum IxAtmLogicalPort {  
    IX_UTOPIA_PORT_0,  
    IX_UTOPIA_MAX_PORTS  
}
```

*Logical Port Definitions :.*

```
enum IxAtmServiceCategory {  
    IX_ATM_CBR,  
    IX_ATM_RTVBR,  
    IX_ATM_VBR,  
    IX_ATM_UBR,  
    IX_ATM_ABR  
}
```

*Enumerated type representing available ATM service categories. For more informatoin on these categories, see "Traffic Management Specification" v4.1, published by the ATM Forum – <http://www.atmforum.com>.*

```
enum IxAtmRxQueueId {  
    IX_ATM_RX_A,  
    IX_ATM_RX_B,  
    IX_ATM_MAX_RX_STREAMS  
}
```

*Rx Queue Type for RX traffic.*

---

## Detailed Description

The common set of types used in many Atm components.

---

## Define Documentation

```
#define IX_ATM_AAL0_48_CELL_PAYLOAD_SIZE
```

Size of a AAL0 48 Cell payload.

Definition at line **92** of file **IxAtmTypes.h**.

```
#define IX_ATM_AAL0_52_CELL_SIZE_NO_HEC
```

Size of a AAL0 52 Cell, excluding HEC byte.

Definition at line **104** of file **IxAtmTypes.h**.

```
#define IX_ATM_AAL5_CELL_PAYLOAD_SIZE
```

Size of a AAL5 Cell payload.

Definition at line **98** of file **IxAtmTypes.h**.

```
#define IX_ATM_CELL_HEADER_PTI_GET ( cellHeader )
```

get the PTI field from a cell header

Definition at line **187** of file **IxAtmTypes.h**.

```
#define IX_ATM_CELL_HEADER_VCI_GET ( cellHeader )
```

get the VCI field from a cell header

Definition at line **173** of file **IxAtmTypes.h**.

```
#define IX_ATM_CELL_HEADER_VPI_GET ( cellHeader )
```

get the VPI field from a cell header

Definition at line **180** of file **IxAtmTypes.h**.

```
#define IX_ATM_CELL_PAYLOAD_SIZE
```

Size of a ATM cell payload.

Definition at line **68** of file **IxAtmTypes.h**.

```
#define IX_ATM_CELL_SIZE
```

Size of a ATM cell, including header.

Definition at line **74** of file **IxAtmTypes.h**.

```
#define IX_ATM_CELL_SIZE_NO_HEC
```

Size of a ATM cell, excluding HEC byte.

Definition at line **80** of file **IxAtmTypes.h**.

```
#define IX_ATM_IDLE_CELLS_CONNID
```

VC Id used to indicate idle cells in the returned schedule table.

Definition at line **166** of file **IxAtmTypes.h**.

```
#define IX_ATM_MAX_NUM_AAL_OAM_RX_VCS
```

Maximum number of active AAL5/AAL0/OAM Rx VCs in the system.

Definition at line **160** of file **IxAtmTypes.h**.

```
#define IX_ATM_MAX_NUM_AAL_OAM_TX_VCS
```

Maximum number of active AAL5/AAL0/OAM Tx VCs in the system.

Definition at line **154** of file **IxAtmTypes.h**.

```
#define IX_ATM_MAX_NUM_AAL_VCS
```

Maximum number of active AAL5/AAL0 VCs in the system.

Definition at line **123** of file **IxAtmTypes.h**.

```
#define IX_ATM_MAX_NUM_OAM_RX_VCS
```

Maximum number of active OAM Rx VCs in the system, 1 OAM VC shared accross all ports.

Definition at line **148** of file **IxAtmTypes.h**.

```
#define IX_ATM_MAX_NUM_OAM_TX_VCS
```

Maximum number of active OAM Tx VCs in the system, 1 OAM VC per port.

Definition at line **141** of file **IxAtmTypes.h**.

```
#define IX_ATM_MAX_NUM_VC
```

Maximum number of active AAL5/AAL0 VCs in the system The use of this macro is depreciated, it is



retained for backward compatibility. For current software release and beyond the define `IX_ATM_MAX_NUM_AAL_VC` should be used.

Definition at line **132** of file **`IxAtmTypes.h`**.

```
#define IX_ATM_MAX_VCI
```

Maximum value of an ATM VCI.

Definition at line **117** of file **`IxAtmTypes.h`**.

```
#define IX_ATM_MAX_VPI
```

Maximum value of an ATM VPI.

Definition at line **111** of file **`IxAtmTypes.h`**.

```
#define IX_ATM_OAM_CELL_SIZE_NO_HEC
```

Size of a OAM cell, excluding HEC byte.

Definition at line **86** of file **`IxAtmTypes.h`**.

---

## Typedef Documentation

```
IxAtmCellHeader
```

ATM Cell Header, does not contain 4 byte HEC, added by NPE–A.

Definition at line **195** of file **`IxAtmTypes.h`**.

```
IxAtmConnId
```

ATM VC data connection identifier.

This is generated by `IxAtmdAcc` when a successful connection is made on a VC. This is the ID by which `IxAtmdAcc` knows an active VC and should be used in `IxAtmdAcc` API calls to reference a specific VC.

Definition at line **283** of file **`IxAtmTypes.h`**.

```
IxAtmNpeRxVcId
```

ATM Rx VC identifier used by the ATM Npe.

This Id is generated by IxAtmdAcc when a successful data connection is made on a rx VC.

Definition at line **307** of file **IxAtmTypes.h**.

#### IxAtmSchedulerVcId

ATM VC scheduling connection identifier.

This id is generated and used by ATM Tx controller, generally the traffic shaper (e.g. IxAtmSch). The IxAtmdAcc component will request one of these Ids whenever a data connection on a Tx VC is requested. This ID will be used in callbacks to the ATM Transmission Ctrl s/w (e.g. IxAtmm) to reference a particular VC.

Definition at line **297** of file **IxAtmTypes.h**.

---

## Enumeration Type Documentation

#### enum IxAtmLogicalPort

Logical Port Definitions :.

Only 1 port is available in SPHY configuration 4 ports are enabled in ATMMPORT configuration 12 ports are enabled in MPHY configuration

***Enumeration values:***

*IX\_UTOPIA\_PORT\_0* Port 0.

*IX\_UTOPIA\_MAX\_PORTS* Not a port – just a definition for the maximum possible ports.

Definition at line **37** of file **IxAtmTypes.h**.

#### enum IxAtmRxQueueId

Rx Queue Type for RX traffic.

IxAtmRxQueueId defines the queues involved for receiving data.

There are two queues to facilitate prioritisation handling and processing the 2 queues with different algorithms and constraints

e.g. : one queue can carry voice (or time–critical traffic), the other queue can carry non–voice traffic

***Enumeration values:***

*IX\_ATM\_RX\_A* RX queue A.

*IX\_ATM\_RX\_B* RX queue B.

*IX\_ATM\_MAX\_RX\_STREAMS* Maximum number of RX streams.

Definition at line **232** of file **IxAtmTypes.h**.

```
enum IxAtmServiceCategory
```

Enumerated type representing available ATM service categories. For more informatoin on these categories, see "Traffic Management Specification" v4.1, published by the ATM Forum – <http://www.atmforum.com>.

***Enumeration values:***

*IX\_ATM\_CBR* Constant Bit Rate.

*IX\_ATM\_RTVBR* Real Time Variable Bit Rate.

*IX\_ATM\_VBR* Variable Bit Rate.

*IX\_ATM\_UBR* Unspecified Bit Rate.

*IX\_ATM\_ABR* Available Bit Rate (not supported).

Definition at line **206** of file **IxAtmTypes.h**.

# Intel (R) IXP400 Software Security (IxCryptoAcc) API

IXP400 Security component Public API.

## Data Structures

- struct **IxCryptoAccAuthCtx**  
*Structure storing authentication configuration parameters required to perform security functionality.*
- struct **IxCryptoAccCipherCtx**  
*Structure storing cipher configuration parameters required to perform security functionality.*
- struct **IxCryptoAccCtx**  
*Structure storing configuration parameters required to perform security functionality.*
- struct **IxCryptoAccPkeEauBnAddSubMulOperands**  
*Structure storing input operands for large number addition (Carry /  $R = A + B$ ) or subtraction operation (Borrow /  $R = A - B$ ) or multiplication ( $R = A * B$ ).*
- struct **IxCryptoAccPkeEauBnModOperands**  
*Structure storing input operands for large number modular reduction operation ( $R = A \bmod N$ ).*
- union **IxCryptoAccPkeEauInOperands**  
*Union storing input operands required for all EAU operations. These input operands will be supplied to **ixCryptoAccPkeEauPerform** interface to perform EAU functionalities.*
- struct **IxCryptoAccPkeEauModExpOperands**  
*Structure storing input operands for large number modular exponential operation ( $C = M^e \bmod N$ ).*
- struct **IxCryptoAccPkeEauOperand**  
*Structure storing operand / result data pointer and length for EAU functionality performing through **ixCryptoAccPkeEauPerform** interface.*

## Defines

```
#define IX_CRYPTO_ACC_MAX_CIPHER_KEY_LENGTH  
    Max length (byte) of cipher key for DES (64 bit), 3DES (192 bit), AES (128, 192 & 256 bit).
```

```

#define IX_CRYPTO_ACC_MAX_CIPHER_IV_LENGTH
    Max IV length in bytes.

#define IX_CRYPTO_ACC_MAX_AUTH_KEY_LENGTH
    Max length (byte) of authentication key for SHA1 and MD5.

#define IX_CRYPTO_ACC_MAX_AUTH_IV_LENGTH
    Max length (byte) of initial chaining variable for SHA1 (160 bit) and MD5 (128 bit).

#define IX_CRYPTO_ACC_MAX_QUEUE_DEPTH
    Max queue depth supported by the Queue Manager.

#define IX_CRYPTO_ACC_MAX_ACTIVE_SA_TUNNELS
    Maximum active tunnels supported could be changed by the client based on the application's requirements.

#define IX_CRYPTO_ACC_DES_KEY_64
    DES key length in bytes.

#define IX_CRYPTO_ACC_DES_BLOCK_64
    DES cipher block length in bytes.

#define IX_CRYPTO_ACC_DES_IV_64
    DES initialization vector length in bytes.

#define IX_CRYPTO_ACC_3DES_KEY_192
    3DES key length in bytes

#define IX_CRYPTO_ACC_AES_KEY_128
    AES–128 key length in bytes.

#define IX_CRYPTO_ACC_AES_KEY_192
    AES–192 key length in bytes.

#define IX_CRYPTO_ACC_AES_KEY_256
    AES–256 key length in bytes.

#define IX_CRYPTO_ACC_AES_BLOCK_128
    AES cipher block length in bytes.

#define IX_CRYPTO_ACC_AES_CBC_IV_128
    AES initialization vector length in bytes for CBC mode.

#define IX_CRYPTO_ACC_AES_CTR_IV_128
    AES initialization vector length in bytes for CTR mode.

#define IX_CRYPTO_ACC_CCM_AAD_LEN_384
    48 Bytes of additional authenticated data for CBC–MAC computation

```

```

#define IX_CRYPTO_ACC_AES_CCM_IV_512
    CCM Initialization vector has 2 components to it.

#define IX_CRYPTO_ACC_ARC4_KEY_128
    Key length for ARC4 algorithms.

#define IX_CRYPTO_ACC_ARC4_BLOCK_8
    ARC4 algorithm block size.

#define IX_CRYPTO_ACC_SHA1_KEY_160
    SHA1 key length in bytes.

#define IX_CRYPTO_ACC_SHA1_DIGEST_160
    SHA1 message digest length in bytes.

#define IX_CRYPTO_ACC_MD5_KEY_128
    MD5 key length in bytes.

#define IX_CRYPTO_ACC_MD5_DIGEST_128
    MD5 message digest length in bytes.

#define IX_CRYPTO_ACC_CCM_DIGEST_64
    CCM digest length in bytes.

#define IX_CRYPTO_ACC_WEP_CRC_DIGEST_32
    Digest length of WEP ICV in bytes.

#define ixCryptoAccHashPerform
    alias function name to ixCryptoAccHashKeyGenerate

```

## Typedefs

```

typedef
IxCryptoAccPkeEauOperand IxCryptoAccPkeEauOpResult
    Structure storing result of EAU operation.

typedef void(* IxCryptoAccRegisterCompleteCallback )(UINT32 cryptoCtxId,
    IX_OSAL_MBUF *pMbuf, IxCryptoAccStatus status)
    Cryptographic Context registration complete callback notification.

typedef void(* IxCryptoAccHashKeyGenCompleteCallback )(UINT32 hashKeyId,
    IX_OSAL_MBUF *pMbufHashKey, IxCryptoAccStatus status)
    Hash key generation complete callback notification.

typedef void(* IxCryptoAccPerformCompleteCallback )(UINT32 cryptoCtxId,
    IX_OSAL_MBUF *pSrcMbuf, IX_OSAL_MBUF *pDestMbuf,
    IxCryptoAccStatus status)
    Hardware accelerator service request complete callback notification.

```

```
typedef void(* IxCryptoAccPkeHashPerformCompleteCallback )(UINT8 *pDigest,
IxCryptoAccStatus status)
PKE Crypto Engine SHA engine hashing perform complete callback notification.
```

```
typedef void(* IxCryptoAccPkeEauPerformCompleteCallback
)(IxCryptoAccPkeEauOperation operation,
IxCryptoAccPkeEauOpResult *pResult, BOOL carryOrBorrow,
IxCryptoAccStatus status)
EAU perform complete callback notification.
```

## Enumerations

```
enum IxCryptoAccCfg {
    IX_CRYPT0_ACC_CFG_WEP_XSCALE_ACC_EN,
    IX_CRYPT0_ACC_CFG_CRYPT0_NPE_ACC_EN,
    IX_CRYPT0_ACC_CFG_WEP_NPE_ACC_EN,
    IX_CRYPT0_ACC_CFG_CRYPT0_WEP_NPE_ACC_EN,
    IX_CRYPT0_ACC_CFG_TYPE
}
Possible configuration definitions.
```

```
enum IxCryptoAccOperation {
    IX_CRYPT0_ACC_OP_ENCRYPT,
    IX_CRYPT0_ACC_OP_DECRYPT,
    IX_CRYPT0_ACC_OP_AUTH_CALC,
    IX_CRYPT0_ACC_OP_AUTH_CHECK,
    IX_CRYPT0_ACC_OP_ENCRYPT_AUTH,
    IX_CRYPT0_ACC_OP_AUTH_DECRYPT,
    IX_CRYPT0_ACC_OP_TYPE_OF_OPERATION
}
Cryptographic Operation Definitions.
```

```
enum IxCryptoAccCipherAlgo {
    IX_CRYPT0_ACC_CIPHER_NULL,
    IX_CRYPT0_ACC_CIPHER_DES,
    IX_CRYPT0_ACC_CIPHER_3DES,
    IX_CRYPT0_ACC_CIPHER_AES,
    IX_CRYPT0_ACC_CIPHER_ARC4,
    IX_CRYPT0_ACC_CIPHER_ALGO_TYPE
}
Cipher Algorithm Definitions.
```

```
enum IxCryptoAccCipherMode {
    IX_CRYPT0_ACC_MODE_NULL,
    IX_CRYPT0_ACC_MODE_ECB,
    IX_CRYPT0_ACC_MODE_CBC,
    IX_CRYPT0_ACC_MODE_CTR,
    IX_CRYPT0_ACC_MODE_CCM,

```

**IX\_CRYPTO\_ACC\_MODE\_TYPE**

}

*Cipher Mode Definitions.*

enum **IxCryptoAccAuthAlgo** {

**IX\_CRYPTO\_ACC\_AUTH\_NULL,**

**IX\_CRYPTO\_ACC\_AUTH\_SHA1,**

**IX\_CRYPTO\_ACC\_AUTH\_MD5,**

**IX\_CRYPTO\_ACC\_AUTH\_CBC\_MAC,**

**IX\_CRYPTO\_ACC\_AUTH\_WEP\_CRC,**

**IX\_CRYPTO\_ACC\_AUTH\_TYPE**

}

*Authentication Algorithm Definitions.*

enum **IxCryptoAccPkeEauOperation** {

**IX\_CRYPTO\_ACC\_OP\_EAU\_MOD\_EXP,**

**IX\_CRYPTO\_ACC\_OP\_EAU\_BN\_MUL,**

**IX\_CRYPTO\_ACC\_OP\_EAU\_BN\_ADD,**

**IX\_CRYPTO\_ACC\_OP\_EAU\_BN\_MOD,**

**IX\_CRYPTO\_ACC\_OP\_EAU\_BN\_SUB,**

**IX\_CRYPTO\_ACC\_OP\_TYPE\_OF\_EAU\_OPERATION**

}

*EAU (Exponentiation Acceleration Unit) Operation Definitions.*

enum **IxCryptoAccStatus** {

**IX\_CRYPTO\_ACC\_STATUS\_SUCCESS,**

**IX\_CRYPTO\_ACC\_STATUS\_FAIL,**

**IX\_CRYPTO\_ACC\_STATUS\_WAIT,**

**IX\_CRYPTO\_ACC\_STATUS\_RETRY,**

**IX\_CRYPTO\_ACC\_STATUS\_QUEUE\_FULL,**

**IX\_CRYPTO\_ACC\_STATUS\_OPERATION\_NOT\_SUPPORTED,**

**IX\_CRYPTO\_ACC\_STATUS\_CIPHER\_ALGO\_NOT\_SUPPORTED,**

**IX\_CRYPTO\_ACC\_STATUS\_CIPHER\_MODE\_NOT\_SUPPORTED,**

**IX\_CRYPTO\_ACC\_STATUS\_CIPHER\_INVALID\_KEY\_LEN,**

**IX\_CRYPTO\_ACC\_STATUS\_CIPHER\_INVALID\_IV\_LEN,**

**IX\_CRYPTO\_ACC\_STATUS\_CIPHER\_INVALID\_BLOCK\_LEN,**

**IX\_CRYPTO\_ACC\_STATUS\_AUTH\_ALGO\_NOT\_SUPPORTED,**

**IX\_CRYPTO\_ACC\_STATUS\_AUTH\_INVALID\_DIGEST\_LEN,**

**IX\_CRYPTO\_ACC\_STATUS\_AUTH\_INVALID\_KEY\_LEN,**

**IX\_CRYPTO\_ACC\_STATUS\_AUTH\_FAIL,**

**IX\_CRYPTO\_ACC\_STATUS\_CRYPT\_CTX\_NOT\_VALID,**

**IX\_CRYPTO\_ACC\_STATUS\_EXCEED\_MAX\_TUNNELS,**

**IX\_CRYPTO\_ACC\_STATUS\_AUTH\_INVALID\_AAD\_LEN,**

**IX\_CRYPTO\_ACC\_STATUS\_NULL\_PTR\_ERR,**

**IX\_CRYPTO\_ACC\_STATUS\_OUT\_OF\_RANGE\_ERR**

}

*Status Definitions.*



## Functions

**PUBLIC IxCryptoAccStatus ixCryptoAccConfig (IxCryptoAccCfg compCfg)**

*Selects which interfaces need to be initialized when crypto-access init is called.*

**PUBLIC IxCryptoAccStatus ixCryptoAccInit (void)**

*Initialise the Security Access component.*

**PUBLIC IxCryptoAccStatus ixCryptoAccUninit (void)**

*Uninitialise the Security Access component.*

**PUBLIC IxCryptoAccStatus ixCryptoAccCtxRegister (IxCryptoAccCtx \*pAccCtx, IX\_OSAL\_MBUF \*pMbufPrimaryChainVar, IX\_OSAL\_MBUF \*pMbufSecondaryChainVar, IxCryptoAccRegisterCompleteCallback registerCallbackFn, IxCryptoAccPerformCompleteCallback performCallbackFn, UINT32 \*pCryptoCtxId)**

*Crypto context registration. Cryptographic Context ID (cryptoCtxId) for the registered crypto context obtained from this registration request will be used in perform service requests.*

**PUBLIC IxCryptoAccStatus ixCryptoAccCtxUnregister (UINT32 cryptoCtxId)**

*Unregister the crypto context from Cryptographic Context Database.*

**PUBLIC IxCryptoAccStatus ixCryptoAccAuthCryptPerform (UINT32 cryptoCtxId, IX\_OSAL\_MBUF \*pSrcMbuf, IX\_OSAL\_MBUF \*pDestMbuf, UINT16 authStartOffset, UINT16 authDataLen, UINT16 cryptStartOffset, UINT16 cryptDataLen, UINT16 icvOffset, UINT8 \*pIV)**

*Perform Authentication and Decryption/Encryption functionalities.*

**PUBLIC IxCryptoAccStatus ixCryptoAccNpeWepPerform (UINT32 cryptoCtxId, IX\_OSAL\_MBUF \*pSrcMbuf, IX\_OSAL\_MBUF \*pDestMbuf, UINT16 startOffset, UINT16 dataLen, UINT16 icvOffset, UINT8 \*pKey)**

*Function to invoke ARC4 and WEP ICV computations on NPE.*

**PUBLIC IxCryptoAccStatus ixCryptoAccXScaleWepPerform (UINT32 cryptoCtxId, IX\_OSAL\_MBUF \*pSrcMbuf, IX\_OSAL\_MBUF \*pDestMbuf, UINT16 startOffset, UINT16 dataLen, UINT16 icvOffset, UINT8 \*pKey)**

*Function to support ARC4 and WEP ICV computations on Intel XScale(R) Processor.*

**PUBLIC IxCryptoAccStatus ixCryptoAccCtxCipherKeyUpdate (UINT32 cryptoCtxId, UINT8 \*pCipherKey)**

*Change keys for the specified registered context.*

**PUBLIC void ixCryptoAccShow (void)**

*API for printing statistics and status.*

**PUBLIC void ixCryptoAccShowWithId (UINT32 cryptoCtxId)**

*API for printing statistic and status.*

**PUBLIC IxCryptoAccStatus ixCryptoAccCryptoServiceStop** (void)

*Function to stop the crypto services.*

**PUBLIC IxCryptoAccStatus ixCryptoAccHashKeyGenerate** (**IxCryptoAccAuthAlgo** hashAlgo, **IX\_OSAL\_MBUF** \*pMbufHashKey, **IxCryptoAccHashKeyGenCompleteCallback** hashKeyCallbackFn, **UINT16** hashKeyStartOffset, **UINT16** hashKeyLen, **UINT16** hashKeyDestOffset, **UINT32** \*pHashKeyId)

*This function is used to generate authentication key needed in HMAC authentication if the authentication key is greater than 64 bytes. New authentication key of L bytes size will be generated in this function (L = 20 for SHA1, L = 16 for MD5). Please refer to RFC2104 for more details on the key size. The authentication key is padded (extended) so that its length (in bits) is congruent to 448, modulo 512 (please refer to RFC1321 & RFC3174). Authentication key is padded inside cryptoAcc on the mbuf which holds the authentication key. Therefore, mbuf allocated to store authentication key need to take into account the space needed for padding process. Padding space (extra memory allocation) needed is between the range of 9 – 72 bytes, it varies based on the authentication key size specified by client. Minimum of 9 bytes are needed, as 8 bytes is for total length of authentication key (hash data), and 1 bytes is for start of padding indication. The extra padding space is derived from the padding scheme stated in RFC1321 & RFC3174.*

**PUBLIC IxCryptoAccStatus ixCryptoAccPkeHashPerform** (**IxCryptoAccAuthAlgo** hashAlgo, **UINT8** \*pHashData, **UINT32** hashDataLen, **IxCryptoAccPkeHashPerformCompleteCallback** hashPerformCallbackFn, **UINT8** \*pDigest)

*This function is used to hash the input data and return the digest generated via callback function supplied by client. L bytes size of digest will be generated (L = 20 for SHA1). The hash data is padded inside the function so that its length (in bits) is congruent to 448, modulo 512 (please refer to RFC1321). The length of data in bytes to be hashed must be greater than 0.*

**PUBLIC IxCryptoAccStatus ixCryptoAccPkePseudoRandomNumberGet** (**UINT32** pseudoRandomNumberLen, **UINT32** \*pPseudoRandomNumber)

*This function will return the pseudo-random number generated in hardware to the client via the data pointer supplied. The length of pseudo-random number requested must be in words count (pseudoRandomNumberLen >= 1 word). If bigger pseudo-random number is requested, then this function will take longer time to complete.*

**PUBLIC IxCryptoAccStatus ixCryptoAccPkeEauExpConfig** (**BOOL** enableSE, **BOOL** enableFE)

*This function is used to configure short exponent setting (SE – skipping leading 0s while performing modular exponential) and fast exponent setting (FE – skipping all 0s while performing modular exponential) for EAU modular exponential operation. By default, these 2 settings are DISABLED to prevent timing attacks on keys and also ensure best protection on keys. These 2 setting will have direct impact on function call to **ixCryptoAccPkeEauPerform**. Client may change it accordingly to achieve different level of protection and also performance.*

**PUBLIC IxCryptoAccStatus IxCryptoAccPkeEauPerform (IxCryptoAccPkeEauOperation operation, IxCryptoAccPkeEauInOperands \*pOpr, IxCryptoAccPkeEauPerformCompleteCallback eauPerformCallbackFn, IxCryptoAccPkeEauOpResult \*pResult)**

*This function is used to performed large number exponential arithmetic operation requested by client by using EAU (Exponentiation Acceleration Unit) on PKE (Public Key Exchange) Crypto Engine. The result computed will be returned via callback function supplied by client. All the operand size must be specified in words (32-bit), the output data pointer must be big enough to hold the result.*

---

## Detailed Description

IXP400 Security component Public API.

---

## Define Documentation

```
#define IX_CRYPTO_ACC_3DES_KEY_192
```

3DES key length in bytes

Definition at line **106** of file **IxCryptoAcc.h**.

```
#define IX_CRYPTO_ACC_AES_BLOCK_128
```

AES cipher block length in bytes.

Definition at line **123** of file **IxCryptoAcc.h**.

```
#define IX_CRYPTO_ACC_AES_CBC_IV_128
```

AES initialization vector length in bytes for CBC mode.

Definition at line **126** of file **IxCryptoAcc.h**.

```
#define IX_CRYPTO_ACC_AES_CCM_IV_512
```

CCM Initialization vector has 2 components to it.

First is the IV for the CTR mode encryption and second is the additional authentication data for the CBC-MAC generation.

Definition at line **143** of file **IxCryptoAcc.h**.

```
#define IX_CRYPTTO_ACC_AES_CTR_IV_128
```

AES initialization vector length in bytes for CTR mode.

Definition at line **130** of file **IxCryptoAcc.h**.

```
#define IX_CRYPTTO_ACC_AES_KEY_128
```

AES-128 key length in bytes.

Definition at line **114** of file **IxCryptoAcc.h**.

```
#define IX_CRYPTTO_ACC_AES_KEY_192
```

AES-192 key length in bytes.

Definition at line **117** of file **IxCryptoAcc.h**.

```
#define IX_CRYPTTO_ACC_AES_KEY_256
```

AES-256 key length in bytes.

Definition at line **120** of file **IxCryptoAcc.h**.

```
#define IX_CRYPTTO_ACC_ARC4_BLOCK_8
```

ARC4 algorithm block size.

Definition at line **160** of file **IxCryptoAcc.h**.

```
#define IX_CRYPTTO_ACC_ARC4_KEY_128
```

Key length for ARC4 algorithms.

Definition at line **157** of file **IxCryptoAcc.h**.

```
#define IX_CRYPTTO_ACC_CCM_AAD_LEN_384
```

48 Bytes of additional authenticated data for CBC-MAC computation

Currently only this value is supported.

Definition at line **135** of file **IxCryptoAcc.h**.

```
#define IX_CRYPTO_ACC_CCM_DIGEST_64
```

CCM digest length in bytes.

Currently only this value (of 8 bytes) is supported for CCM digest length.

Definition at line **192** of file **IxCryptoAcc.h**.

```
#define IX_CRYPTO_ACC_DES_BLOCK_64
```

DES cipher block length in bytes.

Definition at line **99** of file **IxCryptoAcc.h**.

```
#define IX_CRYPTO_ACC_DES_IV_64
```

DES initialization vector length in bytes.

Definition at line **102** of file **IxCryptoAcc.h**.

```
#define IX_CRYPTO_ACC_DES_KEY_64
```

DES key length in bytes.

Definition at line **96** of file **IxCryptoAcc.h**.

```
#define IX_CRYPTO_ACC_MAX_ACTIVE_SA_TUNNELS
```

Maximum active tunnels supported could be changed by the client based on the application's requirements.

Number of active tunnels will not impact the overall performance but will have an impact on the memory needed to keep the crypto context information. Overall memory requirement depends on the number of tunnels.

Definition at line **75** of file **IxCryptoAcc.h**.

```
#define IX_CRYPTO_ACC_MAX_AUTH_IV_LENGTH
```

Max length (byte) of initial chaining variable for SHA1 (160 bit) and MD5 (128 bit).

Definition at line **65** of file **IxCryptoAcc.h**.

```
#define IX_CRYPTO_ACC_MAX_AUTH_KEY_LENGTH
```

Max length (byte) of authentication key for SHA1 and MD5.

Key size > 64 bytes need to be hashed to produce shorter key by calling API **ixCryptoAccHashKeyGenerate()**. (SHA1 : 20 bytes, MD5 : 16 bytes by default according to RFC2104. If  $L \leq \text{key size} \leq 64$  bytes ( $L=16$  for MD5 &  $20$  for SHA1) authentication key can be used for registration directly. If key size <  $L$ , client will need to pad the key with 0s to length  $L$  before calling **ixCryptoAccCtxRegister()** API.

Definition at line **44** of file **IxCryptoAcc.h**.

```
#define IX_CRYPTO_ACC_MAX_CIPHER_IV_LENGTH
```

Max IV length in bytes.

Definition at line **41** of file **IxCryptoAcc.h**.

```
#define IX_CRYPTO_ACC_MAX_CIPHER_KEY_LENGTH
```

Max length (byte) of cipher key for DES (64 bit), 3DES (192 bit), AES (128, 192 & 256 bit).

Definition at line **35** of file **IxCryptoAcc.h**.

```
#define IX_CRYPTO_ACC_MAX_QUEUE_DEPTH
```

Max queue depth supported by the Queue Manager.

Definition at line **71** of file **IxCryptoAcc.h**.

```
#define IX_CRYPTO_ACC_MD5_DIGEST_128
```

MD5 message digest length in bytes.

Definition at line **184** of file **IxCryptoAcc.h**.

```
#define IX_CRYPTO_ACC_MD5_KEY_128
```

MD5 key length in bytes.

Definition at line **181** of file **IxCryptoAcc.h**.

```
#define IX_CRYPTO_ACC_SHA1_DIGEST_160
```

SHA1 message digest length in bytes.

Definition at line **171** of file **IxCryptoAcc.h**.

```
#define IX_CRYPTO_ACC_SHA1_KEY_160
```

SHA1 key length in bytes.

Definition at line **168** of file **IxCryptoAcc.h**.

```
#define IX_CRYPTO_ACC_WEP_CRC_DIGEST_32
```

Digest length of WEP ICV in bytes.

Definition at line **204** of file **IxCryptoAcc.h**.

```
#define ixCryptoAccHashPerform
```

alias function name to **ixCryptoAccHashKeyGenerate**

Definition at line **1692** of file **IxCryptoAcc.h**.

---

## Typedef Documentation

```
typedef void(* IxCryptoAccHashKeyGenCompleteCallback)( UINT32 hashKeyId, IX_OSAL_MBUF  
*pMbufHashKey, IxCryptoAccStatus status)
```

Hash key generation complete callback notification.

This function is called to notify a client that the hash key has been generated. This function will return the status through the associated hashKeyId once the key is calculated by Network Processor Engine (NPE).

hashKeyId becomes invalid once the notification callback is called.

### **Parameters:**

<i>hashKeyId</i>	UINT32 [in] – This hashKeyId is provided when client sends in request to hash the key.
<i>*pMbufHashKey</i>	[in] – Pointer to the mbuf that contains original key and generated hash key. Client will need to copy the generated hash key from the mbuf into crypto context and used it as hash key for crypto registration request. This mbuf will be freed by client.
<i>status</i>	<b>IxCryptoAccStatus</b> [in] – Status (IxCryptoAccStatus) reporting to client.

**Note:**

◇ IX\_CRYPTO\_ACC\_STATUS\_SUCCESS – hash key generation is successful.

◇ IX\_CRYPTO\_ACC\_STATUS\_FAIL – hash key generation failed.

Definition at line **715** of file **IxCryptoAcc.h**.

```
typedef void(* IxCryptoAccPerformCompleteCallback)( UINT32 cryptoCtxId, IX_OSAL_MBUF
*pSrcMbuf, IX_OSAL_MBUF *pDestMbuf, IxCryptoAccStatus status)
```

Hardware accelerator service request complete callback notification.

This function is called to notify a client that the cryptographic transaction has been completed. The cryptoCtxId and status of completed operation are returned to the client through this callback function to indicate operation which crypto context has been completed. The CryptoCtxId is obtained via ixCryptoAccCtxRegister, and this ID is unique to a particular IPsec tunnel.

**Parameters:**

- cryptoCtxId* UINT32 [in] – This crypto context ID is provided when client sends in request via ixCryptoAccCtxRegister API to register crypto context. cryptoCtxId points to a struct consists of cryptographic parameters required by the Network Processor Engine (NPE) in CCD database.
- \*pSrcMbuf* [in] – Pointer to the source mbuf which contains the data to be processed. It is also the output mbuf which contains the processed data if UseDifferentSrcAndDestMbufs is FALSE.
- \*pDestMbuf* [in] – Only used if UseDifferentSrcAndDestMbufs is TRUE. Pointer to the output mbuf which contains processed data.
- status* **IxCryptoAccStatus** [in] – Status reporting to the client via IxCryptoAccStatus.

**Note:**

◇ IX\_CRYPTO\_ACC\_STATUS\_SUCCESS – Operation is completed successfully.

◇ IX\_CRYPTO\_ACC\_STATUS\_FAIL – Operation failed.

◇ IX\_CRYPTO\_ACC\_STATUS\_AUTH\_FAIL – Authentication is unsuccessful. Note that when authentication fails, the content of the destination mbuf (which is the same as the source mbuf if a normal in-place operation is performed) will be undetermined.

Definition at line **756** of file **IxCryptoAcc.h**.

```
typedef IxCryptoAccPkeEauOperand IxCryptoAccPkeEauOpResult
```

Structure storing result of EAU operation.

Definition at line **586** of file **IxCryptoAcc.h**.



```
typedef void(* IxCryptoAccPkeEauPerformCompleteCallback)( IxCryptoAccPkeEauOperation operation,
IxCryptoAccPkeEauOpResult *pResult, BOOL carryOrBorrow, IxCryptoAccStatus status)
```

EAU perform complete callback notification.

This function is called to notify a client that the result from EAU operation is ready. This function will return the status, result computed (**IxCryptoAccPkeEauOpResult**) and carry/borrow flag as a result of add/sub operation.

**Parameters:**

<i>operation</i>	<b>IxCryptoAccPkeEauOperation</b> [in] – EAU operation performed.
<i>*pResult</i>	<b>IxCryptoAccPkeEauOpResult</b> [in] – pointer to a structure which store EAU operation result.
<i>carryOrBorrow</i>	BOOL [in] – carry/borrow bit status as resulted from large number addition/subtraction operation.
<i>status</i>	<b>IxCryptoAccStatus</b> [in] – Status ( <b>IxCryptoAccStatus</b> ) reporting to client.

**Note:**

- ◇ IX\_CRYPTACC\_STATUS\_SUCCESS – EAU operation is successful.
- ◇ IX\_CRYPTACC\_STATUS\_FAIL – EAU operation failed.

Definition at line **810** of file **IxCryptoAcc.h**.

```
typedef void(* IxCryptoAccPkeHashPerformCompleteCallback)( UINT8 *pDigest, IxCryptoAccStatus
status)
```

PKE Crypto Engine SHA engine hashing perform complete callback notification.

This function is called to notify a client that the digest from hashing on AHB–SHA engine in PKE Crypto Engine has been generated. This function will return the status and digest calculated.

**Parameters:**

<i>*pDigest</i>	UINT8 [in] – Pointer to the flat buffer that contains computed digest.
<i>status</i>	<b>IxCryptoAccStatus</b> [in] – Status ( <b>IxCryptoAccStatus</b> ) reporting to client.

**Note:**

- ◇ IX\_CRYPTACC\_STATUS\_SUCCESS – hash digest generation is successful.
- ◇ IX\_CRYPTACC\_STATUS\_FAIL – hash digest generation failed.

Definition at line **782** of file **IxCryptoAcc.h**.

```
typedef void(* IxCryptoAccRegisterCompleteCallback)( UINT32 cryptoCtxId, IX_OSAL_MBUF *pMbuf,
IxCryptoAccStatus status)
```

Cryptographic Context registration complete callback notification.

This function is called to notify a client that the Crypto Context has been registered. This function returns status through the associated cryptoCtxId once the initial values needed are calculated by Network Processor Engine (NPE) and stored in Cryptographic Context Database (CCD).

The CryptoCtxId is valid until ixCryptoAccCtxUnregister is invoked.

If the callback function returns the IX\_CRYPTO\_ACC\_STATUS\_WAIT status, it indicates that registration is not complete yet, but the mbuf pointer needs to be freed by client. Client needs to wait for the next completion indication. Registration complete successfully only if status IX\_CRYPTO\_ACC\_STATUS\_SUCCESS is received.

**Parameters:**

*cryptoCtxId* UINT32 [in] – This crypto context ID is provided when client sends in request via ixCryptoAccCtxRegister API to register crypto context. cryptoCtxId points to a struct consists of cryptographic parameters required by the Network Processor Engine (NPE) in CCD database.

*\*pMbuf* [in] – Pointer to the mbuf (to be freed by client). The client should free any mbuf that is not NULL.

*status* **IXCryptoAccStatus** [in] – Status (IXCryptoAccStatus) reporting to client.

**Note:**

- ◇ IX\_CRYPTO\_ACC\_STATUS\_SUCCESS – registration is successful.
- ◇ IX\_CRYPTO\_ACC\_STATUS\_FAIL – registration failed.
- ◇ IX\_CRYPTO\_ACC\_STATUS\_WAIT – registration is not complete yet, wait for next completion indication. NPE is busy in calculating the initial variables needed for the registration.

Definition at line 683 of file **IxCryptoAcc.h**.

---

## Enumeration Type Documentation

enum IxCryptoAccAuthAlgo

Authentication Algorithm Definitions.

**Note:**

Only two authentication algorithms are supported, SHA1 and MD5 for IPSEC application, while WEP\_CRC is only for WEP application.

Only SHA1 is supported in AHB-SHA engine in PKE Crypto Engine

**Enumeration values:**

<i>IX_CRYPTO_ACC_AUTH_NULL</i>	NULL authentication.
<i>IX_CRYPTO_ACC_AUTH_SHA1</i>	SHA1 algorithm.

<i>IX_CRYPTO_ACC_AUTH_MD5</i>	MD5 algorithm.
<i>IX_CRYPTO_ACC_AUTH_CBC_MAC</i>	CBC MAC algorithm only applicable along with CCM cipher mode.
<i>IX_CRYPTO_ACC_AUTH_WEP_CRC</i>	WEP CRC algorithm.
<i>IX_CRYPTO_ACC_AUTH_TYPE</i>	Maximum value for types of authentication algorithm.

Definition at line **345** of file **IxCryptoAcc.h**.

## enum IxCryptoAccCfg

Possible configuration definitions.

### **Note:**

Enums to define various possible configurations.

PKE acceleration support (by using EAU, RNG and AHB–SHA engines) is enabled by default if the silicone variants support that.

### **Enumeration values:**

<i>IX_CRYPTO_ACC_CFG_WEP_XSCALE_ACC_EN</i>	Enable access to WEP Intel XScale(R) Processor processing only.
<i>IX_CRYPTO_ACC_CFG_CRYPTONPE_ACC_EN</i>	Access to WEP–NPE and hardware accelerators are disabled Enable access to Hardware accelerators (WEP Intel XScale(R) Processor is also enabled).
<i>IX_CRYPTO_ACC_CFG_WEP_NPE_ACC_EN</i>	This is the default configuration for the cryptoAcc component. Enable access to WEP NPE and Intel XScale(R) Processor.
<i>IX_CRYPTO_ACC_CFG_CRYPTOWEP_NPE_ACC_EN</i>	Enable access to the Hardware accelerators, WEP – NPE and Intel XScale(R) Processor.
<i>IX_CRYPTO_ACC_CFG_TYPE</i>	Maximum value for types of configurations.

Definition at line **223** of file **IxCryptoAcc.h**.

## enum IxCryptoAccCipherAlgo

Cipher Algorithm Definitions.

### **Note:**

3DES and AES will be supported if not violating import/export rules.

**Enumeration values:**

<i>IX_CRYPTO_ACC_CIPHER_NULL</i>	NULL encryption.
<i>IX_CRYPTO_ACC_CIPHER_DES</i>	DES algorithm.
<i>IX_CRYPTO_ACC_CIPHER_3DES</i>	Triple DES algorithm.
<i>IX_CRYPTO_ACC_CIPHER_AES</i>	AES algorithm.
<i>IX_CRYPTO_ACC_CIPHER_ARC4</i>	ARC4 Algorithm.
<i>IX_CRYPTO_ACC_CIPHER_ALGO_TYPE</i>	Maximum value for types of cipher algorithm.

Definition at line **294** of file **IxCryptoAcc.h**.

```
enum IxCryptoAccCipherMode
```

Cipher Mode Definitions.

**Note:**

CFB and OFB are not supported.

**Enumeration values:**

<i>IX_CRYPTO_ACC_MODE_NULL</i>	NULL cipher mode.
<i>IX_CRYPTO_ACC_MODE_ECB</i>	ECB mode of operation.
<i>IX_CRYPTO_ACC_MODE_CBC</i>	CBC mode of operation.
<i>IX_CRYPTO_ACC_MODE_CTR</i>	CTR mode of operation, only applicable to AES.
<i>IX_CRYPTO_ACC_MODE_CCM</i>	CCM mode of operation, only applicable with AES cipher Algo.
<i>IX_CRYPTO_ACC_MODE_TYPE</i>	Maximum value for types of operation.

Definition at line **316** of file **IxCryptoAcc.h**.

```
enum IxCryptoAccOperation
```

Cryptographic Operation Definitions.

**Enumeration values:**

<i>IX_CRYPTO_ACC_OP_ENCRYPT</i>	Encrypt operation.
<i>IX_CRYPTO_ACC_OP_DECRYPT</i>	Decrypt operation.
<i>IX_CRYPTO_ACC_OP_AUTH_CALC</i>	Authentication calculation operation.
<i>IX_CRYPTO_ACC_OP_AUTH_CHECK</i>	Authentication verification operation.
<i>IX_CRYPTO_ACC_OP_ENCRYPT_AUTH</i>	Encryption followed by authentication calculation operation.
<i>IX_CRYPTO_ACC_OP_AUTH_DECRYPT</i>	Authentication verification followed by decryption.
<i>IX_CRYPTO_ACC_OP_TYPE_OF_OPERATION</i>	Maximum value for types of operation.

Definition at line **258** of file **IxCryptoAcc.h**.

## enum IxCryptoAccPkeEauOperation

EAU (Exponentiation Acceleration Unit) Operation Definitions.

### **Enumeration values:**

<i>IX_CRYPTO_ACC_OP_EAU_MOD_EXP</i>	Modular exponential operation.
<i>IX_CRYPTO_ACC_OP_EAU_BN_MUL</i>	Large number multiplication operation.
<i>IX_CRYPTO_ACC_OP_EAU_BN_ADD</i>	Large number addition operation.
<i>IX_CRYPTO_ACC_OP_EAU_BN_MOD</i>	Large number modular reduction operation.
<i>IX_CRYPTO_ACC_OP_EAU_BN_SUB</i>	Large number subtraction operation.
<i>IX_CRYPTO_ACC_OP_TYPE_OF_EAU_OPERATION</i>	Maximum value for types of EAU operation.

Definition at line **367** of file **IxCryptoAcc.h**.

## enum IxCryptoAccStatus

Status Definitions.

### **Note:**

These status will be used by the APIs to return to the client.

### **Enumeration values:**

<i>IX_CRYPTO_ACC_STATUS_SUCCESS</i>	Success status.
<i>IX_CRYPTO_ACC_STATUS_FAIL</i>	Fail status.
<i>IX_CRYPTO_ACC_STATUS_WAIT</i>	Wait status.
<i>IX_CRYPTO_ACC_STATUS_RETRY</i>	Retry status.
<i>IX_CRYPTO_ACC_STATUS_QUEUE_FULL</i>	Queue full.
<i>IX_CRYPTO_ACC_STATUS_OPERATION_NOT_SUPPORTED</i>	Invalid operation.
<i>IX_CRYPTO_ACC_STATUS_CIPHER_ALGO_NOT_SUPPORTED</i>	Invalid cipher algorithm.
<i>IX_CRYPTO_ACC_STATUS_CIPHER_MODE_NOT_SUPPORTED</i>	Invalid cipher mode of operation.
<i>IX_CRYPTO_ACC_STATUS_CIPHER_INVALID_KEY_LEN</i>	Invalid cipher key length.
<i>IX_CRYPTO_ACC_STATUS_CIPHER_INVALID_IV_LEN</i>	Invalid IV length.
<i>IX_CRYPTO_ACC_STATUS_CIPHER_INVALID_BLOCK_LEN</i>	Invalid cipher block length.
<i>IX_CRYPTO_ACC_STATUS_AUTH_ALGO_NOT_SUPPORTED</i>	Invalid authentication algorithm.
<i>IX_CRYPTO_ACC_STATUS_AUTH_INVALID_DIGEST_LEN</i>	Invalid message digest length.
<i>IX_CRYPTO_ACC_STATUS_AUTH_INVALID_KEY_LEN</i>	Invalid authentication key length.
<i>IX_CRYPTO_ACC_STATUS_AUTH_FAIL</i>	Authentication verification failed.
<i>IX_CRYPTO_ACC_STATUS_CRYPTO_CTX_NOT_VALID</i>	Invalid crypto context ID.
<i>IX_CRYPTO_ACC_STATUS_EXCEED_MAX_TUNNELS</i>	Exceed maximum number of crypto contexts allocation.

<i>IX_CRYPTO_ACC_STATUS_AUTH_INVALID_AAD_LEN</i>	Invalid additional authentication length.
<i>IX_CRYPTO_ACC_STATUS_NULL_PTR_ERR</i>	buffer pointer or callback function pointer is NULL
<i>IX_CRYPTO_ACC_STATUS_OUT_OF_RANGE_ERR</i>	Operand size or buffer size is less than minimum size allowed or greater than maximum size allowed.

Definition at line 398 of file **IxCryptoAcc.h**.

## Function Documentation

```

IxCryptoAccStatus ixCryptoAccAuthCryptPerform (
    UINT32          cryptoCtxId,
    IX_OSAL_MBUF * pSrcMbuf,
    IX_OSAL_MBUF * pDestMbuf,
    UINT16          authStartOffset,
    UINT16          authDataLen,
    UINT16          cryptStartOffset,
    UINT16          cryptDataLen,
    UINT16          icvOffset,
    UINT8 *         pIV
)

```

Perform Authentication and Decryption/Encryption functionalities.

This function is called for authentication and decryption/encryption functionalities service request. For a combined encryption and authentication request with cipher algorithms as AES or DES and authentication algorithm as MD5 and SHA1 the following restriction must be met: That the crypted data must be a subset of the authenticated data. The boundary relationship of [(authStartOffset + authDataLen) >= (cryptDataLen + cryptStartOffset) >= (cryptStartOffset >= authStartOffset)] MUST BE SATISFIED. There should not be any chained mbuf boundary within an ICV field.

For performing ARC4 and WEP ICV computations call the ixCryptoAccNpeWepPerform or ixCryptoAccXScaleWepPerform functions. The ARC4 and WEP ICV operations are not supported by this function.

A valid cryptoCtxId must be obtained via **ixCryptoAccCtxRegister** API in order to proceed to perform the functionalities above.

### Parameters:

<i>cryptoCtxId</i>	UINT32 [in] – is the crypto context pointer to be supplied by the client. This cryptoCtxId is obtained via ixCryptoAccCtxRegister. The cryptoCtxId must be a valid Id.
<i>*pSrcMbuf</i>	[in] – is a pointer to mbuf which contains data to be processed. This mbuf structure is allocated by client. Result of this request will be stored in the same mbuf and overwritten the original data if UseDifferentSrcAndDestMbufs flag in <b>IxCryptoAccCtx</b> is set to FALSE (in-place operation). Otherwise, if

UseDifferentSrcAndDestMbufs flag is set to TRUE, the result will be written into destination mbuf (non in-place operation) and the original data in this mbuf will remain unchanged. The same pointer is then returned to the client via registered IxCryptoAccPerformCompleteCallback callback function.

<i>*pDestMbuf</i>	[in] – only used if UseDifferentSrcAndDestMbufs is TRUE. This is the buffer where the result is written to. This mbuf structure is allocated by client. The length of mbuf MUST be big enough to hold the result of operation. The result of operation COULD NOT span into two or more different mbufs, thus the mbuf supplied must be at least the length of expected result. The same pointer is then returned to the client via registered IxCryptoAccPerformCompleteCallback callback function. The data is written back at the 'authStartOffset', if it's a authentication only or a combined request. If it's a crypt only request the data is written starting from 'cryptStartOffset'.
<i>authStartOffset</i>	UINT16 [in] – supplied by the client to indicate the start of the payload to be authenticated. Ignored when performing request with Cipher Mode set to CCM.
<i>authDataLen</i>	UINT16 [in] – supplied by the client to indicate the length of the payload to be authenticated in Bytes. The maximum data length must not exceed 65471 bytes. Ignored when performing request with Cipher Mode set to CCM.
<i>cryptStartOffset</i>	UINT16 [in] – supplied by the client to indicate the start of the payload to be decrypted/encrypted.
<i>cryptDataLen</i>	UINT16 [in] – supplied by the client to indicate the length of the payload to be decrypted/encrypted in Bytes. The payload to be decrypted/encrypted must have the length that is multiple of cipher block length in size.
<i>icvOffset</i>	UINT16 [in] – supplied by the client to indicate the start of the ICV (Integrity Check Value) used for the authentication. This ICV field should not be split across multiple mbufs in a chained mbuf.
<i>*pIV</i>	UINT8 [in] – Initialization Vector supplied by the client to be used for the decryption/encryption processes. For CCM mode of operation, this parameter points to the CTR-IV followed by the 16 bytes of initial block (called – B0, in RFC 3610 and CCM Initial block in 802.11i spec), followed by additional authentication data (lengths – defined in respective standards).

**Returns:**

- ◇ IX\_CRYPTO\_ACC\_STATUS\_SUCCESS – Operation requested is successfully enqueued to hardware accelerator for processing.
- ◇ IX\_CRYPTO\_ACC\_STATUS\_FAIL – Cryptographic process failed for some unspecified internal reasons.
- ◇ IX\_CRYPTO\_ACC\_STATUS\_QUEUE\_FULL – Cryptographic queue is full.
- ◇ IX\_CRYPTO\_ACC\_STATUS\_CIPHER\_INVALID\_BLOCK\_LEN – Invalid plaintext / ciphertext block size passed in by the client.
- ◇ IX\_CRYPTO\_ACC\_STATUS\_CRYPT\_CTX\_NOT\_VALID – Crypto context is not registered.

**Note:**

- ◇ Client shall handle IP mutable fields.

- ◇ Client shall pad the IP datagram to be a multiple of cipher block size, using ESP trailer for encryption (RFC2406, explicit padding)
- ◇ NPE shall pad the IP datagram to be a multiple of hashing block size, specified by the authentication algorithm (RFC2402, implicit padding)
- ◇ For authentication generation operation, client needs to clear the field which hold the authentication data (ICV) to zeroes. While for the authentication verification operation, client needs to supply the authentication data at the ICV field for NPE to verify the ICV value. If ICV is embedded in the payload, client DOES NOT need to move the ICV to the front / the back of the payload and clear the original ICV field. cryptoAcc access component will handle this.
- ◇ Client shall construct the AES CTR counter block (4 bytes NONCE + 8 bytes IV + 4 bytes counter). CTR counter block implementation should be based on internet draft / RFC for IPSEC AES CTR mode recommendation, which can be found at IETF website, [www.ietf.org](http://www.ietf.org). Counter block will be passed in as IV in this case.
- ◇ Depending upon the operating system and task switching mechanism, the operation might "seem" to complete before this function returns to the caller. However, the return status with value success only implies that the request was successfully enqueued to the hardware accelerator. The call of performCallBackFn indicates the completion of operation by the hardware engine.

#### Assumption:

- Different clients should NOT hold the same crypto context. All the requests for same crypto context should be initiated from same client (thread).
- This function is reentrant, and the client could submit multiple requests for the same crypto context.
- Reentrant : yes
- ISR Callable : yes

#### **IxCryptoAccStatus** ixCryptoAccConfig ( **IxCryptoAccCfg** compCfg )

Selects which interfaces need to be initialized when crypto-access init is called.

This function will set the configuration bits for initializing the interfaces to the Hardware Accelerator engines on NPE-C and WEP Encryption engine on the WAN-NPE. If this function is not called then, only the Hardware Accelerator engine is initialized by default in the crypto-access init function. This function should be called prior to call ixCryptoAccInit function.

Consideration on using WEP encryption engine on Intel XScale(R) Processor & WAN-NPE

##### 1. Enabling WEP encryption engine on Intel XScale(R) Processor

###### Pros:

- i. Higher throughput compared to WEP running on WAN-NPE.
- ii. Still can process WEP request on Intel XScale(R) Processor if WEP engine on WAN-NPE is not available due to hardware is not present or some interfaces(e.g. ATM/HSS/DMA) on the NPE that is being used.

###### Cons:

- i. Lesser memory headroom and CPU bandwidth on Intel XScale(R) Processor for application stack.

Note: By default WEP encryption engine on Intel XScale(R) Processor is always enabled for all options.



## 2. Enabling WEP encryption engine on WAN-NPE

### Pros:

- i. Can process WEP request via WEP engines on both Intel XScale(R) Processor and WAN-NPE.

### Cons:

- i. Whole WAN-NPE is dedicated for WEP processing, no other interfaces (such as ATM, HSS, DMA) can be enabled for this case.
- ii. Lower throughput rate compared to WEP on Intel XScale(R) Processor due to NPE core running at lower frequency compared to Intel XScale(R) Processor.

Note: By default WEP encryption on WAN NPE is disabled.

### **Note:**

PKE acceleration support (by using EAU, RNG and AHB-SHA engines) is enabled by default if the network processor on the system has PKE bridge. Client does not need to enable it explicitly.

### **Parameters:**

*compCfg*

**IxCryptoAccCfg** [in] – Indicates the appropriate interfaces to be initialized for cryptoAcc access component.

### **Returns:**

- ◇ IX\_CRYPTO\_ACC\_STATUS\_SUCCESS – Setting the configuration was successful.
- ◇ IX\_CRYPTO\_ACC\_STATUS\_FAIL – The configuration setting was invalid.
- ◇ Reentrant : no
- ◇ ISR Callable : yes

## **IxCryptoAccStatus** ixCryptoAccCryptoServiceStop ( void )

Function to stop the crypto services.

### **Warning:**

**THIS FUNCTION HAS BEEN DEPRECATED AND SHOULD NOT BE USED.** It will be removed in future release. See **ixCryptoAccUninit** for more information.

This function is called to stop the Hardware Accelerator services and (if enabled) WEP engine services. All the requests pending in queues will be completed before the services are shutdown. Any new requests issued after this call will be rejected. All the Crypto Contexts will be unregistered in this function call.

### **Returns:**

- ◇ IX\_CRYPTO\_ACC\_STATUS\_SUCCESS – Operation requested is successful with all the pending requests are completed and CCD is cleared.
- ◇ IX\_CRYPTO\_ACC\_STATUS\_FAIL – Cryptographic stop request failed for some unspecified internal reasons.
- ◇ Reentrant : no
- ◇ ISR Callable : no

```

IxCryptoAccStatus ixCryptoAccCtxCipherKeyUpdate ( UINT32  cryptoCtxId,
                                                    UINT8 * pCipherKey
                                                    )

```

Change keys for the specified registered context.

This function is called to change the key value of a previously registered context. Key change for a registered context is only supported for CCM cipher mode. This is done in order to quickly change keys for CCM mode, without going through the process of context deregistration and registration. Changes to the key lengths are not allowed for a registered context. This function should only be used if one is invoking cryptographic operations using CCM as cipher mode. For contexts registered with other modes the client should unregister and re-register a context for the particular security association in order to change keys and other parameters. The client should make sure that there are no pending requests on the "cryptoCtxId" for the key change to happen successfully. If there are pending requests on this context the result of those operations are undefined.

**Parameters:**

*cryptoCtxId*  UINT32 [in] – The previously registered context id. This context should be registered for CCM cipher mode. Keys updates for other types of registered cipher modes are not supported at this time.

*\*pCipherKey*  UINT8 [in] – The new key value. The number of bytes expected in keys is the "cipherKeyLen" used during the registration of the context.

**Returns:**

- ◇ IX\_CRYPTO\_ACC\_STATUS\_SUCCESS : Keys were changed successfully.
- ◇ IX\_CRYPTO\_ACC\_STATUS\_CRYPTO\_CTX\_NOT\_VALID: cryptoCtxId is not valid.
- ◇ IX\_CRYPTO\_ACC\_STATUS\_OPERATION\_NOT\_SUPPORTED: Returned when the context is not registered for doing operations on NPE C or if the operation was anything other than CCM.
- ◇ IX\_CRYPTO\_ACC\_STATUS\_FAIL: If the component has not been initialized.
- ◇ Reentrant : yes
- ◇ ISR Callable : yes

```

IxCryptoAccStatus ixCryptoAccCtxRegister ( IxCryptoAccCtx *
                                                    pAccCtx,
                                                    IX_OSAL_MBUF *
                                                    pMbufPrimaryChainVar,
                                                    IX_OSAL_MBUF *
                                                    pMbufSecondaryChainVar,
                                                    IxCryptoAccRegisterCompleteCallback registerCallbackFn,
                                                    IxCryptoAccPerformCompleteCallback performCallbackFn,
                                                    UINT32 *
                                                    pCryptoCtxId
                                                    )

```

Crypto context registration. Cryptographic Context ID (cryptoCtxId) for the registered crypto context obtained from this registration request will be used in perform service requests.

This function is used to register all the required information (eg. key, cipher algorithm, etc) for hardware accelerator services with IxCryptoAcc component. Those information will be stored in CCD database. All the information will be converted into a cryptographic parameters structure to be shared with NPE. The structure will be associated with a unique crypto context ID (cryptoCtxId). cryptoCtxId is passed back to client for future reference in callback function and also for hardware accelerator service requests. Besides, two empty mbuf are required to be passed in through interface for the use of access component and NPE to compute the primary and secondary initial chaining variables. pMbufPrimaryChainVar and pMbufSecondaryChainVar mbuf pointers must be NULL if authentication or combined service is not selected. When initializing authentication context for WEP CRC (i.e when auth algo is IX\_CRYPTO\_ACC\_AUTH\_WEP\_CRC), variables authKeyLen and keys should be ignored. The authDigestLen should be set to IX\_CRYPTO\_ACC\_WEP\_CRC\_DIGEST\_32.

Client should send in perform service request based on the crypto context registered. 2 different applications are supported by calling different perform functions as below:

1. If the crypto context is registered for crypto hardware accelerator service (DES, 3DES, AES, MD5, SHA1), client could only call the crypto hw accelerator perform function listed below:  
ixCryptoAccAuthCryptPerform ()
2. If the crypto context is registered for WEP services (WEP\_ARC4, WEP\_CRC), client could only call the WEP perform functions listed below: ixCryptoAccNpeWepPerform () ixCryptoAccXScaleWepPerform ()

**Note:**

3 scenarios of crypto context registration depending on authentication key size (in bytes) (only applicable to HMAC-SHA1 and HMAC-MD5): 1. If ( $L \leq \text{key size} \leq 64$ ), then call this API (ixCryptoAccCtxRegister) directly.  $L = 16$  for MD5 and  $L = 20$  for SHA1. 2. If ( $\text{key size} > 64$ ), then authentication key needs to be hashed to become shorter key first by calling another API ixCryptoAccHashKeyGenerate (). Please follow steps below for this case

- ◇ Call ixCryptoAccHashKeyGenerate () to hash the authentication key
- ◇ Wait for the callback from ixCryptoAccHashKeyGenerate (). Copy generated authentication key from mbuf into **IxCryptoAccCtx** as authentication key.
- ◇ Call this API (ixCryptoAccCtxRegister) to register the context.

3. If ( $\text{key size} < L$ ), client MUST pad the authentication key with 0s to become L bytes of key before calling this API (ixCryptoAccCtxRegister).

Context registration concept is not applicable to PKE acceleration operations (such as EAU perform, Pseudo-random Number Get, PKE SHA engine hashing).

**Parameters:**

\*pAccCtx

**IxCryptoAccCtx** [in] – is a pointer to hardware accelerator context. Information required in hardware accelerator context, such as key and algorithm configuration can be extracted from Security Association Database (SAD). Important Note: When the crypt algorithm is ARC4, the keys supplied during the registration process are ignored. The caller should pass the per packet keys in the ixCryptoAccXScaleWepPerform function's pIV parameter.

<i>*pMbufPrimaryChainVar</i>	[in] – a pointer to an empty mbuf(must not be chained) for the use of access component to compute primary chaining variables for SHA1/MD5. This mbuf structure is allocated by the client (minimum size of the cluster required is 64 bytes), only if SHA1/MD5 is selected, and the mbuf pointer must be NULL if SHA1/MD5 is not selected. After the NPE complete the computation, the mbuf is returned separately through the client's registered callback.
<i>*pMbufSecondaryChainVar</i>	[in] – a pointer to an empty mbuf(must not be chained) for the use of access component to compute secondary chaining variables for SHA1/MD5. This mbuf structure is allocated by the client (minimum size of the cluster required is 64 bytes), only if SHA1/MD5 is selected, and the mbuf pointer must be NULL if SHA1/MD5 is not selected. After the NPE complete the computation, the mbuf is returned separately through the client's registered callback.
<i>registerCallbackFn</i>	<b>IXCryptoAccRegisterCompleteCallback</b> [in] – callback function pointer to return crypto context registration status to client when the registration is complete. This cannot be NULL.
<i>performCallbackFn</i>	<b>IXCryptoAccPerformCompleteCallback</b> [in] – callback function pointer to return the processed buffer to the client with respect to the unique CryptoCtxId. This cannot be NULL, however this function will not be called if its the requested to be executed by the engine running on Intel XScale(R) Processor.
<i>*pCryptoCtxId</i>	UINT32 [inout] – Crypto Context ID returned by access component for the crypto context registered.

**Returns:**

- ◇ IX\_CRYPTO\_ACC\_STATUS\_SUCCESS – Registration parameters are valid
- ◇ IX\_CRYPTO\_ACC\_STATUS\_FAIL – Registration failed for some unspecified internal reasons.
- ◇ IX\_CRYPTO\_ACC\_STATUS\_OPERATION\_NOT\_SUPPORTED – Invalid operation requested by the client.
- ◇ IX\_CRYPTO\_ACC\_STATUS\_CIPHER\_ALGO\_NOT\_SUPPORTED – Invalid cipher algorithm requested by the client.
- ◇ IX\_CRYPTO\_ACC\_STATUS\_CIPHER\_MODE\_NOT\_SUPPORTED – Invalid cipher mode requested by the client.
- ◇ IX\_CRYPTO\_ACC\_STATUS\_CIPHER\_INVALID\_KEY\_LEN – Invalid cipher key length passed in by the client.
- ◇ IX\_CRYPTO\_ACC\_STATUS\_CIPHER\_INVALID\_BLOCK\_LEN – Invalid cipher block

length passed in by the client

- ◇ IX\_CRYPT0\_ACC\_STATUS\_CIPHER\_INVALID\_IV\_LEN – Invalid IV length passed in by the client.
- ◇ IX\_CRYPT0\_ACC\_STATUS\_AUTH\_ALGO\_NOT\_SUPPORTED – Invalid authentication algorithm requested by the client.
- ◇ IX\_CRYPT0\_ACC\_STATUS\_AUTH\_INVALID\_DIGEST\_LEN – Invalid authentication digest length.
- ◇ IX\_CRYPT0\_ACC\_STATUS\_AUTH\_INVALID\_KEY\_LEN – Invalid authentication key length.
- ◇ IX\_CRYPT0\_ACC\_STATUS\_EXCEED\_MAX\_TUNNELS – Exceed maximum tunnels permitted.
- ◇ IX\_CRYPT0\_ACC\_STATUS\_QUEUE\_FULL – Queue full status returned and the registration request will be rejected.
- ◇ Reentrant : yes
- ◇ ISR Callable : no

### **IxCryptoAccStatus** ixCryptoAccCtxUnregister ( UINT32 *cryptoCtxId* )

Unregister the crypto context from Cryptographic Context Database.

This function is for freeing the particular crypto context (reference through CryptoCtxId) from the Cryptographic Context Database.

#### **Parameters:**

*cryptoCtxId*            UINT32 [in] – is pointer to crypto context that is required to be freed, which will be supplied by the client. The CryptoCtxId must be a valid Id.

#### **Returns:**

- ◇ IX\_CRYPT0\_ACC\_STATUS\_SUCCESS – successfully unregister the crypto context.
- ◇ IX\_CRYPT0\_ACC\_STATUS\_FAIL – Unregistration failed for some unspecified internal reasons, e.g. uninitialized.
- ◇ IX\_CRYPT0\_ACC\_STATUS\_CRYPT0\_CTX\_NOT\_VALID – invalid crypto context.
- ◇ IX\_CRYPT0\_ACC\_STATUS\_RETRY – retry the unregister operation as there are still some ixCryptoAccAuthCryptPerform requests associated with the cryptoCtxId pending on the NPE queue.
- ◇ Reentrant : yes
- ◇ ISR Callable : no

#### **Assumption:**

- It is client's responsibility to ensure no pending requests for the crypto context before it proceeds to

unregister the crypto context.

<b>IxCryptoAccStatus</b>	( <b>IxCryptoAccAuthAlgo</b>	<i>hashAlgo,</i>
<b>ixCryptoAccHashKeyGenerate</b>	<i>IX_OSAL_MBUF *</i>	<i>pMbufHashKey,</i>
	<b>IxCryptoAccHashKeyGenCompleteCallback</b>	<i>hashKeyCallbackFn,</i>
	<i>UINT16</i>	<i>hashKeyStartOffset,</i>
	<i>UINT16</i>	<i>hashKeyLen,</i>
	<i>UINT16</i>	<i>hashKeyDestOffset,</i>
	<i>UINT32 *</i>	<i>pHashKeyId</i>
	)	

This function is used to generate authentication key needed in HMAC authentication if the authentication key is greater than 64 bytes. New authentication key of L bytes size will be generated in this function (L = 20 for SHA1, L = 16 for MD5). Please refer to RFC2104 for more details on the key size. The authentication key is padded (extended) so that its length (in bits) is congruent to 448, modulo 512 (please refer to RFC1321 & RFC3174). Authentication key is padded inside cryptoAcc on the mbuf which holds the authentication key. Therefore, mbuf allocated to store authentication key need to take into account the space needed for padding process. Padding space (extra memory allocation) needed is between the range of 9 – 72 bytes, it varies based on the authentication key size specified by client. Minimum of 9 bytes are needed, as 8 bytes is for total length of authentication key (hash data), and 1 bytes is for start of padding indication. The extra padding space is derived from the padding scheme stated in RFC1321 & RFC3174.

This function has been extended to become a generic hashing function other than above mentioned functionality. It could be used to hash any key size or data that are greater than 0 and less than 65399 bytes. **In order to map to extention of functioality, this function has been aliased to a name **ixCryptoAccHashPerform**.** The hashing operation is carried out by NPE. The request will be sent to NPE for further processing.

**Note:**

1. This API will need to be called if the authentication key > 64 bytes. If key size is  $\geq L$  and  $\leq 64$  bytes, authentication key is used directly in Crypto context for registration, no further hashing is needed.
2. This function must be called prior the Crypto Context registration if the key size > 64. Result from this function will be used as authentication key in the Crypto Context registration.
3. It is client's responsibility to ensure the mbuf is big enough to hold the result (generated authentication key) and for padding process stated. No checking on mbuf length will be done.

**Parameters:**

<i>hashAlgo</i>	<b>IxCryptoAccAuthAlgo</b> [in] – is hashing algorithm to be used in generating the hash key. hashAlgo used to generate the key must be the same algorithm that will be used in crypto register and crypto perform services.
<i>*pMbufHashKey</i>	[in] – a pointer to an mbuf that contains the authentication key to be hashed. This mbuf structure is allocated by the client and the mbuf pointer must not be NULL. After the NPE complete the computation, the mbuf is returned separately through the client's registered callback. The authentication key generated will be stored in this mbuf, pointed by hashKeyDestOffset. This must NOT be a chained mbuf.
<i>hashKeyCallbackFn</i>	<b>IxCryptoAccHashKeyGenCompleteCallback</b> [in] – callback function pointer to be called when the hash key generation operation is completed. This

cannot be NULL.

*hashKeyStartOffset*    UINT16 [in] – offset to the mbuf mdata which contain the original hash key.

*hashKeyLen*            UINT16 [in] – key size

*hashKeyDestOffset*    UINT16 [in] – offset to the mbuf mdata to store the generated result (authentication key)

*\*pHashKeyId*            UINT32 [inout] – Hash Key ID returned by access component to identify hash key generation.

**Returns:**

- ◇ IX\_CRYPTO\_ACC\_STATUS\_SUCCESS – Hash key generation parameters are valid
- ◇ IX\_CRYPTO\_ACC\_STATUS\_FAIL – Hash key generation failed.
- ◇ IX\_CRYPTO\_ACC\_STATUS\_AUTH\_ALGO\_NOT\_SUPPORTED – Invalid hash algorithm requested by the client.
- ◇ IX\_CRYPTO\_ACC\_STATUS\_AUTH\_INVALID\_KEY\_LEN – Invalid hash key length (0 == hashKeyLen or 65399 < hashKeyLen)
- ◇ IX\_CRYPTO\_ACC\_STATUS\_QUEUE\_FULL – Queue full status returned and the authentication key generation request will be rejected.
- ◇ Reentrant : yes
- ◇ ISR Callable : no

## **IxCryptoAccStatus** ixCryptoAccInit ( void )

Initialise the Security Access component.

This function will initialize all the internal resources of IxCryptoAcc access component depending upon the configuration set by the ixCryptoAccConfig function. When Hardware Accelerator engine is specified, it will check whether the specified AES, DES or hash coprocessor is present and issue a warning if not. When WEP engine is specified, it checks whether AAL coprocessor is present or not. This function will check whether PKE (public key exchange) Crypto Unit is present or not and issue warning if not. If PKE Crypto Engine does not exist, the subsequent call to PKE Crypto Engine related APIs will be rejected.

This function should be called before any request processing functions are invoked on the component. This function is called only once.

**Returns:**

- ◇ IX\_CRYPTO\_ACC\_STATUS\_SUCCESS – successfully initialize the component; a warning is issued if coprocessor is not present.
- ◇ IX\_CRYPTO\_ACC\_STATUS\_FAIL – Initialization failed for some unspecified internal reasons.
- ◇ Reentrant : no
- ◇ ISR Callable : no

```

IxCryptoAccStatus ixCryptoAccNpeWepPerform (  UINT32      cryptoCtxId,
                                                IX_OSAL_MBUF * pSrcMbuf,
                                                IX_OSAL_MBUF * pDestMbuf,
                                                UINT16      startOffset,
                                                UINT16      dataLen,
                                                UINT16      icvOffset,
                                                UINT8 *      pKey
                                                )

```

Function to invoke ARC4 and WEP ICV computations on NPE.

This function submits the request to the NPE to perform ARC4 and WEP ICV operations. If the request was not submitted to the NPE, the function returns failure and the client has the ownership of the buffers. If the function returns success, then request is in the request queue or is being executed by the NPE and the client should not assume the ownership of the buffers. When the processing of the request completes, the `performCallbackFn` is called with the buffer pointers submitted initially and the client can then assume the ownership of the buffers. When WEP ICV verification operation is requested, the computed ICV is written out at the ICV location for in-place mode of operation. The supplied ICV is overwritten as a result. For non-inplace mode of operation, the ICV is written out at the destination mbuf and the original ICV from the source is left intact. This behavior is true irrespective whether it's WEP ICV verify or a combined

- ARC4 decrypt and WEP ICV request.

A valid `cryptoCtxId` must be obtained via **ixCryptoAccCtxRegister** API in order to proceed to perform the functionalities above.

#### **Parameters:**

- cryptoCtxId* UINT32 [in] – is the crypto context id to be supplied by the client. This is obtained by calling `ixCryptoAccCtxRegister` function.
- \*pSrcMbuf* [in] – is a pointer to mbuf which contains data to be processed. This mbuf structure is allocated by client. Result of this request will be stored in the same mbuf and overwritten the original data if `UseDifferentSrcAndDestMbufs` flag in **IxCryptoAccCtx** is set to FALSE (in-place operation). Otherwise, if `UseDifferentSrcAndDestMbufs` flag is set to TRUE, the result will be written into destination mbuf (non in-place operation) and the original data in this mbuf will remain unchanged.
- \*pDestMbuf* [in] – only used if `UseDifferentSrcAndDestMbufs` is TRUE. This is the buffer where the result is written to. This mbuf structure is allocated by client. The length of mbuf MUST be big enough to hold the result of operation. The result of operation COULD NOT span into two or more different mbufs, thus the mbuf supplied must be at least the length of expected result. The data is written back starting at `startOffset` in the `pDestMbuf`.
- startOffset* UINT16 [in] – supplied by the client to indicate the start of the payload to be decrypted/encrypted or authenticated.
- dataLen* UINT16 [in] – supplied by the client to indicate the length of the payload to be decrypted/encrypted in number of bytes.
- icvOffset* UINT16 [in] – supplied by the client to indicate the start of the ICV (Integrity Check Value) used for the authentication. This ICV field should not be split across multiple mbufs in a chained mbuf.
- \*pKey*



UINT8 [in] – Pointer to IX\_CRYPT0\_ACC\_ARC4\_KEY\_128 bytes of per packet ARC4 keys. This pointer can be NULL if the request is WEP IV gen or verify only.

**Returns:**

- ◇ IX\_CRYPT0\_ACC\_STATUS\_SUCCESS – The parameters check passed and the request was submitted to the NPE.
- ◇ IX\_CRYPT0\_ACC\_STATUS\_FAIL – The request failed because there was a parameter inconsistency or an invalid valid operation was requested.

**Note:**

- ◇ Depending upon the operating system and task switching mechanism, the operation might "seem" to complete before this function returns to the caller. However, the return status with value success only implies that the request was successfully enqueued to the hardware accelerator. The call of performCallBackFn indicates the completion of operation by the hardware engine.

- Reentrant : yes
- ISR Callable : yes

```
IxCryptoAccStatus ixCryptoAccPkeEauExpConfig ( BOOL enableSE,  
                                              BOOL enableFE  
                                              )
```

This function is used to configure short exponent setting (SE – skipping leading 0s while performing modular exponential) and fast exponent setting (FE – skipping all 0s while performing modular exponential) for EAU modular exponential operation. By default, these 2 settings are DISABLED to prevent timing attacks on keys and also ensure best protection on keys. These 2 setting will have direct impact on function call to **ixCryptoAccPkeEauPerform**. Client may change it accordingly to achieve different level of protection and also performance.

**Note:**

EAU exponential configuration is global setting for cryptoAcc component. All the function call to **ixCryptoAccPkeEauPerform** will follow these setting when performing modular exponential operation.

**Parameters:**

*enableSE* **BOOL** [in] If TRUE, then SE is enabled.  
*enableFE* **BOOL** [in] If TRUE, then FE is enabled.

**Returns:**

- ◇ IX\_CRYPT0\_ACC\_STATUS\_SUCCESS – EAU exponential configuration is set successfully
- ◇ IX\_CRYPT0\_ACC\_STATUS\_FAIL – Configuration failed.
- ◇ Reentrant : no
- ◇ ISR Callable : yes

<b>IxCryptoAccStatus</b>	<b>( IxCryptoAccPkeEauOperation</b>	<i>operation,</i>
<b>ixCryptoAccPkeEauPerform</b>	<b>IxCryptoAccPkeEauInOperands *</b>	<i>pOpr,</i>
	<b>IxCryptoAccPkeEauPerformCompleteCallback</b>	<i>eauParamPerformCallbackFn,</i>
	<b>IxCryptoAccPkeEauOpResult *</b>	<i>pResult</i>
	<b>)</b>	

This function is used to performed large number exponential arithmetic operation requested by client by using EAU (Exponentiation Acceleration Unit) on PKE (Public Key Exchange) Crypto Engine. The result computed will be returned via callback function supplied by client. All the operand size must be specified in words (32-bit), the output data pointer must be big enough to hold the result.

Large Number Computation operation supported on EAU

-----  
1. Modular Exponential (  $C = M^e \text{ MOD } N$  )

3 words  $\leq N \leq$  64 words (2048 bits)  
1 word  $\leq \{M, e\} \leq$  64 words with  $M < N$  and  $e < N$  in value  
MSB and LSB of  $N = 1$   
 $\text{sizeof}(C) \geq \text{sizeof}(N)$

2. Large Number Multiplication (  $R = A * B$  )

1 word  $\leq \{A, B\} \leq$  64 words (2048-bit)  
 $\text{sizeof}(R) \geq \text{sizeof}(A) + \text{sizeof}(B)$

3. Large Number Addition ( Carry |  $R = A + B$  )

1 word  $\leq \{A, B\} \leq$  64 words (2048-bit)  
 $\text{sizeof}(R) \geq \text{sizeof}(A)$  or  $\text{sizeof}(B)$ ; whichever is greater  
Carry bit might be set in operation of addition, carry bit status is  
passed to the client in callback

4. Modular Reduction (  $R = A \text{ MOD } N$  )

3 word  $\leq N \leq$  64 words (2048-bit)  
1 word  $\leq A \leq$  128 words (4096-bit) with  $\text{sizeof}(A) \leq 2 * \text{sizeof}(N)$   
MSB of  $N = 1$   
 $\text{sizeof}(R) \geq \text{sizeof}(N)$

5. Large Number Subtraction ( Borrow |  $R = A - B$  )

1 word  $\leq \{A, B\} \leq$  64 words (2048-bit)  
 $\text{sizeof}(R) \geq \text{sizeof}(A)$  or  $\text{sizeof}(B)$ ; whichever is greater  
Borrow bit might be set in operation of subtraction, borrow bit status  
is passed to the client in callback

**Note:**

1. All the result of exponential (C), add/sub/mul/mod (R) will be returned in callback via \*pResult.
2. This API is designed to offload the large number operation needed for PKE.
3. Only one request can be processed by the EAU co-processor on PKE bridge at one time, queuing system was not implemented.
4. This API is only targeted for network processors Intel (R) IXP4XX Product Line of Network Processors which support it.
5. By default, short exponent (skipping leading 0s in modular exponential) and fast exponent (skipping all 0s in modular exponential) are disabled. This

is to prevent timing attacks on keys and also ensure best protection. Client may choose to enabled SE & FE by calling **ixCryptoAccPkeEauExpConfig** function. 6. It is client's responsibility to ensure that the result pointer buffer is cleared to zero for the case of buffer size is greater than the actual result returned.

**Parameters:**

<i>operation</i>	<b>IxCryptoAccPkeEauOperation</b> [in] – EAU operation requested.
<i>*pOpr</i>	<b>IxCryptoAccPkeEauInOperands</b> [in] – a structure pointer which contains input operands (data pointers and data length). length. This data structure is allocated by the client and the data pointers inside the structure must not be NULL depending on EAU operation requested. The data length of operand also must be within the range supported.
<i>eauPerformCallbackFn</i>	<b>IxCryptoAccPkeEauPerformCompleteCallback</b> [in] – callback function pointer to be called when the EAU operation is completed. This cannot be NULL.
<i>*pResult</i>	<b>IxCryptoAccPkeEauOpResult</b> [out] – a structure pointer which store EAU operation result. Size of output data pointer must be big enough to hold the result computed. This structure must remain valid until the EAU operation requested is complete and client's callback is called. This pointer will be passed back to the client in callback to return the result.

**Returns:**

- ◇ IX\_CRYPTACC\_STATUS\_SUCCESS – EAU operation start successfully
- ◇ IX\_CRYPTACC\_STATUS\_FAIL – EAU operation request failed.
- ◇ IX\_CRYPTACC\_STATUS\_OUT\_OF\_RANGE\_ERR – Invalid operand length / range
- ◇ IX\_CRYPTACC\_STATUS\_NULL\_PTR\_ERR – NULL pointer error, input or output data pointers are NULL.
- ◇ IX\_CRYPTACC\_STATUS\_OPERATION\_NOT\_SUPPORTED – invalid operation requested.
- ◇ IX\_CRYPTACC\_STATUS\_RETRY – coprocessor is busy and the request is rejected, resend the request after a random interval.
- ◇ Reentrant : yes
- ◇ ISR Callable : yes

<b>IxCryptoAccStatus</b>	<b>( IxCryptoAccAuthAlgo</b>	<i>hashAlgo,</i>
<b>ixCryptoAccPkeHashPerform</b>	UINT8 *	<i>pHashData,</i>
	UINT32	<i>hashDataLen,</i>
	<b>IxCryptoAccPkeHashPerformCompleteCallback</b>	<i>hashPerformCallbackFn,</i>
	UINT8 *	<i>pDigest</i>
	)	

This function is used to hash the input data and return the digest generated via callback function supplied by client. L bytes size of digest will be generated (L = 20 for SHA1). The hash data is padded inside the function so that its length (in bits) is congruent to 448, modulo 512 (please refer to RFC1321). The length of data in bytes to be hashed must be greater than 0.

**Note:**

1. This API will use the hash engine on PKE (Public Key Exchange) bridge and not NPE. 2. The hash algorithm supported is SHA-1 ONLY. 3. This API is designed to offload the hashing operation needed for PKE. 4. This API uses more Intel XScale(R) Processor bandwidth compared to NPE hashing API **ixCryptoAccHashPerform** as Intel XScale(R) Processor will act as the master to the SHA engine on PKE Crypto Engine to kick off hashing operation. This involves memory accessing (read/write) from Intel XScale(R) Processor to SHA engine. 5. Client can decide to either hashing data by using SHA engine on PKE Crypto Engine or NPE hashing co-processor depend on their needs and interface. The input data is a flat buffer for this API and is IX\_OSAL\_MBUF for **ixCryptoAccHashPerform** on NPE. 6. **ixCryptoAccPkeHashPerform** will ensure that the hashing request is processed immediately if PKE SHA engine is not busy. However, hashing request to NPE will be enqueued into AQM hardware queues. It might take longer time to have hashing done if the queue is full with other bulk encryption / authentication requests. 7. Only one request can be processed by the SHA engine on PKE Crypto Engine at one time, queuing system was not implemented. 8. This API is only targeted for network processors Intel (R) IXP4XX Product Line of Network Processors which support it.

**Parameters:**

<i>hashAlgo</i>	<b>IxCryptoAccAuthAlgo</b> [in] – hashing algorithm to be used. Only SHA-1 is supported now. This parameter was introduced for future expansion since only 1 hash algorithm is supported now. Other hashing algo will be rejected.
<i>*pHashData</i>	UINT8 [in] – a pointer to a flat buffer that contains the data to be hashed. This buffer is allocated by the client and the buffer pointer must not be NULL. This buffer should hold the data to be hashed until Intel XScale(R) Processor completed the hashing operation and the client's callback is called. The digest is returned separately through the client's callback.
<i>hashDataLen</i>	UINT32 [in] – hash data size in bytes
<i>hashPerformCallbackFn</i>	<b>IxCryptoAccPkeHashPerformCompleteCallback</b> [in] – callback function pointer to be called when the hashing operation is completed. This cannot be NULL.
<i>*pDigest</i>	UINT8 [out] – a pointer to a flat buffer which will be used to hold the digest computed. This buffer is allocated by the client and the buffer pointer must not be NULL.

**Returns:**

- ◇ IX\_CRYPTO\_ACC\_STATUS\_SUCCESS – Hashing operation start successfully
- ◇ IX\_CRYPTO\_ACC\_STATUS\_FAIL – Hashing operation request failed
- ◇ IX\_CRYPTO\_ACC\_STATUS\_AUTH\_ALGO\_NOT\_SUPPORTED – Invalid hash algorithm requested by the client.
- ◇ IX\_CRYPTO\_ACC\_STATUS\_OUT\_OF\_RANGE\_ERR – Invalid hash data length (0 == hashDataLen or 65399 < hashDataLen)

- ◇ IX\_CRYPTO\_ACC\_STATUS\_NULL\_PTR\_ERR – NULL pointer error, either pHashData, pDigest or callback function pointer is NULL.
- ◇ IX\_CRYPTO\_ACC\_STATUS\_RETRY – coprocessor is busy and the request is rejected, resend the request after a random interval.
- ◇ Reentrant : yes
- ◇ ISR Callable : yes

```
IxCryptoAccStatus ixCryptoAccPkePseudoRandomNumberGet ( UINT32  pseudoRandomNumberLen,
                                                         UINT32 * pPseudoRandomNumber
                                                         )
```

This function will return the pseudo-random number generated in hardware to the client via the data pointer supplied. The length of pseudo-random number requested must be in words count (pseudoRandomNumberLen >= 1 word). If bigger pseudo-random number is requested, then this function will take longer time to complete.

**Note:**

1. Client may randomize the output of RNG by calling **ixCryptoAccPkeHashPerform**. Output of this API is used as seed (hash data) to ixCryptoAccPkeHashPerform API. 2. The random number generator (RNG) resided in PKE (Public Key Exchange) Crypto Engine and not NPE. 3. This is synchronous function call, the pseudo-random number is ready when this function return. 4. This API is designed to generate pseudo-random number needed for PKE. 5. Only one request can be processed at one time, queuing system was not implemented. 6. This API is only targeted for network processors Intel (R) IXP4XX Product Line of Network Processors which support it.

**Parameters:**

*pseudoRandomNumberLen* UINT32 [in] – pseudo-random number length in words  
*\*pPseudoRandomNumber* UINT32 [out] – a pointer to a flat buffer which will be used to hold the random number generated. This buffer is allocated by the client and the buffer pointer must not be NULL.

**Returns:**

- ◇ IX\_CRYPTO\_ACC\_STATUS\_SUCCESS – Pseudo random number get operation complete successfully.
- ◇ IX\_CRYPTO\_ACC\_STATUS\_FAIL – operation failed
- ◇ IX\_CRYPTO\_ACC\_STATUS\_NULL\_PTR\_ERR – pPseudoRandomNumber is NULL
- ◇ IX\_CRYPTO\_ACC\_STATUS\_OUT\_OF\_RANGE\_ERR – pseudoRandomNumberLen <= 0
- ◇ IX\_CRYPTO\_ACC\_STATUS\_RETRY – coprocessor is busy and the request is rejected, resend the request after a random interval.
- ◇ Reentrant : yes
- ◇ ISR Callable : yes

```
void ixCryptoAccShow ( void )
```

API for printing statistics and status.

This function is called by the client to print statistics, such as number of packets returned with operation fail, number of packets encrypted/ decrypted/authenticated while the function also print the current status of the queue, whether the queue is empty or full or current queue length.

This function also print out statistics of large number arithmetic operation counter and counter of hashing operation done on PKE Crypto Engine if PKE Crypto Engine is present.

**Returns:**

None

- Reentrant : yes
- ISR Callable : no

```
void ixCryptoAccShowWithId ( UINT32 cryptoCtxId )
```

API for printing statistic and status.

This function prints all the statistics provided by ixCryptoAccShow. In addition the function will print out the contents of the Crypto Context corresponding to the CryptoCtxId supplied through the API

**Parameters:**

*cryptoCtxId* UINT32 [in] – Crypto Context ID which has been registered

**Returns:**

None

- Reentrant : yes
- ISR Callable : no

```
IxCryptoAccStatus ixCryptoAccUninit ( void )
```

Uninitialise the Security Access component.

**Note:**

This function should be used to replace the ixCryptoAccCryptoServiceStop function.

**Parameters:**

*none*

**Returns:**

◊ IX\_CRYPTO\_ACC\_STATUS\_SUCCESS – successfully uninitialize the component.

- ◇ IX\_CRYPTO\_ACC\_STATUS\_FAIL – fail to uninitialized the component.
- ◇ Reentrant : no
- ◇ ISR Callable : no

```

IxCryptoAccStatus ixCryptoAccXScaleWepPerform (  UINT32      cryptoCtxId,
                                                    IX_OSAL_MBUF * pSrcMbuf,
                                                    IX_OSAL_MBUF * pDestMbuf,
                                                    UINT16      startOffset,
                                                    UINT16      dataLen,
                                                    UINT16      icvOffset,
                                                    UINT8 *     pKey
                                                    )

```

Function to support ARC4 and WEP ICV computations on Intel XScale(R) Processor.

This function executes ARC4 and WEP ICV algorithms on Intel XScale(R) Processor. The request is not forwarded to the NPE. The operation is executed on Intel XScale(R) Processor synchronously and therefore the perform done call back function would not be called on its return. The caller can assume the ownership of the buffers when the function returns. Restrictions: This function does not support non-in-place mode of operation. When WEP ICV verification operation is requested, the computed ICV is written out at the ICV location for in-place mode of operation. The supplied ICV is overwritten as a result. This behavior is true irrespective whether it's WEP ICV verify or a combined

- ARC4 decrypt and WEP ICV request.

A valid *cryptoCtxId* must be obtained via **ixCryptoAccCtxRegister** API in order to proceed to perform the functionalities above.

#### **Parameters:**

- cryptoCtxId* UINT32 [in] – is the crypto context id to be supplied by the client. This is obtained by calling ixCryptoAccCtxRegister function.
- \*pSrcMbuf* [in] – is a pointer to mbuf which contains data to be processed. This mbuf structure is allocated by client. Result of this request will be stored in the same mbuf and overwritten the original data if UseDifferentSrcAndDestMbufs flag in **IxCryptoAccCtx** is set to FALSE (in-place operation). Otherwise, if UseDifferentSrcAndDestMbufs flag is set to TRUE, the result will be written into destination mbuf (non in-place operation) and the original data in this mbuf will remain unchanged.
- \*pDestMbuf* [in] – only used if UseDifferentSrcAndDestMbufs is TRUE. This is the buffer where the result is written to. This mbuf structure is allocated by client. The length of mbuf MUST be big enough to hold the result of operation. The result of operation COULD NOT span into two or more different mbufs, thus the mbuf supplied must be at least the length of expected result. The data is written back starting at startOffset in the pDestMbuf. Non-in-place operations are not supported therefore this parameter is ignored for now.
- startOffset* UINT16 [in] – supplied by the client to indicate the start of the payload to be decrypted/encrypted or authenticated.
- dataLen*

	UINT16 [in] – supplied by the client to indicate the length of the payload to be decrypted/encrypted in number of bytes.
<i>icvOffset</i>	UINT16 [in] – supplied by the client to indicate the start of the ICV (Integrity Check Value) used for the authentication. This ICV field should not be split across multiple mbufs in a chained mbuf.
<i>*pKey</i>	UINT8 [in] – Pointer to IX_CRYPT0_ACC_ARC4_KEY_128 bytes of per packet ARC4 keys. This pointer can be NULL if the request is WEP IV gen or verify only.

**Note:**

This function operates synchronously and will not return status until the operation is completed.

**Returns:**

- ◇ IX\_CRYPT0\_ACC\_STATUS\_SUCCESS – The specified operation was performed successfully. If the operation type was WEP ICV verify, then this value means the verification was success as well.
- ◇ IX\_CRYPT0\_ACC\_STATUS\_FAIL – The request failed because there was a parameter inconsistency or an invalid valid operation was requested.
- ◇ IX\_CRYPT0\_ACC\_STATUS\_AUTH\_FAIL – The specified operation was performed, but the WEP ICV verification failed.
- ◇ IX\_CRYPT0\_ACC\_STATUS\_CRYPT0\_CTX\_NOT\_VALID – Crypto context is invalid.

**Note:**

Statistics collection for Intel XScale(R) Processor WEP perform will only be enabled in DEBUG mode. Interrupt locking mechanism is used in protecting the critical section for statistic collection.

- Reentrant : yes
- ISR Callable : yes



# Intel (R) IXP400 Software DMA Types (IxDmaTypes)

The common set of types used in the DMA component.

## Enumerations

```
enum IxDmaReturnStatus {  
    IX_DMA_SUCCESS,  
    IX_DMA_FAIL,  
    IX_DMA_INVALID_TRANSFER_WIDTH,  
    IX_DMA_INVALID_TRANSFER_LENGTH,  
    IX_DMA_INVALID_TRANSFER_MODE,  
    IX_DMA_INVALID_ADDRESS_MODE,  
    IX_DMA_REQUEST_FIFO_FULL  
}
```

*Dma return status definitions.*

```
enum IxDmaTransferMode {  
    IX_DMA_COPY_CLEAR,  
    IX_DMA_COPY,  
    IX_DMA_COPY_BYTE_SWAP,  
    IX_DMA_COPY_REVERSE,  
    IX_DMA_TRANSFER_MODE_INVALID  
}
```

*Dma transfer mode definitions.*

```
enum IxDmaAddressingMode {  
    IX_DMA_INC_SRC_INC_DST,  
    IX_DMA_INC_SRC_FIX_DST,  
    IX_DMA_FIX_SRC_INC_DST,  
    IX_DMA_FIX_SRC_FIX_DST,  
    IX_DMA_ADDRESSING_MODE_INVALID  
}
```

*Dma addressing mode definitions.*

```
enum IxDmaTransferWidth {  
    IX_DMA_32_SRC_32_DST,  
    IX_DMA_32_SRC_16_DST,  
    IX_DMA_32_SRC_8_DST,  
    IX_DMA_16_SRC_32_DST,  
    IX_DMA_16_SRC_16_DST,  
    IX_DMA_16_SRC_8_DST,  
    IX_DMA_8_SRC_32_DST,  
    IX_DMA_8_SRC_16_DST,  
    IX_DMA_8_SRC_8_DST,  
    IX_DMA_8_SRC_BURST_DST,  
    IX_DMA_16_SRC_BURST_DST,  
    IX_DMA_32_SRC_BURST_DST,  
}
```

```

IX_DMA_BURST_SRC_8_DST,
IX_DMA_BURST_SRC_16_DST,
IX_DMA_BURST_SRC_32_DST,
IX_DMA_BURST_SRC_BURST_DST,
IX_DMA_TRANSFER_WIDTH_INVALID
}

```

*Dma transfer width definitions Fixed addresses (either source or destination) do not support burst transfer width.*

```

enum IxDmaNpeId {
    IX_DMA_NPEID_NPEA,
    IX_DMA_NPEID_NPEB,
    IX_DMA_NPEID_NPEC,
    IX_DMA_NPEID_MAX
}

```

*NpeId numbers to identify NPE A, B or C.*

---

## Detailed Description

The common set of types used in the DMA component.

---

## Enumeration Type Documentation

```
enum IxDmaAddressingMode
```

Dma addressing mode definitions.

**Note:**

Fixed source address to fixed destination address addressing mode is not supported.

**Enumeration values:**

<i>IX_DMA_INC_SRC_INC_DST</i>	Incremental source address to incremental destination address.
<i>IX_DMA_INC_SRC_FIX_DST</i>	Incremental source address to incremental destination address.
<i>IX_DMA_FIX_SRC_INC_DST</i>	Incremental source address to incremental destination address.
<i>IX_DMA_FIX_SRC_FIX_DST</i>	Incremental source address to incremental destination address.
<i>IX_DMA_ADDRESSING_MODE_INVALID</i>	Invalid Addressing Mode.

Definition at line **65** of file **IxDmaAcc.h**.

```
enum IxDmaNpeId
```

NpeId numbers to identify NPE A, B or C.

**Warning:**

This enum is deprecated and will be removed in future IXP400 Software release. Please use IxNpeDINpeId enum instead.

**Enumeration values:**

*IX\_DMA\_NPEID\_NPEA* Identifies NPE A.  
*IX\_DMA\_NPEID\_NPEB* Identifies NPE B.  
*IX\_DMA\_NPEID\_NPEC* Identifies NPE C.  
*IX\_DMA\_NPEID\_MAX* Total Number of NPEs.

Definition at line **109** of file **IxDmaAcc.h**.

## enum IxDmaReturnStatus

Dma return status definitions.

**Enumeration values:**

<i>IX_DMA_SUCCESS</i>	DMA Transfer Success.
<i>IX_DMA_FAIL</i>	DMA Transfer Fail.
<i>IX_DMA_INVALID_TRANSFER_WIDTH</i>	Invalid transfer width.
<i>IX_DMA_INVALID_TRANSFER_LENGTH</i>	Invalid transfer length.
<i>IX_DMA_INVALID_TRANSFER_MODE</i>	Invalid transfer mode.
<i>IX_DMA_INVALID_ADDRESS_MODE</i>	Invalid address mode.
<i>IX_DMA_REQUEST_FIFO_FULL</i>	DMA request queue is full.

Definition at line **33** of file **IxDmaAcc.h**.

## enum IxDmaTransferMode

Dma transfer mode definitions.

**Note:**

Copy and byte swap, and copy and reverse modes only support multiples of word data length.

**Enumeration values:**

<i>IX_DMA_COPY_CLEAR</i>	copy and clear source
<i>IX_DMA_COPY</i>	copy

<i>IX_DMA_COPY_BYTE_SWAP</i>	copy and byte swap (endian)
<i>IX_DMA_COPY_REVERSE</i>	copy and reverse
<i>IX_DMA_TRANSFER_MODE_INVALID</i>	Invalid transfer mode.

Definition at line **50** of file **IxDmaAcc.h**.

#### enum IxDmaTransferWidth

Dma transfer width definitions Fixed addresses (either source or destination) do not support burst transfer width.

##### **Enumeration values:**

<i>IX_DMA_32_SRC_32_DST</i>	32-bit src to 32-bit dst
<i>IX_DMA_32_SRC_16_DST</i>	32-bit src to 16-bit dst
<i>IX_DMA_32_SRC_8_DST</i>	32-bit src to 8-bit dst
<i>IX_DMA_16_SRC_32_DST</i>	16-bit src to 32-bit dst
<i>IX_DMA_16_SRC_16_DST</i>	16-bit src to 16-bit dst
<i>IX_DMA_16_SRC_8_DST</i>	16-bit src to 8-bit dst
<i>IX_DMA_8_SRC_32_DST</i>	8-bit src to 32-bit dst
<i>IX_DMA_8_SRC_16_DST</i>	8-bit src to 16-bit dst
<i>IX_DMA_8_SRC_8_DST</i>	8-bit src to 8-bit dst
<i>IX_DMA_8_SRC_BURST_DST</i>	8-bit src to burst dst – Not supported for fixed destination address
<i>IX_DMA_16_SRC_BURST_DST</i>	16-bit src to burst dst – Not supported for fixed destination address
<i>IX_DMA_32_SRC_BURST_DST</i>	32-bit src to burst dst – Not supported for fixed destination address
<i>IX_DMA_BURST_SRC_8_DST</i>	burst src to 8-bit dst – Not supported for fixed source address
<i>IX_DMA_BURST_SRC_16_DST</i>	burst src to 16-bit dst – Not supported for fixed source address
<i>IX_DMA_BURST_SRC_32_DST</i>	burst src to 32-bit dst – Not supported for fixed source address
<i>IX_DMA_BURST_SRC_BURST_DST</i>	burst src to burst dst – Not supported for fixed source and destination address
<i>IX_DMA_TRANSFER_WIDTH_INVALID</i>	Invalid transfer width.

Definition at line **80** of file **IxDmaAcc.h**.

# Intel (R) IXP400 Software DMA Access Driver (IxDmaAcc) API

The public API for the Intel (R) IXP400 Software IxDmaAcc component.

## Defines

```
#define IX_DMA_REQUEST_FULL  
DMA request queue is full This constant is a return value used to tell the user that the IxDmaAcc queue is full.
```

## Typedefs

```
typedef UINT32 IxDmaAccRequestId  
DMA Request Id type.  
  
typedef void(* IxDmaAccDmaCompleteCallback)(IxDmaReturnStatus status)  
DMA completion notification This function is called to notify a client that the DMA has been completed.
```

## Functions

```
PUBLIC IX_STATUS ixDmaAccInit (IxNpeDlNpeId npeId)  
Initialise the DMA Access component This function will initialise the DMA Access component internals.  
  
PUBLIC IX_STATUS ixDmaAccUninit (IxNpeDlNpeId npeId)  
Uninitialise the DMA Access component This function will uninitialise the DMA Access component internals.  
  
PUBLIC IxDmaReturnStatus ixDmaAccDmaTransfer (IxDmaAccDmaCompleteCallback callback, UINT32 SourceAddr, UINT32 DestinationAddr, UINT16 TransferLength, IxDmaTransferMode TransferMode, IxDmaAddressingMode AddressingMode, IxDmaTransferWidth TransferWidth)  
Perform DMA transfer This function will perform DMA transfer between devices within the Intel (R) IXP400 Software memory map.  
  
PUBLIC IX_STATUS ixDmaAccShow (void)  
Display some component information for debug purposes Show some internal operation information relating to the DMA service. At a minimum the following will show. –the number of the DMA pend (in queue).
```

---

## Detailed Description

The public API for the Intel (R) IXP400 Software IxDmaAcc component.

---

## Define Documentation

```
#define IX_DMA_REQUEST_FULL
```

DMA request queue is full This constant is a return value used to tell the user that the IxDmaAcc queue is full.

Definition at line **140** of file **IxDmaAcc.h**.

---

## Typedef Documentation

```
typedef void(* IxDmaAccDmaCompleteCallback)(IxDmaReturnStatus status)
```

DMA completion notification This function is called to notify a client that the DMA has been completed.

**Parameters:**

*status* **IxDmaReturnStatus** [out] – reporting to client

Definition at line **149** of file **IxDmaAcc.h**.

```
typedef UINT32 IxDmaAccRequestId
```

DMA Request Id type.

Definition at line **130** of file **IxDmaAcc.h**.

---

## Function Documentation

```
ixDmaAccDmaTransfer ( IxDmaAccDmaCompleteCallback callback,  
                     UINT32 SourceAddr,  
                     UINT32 DestinationAddr,  
                     UINT16 TransferLength,  
                     IxDmaTransferMode TransferMode,  
                     IxDmaAddressingMode AddressingMode,  
                     IxDmaTransferWidth TransferWidth  
                     )
```

Perform DMA transfer This function will perform DMA transfer between devices within the Intel (R) IXP400 Software memory map.

**Note:**

The following are restrictions for IxDmaAccDmaTransfer:

- ◇ The function is non re-entrant.
- ◇ The function assumes host devices are operating in big-endian mode.
- ◇ Fixed address does not support burst transfer width
- ◇ Fixed source address to fixed destination address mode is not supported
- ◇ The incrementing source address for expansion bus will not support a burst transfer width and copy and clear mode

**Parameters:**

<i>callback</i>	<b>IxDmaAccDmaCompleteCallback</b> [in] – function pointer to be stored and called when the DMA transfer is completed. This cannot be NULL.
<i>SourceAddr</i>	UINT32 [in] – Starting address of DMA source. Must be a valid Intel (R) IXP400 Software memory map address.
<i>DestinationAddr</i>	UINT32 [in] – Starting address of DMA destination. Must be a valid Intel (R) IXP400 Software memory map address.
<i>TransferLength</i>	UINT16 [in] – The size of DMA data transfer. The range must be from 1–64Kbyte
<i>TransferMode</i>	<b>IxDmaTransferMode</b> [in] – The DMA transfer mode
<i>AddressingMode</i>	<b>IxDmaAddressingMode</b> [in] – The DMA addressing mode
<i>TransferWidth</i>	<b>IxDmaTransferWidth</b> [in] – The DMA transfer width

**Returns:**

- ◇ IX\_DMA\_SUCCESS Notification that the DMA request is successful
- ◇ IX\_DMA\_FAIL IxDmaAcc not yet initialised or some internal error has occurred
- ◇ IX\_DMA\_INVALID\_TRANSFER\_WIDTH Transfer width is not valid
- ◇ IX\_DMA\_INVALID\_TRANSFER\_LENGTH Transfer length outside of valid range
- ◇ IX\_DMA\_INVALID\_TRANSFER\_MODE Transfer Mode not valid
- ◇ IX\_DMA\_REQUEST\_FIFO\_FULL IxDmaAcc request queue is full

**ixDmaAccInit ( IxNpeDINpeId npeId )**

Initialise the DMA Access component This function will initialise the DMA Access component internals.

**Parameters:**

*npeId* **IxNpeDINpeId** [in] – NPE to use for Dma Transfer

**Returns:**

- ◇ IX\_SUCCESS successfully initialised the component
- ◇ IX\_FAIL Initialisation failed for some unspecified internal reason.

ixDmaAccShow ( void )

Display some component information for debug purposes Show some internal operation information relating to the DMA service. At a minimum the following will show. –the number of the DMA pend (in queue).

**Parameters:**

*None*

**Returns:**

◇ None

ixDmaAccUninit ( **IxNpeDlnPpeId** *npeId* )

Uninitialise the DMA Access component This function will uninitialise the DMA Access component internals.

**Parameters:**

*npeId* **IxNpeDlnPpeId** [in] – NPE to use for Dma Transfer

**Returns:**

◇ IX\_SUCCESS succesfully uninitialised the component

◇ IX\_FAIL Unnitalisation failed for some unspecified internal reason.



# IXP400 Soft–Error Handler Driver (ixErrHdlAcc) API

The public API for the IXP400 Soft–Error Handler Driver (ixErrHdlAcc).

## Data Structures

struct **IxErrHdlAccRecoveryStatistics**  
*Debug Statistical Data Structure.*

## Defines

#define **IX\_ERRHDLACC\_NPEA\_ERROR\_MASK\_BIT**  
*Definition of the NPE A Error Mask Bit.*

#define **IX\_ERRHDLACC\_NPEB\_ERROR\_MASK\_BIT**  
*Definition of the NPE B Error Mask Bit.*

#define **IX\_ERRHDLACC\_NPEC\_ERROR\_MASK\_BIT**  
*Definition of the NPE C Error Mask Bit.*

#define **IX\_ERRHDLACC\_AQM\_SRAM\_PARITY\_ERROR\_MASK\_BIT**  
*Definition of the AQM Error Mask Bit.*

## Typedefs

typedef void(\* **IxErrHdlAccRecoveryDoneCallback** )(IxErrHdlAccErrorEventType)  
*Definition of the Recovery Done Call–back type Function pointer with IxErrHdlAccErrorEventType type as the argument.*

typedef  
IX\_STATUS(\* **IxErrHdlAccFuncHandler** )(void)  
*Definition of the Event handler type function pointer.*

## Enumerations

enum **IxErrHdlAccErrorEventType** {  
    **IX\_ERRHDLACC\_NPEA\_ERROR**,  
    **IX\_ERRHDLACC\_NPEB\_ERROR**,  
    **IX\_ERRHDLACC\_NPEC\_ERROR**,  
    **IX\_ERRHDLACC\_AQM\_ERROR**,  
    **IX\_ERRHDLACC\_NO\_ERROR**  
}  
*Definition of the Soft–Error Event Types.*

```
enum IxErrHdlAccNPEId {
    IX_ERRHDLACC_NPEA,
    IX_ERRHDLACC_NPEB,
    IX_ERRHDLACC_NPEC
}
```

*Definition of the NPE ID.*

```
enum IxErrHdlAccEnableEvent {
    IX_ERRHDLACC_EVT_DISABLE,
    IX_ERRHDLACC_EVT_ENABLE
}
```

*Definition of the Soft-Error Event Enable/Disable.*

## Functions

**PUBLIC**  
**IX\_STATUS ixErrHdlAccEnableConfigGet** (UINT32 \*configMask)  
*Gets the configuration word enable setup.*

**PUBLIC**  
**IX\_STATUS ixErrHdlAccEnableConfigSet** (UINT32 configMask)  
*Configures the ixErrHdlAcc module's configuration, to enable or disable a maximum total of 32 Soft Error Events types. –Reentrant – no –ISR Callable – yes.*

**PUBLIC**  
**IX\_STATUS ixErrHdlAccNPEReset** (**IxErrHdlAccNPEId** npelD)  
*Reset the NPE via the Expansion bus controller FUSE register. The API sets the FUSE Bit that resets the NPE. It waits for the NPE to reset and then, turns off the FUSE bit to re-enable the NPE.*

**PUBLIC**  
**IX\_STATUS ixErrHdlAccInit** (void)  
*Initializes the ixErrHdlAcc component.*

**PUBLIC**  
**IX\_STATUS ixErrHdlAccUnload** (void)  
*Unloads the ixErrHdlAccModule, destroying the semaphore object and killing all threads/tasks.*

**PUBLIC ixErrHdlAccErrorHandlerGet** (**IxErrHdlAccErrorEventType** event,  
**IX\_STATUS ixErrHdlAccFuncHandler** \*handler)  
*API to get the event handler API to be called within the interrupt error ISR or task level to initiate a soft-error handling of the error.*

**PUBLIC**  
**IX\_STATUS ixErrHdlAccStatusSet** (UINT32 status)  
*Sets the current Error condition status results that indicates if there was an error in handling a soft-error.*

**PUBLIC**  
**IX\_STATUS ixErrHdlAccStatusGet** (UINT32 \*status)  
*Gets the current Error condition status results that indicates if there was an error in handling a soft-error.*

**PUBLIC void ixErrHdlAccStatisticsShow** (void)  
*Displays the Debug/Masurement statistics recorded by the module.*

**PUBLIC**  
**IX\_STATUS ixErrHdlAccStatisticsGet** (**IxErrHdlAccRecoveryStatistics** \*statistics)  
*API to retrieve the statistics recorded by the module.*

**PUBLIC void ixErrHdlAccStatisticsClear** (void)  
*Resets and Clears the Debug/Masurement statistics recorded by the module.*

**PUBLIC**  
**IX\_STATUS ixErrHdlAccCallbackRegister** (**IxErrHdlAccRecoveryDoneCallback** callback)  
*API to register a Completion done that is called after every completion of an error handling.*

---

## Detailed Description

The public API for the IXP400 Soft-Error Handler Driver (ixErrHdlAcc).

---

## Define Documentation

```
#define IX_ERRHDLACC_AQM_SRAM_PARITY_ERROR_MASK_BIT
```

Definition of the AQM Error Mask Bit.

Definition at line **59** of file **IxErrHdlAcc.h**.

```
#define IX_ERRHDLACC_NPEA_ERROR_MASK_BIT
```

Definition of the NPE A Error Mask Bit.

Definition at line **41** of file **IxErrHdlAcc.h**.

```
#define IX_ERRHDLACC_NPEB_ERROR_MASK_BIT
```

Definition of the NPE B Error Mask Bit.

Definition at line **47** of file **IxErrHdlAcc.h**.

```
#define IX_ERRHDLACC_NPEC_ERROR_MASK_BIT
```

Definition of the NPE C Error Mask Bit.

Definition at line **53** of file **IxErrHdlAcc.h**.

---

## Typedef Documentation

```
IxErrHdlAccFuncHandler
```

Definition of the Event handler type function pointer.

Definition at line **96** of file **IxErrHdlAcc.h**.

```
IxErrHdlAccRecoveryDoneCallback
```

Definition of the Recovery Done Call-back type Function pointer with IxErrHdlAccErrorEventType type as the argument.

Definition at line **89** of file **IxErrHdlAcc.h**.

---

## Enumeration Type Documentation

```
enum IxErrHdlAccEnableEvent
```

Definition of the Soft-Error Event Enable/Disable.

Definition at line **78** of file **IxErrHdlAcc.h**.

```
enum IxErrHdlAccErrorEventType
```

Definition of the Soft-Error Event Types.

Definition at line **29** of file **IxErrHdlAcc.h**.

```
enum IxErrHdlAccNPEId
```

Definition of the NPE ID.

Definition at line **67** of file **IxErrHdlAcc.h**.

---

# Function Documentation

IX\_STATUS ixErrHdlAccCallbackRegister ( **IxErrHdlAccRecoveryDoneCallback** *callback* )

API to register a Completion done that is called after every completion of an error handling.

- Reentrant – no
- ISR Callable – no

**Precondition:**

The ixErrHdlAcc module should have already been initialized prior to calling this API.

**Parameters:**

*callback* IxErrHdlAccRecoveryDoneCallback [in] Call-back function to be called by the module upon completion of a recovery task. See **IxErrHdlAccRecoveryDoneCallback**

**Returns:**

IX\_STATUS  
◊ IX\_SUCCESS: Operation success  
◊ IX\_FAIL : An uninitialized ixErrHdlAcc module or a NULL pointer provided to the 1st parameter argument of the function.

---

IX\_STATUS ixErrHdlAccEnableConfigGet ( UINT32 \* *configMask* )

Gets the configuration word enable setup.

**Note:**

This API gets the soft-error configuration setup in the module that was set by the call to the **ixErrHdlAccEnableConfigSet** API.

- Reentrant – no
- ISR Callable – yes

**Precondition:**

The ixErrHdlAcc module should have already been initialized prior to calling this API.

**Parameters:**

*configMask* UINT32\* [in] Data UINT32 pointer to store the configuration Mask whereby, any bits set or clear indicates an enable or disable of a particular Error event type.

**Returns:**

IX\_STATUS  
◊ IX\_SUCCESS: Operation success  
◊ IX\_FAIL : An uninitialized ixErrHdlAcc module or a NULL pointer provided to the 1st parameter argument of the function.

*See also:*

**ixErrHdlAccEnableConfigSet**

---

```
IX_STATUS ixErrHdlAccEnableConfigSet ( UINT32 configMask )
```

Configures the ixErrHdlAcc module's configuration, to enable or disable a maximum total of 32 Soft Error Events types. –Reentrant – no –ISR Callable – yes.

**Note:**

An example to enable NPE A , NPE B and NPE C Error handling.

```
ixErrHdlAccEnableConfigSet(IX_ERRHDLACC_NPEA_ERROR_MASK_BIT  
|IX_ERRHDLACC_NPEB_ERROR_MASK_BIT  
|IX_ERRHDLACC_NPEC_ERROR_MASK_BIT);
```

**Precondition:**

ixErrHdlAcc must be initialized by calling the ixErrHdlAccInit prior to using this API.

**Parameters:**

*configMask* UINT32 [in] – a 32 bit Configuration word where a bit N set will enable the event N a bit N clear will disable the event N N=0, 1, 2, ...31.

**Returns:**

IX\_STATUS  
    ◇ IX\_SUCCESS: Operation success  
    ◇ IX\_FAIL : A fail if the module is not initialized.

*See also:*

**ixErrHdlAccEnableConfigGet**

---

```
IX_STATUS ixErrHdlAccErrorHandlerGet ( IxErrHdlAccErrorEventType event,  
                                         IxErrHdlAccFuncHandler * handler  
                                         )
```

API to get the event handler API to be called within the interrupt error ISR or task level to initiate a soft-error handling of the error.

**Note:**

For an NPE Error, the event handlers can be called to reset the NPE irrespective of whether there is an NPE parity error or an AHB error. This API can be used to restore the NPE in a need to need basis.

- Reentrant – no
- ISR Callable – yes

**Precondition:**

The ixErrHdlAcc module should have already been initialized prior to calling this API.

**Parameters:**

*event*   IxErrHdlAccErrorEventType [in] An Event ID defined as: **IxErrHdlAccErrorEventType**  
*handler* IxErrHdlAccFuncHandler\* [in] A pointer to a Event Error handler defined as  
**IxErrHdlAccFuncHandler**

**Returns:**

IX\_STATUS  
    ◇ IX\_SUCCESS: Operation success  
    ◇ IX\_FAIL : An uninitialized ixErrHdlAcc module or a NULL pointer provided to the 2nd  
          parameter argument of the function or an invalid Event ID (1st Parameter)

---

IX\_STATUS ixErrHdlAccInit ( void )

Initializes the ixErrHdlAcc component.

- Reentrant – no
- ISR Callable – no

**Precondition:**

The ixErrHdlAcc module should not already been loaded or initialized.

**Returns:**

IX\_STATUS  
    ◇ IX\_SUCCESS: Module has initialized or already initialized.  
    ◇ IX\_FAIL : Failure to create thread, create a semaphore object & initializing of the module  
          which is already initialized.

**See also:**

**ixErrHdlAccUnload**

---

IX\_STATUS ixErrHdlAccNPEReset ( **IxErrHdlAccNPEId** *npeID* )

Reset the NPE via the Expansion bus controller FUSE register. The API sets the FUSE Bit that resets the NPE. It waits for the NPE to reset and then, turns off the FUSE bit to re-enable the NPE.

- Reentrant – yes
- ISR Callable – yes

**Precondition:**

*npeID* must be a valid NPE ID where, 0 – NPEA, 1 – NPEB & 2 – NPEC

**Parameters:**

*npeID* IxErrHdlAccNPEId [in] – NPE ID for NPEA, NPEB and NPEC. See **IxErrHdlAccNPEId**

**Returns:**

IX\_STATUS

◊ IX\_SUCCESS: Operation success

◊ IX\_FAIL : Invalid NPEID, Failure to Reset the NPE due to time-out while waiting for the NPE to reset and for the NPE FUSE Bit to turn off.

---

```
void ixErrHdlAccStatisticsClear ( void )
```

Resets and Clears the Debug/Masurement statistics recorded by the module.

- Reentrant – no
- ISR Callable – no

**Returns:**

NONE

**See also:**

**ixErrHdlAccStatisticsGet**

**ixErrHdlAccStatisticsShow**

---

```
IX_STATUS ixErrHdlAccStatisticsGet ( IxErrHdlAccRecoveryStatistics * statistics )
```

API to retrieve the statistics recorded by the module.

**Note:**

See **IxErrHdlAccRecoveryStatistics** for details

- Reentrant – no
- ISR Callable – no

**Precondition:**

The ixErrHdlAcc module should have already been initialized prior to calling this API.

**Parameters:**

*statistics* **IxErrHdlAccRecoveryStatistics** [in]

**Returns:**

IX\_STATUS

◊ IX\_SUCCESS

◊ IX\_FAIL : An uninitialized ixErrHdlAcc module or a NULL pointer provided to the 1st parameter argument of the function.

**See also:**

**ixErrHdlAccStatisticsClear**



## **ixErrHdlAccStatisticsShow**

---

```
void ixErrHdlAccStatisticsShow ( void )
```

Displays the Debug/Measurement statistics recorded by the module.

- Reentrant – no
- ISR Callable – no

### **Returns:**

NONE

### **See also:**

**ixErrHdlAccStatisticsClear**

**ixErrHdlAccStatisticsGet**

---

```
IX_STATUS ixErrHdlAccStatusGet ( UINT32 * status )
```

Gets the current Error condition status results that indicates if there was an error in handling a soft-error.

### **Note:**

Usage guide: This API can be used to get the Event Error WORD condition where, Any bit N set in the status WORD (32bit) shall indicate an error. Currently only bit N = 0, 1, 2 & 3 is valid.

### **Usage Example:**

This example gets the current status and checks for NPE A Error.

```
ixErrHdlAccStatusGet(&status);  
if(status&IX_ERRHDLACC_NPEA_ERROR_MASK_BIT)  
{ < NPE A Error> }
```

- Reentrant – no
- ISR Callable – yes

### **Precondition:**

The ixErrHdlAcc module should have already been initialized prior to calling this API.

### **Parameters:**

*status*   UINT32 [in] Pointer to a UINT32 (WORD) to write the current Event Status condition WORD

### **Returns:**

IX\_STATUS

◊ IX\_SUCCESS: Operation success

◊ IX\_FAIL : An uninitialized ixErrHdlAcc module or a NULL pointer provided to the 1st parameter.

*See also:*

**ixErrHdlAccStatusSet**

---

IX\_STATUS ixErrHdlAccStatusSet ( UINT32 *status* )

Sets the current Error condition status results that indicates if there was an error in handling a soft-error.

**Warning:**

This function must be used only in conditions whereby, the client performs it's own error handling in addition to the ones provided by the ixErrHdlAcc component which may result in recovery failure. This is particularly applicable for customized NPE firmware done by customers. The API then must be called to indicate an error in the hardware component impacted.

**Note:**

Usage guide: This API can be used to set the Event Error WORD condition where, any bit N set in the status WORD (32bit) shall indicate an error. Currently only bit N = 0, 1, 2 & 3 is valid.

An Example,

This enables NPE A and NPE C Error handling.

```
ixErrHdlAccStatusSet(IX_ERRHDLACC_NPEA_ERROR_MASK_BIT  
|IX_ERRHDLACC_NPEC_ERROR_MASK_BIT);
```

- Reentrant – no
- ISR Callable – yes

**Precondition:**

The ixErrHdlAcc module should have already been intialized prior to calling this API.

**Parameters:**

*status* UINT32 [in] UINT32 (WORD) to write the current Event Status condition WORD

**Returns:**

IX\_STATUS

◊ IX\_SUCCESS: Operation success

◊ IX\_FAIL : An uninitialized ixErrHdlAcc module

*See also:*

**ixErrHdlAccStatusGet**

---

IX\_STATUS ixErrHdlAccUnload ( void )

Unloads the ixErrHdlAccModule, destroying the semaphore object and killing all threads/tasks.

- Reentrant – no
- ISR Callable – no

**Precondition:**

The ixErrHdlAcc module should have already been initialized prior to calling this API.

**Returns:**

IX\_STATUS

◇ IX\_SUCCESS : Module has unloaded or already unloaded.

◇ IX\_FAIL : Failure to terminate thread, destroy a semaphore objects and to de-allocate any allocated memory.

**See also:**

**ixErrHdlAccInit**

---

# Intel (R) IXP400 Software Ethernet Access (IxEthAcc) API

ethAcc is a library that does provides access to the internal IXP4XX Product Line of Network Processors 10/100Bt Ethernet MACs.

## Data Structures

- struct **IxEthAccMacAddr**  
*Definition of the IEEE 802.3 Ethernet MAC address structure.*
- struct **IxEthAccNe**  
*Definition of service-specific informations.*
- struct **IxEthAccNe**  
*Definition of service-specific informations.*
- struct **IxEthAccNe**  
*Definition of service-specific informations.*
- struct **IxEthEthObjStats**  
*This struct defines the statistics returned by this component.*

## Defines

- #define **ixEthAccUnload**
- #define **IX\_ETH\_ACC\_NUMBER\_OF\_PORTS**  
*Definition of the number of ports.*
- #define **IX\_IEEE803\_MAC\_ADDRESS\_SIZE**  
*Definition of the size of the MAC address.*
- #define **IX\_ETH\_ACC\_NUM\_TX\_PRIORITIES**  
*Definition of the number of transmit priorities.*
- #define **IX\_ETHACC\_NE\_PORT\_UNKNOWN**  
*Contents of the field IX\_ETHACC\_NE\_DESTPORTID when no destination port can be found by the NPE for this frame.*
- #define **IX\_ETHACC\_NE\_PADLENGTH**(mBufPtr)  
*The location of the number of padding bytes in the Mbuf header.*
- #define **IX\_ETHACC\_NE\_DESTMAC**(mBufPtr)  
*The location of the destination MAC address in the Mbuf header.*
- #define **IX\_ETHACC\_NE\_SOURCEMAC**(mBufPtr)

*The location of the source MAC address in the Mbuf header.*

```
#define IX_ETHACC_NE_VLANTCI(mBufPtr)  
    The VLAN Tag Control Information associated with this frame.  
  
#define IX_ETHACC_NE_SOURCEPORTID(mBufPtr)  
    The port where this frame came from.  
  
#define IX_ETHACC_NE_DESTPORTID(mBufPtr)  
    The destination port where this frame should be sent.  
  
#define IX_ETHACC_NE_QOS(mBufPtr)  
    QualityOfService class (QoS) for this received frame.  
  
#define IX_ETHACC_NE_FLAGS(mBufPtr)  
    Bit Mask of the different flags associated with a frame.  
  
#define IX_ETHACC_NE_BCASTMASK  
    This mask defines if a received frame is a broadcast frame.  
  
#define IX_ETHACC_NE_MCASTMASK  
    This mask defines if a received frame is a multicast frame.  
  
#define IX_ETHACC_NE_IPMASK  
    This mask defines if a received frame is a IP frame.  
  
#define IX_ETHACC_NE_IPV6MASK  
    This mask defines if a received frame is a IP frame.  
  
#define IX_ETHACC_NE_LINKMASK  
    This mask is the link layer protocol indicator.  
  
#define IX_ETHACC_NE_STMASK  
    This mask defines if a received frame is a Spanning Tree frame.  
  
#define IX_ETHACC_NE_FILTERMASK  
    This bit indicates whether a frame has been filtered by the Rx service.  
  
#define IX_ETHACC_NE_PORTOVERMASK  
    This mask defines the rule to transmit a frame.  
  
#define IX_ETHACC_NE_TAGMODEMASK  
    This mask defines the tagging rules to apply to a transmit frame.  
  
#define IX_ETHACC_NE_TAGOVERMASK  
    This mask defines the rule to transmit a frame.  
  
#define IX_ETHACC_NE_LOCALMACMASK  
    This mask defines the rule to receive a frame to local mac.  
  
#define IX_ETHACC_NE_VLANMASK
```

*This mask defines if a received frame is VLAN tagged.*

**#define IX\_ETHACC\_NE\_VLANENABLEMASK**  
*This mask defines if a frame is a VLAN frame or not.*

**#define IX\_ETHACC\_NE\_NEWSRCMASK**  
*This mask defines if a received frame has been learned.*

**#define IX\_ETHACC\_RX\_MBUF\_MIN\_SIZE**  
*This defines the recommended minimum size of MBUF's submitted to the frame receive service.*

**#define IXP400\_ETH\_ACC\_MII\_MAX\_ADDR**  
*This defines the highest MII address of any attached PHYs.*

**#define IXP425\_ETH\_ACC\_MII\_MAX\_ADDR**  
*This defines the highest MII address of any attached PHYs.*

**#define ixEthRxPriorityPoll**  
*Following definition providing backward compatibility to **ixEthRxPriorityPoll()** function that will be deprecated in future release.*

**#define ixEthRxMultiBufferPriorityPoll**  
*Following definition providing backward compatibility to **ixEthRxMultiBufferPriorityPoll()** function that will be deprecated in future release.*

**#define IxEthAccTxSchedulerDiscipline**  
*Deprecated definition for the port transmit scheduling discipline.*

**#define ixEthAccMiiPhyScan(phyPresent)**  
*: deprecated API entry point. This definition ensures backward compatibility*

**#define ixEthAccMiiPhyConfig(phyAddr, speed100, fullDuplex, autonegotiate)**  
*: deprecated API entry point. This definition ensures backward compatibility*

**#define ixEthAccMiiPhyReset(phyAddr)**  
*: deprecated API entry point. This definition ensures backward compatibility*

**#define ixEthAccMiiLinkStatus(phyAddr, linkUp, speed100, fullDuplex, autoneg)**  
*: deprecated API entry point. This definition ensures backward compatibility*

**#define ixEthAccMiiShow(phyAddr)**  
*: deprecated API entry point. This definition ensures backward compatibility*

## Typedefs

**typedef void(\* IxEthAccPortTxDoneCallback )(UINT32 callbackTag, IX\_OSAL\_MBUF \*buffer)**  
*Function prototype for Ethernet Tx Buffer Done callback. Registered via **ixEthAccTxBufferDoneCallbackRegister**.*

typedef void(\* **IxEthAccPortRxCallback** )(UINT32 callbackTag, IX\_OSAL\_MBUF \*buffer, UINT32 reserved)

*Function prototype for Ethernet Frame Rx callback. Registered via ixEthAccPortRxCallbackRegister.*

typedef void(\* **IxEthAccPortMultiBufferRxCallback** )(UINT32 callbackTag, IX\_OSAL\_MBUF \*\*buffer)

*Function prototype for Ethernet Frame Rx callback. Registered via ixEthAccPortMultiBufferRxCallbackRegister.*

## Enumerations

enum **IxEthAccStatus** {  
    **IX\_ETH\_ACC\_SUCCESS**,  
    **IX\_ETH\_ACC\_FAIL**,  
    **IX\_ETH\_ACC\_INVALID\_PORT**,  
    **IX\_ETH\_ACC\_PORT\_UNINITIALIZED**,  
    **IX\_ETH\_ACC\_MAC\_UNINITIALIZED**,  
    **IX\_ETH\_ACC\_INVALID\_ARG**,  
    **IX\_ETH\_TX\_Q\_FULL**,  
    **IX\_ETH\_ACC\_NO\_SUCH\_ADDR**  
}

*Definition of the Ethernet Access status.*

enum **IxEthAccPortId** {  
    **IX\_ETH\_PORT\_1**,  
    **IX\_ETH\_PORT\_2**,  
    **IX\_ETH\_PORT\_3**  
}

*Definition of the IXP400 Mac Ethernet device.*

enum **IxEthAccTxPriority** {  
    **IX\_ETH\_ACC\_TX\_PRIORITY\_0**,  
    **IX\_ETH\_ACC\_TX\_PRIORITY\_1**,  
    **IX\_ETH\_ACC\_TX\_PRIORITY\_2**,  
    **IX\_ETH\_ACC\_TX\_PRIORITY\_3**,  
    **IX\_ETH\_ACC\_TX\_PRIORITY\_4**,  
    **IX\_ETH\_ACC\_TX\_PRIORITY\_5**,  
    **IX\_ETH\_ACC\_TX\_PRIORITY\_6**,  
    **IX\_ETH\_ACC\_TX\_PRIORITY\_7**,  
    **IX\_ETH\_ACC\_TX\_DEFAULT\_PRIORITY**  
}

*Definition of the relative priority used to transmit a frame.*

enum **IxEthAccRxFrameType** {  
    **IX\_ETHACC\_RX\_LLCTYPE**,  
    **IX\_ETHACC\_RX\_ETHERTYPE**,  
    **IX\_ETHACC\_RX\_STATATYPE**,  
}

```

IX_ETHACC_RX_APTYPE
}

```

*Identify the type of a frame.*

```

enum IxEthAccDuplexMode {
    IX_ETH_ACC_FULL_DUPLEX,
    IX_ETH_ACC_HALF_DUPLEX
}

```

*Definition to provision the duplex mode of the MAC.*

```

enum IxEthAccSchedulerDiscipline {
    FIFO_NO_PRIORITY,
    FIFO_PRIORITY
}

```

*Definition for the port scheduling discipline.*

## Functions

**PUBLIC**

**IxEthAccStatus** **ixEthAccInit** (void)

*Initializes the Intel (R) IXP400 Software Ethernet Access Service.*

**PUBLIC**

**IxEthAccStatus** **ixEthAccUninit** (void)

*Un-Initializes the Intel (R) IXP400 Software Ethernet Access Service.*

**PUBLIC**

**IxEthAccStatus** **ixEthAccPortInit** (**IxEthAccPortId** portId)

*Initializes an NPE/Ethernet MAC Port.*

**PUBLIC** **ixEthAccPortTxFrameSubmit** (**IxEthAccPortId** portId, **IX\_OSAL\_MBUF** \*buffer,  
**IxEthAccStatus** **ixEthAccTxPriority** priority)

**PUBLIC** **ixEthAccPortTxDoneCallbackRegister** (**IxEthAccPortId** portId,  
**IxEthAccStatus** **ixEthAccPortTxDoneCallback** txCallbackFn, **UINT32** callbackTag)

*Register a callback function to allow the transmitted buffers to return to the user.*

**UINT32** **ixEthAccRxPriorityPoll** (**UINT32** reserved, **UINT32** maxQEntries)

**UINT32** **ixEthAccRxMultiBufferPriorityPoll** (**UINT32** reserved, **UINT32** maxQEntries)

**PUBLIC** **ixEthAccPortRxCallbackRegister** (**IxEthAccPortId** portId, **IxEthAccPortRxCallback**  
**IxEthAccStatus** rxCallbackFn, **UINT32** callbackTag)

*Register a callback function to allow the reception of frames.*

**PUBLIC** **ixEthAccPortMultiBufferRxCallbackRegister** (**IxEthAccPortId** portId,  
**IxEthAccStatus** **ixEthAccPortMultiBufferRxCallback** rxCallbackFn, **UINT32** callbackTag)

*Register a callback function to allow the reception of frames.*

**PUBLIC**

**IxEthAccStatus** **ixEthAccPortRxFreeReplenish** (**IxEthAccPortId** portId, **IX\_OSAL\_MBUF** \*buffer)



*This function provides buffers for the Ethernet receive path.*

PUBLIC

**IxEthAccStatus ixEthAccPortEnable (IxEthAccPortId portId)**  
*This enables an Ethernet port for both Tx and Rx.*

PUBLIC

**IxEthAccStatus ixEthAccPortDisable (IxEthAccPortId portId)**  
*This disables an Ethernet port for both Tx and Rx.*

PUBLIC

**IxEthAccStatus ixEthAccPortEnabledQuery (IxEthAccPortId portId, BOOL \*enabled)**  
*Get the enabled state of a port.*

PUBLIC

**IxEthAccStatus ixEthAccPortPromiscuousModeClear (IxEthAccPortId portId)**  
*Put the Ethernet MAC device in non-promiscuous mode.*

PUBLIC

**IxEthAccStatus ixEthAccPortPromiscuousModeSet (IxEthAccPortId portId)**  
*Put the MAC device in promiscuous mode.*

**PUBLIC ixEthAccPortUnicastMacAddressSet (IxEthAccPortId portId, IxEthAccMacAddr  
IxEthAccStatus \*macAddr)**  
*Configure unicast MAC address for a particular port.*

**PUBLIC ixEthAccPortUnicastMacAddressGet (IxEthAccPortId portId, IxEthAccMacAddr  
IxEthAccStatus \*macAddr)**

**PUBLIC ixEthAccPortMulticastAddressJoin (IxEthAccPortId portId, IxEthAccMacAddr  
IxEthAccStatus \*macAddr)**

**PUBLIC  
IxEthAccStatus ixEthAccPortMulticastAddressJoinAll (IxEthAccPortId portId)**  
*Filter all frames with multicast dest.*

**PUBLIC ixEthAccPortMulticastAddressLeave (IxEthAccPortId portId, IxEthAccMacAddr  
IxEthAccStatus \*macAddr)**

**PUBLIC  
IxEthAccStatus ixEthAccPortMulticastAddressLeaveAll (IxEthAccPortId portId)**  
*This function unconfigures the multicast filtering settings.*

PUBLIC

**IxEthAccStatus ixEthAccPortUnicastAddressShow (IxEthAccPortId portId)**  
*Displays unicast MAC address.*

**PUBLIC void ixEthAccPortMulticastAddressShow (IxEthAccPortId portId)**  
*Displays multicast MAC address.*

PUBLIC

**IxEthAccStatus ixEthAccPortDuplexModeSet (IxEthAccPortId portId, IxEthAccDuplexMode mode)**  
*Set the duplex mode for the MAC.*

**PUBLIC**  
**IxEthAccStatus** **IxEthAccPortDuplexModeGet** (**IxEthAccPortId** portId, **IxEthAccDuplexMode** \*mode)

*Get the duplex mode for the MAC.*

**PUBLIC**  
**IxEthAccStatus** **IxEthAccPortTxFrameAppendPaddingEnable** (**IxEthAccPortId** portId)  
*Enable padding bytes to be appended to runt frames submitted to this port.*

**PUBLIC**  
**IxEthAccStatus** **IxEthAccPortTxFrameAppendPaddingDisable** (**IxEthAccPortId** portId)  
*Disable padding bytes to be appended to runt frames submitted to this port.*

**PUBLIC**  
**IxEthAccStatus** **IxEthAccPortTxFrameAppendFCSEnable** (**IxEthAccPortId** portId)  
*Enable the appending of Ethernet FCS to all frames submitted to this port.*

**PUBLIC**  
**IxEthAccStatus** **IxEthAccPortTxFrameAppendFCSDisable** (**IxEthAccPortId** portId)  
*Disable the appending of Ethernet FCS to all frames submitted to this port.*

**PUBLIC**  
**IxEthAccStatus** **IxEthAccPortRxFrameAppendFCSEnable** (**IxEthAccPortId** portId)  
*Forward frames with FCS included in the receive buffer.*

**PUBLIC**  
**IxEthAccStatus** **IxEthAccPortRxFrameAppendFCSDisable** (**IxEthAccPortId** portId)  
*Do not forward the FCS portion of the received Ethernet frame to the user. The FCS is striped from the receive buffer. The received frame length does not include the FCS size (4 bytes). Frame FCS validity checks are still carried out on all received frames.*

**PUBLIC**  
**IxEthAccStatus** **IxEthAccTxSchedulingDisciplineSet** (**IxEthAccPortId** portId, **IxEthAccSchedulerDiscipline** sched)  
*Set the port scheduling to one of IxEthAccSchedulerDiscipline.*

**PUBLIC**  
**IxEthAccStatus** **IxEthAccRxSchedulingDisciplineSet** (**IxEthAccSchedulerDiscipline** sched)  
*Set the Rx scheduling to one of IxEthAccSchedulerDiscipline.*

**PUBLIC**  
**IxEthAccStatus** **IxEthAccPortNpeLoopbackEnable** (**IxEthAccPortId** portId)

**PUBLIC**  
**IxEthAccStatus** **IxEthAccPortNpeLoopbackDisable** (**IxEthAccPortId** portId)  
*Disable NPE loopback.*

**PUBLIC**  
**IxEthAccStatus** **IxEthAccPortTxEnable** (**IxEthAccPortId** portId)  
*Enable Tx on the port.*

**PUBLIC**  
**IxEthAccStatus** **IxEthAccPortTxDisable** (**IxEthAccPortId** portId)

*Disable Tx on the port.*

PUBLIC

**IxEthAccStatus ixEthAccPortRxEnable (IxEthAccPortId portId)**

*Enable Rx on the port.*

PUBLIC

**IxEthAccStatus ixEthAccPortRxDisable (IxEthAccPortId portId)**

*Disable Rx on the port.*

PUBLIC

**IxEthAccStatus ixEthAccPortMacReset (IxEthAccPortId portId)**

*Reset MAC core on the port.*

PUBLIC void **ixEthAccQMgrRxNotificationDisable (void)**

*Disable queue interrupts for all Rx queues.*

PUBLIC void **ixEthAccQMgrRxNotificationEnable (void)**

*Enable queue interrupts for all Rx queues.*

PUBLIC void **ixEthAccQMgrRxQEntryGet (UINT32 \*numEntries)**

*Get the total number of receive buffers in all rx queues.*

PUBLIC

**IxEthAccStatus ixEthAccStopRequest (void)**

*Request Ethernet access layer to stop Tx and Rx Services for all the Ethernet ports.*

PUBLIC

**IxEthAccStatus ixEthAccStartRequest (void)**

*Request Ethernet access layer to restart its currently stopped Tx and Rx Services for all the Ethernet ports.*

PUBLIC BOOL **ixEthAccStopDoneCheck (void)**

*Checks whether the Ethernet traffic service is stopped completely.*

PUBLIC

**IxEthAccStatus ixEthAccQMStatusUpdate (IxEthAccPortId portId)**

*To retrigger the update of queue condition (interrupt and status flag) in order to restore these states that are lost during soft-error handling. This ensures Eth-NPE to continue its services.*

PUBLIC

**IxEthAccStatus ixEthAccMibIIStatsGet (IxEthAccPortId portId, IxEthEthObjStats \*retStats)**

*Returns the statistics maintained for a port.*

PUBLIC

**IxEthAccStatus ixEthAccMibIIStatsGetClear (IxEthAccPortId portId, IxEthEthObjStats \*retStats)**

*Returns and clears the statistics maintained for a port.*

PUBLIC

**IxEthAccStatus ixEthAccMibIIStatsClear (IxEthAccPortId portId)**

*Clears the statistics maintained for a port.*

PUBLIC

**IxEthAccStatus ixEthAccMacInit (IxEthAccPortId portId)**

*Initializes the ethernet MAC settings.*

PUBLIC

**IxEthAccStatus ixEthAccMacUninit (IxEthAccPortId portId)**

*Un-Initializes the ethernet MAC settings.*

PUBLIC

**IxEthAccStatus ixEthAccMacStateRestore (IxEthAccPortId portId)**

*This function reconfigures the MAC Registers according to the settings in use prior to the occurrence of a soft-error in the NPE.*

PUBLIC void **ixEthAccStatsShow (IxEthAccPortId portId)**

*Displays a ports statistics on the standard io console using printf.*

PUBLIC

**IxEthAccStatus ixEthAccMiiReadRtn (UINT8 phyAddr, UINT8 phyReg, UINT16 \*value)**

*Reads a 16 bit value from a PHY.*

PUBLIC

**IxEthAccStatus ixEthAccMiiWriteRtn (UINT8 phyAddr, UINT8 phyReg, UINT16 value)**

*Writes a 16 bit value to a PHY.*

PUBLIC

**IxEthAccStatus ixEthAccMiiAccessTimeoutSet (UINT32 timeout, UINT32 retryCount)**

PUBLIC

**IxEthAccStatus ixEthAccMiiStatsShow (UINT32 phyAddr)**

*Displays detailed information on a specified PHY.*

---

## Detailed Description

ethAcc is a library that does provides access to the internal IXP4XX Product Line of Network Processors 10/100Bt Ethernet MACs.

---

## Define Documentation

```
#define IX_ETH_ACC_NUM_TX_PRIORITIES
```

Definition of the number of transmit priorities.

Definition at line **110** of file **IxEthAcc.h**.

```
#define IX_ETH_ACC_NUMBER_OF_PORTS
```

Definition of the number of ports.

Definition at line **78** of file **IxEthAcc.h**.

```
#define IX_ETHACC_NE_BCASTMASK
```

This mask defines if a received frame is a broadcast frame.

This mask defines if a received frame is a broadcast frame. The BCAST flag is set when the destination MAC address of a frame is broadcast.

*See also:*

**IX\_ETHACC\_NE\_FLAGS**

Definition at line **325** of file **IxEthAcc.h**.

```
#define IX_ETHACC_NE_DESTMAC ( mBufPtr )
```

The location of the destination MAC address in the Mbuf header.

Definition at line **214** of file **IxEthAcc.h**.

```
#define IX_ETHACC_NE_DESTPORTID ( mBufPtr )
```

The destination port where this frame should be sent.

The destination port where this frame should be sent.

- In the transmit direction, this field contains the destination port and is ignored unless *IX\_ETHACC\_NE\_FLAG\_DST* is set.
- In the receive direction, this field contains the port where the destination MAC addresses has been learned. If the destination MAC address is unknown, then this value is set to the reserved value *IX\_ETHACC\_NE\_PORT\_UNKNOWN*

Definition at line **273** of file **IxEthAcc.h**.

```
#define IX_ETHACC_NE_FILTERMASK
```

This bit indicates whether a frame has been filtered by the Rx service.

This mask applies to *IX\_ETHACC\_NE\_FLAGS*. Certain frames, which should normally be fully filtered by the NPE to due the destination MAC address being on the same segment as the Rx port are still forwarded

to the XScale (although the payload is invalid) in order to learn the MAC address of the transmitting station, if this is unknown. Normally EthAcc will filter and recycle these frames internally and no frames with the FILTER bit set will be received by the client.

*See also:*

### **IX\_ETHACC\_NE\_FLAGS**

Definition at line **432** of file **IxEthAcc.h**.

```
#define IX_ETHACC_NE_FLAGS ( mBufPtr )
```

Bit Mask of the different flags associated with a frame.

The flags are the bit-oring combination of the following different fields :

- IP flag (Rx *IX\_ETHACC\_NE\_IPMASK*)
- Spanning Tree flag (Rx *IX\_ETHACC\_NE\_STMASK*)
- Link layer type (Rx and Tx *IX\_ETHACC\_NE\_LINKMASK*)
- VLAN Tagged Frame (Rx *IX\_ETHACC\_NE\_VLANMASK*)
- New source MAC address (Rx *IX\_ETHACC\_NE\_NEWSRCMASK*)
- Multicast flag (Rx *IX\_ETHACC\_NE\_MCASTMASK*)
- Broadcast flag (Rx *IX\_ETHACC\_NE\_BCASTMASK*)
- Destination port flag (Tx *IX\_ETHACC\_NE\_PORTMASK*)
- Tag/Untag Tx frame (Tx *IX\_ETHACC\_NE\_TAGMODEMASK*)
- Overwrite destination port (Tx *IX\_ETHACC\_NE\_PORTOVERMASK*)
- Filtered frame (Rx *IX\_ETHACC\_NE\_STMASK*)
- VLAN Enabled (Rx and Tx *IX\_ETHACC\_NE\_VLANENABLEMASK*)
- Local MAC (Rx *IX\_ETHACC\_NE\_LOCALMACMASK*)

Definition at line **309** of file **IxEthAcc.h**.

```
#define IX_ETHACC_NE_IPMASK
```

This mask defines if a received frame is a IP frame.

This mask applies to *IX\_ETHACC\_NE\_FLAGS* and defines if a received frame is a IPv4 frame. The IP flag is set on Rx direction, depending on the frame contents. The flag is set when the length/type field of a received frame is 0x8000.

*See also:*

### **IX\_ETHACC\_NE\_FLAGS**

Definition at line **358** of file **IxEthAcc.h**.

```
#define IX_ETHACC_NE_IPV6MASK
```

This mask defines if a received frame is a IP frame.

This mask applies to *IX\_ETHACC\_NE\_FLAGS* and defines if a received frame is a IPv6 frame. The IP flag is set on Rx direction, depending on the frame contents. The flag is set when the length/type field of a received frame is 0x86DD.

*See also:*

**IX\_ETHACC\_NE\_FLAGS**

Definition at line **375** of file **IxEthAcc.h**.

```
#define IX_ETHACC_NE_LINKMASK
```

This mask is the link layer protocol indicator.

This mask applies to *IX\_ETHACC\_NE\_FLAGS*. It reflects the state of a frame as it exits an NPE on the Rx path or enters an NPE on the Tx path. Its values are as follows:

- 0x00 – IEEE802.3 – 8802 (Rx) / IEEE802.3 – 8802 (Tx)
- 0x01 – IEEE802.3 – Ethernet (Rx) / IEEE802.3 – Ethernet (Tx)
- 0x02 – IEEE802.11 AP -> STA (Rx) / IEEE802.11 STA -> AP (Tx)
- 0x03 – IEEE802.11 AP -> AP (Rx) / IEEE802.11 AP->AP (Tx)

*See also:*

**IX\_ETHACC\_NE\_FLAGS**

Definition at line **395** of file **IxEthAcc.h**.

```
#define IX_ETHACC_NE_LOCALMACMASK
```

This mask defines the rule to receive a frame to local mac.

This mask defines the rule to receive a frame to local mac. When set, the default receive rules of a port are overridden. When not set, the default rules as set by **Intel (R) IXP400 Software Ethernet Database (IxEthDB) API** should apply.

*See also:*

**IX\_ETHACC\_NE\_FLAGS**

**IX\_ETHACC\_NE\_LOCALMACMASK**

Definition at line **506** of file **IxEthAcc.h**.

```
#define IX_ETHACC_NE_MCASTMASK
```

This mask defines if a received frame is a multicast frame.

This mask defines if a received frame is a multicast frame. The MCAST flag is set when the destination MAC address of a frame is multicast.

*See also:*

**IX\_ETHACC\_NE\_FLAGS**

Definition at line **341** of file **IxEthAcc.h**.

```
#define IX_ETHACC_NE_NEWSRCMASK
```

This mask defines if a received frame has been learned.

This mask defines if the source MAC address of a frame is already known. If the bit is set, the source MAC address was unknown to the NPE at the time the frame was received.

*See also:*

**IX\_ETHACC\_NE\_FLAGS**

Definition at line **562** of file **IxEthAcc.h**.

```
#define IX_ETHACC_NE_PADLENGTH ( mBufPtr )
```

The location of the number of padding bytes in the Mbuf header.

Definition at line **204** of file **IxEthAcc.h**.

```
#define IX_ETHACC_NE_PORT_UNKNOWN
```

Contents of the field *IX\_ETHACC\_NE\_DESTPORTID* when no destination port can be found by the NPE for this frame.

Definition at line **194** of file **IxEthAcc.h**.

```
#define IX_ETHACC_NE_PORTOVERMASK
```

This mask defines the rule to transmit a frame.

This mask defines the rule to transmit a frame. When set, a frame is transmitted to the destination port as set by the macro *IX\_ETHACC\_NE\_DESTPORTID*. If not set, the destination port is searched using the destination MAC address.

*Note:*

This flag is meaningful only for multiport Network Engines.

*See also:*



## **IX\_ETHACC\_NE\_FLAGS**

## **IX\_ETHACC\_NE\_DESTPORTID**

Definition at line **452** of file **IxEthAcc.h**.

```
#define IX_ETHACC_NE_QOS ( mBufPtr )
```

QualityOfService class (QoS) for this received frame.

Definition at line **283** of file **IxEthAcc.h**.

```
#define IX_ETHACC_NE_SOURCEMAC ( mBufPtr )
```

The location of the source MAC address in the Mbuf header.

Definition at line **224** of file **IxEthAcc.h**.

```
#define IX_ETHACC_NE_SOURCEPORTID ( mBufPtr )
```

The port where this frame came from.

The port where this frame came from. This field is set on receive with the port information. This field is ignored on Transmit path.

Definition at line **253** of file **IxEthAcc.h**.

```
#define IX_ETHACC_NE_STMASK
```

This mask defines if a received frame is a Spanning Tree frame.

This mask applies to *IX\_ETHACC\_NE\_FLAGS*. On rx direction, it defines if a received if frame is a Spanning Tree frame. Setting this fflag on transmit direction overrides the port settings regarding the VLAN options and

*See also:*

## **IX\_ETHACC\_NE\_FLAGS**

Definition at line **412** of file **IxEthAcc.h**.

```
#define IX_ETHACC_NE_TAGMODEMASK
```

This mask defines the tagging rules to apply to a transmit frame.

This mask defines the tagging rules to apply to a transmit frame regardless of the default setting for a port. When used together with *IX\_ETHACC\_NE\_TAGOVERMASK* and when set, the frame will be tagged prior to transmission. When not set, the frame will be untagged prior to transmission. This is accomplished irrespective of the Egress tagging rules, constituting a per-frame override.

*See also:*

**IX\_ETHACC\_NE\_FLAGS**

**IX\_ETHACC\_NE\_TAGOVERMASK**

Definition at line **472** of file **IxEthAcc.h**.

```
#define IX_ETHACC_NE_TAGOVERMASK
```

This mask defines the rule to transmit a frame.

This mask defines the rule to transmit a frame. When set, the default transmit rules of a port are overridden. When not set, the default rules as set by **Intel (R) IXP400 Software Ethernet Database (IxEthDB) API** should apply.

*See also:*

**IX\_ETHACC\_NE\_FLAGS**

**IX\_ETHACC\_NE\_TAGMODEMASK**

Definition at line **489** of file **IxEthAcc.h**.

```
#define IX_ETHACC_NE_VLANENABLEMASK
```

This mask defines if a frame is a VLAN frame or not.

When set, frames undergo normal VLAN processing on the Tx path (membership filtering, tagging, tag removal etc). If this flag is not set, the frame is considered to be a regular non-VLAN frame and no VLAN processing will be performed.

Note that VLAN-enabled NPE images will always set this flag in all Rx frames, and images which are not VLAN enabled will clear this flag for all received frames.

*See also:*

**IX\_ETHACC\_NE\_FLAGS**

Definition at line **546** of file **IxEthAcc.h**.

```
#define IX_ETHACC_NE_VLANMASK
```

This mask defines if a received frame is VLAN tagged.

This mask defines if a received frame is VLAN tagged. When set, the Rx frame is VLAN-tagged and the tag value is available thru *IX\_ETHACC\_NE\_VLANID*. Note that when sending frames which are already tagged this flag should be set, to avoid inserting another VLAN tag.

*See also:*

**IX\_ETHACC\_NE\_FLAGS**

**IX\_ETHACC\_NE\_VLANID**

Definition at line **525** of file **IxEthAcc.h**.

```
#define IX_ETHACC_NE_VLANTCI ( mBufPtr )
```

The VLAN Tag Control Information associated with this frame.

The VLAN Tag Control Information associated with this frame. On Rx path, this field is extracted from the packet header. On Tx path, the value of this field is inserted in the frame when the port is configured to insert or replace vlan tags in the egress frames.

*See also:*

**IX\_ETHACC\_NE\_FLAGS**

Definition at line **241** of file **IxEthAcc.h**.

```
#define IX_ETHACC_RX_MBUF_MIN_SIZE
```

This defines the recommended minimum size of MBUF's submitted to the frame receive service.

Definition at line **571** of file **IxEthAcc.h**.

```
#define IX_IEEE803_MAC_ADDRESS_SIZE
```

Definition of the size of the MAC address.

Definition at line **88** of file **IxEthAcc.h**.

```
#define ixEthAccMiiLinkStatus ( phyAddr,  
                                linkUp,  
                                speed100,  
                                fullDuplex,  
                                autoneg    )
```

: deprecated API entry point. This definition ensures backward compatibility

See **ixEthMiiLinkStatus**

**Note:**

this feature is board specific

Definition at line **2886** of file **IxEthAcc.h**.

```
#define ixEthAccMiiPhyConfig ( phyAddr,  
                             speed100,  
                             fullDuplex,  
                             autonegotiate )
```

: deprecated API entry point. This definition ensures backward compatibility

See **ixEthMiiPhyConfig**

**Note:**

this feature is board specific

Definition at line **2856** of file **IxEthAcc.h**.

```
#define ixEthAccMiiPhyReset ( phyAddr )
```

: deprecated API entry point. This definition ensures backward compatibility

See **ixEthMiiPhyReset**

**Note:**

this feature is board specific

Definition at line **2871** of file **IxEthAcc.h**.

```
#define ixEthAccMiiPhyScan ( phyPresent )
```

: deprecated API entry point. This definition ensures backward compatibility

See **ixEthMiiPhyScan**

**Note:**

this feature is board specific

Definition at line **2842** of file **IxEthAcc.h**.

```
#define ixEthAccMiiShow ( phyAddr )
```

: deprecated API entry point. This definition ensures backward compatibility

See **ixEthMiiPhyShow**

**Note:**

this feature is board specific

Definition at line **2903** of file **IxEthAcc.h**.

```
#define IxEthAccTxSchedulerDiscipline
```

Deprecated definition for the port transmit scheduling discipline.

Definition at line **1919** of file **IxEthAcc.h**.

```
ixEthRxMultiBufferPriorityPoll
```

Following definition providing backward compatibility to **ixEthRxMultiBufferPriorityPoll()** function that will be deprecated in future release.

Definition at line **976** of file **IxEthAcc.h**.

```
#define ixEthRxPriorityPoll
```

Following definition providing backward compatibility to **ixEthRxPriorityPoll()** function that will be deprecated in future release.

Definition at line **943** of file **IxEthAcc.h**.

```
#define IXP400_ETH_ACC_MII_MAX_ADDR
```

This defines the highest MII address of any attached PHYs.

The maximum number for PHY address is 31, add on for range checking.

Definition at line **581** of file **IxEthAcc.h**.

```
#define IXP425_ETH_ACC_MII_MAX_ADDR
```

This defines the highest MII address of any attached PHYs.

The maximum number for PHY address is 31, add on for range checking. This is maintained to provide backward compatibility. It will be deprecated in future release.

Definition at line **593** of file **IxEthAcc.h**.

# Typedef Documentation

```
typedef void(* IxEthAccPortMultiBufferRxCallback)(UINT32 callbackTag, IX_OSAL_MBUF **buffer)
```

Function prototype for Ethernet Frame Rx callback. Registered via *ixEthAccPortMultiBufferRxCallbackRegister*.

It is the responsibility of the user function to free any MBUF's which it receives.

- Reentrant – yes , The user provided function should be reentrant.
- ISR Callable – yes , The user provided function must be callable from an ISR.  
This function dispatches many frames to the user level via the provided function. The invocation shall be made for multiple frames dequeued from the Ethernet QM queue. The user is required to free any MBUF's supplied via this callback. In addition the registered callback must free up MBUF's from the receive free queue when the port is disabled  
If called several times the latest callback shall be registered for a particular port.

## Calling Context :

This callback is called in the context of the queue manager dispatch loop *ixQmgrDispatcherLoopRun* within the **IXP Queue Manager (qmgr) Public API** component. The calling context may be from interrupt or high priority thread. The decision is system specific.

## Parameters:

*callbackTag* – This tag is that provided when the callback was registered for a particular MAC via *ixEthAccPortMultiBufferRxCallbackRegister*. It allows the same callback to be used for multiple MACs.

*mbuf* – Pointer to an array of Rx mbuf headers. Mbufs may be chained if the frame length is greater than the supplied mbuf length. The end of the array contains a zeroed entry (NULL pointer).

## Returns:

void

## Note:

The mbufs passed to this callback have the same structure than the buffers passed to *IxEthAccPortRxCallback* interfaz.

The usage of this callback is exclusive with the usage of *ixEthAccPortRxCallbackRegister* and *IxEthAccPortRxCallback*

## See also:

**ixEthAccPortMultiBufferRxCallbackRegister**

**IxEthAccPortMultiBufferRxCallback**

**ixEthAccPortRxCallbackRegister**

**IxEthAccPortRxCallback**

---

Definition at line **932** of file **IxEthAcc.h**.

```
typedef void(* IxEthAccPortRxCallback)(UINT32 callbackTag, IX_OSAL_MBUF *buffer, UINT32 reserved)
```

Function prototype for Ethernet Frame Rx callback. Registered via *ixEthAccPortRxCallbackRegister*.

It is the responsibility of the user function to free any MBUF's which it receives.

- Reentrant – yes , The user provided function should be reentrant.
- ISR Callable – yes , The user provided function must be callable from an ISR.  
This function dispatches frames to the user level via the provided function. The invocation shall be made for each frame dequeued from the Ethernet QM queue. The user is required to free any MBUF's supplied via this callback. In addition the registered callback must free up MBUF's from the receive free queue when the port is disabled  
If called several times the latest callback shall be registered for a particular port.

#### Calling Context :

This callback is called in the context of the queue manager dispatch loop *ixQmgrgrDispatcherLoopRun* within the **IXP Queue Manager (qmgr) Public API** component. The calling context may be from interrupt or high priority thread. The decision is system specific.

#### Parameters:

*callbackTag* UINT32 [in] – This tag is that provided when the callback was registered for a particular MAC via *ixEthAccPortRxCallbackRegister*. It allows the same callback to be used for multiple MACs.

*mbuf* [in] – Pointer to the Rx mbuf header. Mbufs may be chained if the frame length is greater than the supplied mbuf length.

*reserved* [in] – deprecated parameter The information is passed thru the **IxEthAccNe** header destination port ID field (

#### See also:

**IX\_ETHACC\_NE\_DESTPORTID**). For backward compatibility, the value is equal to **IX\_ETH\_DB\_UNKNOWN\_PORT** (0xff).

#### Returns:

void

#### Note:

Buffers may not be filled up to the length supplied in *ixEthAccPortRxFreeReplenish()*. The firmware fills them to the previous 64 bytes boundary. The user has to be aware that the length of the received mbufs may be smaller than the length of the supplied mbufs. The mbuf header contains the following modified field

- ◇ **IX\_OSAL\_MBUF\_PKT\_LEN** is set in the header of the first mbuf and indicates the total frame size
- ◇ **IX\_OSAL\_MBUF\_MLEN** is set each mbuf header and indicates the payload length
- ◇ **IX\_OSAL\_MBUF\_NEXT\_BUFFER\_IN\_PKT\_PTR** contains a pointer to the next mbuf, or NULL at the end of a chain.
- ◇ **IX\_OSAL\_MBUF\_NEXT\_PKT\_IN\_CHAIN\_PTR** is modified. Its value is reset to NULL

◇ *IX\_OSAL\_MBUF\_FLAGS* contains the bit 4 set for a broadcast packet and the bit 5 set for a multicast packet. Other bits are unmodified.

---

Definition at line **882** of file **IxEthAcc.h**.

```
typedef void(* IxEthAccPortTxDoneCallback)( UINT32 callbackTag, IX_OSAL_MBUF *buffer )
```

Function prototype for Ethernet Tx Buffer Done callback. Registered via *ixEthAccTxBufferDoneCallbackRegister*.

This function is called once the previously submitted buffer is no longer required by this service. It may be returned upon successful transmission of the frame or during the shutdown of the port prior to the transmission of a queued frame. The calling of this registered function is not a guarantee of successful transmission of the buffer.

- Reentrant – yes , The user provided function should be reentrant.
- ISR Callable – yes , The user provided function must be callable from an ISR.

**Calling Context :**

This callback is called in the context of the queue manager dispatch loop *ixQmgrgrDispatcherLoopRun* within the **IXP Queue Manager (qmgr) Public API** component. The calling context may be from interrupt or high priority thread. The decision is system specific.

**Parameters:**

*callbackTag* UINT32 [in] – This tag is that provided when the callback was registered for a particular MAC via *ixEthAccPortTxDoneCallbackRegister*. It allows the same callback to be used for multiple MACs.

*mbuf* [in] – Pointer to the Tx mbuf descriptor.

**Returns:**

void

**Note:**

The field *IX\_OSAL\_MBUF\_NEXT\_PKT\_IN\_CHAIN\_PTR* is modified by the access layer and reset to NULL.

---

Definition at line **779** of file **IxEthAcc.h**.

---

## Enumeration Type Documentation

```
enum IxEthAccDuplexMode
```

Definition to provision the duplex mode of the MAC.

**Enumeration values:**

*IX\_ETH\_ACC\_FULL\_DUPLEX*



Full duplex operation of the MAC.

*IX\_ETH\_ACC\_HALF\_DUPLEX* Half duplex operation of the MAC.

Definition at line **155** of file **IxEthAcc.h**.

```
enum IxEthAccPortId
```

Definition of the IXP400 Mac Ethernet device.

**Enumeration values:**

*IX\_ETH\_PORT\_1* Ethernet Port 1.

*IX\_ETH\_PORT\_2* Ethernet port 2.

*IX\_ETH\_PORT\_3* Ethernet port 3.

Definition at line **52** of file **IxEthAcc.h**.

```
enum IxEthAccRxFrameType
```

Identify the type of a frame.

**See also:**

**IX\_ETHACC\_NE\_FLAGS**

**IX\_ETHACC\_NE\_LINKMASK**

**Enumeration values:**

*IX\_ETHACC\_RX\_LLCTYPE* 802.3 – 8802, with  
LLC/SNAP

*IX\_ETHACC\_RX\_ETHTYPE* 802.3 (Ethernet) without  
LLC/SNAP

*IX\_ETHACC\_RX\_STATYPE* 802.11, AP <=> STA

*IX\_ETHACC\_RX\_APTYPE* 802.11, AP <=> AP

Definition at line **141** of file **IxEthAcc.h**.

```
enum IxEthAccSchedulerDiscipline
```

Definition for the port scheduling discipline.

Select the port scheduling discipline on receive and transmit path

- **FIFO : No Priority** : In this configuration all frames are processed in the access component in the strict order in which the component received them.

- **FIFO : Priority :** This shall be a very simple priority mechanism. Higher priority frames shall be forwarded before lower priority frames. There shall be no fairness mechanisms applied across different priorities. Higher priority frames could starve lower priority frames indefinitely.

**Enumeration values:**

*FIFO\_NO\_PRIORITY* frames submitted with no priority  
*FIFO\_PRIORITY* higher priority frames submitted before lower priority

Definition at line **1906** of file **IxEthAcc.h**.

```
enum IxEthAccStatus
```

Definition of the Ethernet Access status.

**Enumeration values:**

<i>IX_ETH_ACC_SUCCESS</i>	return success
<i>IX_ETH_ACC_FAIL</i>	return fail
<i>IX_ETH_ACC_INVALID_PORT</i>	return invalid port
<i>IX_ETH_ACC_PORT_UNINITIALIZED</i>	return uninitialized
<i>IX_ETH_ACC_MAC_UNINITIALIZED</i>	return MAC uninitialized
<i>IX_ETH_ACC_INVALID_ARG</i>	return invalid arg
<i>IX_ETH_TX_Q_FULL</i>	return tx queue is full
<i>IX_ETH_ACC_NO_SUCH_ADDR</i>	return no such address

Definition at line **35** of file **IxEthAcc.h**.

```
enum IxEthAccTxPriority
```

Definition of the relative priority used to transmit a frame.

**Enumeration values:**

<i>IX_ETH_ACC_TX_PRIORITY_0</i>	Lowest Priority submission.
<i>IX_ETH_ACC_TX_PRIORITY_1</i>	submission priority of 1 (0 is lowest)
<i>IX_ETH_ACC_TX_PRIORITY_2</i>	submission priority of 2 (0 is lowest)
<i>IX_ETH_ACC_TX_PRIORITY_3</i>	submission priority of 3 (0 is lowest)
<i>IX_ETH_ACC_TX_PRIORITY_4</i>	submission priority of 4 (0 is lowest)
<i>IX_ETH_ACC_TX_PRIORITY_5</i>	submission priority of 5 (0 is lowest)
<i>IX_ETH_ACC_TX_PRIORITY_6</i>	submission priority of 6 (0 is lowest)
<i>IX_ETH_ACC_TX_PRIORITY_7</i>	Highest priority submission.
<i>IX_ETH_ACC_TX_DEFAULT_PRIORITY</i>	By default send all packets with lowest priority.

## Function Documentation

**ixEthAccInit** ( void )

Initializes the Intel (R) IXP400 Software Ethernet Access Service.

- Reentrant – yes
- ISR Callable – no

This should be called once per module initialization. Second call to this function yields SUCCESS.

**Precondition:**

The NPE must first be downloaded with the required microcode which supports all required features.

**Returns:**

IxEthAccStatus

◇ *IX\_ETH\_ACC\_SUCCESS* : Init Done successfully or already initialized

◇ *IX\_ETH\_ACC\_FAIL* : Service has failed to initialize – EthDB, Dataplane, MII, MemInit, Mutex Init.

---

**ixEthAccMacInit** ( **IxEthAccPortId** portId )

Initializes the ethernet MAC settings.

- Reentrant – no
- ISR Callable – no

**Parameters:**

portId **IxEthAccPortId** [in]

**Returns:**

IxEthAccStatus

◇ *IX\_ETH\_ACC\_SUCCESS*

◇ *IX\_ETH\_ACC\_INVALID\_PORT* :  
portId is invalid.

---

**IxEthAccStatus** ixEthAccMacStateRestore ( **IxEthAccPortId** portId )

This function reconfigures the MAC Registers according to the settings in use prior to the occurrence of a soft-error in the NPE.

- Reentrant – no
- ISR Callable – no

**Note:**

The function is useful for error-handling module to handle soft-error in Ethernet NPE.

**Precondition:**

**Parameters:**

*portId* **IxEthAccPortId** [in]

**Returns:**

IxEthAccStatus

- ◇ *IX\_ETH\_ACC\_SUCCESS* : MAC settings are reupdated
  - ◇ *IX\_ETH\_ACC\_FAIL* : MAC settings are not reupdated
  - ◇ *IX\_ETH\_ACC\_INVALID\_PORT* : portId is invalid.
  - ◇ *IX\_ETH\_ACC\_PORT\_UNINITIALIZED* : PORT is not initialized
  - ◇ *IX\_ETH\_ACC\_MAC\_UNINITIALIZED* : port MAC address is not initialized
- 

**ixEthAccMacUninit ( IxEthAccPortId portId )**

Un-Initializes the ethernet MAC settings.

- Reentrant – no
- ISR Callable – no

**Parameters:**

*portId* **IxEthAccPortId** [in]

**Returns:**

IxEthAccStatus

- ◇ *IX\_ETH\_ACC\_SUCCESS*
  - ◇ *IX\_ETH\_ACC\_INVALID\_PORT* :  
portId is invalid.
- 

**ixEthAccMibIIStatsClear ( IxEthAccPortId portId )**

Clears the statistics maintained for a port.

- Reentrant – yes
- ISR Callable – no

**Precondition:**

**Parameters:**

*portId* **IxEthAccPortId** [in]

**Returns:**

IxEthAccStatus  
 ◇ *IX\_ETH\_ACC\_SUCCESS*  
 ◇ *IX\_ETH\_ACC\_FAIL* : Invalid arguments.  
 ◇ *IX\_ETH\_ACC\_INVALID\_PORT* : portId is invalid.  
 ◇ *IX\_ETH\_ACC\_PORT\_UNINITIALIZED* : portId is un-initialized

---

```

ixEthAccMibIStatsGet ( IxEthAccPortId    portId,
                      IxEthEthObjStats * retStats
                      )

```

Returns the statistics maintained for a port.

- Reentrant – yes
- ISR Callable – no

**Precondition:****Parameters:**

*portId*    **IxEthAccPortId** [in]  
*retStats* **IxEthEthObjStats** [out]

**Note:**

Please note the user is responsible for cache coherency of the retStat buffer. The data is actually populated via the NPE's. As such cache safe memory should be used in the retStats argument.

**Returns:**

IxEthAccStatus  
 ◇ *IX\_ETH\_ACC\_SUCCESS*  
 ◇ *IX\_ETH\_ACC\_FAIL* : Invalid arguments.  
 ◇ *IX\_ETH\_ACC\_INVALID\_PORT* : portId is invalid.  
 ◇ *IX\_ETH\_ACC\_PORT\_UNINITIALIZED* : portId is un-initialized

---

```

ixEthAccMibIStatsGetClear ( IxEthAccPortId    portId,
                           IxEthEthObjStats * retStats
                           )

```

Returns and clears the statistics maintained for a port.

- Reentrant – yes
- ISR Callable – yes

**Precondition:**

**Parameters:**

*portId*    **IxEthAccPortId** [in]  
*retStats* **IxEthEthObjStats** [out]

**Note:**

Please note the user is responsible for cache coherency of the *retStats* buffer. The data is actually populated via the NPE's. As such cache safe memory should be used in the *retStats* argument.

**Returns:**

**IxEthAccStatus**  
 ◇ *IX\_ETH\_ACC\_SUCCESS*  
 ◇ *IX\_ETH\_ACC\_FAIL* : invalid arguments.  
 ◇ *IX\_ETH\_ACC\_INVALID\_PORT* : *portId* is invalid.  
 ◇ *IX\_ETH\_ACC\_PORT\_UNINITIALIZED* : *portId* is un-initialized

---

```
ixEthAccMiiReadRtn (  UINT8   phyAddr,
                      UINT8   phyReg,
                      UINT16 * value
                      )
```

Reads a 16 bit value from a PHY.

Reads a 16-bit word from a register of a MII-compliant PHY. Reading is performed through the MII management interface. This function returns when the read operation has successfully completed, or when a timeout has elapsed.

- Reentrant – no
- ISR Callable – no

**Precondition:**

The MAC on Ethernet Port 2 (NPE C) must be initialised, and generating the MDIO clock.

**Parameters:**

*phyAddr*   **UINT8** [in] – the address of the Ethernet PHY (0–31)  
*phyReg*    **UINT8** [in] – the number of the MII register to read (0–31)  
*value*      **UINT16** [in] – the value read from the register

**Returns:**

**IxEthAccStatus**  
 ◇ *IX\_ETH\_ACC\_SUCCESS*  
 ◇ *IX\_ETH\_ACC\_FAIL* : failed to read the register.

---

```
ixEthAccMiiStatsShow (  UINT32 phyAddr )
```

Displays detailed information on a specified PHY.

Displays the current values of the first eight MII registers for a PHY,

- Reentrant – no
- ISR Callable – no

**Precondition:**

The MAC on Ethernet Port 2 (NPE C) must be initialised, and generating the MDIO clock.

**Parameters:**

*phyAddr*  UINT32 [in] – the address of the Ethernet PHY (0–31)

**Returns:**

IxEthAccStatus  
    ◇ *IX\_ETH\_ACC\_SUCCESS*  
    ◇ *IX\_ETH\_ACC\_FAIL* : invalid arguments.

---

```
ixEthAccMiiWriteRtn (  UINT8  phyAddr,  
                          UINT8  phyReg,  
                          UINT16 value  
                      )
```

Writes a 16 bit value to a PHY.

Writes a 16-bit word from a register of a MII-compliant PHY. Writing is performed through the MII management interface. This function returns when the write operation has successfully completed, or when a timeout has elapsed.

- Reentrant – no
- ISR Callable – no

**Precondition:**

The MAC on Ethernet Port 2 (NPE C) must be initialised, and generating the MDIO clock.

**Parameters:**

*phyAddr*  UINT8 [in] – the address of the Ethernet PHY (0–31)  
*phyReg*   UINT8 [in] – the number of the MII register to write (0–31)  
*value*     UINT16 [out] – the value to write to the register

**Returns:**

IxEthAccStatus  
    ◇ *IX\_ETH\_ACC\_SUCCESS*  
    ◇ *IX\_ETH\_ACC\_FAIL* : failed to write register.

---

```
ixEthAccPortDisable ( IxEthAccPortId portId )
```

This disables an Ethernet port for both Tx and Rx.

Free MBufs are returned to the user via the registered callback when the port is disabled

- Reentrant – yes
- ISR Callable – no

**Precondition:**

The port must be enabled with *ixEthAccPortEnable*, otherwise this function has no effect

**Parameters:**

*portId* **IxEthAccPortId** [in] – Port id to act upon.

**Returns:**

IxEthAccStatus  
    ◇ *IX\_ETH\_ACC\_SUCCESS*  
    ◇ *IX\_ETH\_ACC\_INVALID\_PORT* : *portId* is invalid.  
    ◇ *IX\_ETH\_ACC\_PORT\_UNINITIALIZED* : *portId* is not initialized  
    ◇ *IX\_ETH\_ACC\_MAC\_UNINITIALIZED* : port MAC address is not initialized

---

```
ixEthAccPortDuplexModeGet ( IxEthAccPortId      portId,  
                           IxEthAccDuplexMode * mode  
                           )
```

Get the duplex mode for the MAC.

return the duplex configuration of the IXP400 MAC.

**Note:**

The configuration should match that provisioned on the PHY. See *ixEthAccDuplexModeSet*

- Reentrant – yes
- ISR Callable – no

**Parameters:**

*portId* **IxEthAccPortId** [in]  
*\*mode* **IxEthAccDuplexMode** [out]

**Returns:**

IxEthAccStatus  
    ◇ *IX\_ETH\_ACC\_SUCCESS*  
    ◇ *IX\_ETH\_ACC\_INVALID\_PORT* : *portId* is invalid.  
    ◇ *IX\_ETH\_ACC\_PORT\_UNINITIALIZED* : *portId* is un-initialized

---



```

ixEthAccPortDuplexModeSet ( IxEthAccPortId      portId,
                           IxEthAccDuplexMode mode
                           )

```

Set the duplex mode for the MAC.

Configure the IXP400 MAC to either full or half duplex.

**Note:**

The configuration should match that provisioned on the PHY.

- Reentrant – yes
- ISR Callable – no

**Parameters:**

*portId* **IxEthAccPortId** [in]  
*mode* **IxEthAccDuplexMode** [in]

**Returns:**

**IxEthAccStatus**  
 ◇ *IX\_ETH\_ACC\_SUCCESS*  
 ◇ *IX\_ETH\_ACC\_INVALID\_PORT* : *portId* is invalid.  
 ◇ *IX\_ETH\_ACC\_PORT\_UNINITIALIZED* : *portId* is un-initialized

---

```

ixEthAccPortEnable ( IxEthAccPortId portId )

```

This enables an Ethernet port for both Tx and Rx.

- Reentrant – yes
- ISR Callable – no

**Precondition:**

The port must first be initialized via *ixEthAccPortInit* and the MAC address must be set using *ixEthAccUnicastMacAddressSet* before enabling it. The rx and Tx Done callbacks registration via *ixEthAccPortTxDoneCallbackRegister* and *ixEthAccPortRxCallbackRegister* has to be done before enabling the traffic.

**Parameters:**

*portId* **IxEthAccPortId** [in] – Port id to act upon.

**Returns:**

**IxEthAccStatus**  
 ◇ *IX\_ETH\_ACC\_SUCCESS*  
 ◇ *IX\_ETH\_ACC\_INVALID\_PORT* : *portId* is invalid.  
 ◇ *IX\_ETH\_ACC\_PORT\_UNINITIALIZED* : *portId* is not initialized

◇ *IX\_ETH\_ACC\_MAC\_UNINITIALIZED* : port MAC address is not initialized

---

```
ixEthAccPortEnabledQuery ( IxEthAccPortId portId,  
                           BOOL *      enabled  
                           )
```

Get the enabled state of a port.

- Reentrant – yes
- ISR Callable – yes

**Precondition:**

The port must first be initialized via *ixEthAccPortInit*

**Parameters:**

*portId* **IxEthAccPortId** [in] – Port id to act upon.  
*enabled* BOOL [out] – location to store the state of the port

**Returns:**

IxEthAccStatus  
◇ *IX\_ETH\_ACC\_SUCCESS*  
◇ *IX\_ETH\_ACC\_INVALID\_PORT* : portId is invalid

---

```
ixEthAccPortInit ( IxEthAccPortId portId )
```

Initializes an NPE/Ethernet MAC Port.

The NPE/Ethernet port initialisation includes the following steps

- Initialize the NPE/Ethernet MAC hardware.
  - Verify NPE downloaded and operational.
  - The NPE shall be available for usage once this API returns.
  - Verify that the Ethernet port is present before initializing
- 
- Reentrant – no
  - ISR Callable – no

This should be called once per mac device. The NPE/MAC shall be in disabled state after init.

**Precondition:**

The component must be initialized via *ixEthAccInit* The NPE must first be downloaded with the required microcode which supports all required features.

Dependant on Services: (Must be initialized before using this service may be initialized) ixNPEmh – NPE Message handling service. ixQmgr – Queue Manager component.

**Parameters:**

*portId* **IxEthAccPortId** [in]

**Returns:**

IxEthAccStatus

- ◇ *IX\_ETH\_ACC\_SUCCESS*: if the ethernet port is not present, a warning is issued.
  - ◇ *IX\_ETH\_ACC\_FAIL* : The NPE processor has failed to initialize.
  - ◇ *IX\_ETH\_ACC\_INVALID\_PORT* : portId is invalid.
- 

**IxEthAccStatus** ixEthAccPortMacReset ( **IxEthAccPortId** *portId* )

Reset MAC core on the port.

This function will perform a MAC core reset (NPE Ethernet coprocessor). This function is inherently unsafe and the NPE recovery is not guaranteed after this function is called. The proper manner of performing port disable and enable (which will reset the MAC as well) is ixEthAccPortEnable/ixEthAccPortDisable.

This function is the recommended usage scenario for hardware failure recovery and should never be used for throttling traffic.

- Reentrant – yes
- ISR Callable – no

**Precondition:**

**Note:**

Calling ixEthAccPortDisable followed by ixEthAccPortEnable is guaranteed to restore correct Ethernet Tx/Rx operation.

**Parameters:**

*portId* **IxEthAccPortId** [in] : ID of the port

**Returns:**

IxEthAccStatus

- ◇ *IX\_ETH\_ACC\_SUCCESS* : MAC core reset
  - ◇ *IX\_ETH\_ACC\_FAIL* : Invalid port or Ethernet service not initialized
  - ◇ *IX\_ETH\_ACC\_INVALID\_PORT* : portId is invalid.
  - ◇ *IX\_ETH\_ACC\_PORT\_UNINITIALIZED* : portId is un-initialized
-

```

ixEthAccPortMultiBufferRxCallbackRegister ( IxEthAccPortId portId,
                                             IxEthAccPortMultiBufferRxCallback rxCallbackFn,
                                             UINT32 callbackTag
                                             )

```

Register a callback function to allow the reception of frames.

The registered callback function is called once a frame is received by this service. If many frames are already received, the function is called once.

If called several times the latest callback shall be registered for a particular port.

- Reentrant – yes
- ISR Callable – yes

**Parameters:**

*portId*            **IxEthAccPortId** [in] – Register callback for a particular MAC device.  
*rxCallbackFn* – *IxEthAccMultiBufferRxCallbackFn* – Function to be called when Ethernet frames are available.  
*callbackTag*    – This tag shall be provided to the callback function.

**Returns:**

**IxEthAccStatus**  
 ◇ *IX\_ETH\_ACC\_SUCCESS*  
 ◇ *IX\_ETH\_ACC\_INVALID\_PORT* : *portId* is invalid.  
 ◇ *IX\_ETH\_ACC\_PORT\_UNINITIALIZED* : *portId* is un-initialized  
 ◇ *IX\_ETH\_ACC\_INVALID\_ARG* : An argument other than *portId* is invalid.

**See also:**

**ixEthAccPortMultiBufferRxCallbackRegister**

**IxEthAccPortMultiBufferRxCallback**

**ixEthAccPortRxCallbackRegister**

**IxEthAccPortRxCallback**

---

```

ixEthAccPortMulticastAddressJoinAll ( IxEthAccPortId portId )

```

Filter all frames with multicast dest.

This function clears the MAC address table, and then sets the MAC to forward ALL multicast frames to the NPE. Specifically, it forwards all frames whose destination address has the LSB of the highest byte set (01:00:00:00:00:00). This bit is commonly referred to as the "multicast bit". Broadcast frames will still be forwarded.

Other functions modify the MAC filtering

- ***ixEthAccPortMulticastAddressJoinAll()*** – all multicast frames are forwarded to the application
- ***ixEthAccPortMulticastAddressLeaveAll()*** – rollback the effects of ***ixEthAccPortMulticastAddressJoinAll()***
- ***ixEthAccPortMulticastAddressLeave()*** – unprovision a new filtering address
- ***ixEthAccPortMulticastAddressJoin()*** – provision a new filtering address
- ***ixEthAccPortPromiscuousModeSet()*** – all frames are forwarded to the application regardless of the multicast address provisioned
- ***ixEthAccPortPromiscuousModeClear()*** – frames are forwarded to the application following the multicast address provisioned

In all cases, unicast and broadcast addresses are forwarded to the application.

- Reentrant – yes
- ISR Callable – no

**Parameters:**

*portId* **IxEthAccPortId** [in] – Ethernet port id.

**Returns:**

IxEthAccStatus  
 ◇ ***IX\_ETH\_ACC\_SUCCESS***  
 ◇ ***IX\_ETH\_ACC\_INVALID\_PORT*** : *portId* is invalid.  
 ◇ ***IX\_ETH\_ACC\_PORT\_UNINITIALIZED*** : *portId* is un–initialized

---

**ixEthAccPortMulticastAddressLeaveAll ( **IxEthAccPortId** *portId* )**

This function unconfigures the multicast filtering settings.

This function first clears the MAC address table, and then sets the MAC as configured by the promiscuous mode current settings.

Other functions modify the MAC filtering

- ***ixEthAccPortMulticastAddressJoinAll()*** – all multicast frames are forwarded to the application
- ***ixEthAccPortMulticastAddressLeaveAll()*** – rollback the effects of ***ixEthAccPortMulticastAddressJoinAll()***
- ***ixEthAccPortMulticastAddressLeave()*** – unprovision a new filtering address
- ***ixEthAccPortMulticastAddressJoin()*** – provision a new filtering address
- ***ixEthAccPortPromiscuousModeSet()*** – all frames are forwarded to the application regardless of the multicast address provisioned
- ***ixEthAccPortPromiscuousModeClear()*** – frames are forwarded to the application following the multicast address provisioned

In all cases, unicast and broadcast addresses are forwarded to the application.

- Reentrant – yes
- ISR Callable – no

**Parameters:**

*portId* **IxEthAccPortId** [in] – Ethernet port id.

**Returns:**

**IxEthAccStatus**

◊ *IX\_ETH\_ACC\_SUCCESS*

◊ *IX\_ETH\_ACC\_INVALID\_PORT* : portId is invalid.

◊ *IX\_ETH\_ACC\_PORT\_UNINITIALIZED* : portId is un-initialized

---

**ixEthAccPortMulticastAddressShow** ( **IxEthAccPortId** *portId* )

Displays multicast MAC address.

Displays multicast address which have been configured using *ixEthAccMulticastAddressJoin*

- Reentrant – yes
- ISR Callable – no

**Parameters:**

*portId* **IxEthAccPortId** [in] – Ethernet port id.

**Returns:**

void

---

**IxEthAccStatus** **ixEthAccPortNpeLoopbackDisable** ( **IxEthAccPortId** *portId* )

Disable NPE loopback.

This function is used to disable the NPE loopback if previously enabled using *ixEthAccNpeLoopbackEnable*.

This function is recommended for power-up diagnostic checks and should never be used under normal Ethernet traffic operations.

- Reentrant – yes
- ISR Callable – no

**Precondition:**

**Note:**

Calling *ixEthAccPortDisable* followed by *ixEthAccPortEnable* is guaranteed to restore correct Ethernet Tx/Rx operation.

**Parameters:**

*portId* **IxEthAccPortId** [in] : ID of the port

**Returns:**

IxEthAccStatus

- ◊ *IX\_ETH\_ACC\_SUCCESS* : NPE loopback successfully disabled
  - ◊ *IX\_ETH\_ACC\_FAIL* : Invalid port or Ethernet service not initialized
  - ◊ *IX\_ETH\_ACC\_INVALID\_PORT* : portId is invalid.
  - ◊ *IX\_ETH\_ACC\_PORT\_UNINITIALIZED* : portId is un-initialized
- 

**ixEthAccPortPromiscuousModeClear ( IxEthAccPortId portId )**

Put the Ethernet MAC device in non-promiscuous mode.

In non-promiscuous mode the MAC filters all frames other than destination MAC address which matches the following criteria:

- Unicast address provisioned via *ixEthAccUnicastMacAddressSet*
- All broadcast frames.
- Multicast addresses provisioned via *ixEthAccMulticastAddressJoin*

Other functions modify the MAC filtering

- *ixEthAccPortMulticastAddressJoinAll()* – all multicast frames are forwarded to the application
- *ixEthAccPortMulticastAddressLeaveAll()* – rollback the effects of *ixEthAccPortMulticastAddressJoinAll()*
- *ixEthAccPortMulticastAddressLeave()* – unprovision a new filtering address
- *ixEthAccPortMulticastAddressJoin()* – provision a new filtering address
- *ixEthAccPortPromiscuousModeSet()* – all frames are forwarded to the application regardless of the multicast address provisioned
- *ixEthAccPortPromiscuousModeClear()* – frames are forwarded to the application following the multicast address provisioned

In all cases, unicast and broadcast addresses are forwarded to the application.

- Reentrant – yes
- ISR Callable – no

**See also:**

**ixEthAccPortPromiscuousModeSet**

**Parameters:**

*portId* **IxEthAccPortId** [in] – Ethernet port id.

**Returns:**

IxEthAccStatus

- ◊ *IX\_ETH\_ACC\_SUCCESS*
  - ◊ *IX\_ETH\_ACC\_INVALID\_PORT* : portId is invalid.
  - ◊ *IX\_ETH\_ACC\_PORT\_UNINITIALIZED* : portId is un-initialized
-

```
ixEthAccPortPromiscuousModeSet ( IxEthAccPortId portId )
```

Put the MAC device in promiscuous mode.

If the device is in promiscuous mode then all all received frames shall be forwarded to the NPE for processing.

Other functions modify the MAC filtering

- ***ixEthAccPortMulticastAddressJoinAll()*** – all multicast frames are forwarded to the application
- ***ixEthAccPortMulticastAddressLeaveAll()*** – rollback the effects of ***ixEthAccPortMulticastAddressJoinAll()***
- ***ixEthAccPortMulticastAddressLeave()*** – unprovision a new filtering address
- ***ixEthAccPortMulticastAddressJoin()*** – provision a new filtering address
- ***ixEthAccPortPromiscuousModeSet()*** – all frames are forwarded to the application regardless of the multicast address provisioned
- ***ixEthAccPortPromiscuousModeClear()*** – frames are forwarded to the application following the multicast address provisioned

In all cases, unicast and broadcast addresses are forwarded to the application.

- Reentrant – yes
- ISR Callable – no

*See also:*

**ixEthAccPortPromiscuousModeClear**

**Parameters:**

*portId* **IxEthAccPortId** [in] – Ethernet port id.

**Returns:**

**IxEthAccStatus**  
 ◇ ***IX\_ETH\_ACC\_SUCCESS***  
 ◇ ***IX\_ETH\_ACC\_INVALID\_PORT*** : *portId* is invalid.  
 ◇ ***IX\_ETH\_ACC\_PORT\_UNINITIALIZED*** : *portId* is un–initialized

---

```
ixEthAccPortRxCallbackRegister ( IxEthAccPortId          portId,
                                IxEthAccPortRxCallback rxCallbackFn,
                                UINT32                  callbackTag
                                )
```

Register a callback function to allow the reception of frames.

The registered callback function is called once a frame is received by this service.

If called several times the latest callback shall be registered for a particular port.

- Reentrant – yes



- ISR Callable – yes

**Parameters:**

*portId*            **IxEthAccPortId** [in] – Register callback for a particular MAC device.  
*rxCallbackFn* **IxEthAccPortRxCallback** [in] – Function to be called when Ethernet frames are available.  
*callbackTag*    UINT32 [in] – This tag shall be provided to the callback function.

**Returns:**

IxEthAccStatus  
 ◇ *IX\_ETH\_ACC\_SUCCESS*  
 ◇ *IX\_ETH\_ACC\_INVALID\_PORT* : portId is invalid.  
 ◇ *IX\_ETH\_ACC\_PORT\_UNINITIALIZED* : portId is un-initialized  
 ◇ *IX\_ETH\_ACC\_INVALID\_ARG* : An argument other than portId is invalid.

---

**IxEthAccStatus** ixEthAccPortRxDisable ( **IxEthAccPortId** *portId* )

Disable Rx on the port.

This function can be used to disable Rx in the MAC core. Rx can be re-enabled, although this is not guaranteed, by performing a MAC core reset (*ixEthAccPortMacReset*) and calling ixEthAccPortRxEnable. Note that using this function is not recommended, except for shutting down Rx for emergency reasons. For proper port shutdown and re-enabling see ixEthAccPortEnable and ixEthAccPortDisable.

This function is the recommended usage scenario for emergency security shutdown and hardware failure recovery and should never be used for throttling traffic.

- Reentrant – yes
- ISR Callable – no

**Precondition:**

**Note:**

Calling ixEthAccPortDisable followed by ixEthAccPortEnable is guaranteed to restore correct Ethernet Tx/Rx operation.

**Parameters:**

*portId* : ID of the port

**Returns:**

IxEthAccStatus  
 ◇ *IX\_ETH\_ACC\_SUCCESS* : Rx successfully disabled  
 ◇ *IX\_ETH\_ACC\_FAIL* : Invalid port or Ethernet service not initialized  
 ◇ *IX\_ETH\_ACC\_INVALID\_PORT* : portId is invalid.  
 ◇ *IX\_ETH\_ACC\_PORT\_UNINITIALIZED* : portId is un-initialized

---

## **IxEthAccStatus** ixEthAccPortRxEnable ( **IxEthAccPortId** *portId* )

Enable Rx on the port.

This function is the complement of ixEthAccPortRxDisable and should be used only after Rx was disabled.

This function is the recommended usage scenario for emergency security shutdown and hardware failure recovery and should never be used for throttling traffic.

- Reentrant – yes
- ISR Callable – no

### **Note:**

Calling ixEthAccPortDisable followed by ixEthAccPortEnable is guaranteed to restore correct Ethernet Tx/Rx operation.

### **Precondition:**

### **Parameters:**

*portId* **IxEthAccPortId** [in] : ID of the port

### **Returns:**

IxEthAccStatus

- ◇ **IX\_ETH\_ACC\_SUCCESS** : Rx successfully enabled
  - ◇ **IX\_ETH\_ACC\_FAIL** : Invalid port or Ethernet service not initialized
  - ◇ **IX\_ETH\_ACC\_INVALID\_PORT** : portId is invalid.
  - ◇ **IX\_ETH\_ACC\_PORT\_UNINITIALIZED** : portId is un-initialized
- 

## **ixEthAccPortRxFrameAppendFCSDisable** ( **IxEthAccPortId** *portId* )

Do not forward the FCS portion of the received Ethernet frame to the user. The FCS is striped from the receive buffer. The received frame length does not include the FCS size (4 bytes). Frame FCS validity checks are still carried out on all received frames.

This is the default behavior of the component. Do not change this behaviour while the port is enabled.

- Reentrant – yes
- ISR Callable – no

### **Parameters:**

*portId* **IxEthAccPortId** [in]

### **Returns:**

IxEthAccStatus

- ◇ **IX\_ETH\_ACC\_SUCCESS**
  - ◇ **IX\_ETH\_ACC\_INVALID\_PORT** : portId is invalid.
  - ◇ **IX\_ETH\_ACC\_PORT\_UNINITIALIZED** : portId is un-initialized
-

```
ixEthAccPortRxFramAppendFCSEnable ( IxEthAccPortId portId )
```

Forward frames with FCS included in the receive buffer.

The FCS is not striped from the receive buffer. The received frame length includes the FCS size (4 bytes). ie. A minimum sized ethernet frame shall have a length of 64bytes.

Frame FCS validity checks are still carried out on all received frames.

This is not the default behavior of the access component.

- Reentrant – yes
- ISR Callable – no

**Parameters:**

*portId* **IxEthAccPortId** [in]

**Returns:**

IxEthAccStatus

◊ *IX\_ETH\_ACC\_SUCCESS*

◊ *IX\_ETH\_ACC\_INVALID\_PORT* : portId is invalid.

◊ *IX\_ETH\_ACC\_PORT\_UNINITIALIZED* : portId is un-initialized

---

```
ixEthAccPortRxFreeReplenish ( IxEthAccPortId portId,  
                             IX_OSAL_MBUF * buffer  
                             )
```

This function provides buffers for the Ethernet receive path.

This component does not have a buffer management mechanisms built in. All Rx buffers must be supplied to it via this interface.

- Reentrant – yes
- ISR Callable – yes

**Parameters:**

*portId* **IxEthAccPortId** [in] – Provide buffers only to specific Rx MAC.

*buffer* [in] – Provide an MBUF to the Ethernet receive mechanism. Buffers smaller than *IX\_ETHNPE\_ACC\_RXFREE\_BUFFER\_LENGTH\_MIN* is not allowed. Buffers smaller than *IX\_ETHACC\_RX\_MBUF\_MIN\_SIZE* may result in poor performances and excessive buffer chaining. Buffers larger than this size may be suitable for jumbo frames. Chained packets are not supported and the field *IX\_OSAL\_MBUF\_NEXT\_PKT\_IN\_CHAIN\_PTR* must be NULL.

**Returns:**

IxEthAccStatus

◊ *IX\_ETH\_ACC\_SUCCESS*

◊ *IX\_ETH\_ACC\_FAIL* : Not able to queue the buffer in the receive service.

- ◇ *IX\_ETH\_ACC\_FAIL* : Buffer size is less than *IX\_ETHNPE\_ACC\_RXFREE\_BUFFER\_LENGTH\_MIN*
- ◇ *IX\_ETH\_ACC\_INVALID\_PORT* : portId is invalid.
- ◇ *IX\_ETH\_ACC\_PORT\_UNINITIALIZED* : portId is un-initialized

**Note:**

If the buffer replenish operation fails it is the responsibility of the user to free the buffer.

Sufficient buffers must be supplied to the component to maintain receive throughput and avoid rx buffer underflow conditions. To meet this goal, It is expected that the user preload the component with a sufficient number of buffers prior to enabling the NPE Ethernet receive path. The recommended minimum number of buffers is 8.

For maximum performances, the mbuf size should be greater than the maximum frame size (Ethernet header, payload and FCS) + 64. Supplying smaller mbufs to the service results in mbuf chaining and degraded performances. The recommended size is *IX\_ETHACC\_RX\_MBUF\_MIN\_SIZE*, which is enough to take care of 802.3 frames and "baby jumbo" frames without chaining, and "jumbo" frame within chaining.

Buffers may not be filled up to their length. The firware fills them up to the previous 64 bytes boundary. The user has to be aware that the length of the received mbufs may be smaller than the length of the supplied mbufs.

**Warning:**

This function checks the parameters if the NDEBUG flag is not defined. Turning on the argument checking (disabled by default) results in a lower EthAcc performance as this function is part of the data path.

## **IxEthAccStatus ixEthAccPortTxDisable ( *IxEthAccPortId* portId )**

Disable Tx on the port.

This function can be used to disable Tx in the MAC core. Tx can be re-enabled, although this is not guaranteed, by performing a MAC core reset (*ixEthAccPortMacReset*) and calling *ixEthAccPortTxEnable*. Note that using this function is not recommended, except for shutting down Tx for emergency reasons. For proper port shutdown and re-enabling see *ixEthAccPortEnable* and *ixEthAccPortDisable*.

This function is the recommended usage scenario for emergency security shutdown and hardware failure recovery and should never be used for throttling traffic.

- Reentrant – yes
- ISR Callable – no

**Note:**

Calling *ixEthAccPortDisable* followed by *ixEthAccPortEnable* is guaranteed to restore correct Ethernet Tx/Rx operation.

**Precondition:**

**Parameters:**

*portId* : ID of the port

**Returns:**

**IxEthAccStatus**

- ◇ *IX\_ETH\_ACC\_SUCCESS* : Tx successfully disabled
  - ◇ *IX\_ETH\_ACC\_FAIL* : Invalid port or Ethernet service not initialized
  - ◇ *IX\_ETH\_ACC\_INVALID\_PORT* : *portId* is invalid.
  - ◇ *IX\_ETH\_ACC\_PORT\_UNINITIALIZED* : *portId* is un-initialized
- 

```

ixEthAccPortTxDoneCallbackRegister ( IxEthAccPortId           portId,
                                     IxEthAccPortTxDoneCallback txCallbackFn,
                                     UINT32                       callbackTag
                                     )

```

Register a callback function to allow the transmitted buffers to return to the user.

This function registers the transmit buffer done function callback for a particular port.

The registered callback function is called once the previously submitted buffer is no longer required by this service. It may be returned upon successful transmission of the frame or shutdown of port prior to submission. The calling of this registered function is not a guarantee of successful transmission of the buffer.

If called several times the latest callback shall be registered for a particular port.

- Reentrant – yes
- ISR Callable – yes

**Precondition:**

The port must be initialized via *ixEthAccPortInit*

**Parameters:**

*portId*            **IxEthAccPortId** [in] – Register callback for a particular MAC device.  
*txCallbackFn*   **IxEthAccPortTxDoneCallback** [in] – Function to be called to return transmit buffers to the user.  
*callbackTag*    UINT32 [in] – This tag shall be provided to the callback function.

**Returns:**

**IxEthAccStatus**

- ◇ *IX\_ETH\_ACC\_SUCCESS*
  - ◇ *IX\_ETH\_ACC\_INVALID\_PORT* : *portId* is invalid.
  - ◇ *IX\_ETH\_ACC\_PORT\_UNINITIALIZED* : *portId* is un-initialized
  - ◇ *IX\_ETH\_ACC\_INVALID\_ARG* : An argument other than *portId* is invalid.
- 

```

IxEthAccStatus ixEthAccPortTxEnable ( IxEthAccPortId portId )

```

Enable Tx on the port.

This function is the complement of `ixEthAccPortTxDisable` and should be used only after Tx was disabled. A MAC core reset is required before this function is called (see *ixEthAccPortMacReset*).

This function is the recommended usage scenario for emergency security shutdown and hardware failure recovery and should never be used for throttling traffic.

- Reentrant – yes
- ISR Callable – no

***Precondition:***

***Note:***

Calling `ixEthAccPortDisable` followed by `ixEthAccPortEnable` is guaranteed to restore correct Ethernet Tx/Rx operation.

***Parameters:***

*portId* : ID of the port

***Returns:***

`IxEthAccStatus`

- ◇ `IX_ETH_ACC_SUCCESS` : Tx successfully enabled
  - ◇ `IX_ETH_ACC_FAIL` : Invalid port or Ethernet service not initialized
  - ◇ `IX_ETH_ACC_INVALID_PORT` : *portId* is invalid.
  - ◇ `IX_ETH_ACC_PORT_UNINITIALIZED` : *portId* is un-initialized
- 

`ixEthAccPortTxFrameAppendFCSDisable ( IxEthAccPortId portId )`

Disable the appending of Ethernet FCS to all frames submitted to this port.

When disabled, the Ethernet FCS is not added to the submitted frames. This is not the default behavior of the access component.

***Note:***

Since the FCS is not appended to the frame it is expected that the frame submitted to the component includes a valid FCS at the end of the data, although this will not be validated.

The component shall forward the frame to the Ethernet MAC WITHOUT modification.

Do not change this behaviour while the port is enabled.

***Note:***

Tx FCS append is not disabled while Tx padding is enabled.

- Reentrant – yes
- ISR Callable – no

*See also:*

**ixEthAccPortTxFrameAppendPaddingEnable**

**Parameters:**

*portId* **IxEthAccPortId** [in]

**Returns:**

IxEthAccStatus

◇ *IX\_ETH\_ACC\_SUCCESS*

◇ *IX\_ETH\_ACC\_INVALID\_PORT* : portId is invalid.

◇ *IX\_ETH\_ACC\_PORT\_UNINITIALIZED* : portId is un-initialized

---

**ixEthAccPortTxFrameAppendFCSEnable ( **IxEthAccPortId** *portId* )**

Enable the appending of Ethernet FCS to all frames submitted to this port.

When enabled, the FCS is added to the submitted frames. This is the default behavior of the access component. Do not change this behaviour while the port is enabled.

- Reentrant – yes
- ISR Callable – no

**Parameters:**

*portId* **IxEthAccPortId** [in]

**Returns:**

IxEthAccStatus

◇ *IX\_ETH\_ACC\_SUCCESS*

◇ *IX\_ETH\_ACC\_INVALID\_PORT* : portId is invalid.

◇ *IX\_ETH\_ACC\_PORT\_UNINITIALIZED* : portId is un-initialized

---

**ixEthAccPortTxFrameAppendPaddingDisable ( **IxEthAccPortId** *portId* )**

Disable padding bytes to be appended to runt frames submitted to this port.

Disable padding bytes to be appended to runt frames submitted to this port. This is not the default behavior of the access component.

**Warning:**

Do not change this behaviour while the port is enabled.

- Reentrant – yes
- ISR Callable – no

**Parameters:**

*portId* **IxEthAccPortId** [in]

**Returns:**

IxEthAccStatus

◊ *IX\_ETH\_ACC\_SUCCESS*◊ *IX\_ETH\_ACC\_INVALID\_PORT* : portId is invalid.◊ *IX\_ETH\_ACC\_PORT\_UNINITIALIZED* : portId is un-initialized

**ixEthAccPortTxFrameAppendPaddingEnable ( **IxEthAccPortId** *portId* )**

Enable padding bytes to be appended to runt frames submitted to this port.

Enable up to 60 null-bytes padding bytes to be appended to runt frames submitted to this port. This is the default behavior of the access component.

**Warning:**

Do not change this behaviour while the port is enabled.

**Note:**

When Tx padding is enabled, Tx FCS generation is turned on

- Reentrant – yes
- ISR Callable – no

**See also:**

ixEthAccPortTxFrameAppendFCSDusable

**Parameters:**

*portId* **IxEthAccPortId** [in]

**Returns:**

IxEthAccStatus

◊ *IX\_ETH\_ACC\_SUCCESS*◊ *IX\_ETH\_ACC\_INVALID\_PORT* : portId is invalid.◊ *IX\_ETH\_ACC\_PORT\_UNINITIALIZED* : portId is un-initialized

**ixEthAccPortUnicastAddressShow ( **IxEthAccPortId** *portId* )**

Displays unicast MAC address.

Displays unicast address which is configured using *ixEthAccUnicastMacAddressSet*. This function also displays the MAC filter used to filter multicast frames.

Other functions modify the MAC filtering

- *ixEthAccPortMulticastAddressJoinAll()* – all multicast frames are forwarded to the application
- *ixEthAccPortMulticastAddressLeaveAll()* – rollback the effects of *ixEthAccPortMulticastAddressJoinAll()*



- ***ixEthAccPortMulticastAddressLeave()*** – unprovision a new filtering address
- ***ixEthAccPortMulticastAddressJoin()*** – provision a new filtering address
- ***ixEthAccPortPromiscuousModeSet()*** – all frames are forwarded to the application regardless of the multicast address provisioned
- ***ixEthAccPortPromiscuousModeClear()*** – frames are forwarded to the application following the multicast address provisioned

In all cases, unicast and broadcast addresses are forwarded to the application.

- Reentrant – yes
- ISR Callable – no

**Parameters:**

*portId* **IxEthAccPortId** [in] – Ethernet port id.

**Returns:**

void

---

```
ixEthAccPortUnicastMacAddressSet ( IxEthAccPortId    portId,
                                   IxEthAccMacAddr * macAddr
                                   )
```

Configure unicast MAC address for a particular port.

- Reentrant – yes
- ISR Callable – no

**Parameters:**

*portId* **IxEthAccPortId** [in] – Ethernet port id.  
*\*macAddr* **IxEthAccMacAddr** [in] – Ethernet Mac address.

**Returns:**

IxEthAccStatus  
 ◇ ***IX\_ETH\_ACC\_SUCCESS***  
 ◇ ***IX\_ETH\_ACC\_INVALID\_PORT*** : *portId* is invalid.  
 ◇ ***IX\_ETH\_ACC\_PORT\_UNINITIALIZED*** : *portId* is un-initialized

---

```
void ixEthAccQMgrRxNotificationDisable ( void )
```

Disable queue interrupts for all Rx queues.

This function will write to the QMgr interrupt enable register, clearing the bits associated with the receive queues. It will then write to the QMgr status interrupt to clear any already pending interrupts associated

with the receive queues. This means that no more interrupts can occur for these queues until the conditions are satisfied: the queues are completely drained, then the interrupt i enable register bits for the queues are re-enabled using **ixEthAccQMGrRxNotificationEnable()**.

- Reentrant – no
  - ISR Callable – yes
- 

```
void ixEthAccQMGrRxNotificationEnable ( void )
```

Enable queue interrupts for all Rx queues.

This function will write to the QMgr interrupt enable register, adding the bits associated with the receive queues. After calling this function interrupts can occur for these queues given that the queues were properly drained prior to calling the function.

- Reentrant – no
  - ISR Callable – yes
- 

```
IxEthAccStatus ixEthAccQMGrRxQEntryGet ( UINT32 * numEntries )
```

Get the total number of receive buffers in all rx queues.

This function will query QMgr to get each receive queue's number of entries and store the total in the UINT32 pointed to by the numEntries parameter.

- Reentrant – yes
- ISR Callable – yes

**Precondition:**

**Parameters:**

*numEntries* : pointer to UINT32 where the number of total entries can be written

---

```
IxEthAccStatus ixEthAccQMStatusUpdate ( IxEthAccPortId portId )
```

To retrigger the update of queue condition (interrupt and status flag) in order to restore these states that are lost during soft-error handling. This ensures Eth-NPE to continue its services.

- Reentrant – no
- ISR Callable – no

**Note:**

The function is useful for error-handling module to handle soft-error in Ethernet NPE.

It is expected that IRQ is disabled when this function is called.

**Parameters:**

*portId* **IxEthAccPortId** [in] : ID of the port

**Returns:**

IxEthAccStatus

- ◇ *IX\_ETH\_ACC\_SUCCESS* : Queue conditions are retrigged
  - ◇ *IX\_ETH\_ACC\_FAIL* : Queue conditions are not retrigged
  - ◇ *IX\_ETH\_ACC\_INVALID\_PORT* : portId is invalid.
  - ◇ *IX\_ETH\_ACC\_PORT\_UNINITIALIZED* : PORT is not initialized
- 

**ixEthAccRxSchedulingDisciplineSet ( IxEthAccSchedulerDiscipline *sched* )**

Set the Rx scheduling to one of *IxEthAccSchedulerDiscipline*.

The default behavior of the component is *FIFO\_NO\_PRIORITY*.

- Reentrant – yes
- ISR Callable – no

**Precondition:**

**Parameters:**

*sched* : *IxEthAccSchedulerDiscipline*

**Returns:**

IxEthAccStatus

- ◇ *IX\_ETH\_ACC\_SUCCESS* : Set appropriate discipline.
  - ◇ *IX\_ETH\_ACC\_FAIL* : Port is busy/priority scheduling not supported for A0.
  - ◇ *IX\_ETH\_ACC\_INVALID\_ARG* : Invalid/unsupported discipline.
- 

**IxEthAccStatus ixEthAccStartRequest ( void )**

Request Ethernet access layer to restart its currently stopped Tx and Rx Services for all the Ethernet ports.

Whenever this function is called, the internal counter is decremented by one (**ixEthAccStopRequest** increments this counter). If the counter becomes zero, this function sends an enable signal to QMgr dispatcher for it to proceed in serving the queues.

The internal counter is for synchronizing multiple requests to stop and resume Ethernet services.

- Reentrant – yes
- ISR Callable – no

**Note:**

The function is useful for error-handling module to handle soft-error in Ethernet NPE. User may use the APIs as follow:

- 1) Call **ixEthAccStopRequest** to stop Ethernet service.
- 2) Check that Ethernet service has been stoppoed with **ixEthAccStopDoneCheck**.
- 3) Proceed with soft-error recovery routine.
- 4) Call **ixEthAccStartRequest** to restart Ethernet service.

**Returns:**

IxEthAccStatus

- ◊ *IX\_ETH\_ACC\_SUCCESS* : Service start request is posted successfully.
  - ◊ *IX\_ETH\_ACC\_FAIL* : EthAcc service is not initialized.
- 

**ixEthAccStatsShow ( IxEthAccPortId portId )**

Displays a ports statistics on the standard io console using printf.

- Reentrant – no
- ISR Callable – no

**Precondition:****Parameters:**

*portId* **IxEthAccPortId** [in]

**Returns:**

void

---

**BOOL ixEthAccStopDoneCheck ( void )**

Checks whether the Ethernet traffic service is stopped completely.

- Reentrant – yes
- ISR Callable – no

**Note:**

The function is useful for error-handling module to handle soft-error in Ethernet NPE. User may use the APIs as follow:

- 1) Call **ixEthAccStopRequest** to stop Ethernet service.
- 2) Check that Ethernet service has been stoppoed with **ixEthAccStopDoneCheck**.
- 3) Proceed with soft-error recovery routine.
- 4) Call **ixEthAccStartRequest** to restart Ethernet service.

**Returns:**

BOOL

- ◊ *TRUE* : Ethernet Tx & Rx services for all ports are stopped

◇ *FALSE* : Ethernet Tx & Rx services for all ports are not stopped

---

### **IxEthAccStatus** IxEthAccStopRequest ( void )

Request Ethernet access layer to stop Tx and Rx Services for all the Ethernet ports.

This function maybe called multiple times e.g. NPE soft-errors in different NPEs. Whenever this function is called, an internal counter is incremented by one. The internal counter keep tracks on the number of "stop Ethernet-service" requested by user.

If it is the first request, a disable signal is sent to QMgr dispatcher function. On subsequent request, this function only increments the value of the counter without disabling QMgr dispatcher.

The internal counter is for synchronizing the possibility of multiple requests to stop and resume Ethernet services.

- Reentrant – yes
- ISR Callable – yes

#### **Note:**

The function is useful for error-handling module to handle soft-error in Ethernet NPE. User may use the APIs as follow:

- 1) Call **IxEthAccStopRequest** to stop Ethernet service.
- 2) Check that Ethernet service has been stoppoed with **IxEthAccStopDoneCheck**.
- 3) Proceed with soft-error recovery routine.
- 4) Call **IxEthAccStartRequest** to restart Ethernet service.

#### **Returns:**

IxEthAccStatus

◇ *IX\_ETH\_ACC\_SUCCESS* : "Stop Ethernet-service" request is posted successfully.

◇ *IX\_ETH\_ACC\_FAIL* : EthAcc service is not initialized.

---

```
IxEthAccTxSchedulingDisciplineSet ( IxEthAccPortId          portId,  
                                   IxEthAccSchedulerDiscipline sched  
                                   )
```

Set the port scheduling to one of *IxEthAccSchedulerDiscipline*.

The default behavior of the component is *FIFO\_NO\_PRIORITY*.

- Reentrant – yes
- ISR Callable – no

#### **Precondition:**

#### **Parameters:**

*portId* **IxEthAccPortId** [in]  
*sched* **IxEthAccSchedulerDiscipline** [in]

**Returns:**

IxEthAccStatus  
    ◇ *IX\_ETH\_ACC\_SUCCESS* : Set appropriate discipline.  
    ◇ *IX\_ETH\_ACC\_INVALID\_ARG* : Invalid/unsupported discipline.  
    ◇ *IX\_ETH\_ACC\_INVALID\_PORT* : portId is invalid.  
    ◇ *IX\_ETH\_ACC\_PORT\_UNINITIALIZED* : portId is un-initialized

---

**ixEthAccUninit ( void )**

Un-Initializes the Intel (R) IXP400 Software Ethernet Access Service.

- Reentrant – no
- ISR Callable – no

This should be called once per module Un-initialization.

**Returns:**

IxEthAccStatus  
    ◇ *IX\_ETH\_ACC\_SUCCESS*  
    ◇ *IX\_ETH\_ACC\_FAIL* : Service has failed to Un-initialize.

---

# Intel (R) IXP400 Software Ethernet Database (IxEthDB) API

ethDB is a library that does provides a MAC address database learning/filtering capability

## Data Structures

struct **IX\_OSAL\_ATTRIBUTE\_PACKED**  
*The IEEE 802.3 Ethernet MAC address structure.*

struct **IxEthDBWiFiRecData**  
*The user wi-fi input parameters structure.*

## Defines

```
#define INLINE
#define IX_ETH_DB_PRIVATE
#define IX_ETH_DB_PUBLIC
#define IX_IEEE803_MAC_ADDRESS_SIZE
    The size of the MAC address.

#define IX_IEEE802_1Q_QOS_PRIORITY_COUNT
    Number of QoS priorities defined by IEEE802.1Q.

#define IX_ETH_DB_802_1Q_VLAN_MASK
    VLAN mask.

#define IX_ETH_DB_802_1Q_QOS_MASK
    QoS Mask.

#define IX_ETH_DB_802_1Q_MAX_VLAN_ID
    Maximum VLAN IDs.

#define IX_ETH_DB_SET_VLAN_ID(vlanTag, vlanID)
    returns the given 802.1Q tag with the VLAN ID field substituted with the given VLAN ID

#define IX_ETH_DB_GET_VLAN_ID(vlanTag)
    returns the VLAN ID from the given 802.1Q tag

#define IX_ETH_DB_GET_QOS_PRIORITY(vlanTag)
    gets the QoS priority from the given 802.1Q tag

#define IX_ETH_DB_SET_QOS_PRIORITY(vlanTag, priority)
    sets the QoS priority to the given 802.1Q tag
```

```

#define IX_ETH_DB_CHECK_VLAN_TAG(vlanTag)
    checks the VLAN ID of the given 802.1Q tag

#define IX_ETH_DB_CHECK_VLAN_ID(vlanId)
    checks the VLAN ID

#define IX_IEEE802_1Q_VLAN_TPID
    returns the VLAN TPID (0x8100)

#define IX_ETH_DB_QOS_TRAFFIC_CLASS_COUNT_PROPERTY
    Property identifying number the supported number of traffic classes.

#define IX_ETH_DB_QOS_TRAFFIC_CLASS_0_RX_QUEUE_PROPERTY
    Rx queue assigned to traffic class 0.

#define IX_ETH_DB_QOS_TRAFFIC_CLASS_1_RX_QUEUE_PROPERTY
    Rx queue assigned to traffic class 1.

#define IX_ETH_DB_QOS_TRAFFIC_CLASS_2_RX_QUEUE_PROPERTY
    Rx queue assigned to traffic class 2.

#define IX_ETH_DB_QOS_TRAFFIC_CLASS_3_RX_QUEUE_PROPERTY
    Rx queue assigned to traffic class 3.

#define IX_ETH_DB_QOS_TRAFFIC_CLASS_4_RX_QUEUE_PROPERTY
    Rx queue assigned to traffic class 4.

#define IX_ETH_DB_QOS_TRAFFIC_CLASS_5_RX_QUEUE_PROPERTY
    Rx queue assigned to traffic class 5.

#define IX_ETH_DB_QOS_TRAFFIC_CLASS_6_RX_QUEUE_PROPERTY
    Rx queue assigned to traffic class 6.

#define IX_ETH_DB_QOS_TRAFFIC_CLASS_7_RX_QUEUE_PROPERTY
    Rx queue assigned to traffic class 7.

#define IX_ETH_DB_QOS_QUEUE_CONFIGURATION_COMPLETE
    Queue configuration complete.

#define IX_ETH_DB_WIFI_MIN_PAD_SIZE
    Minimum pad size.

#define IX_ETH_DB_WIFI_MAX_PAD_SIZE
    Maximum pad size.

#define IX_ETH_DB_MAINTENANCE_TIME
    The ixEthDBDatabaseMaintenance must be called by the user at a frequency of  
IX_ETH_DB_MAINTENANCE_TIME.

#define IX_ETH_DB_LEARNING_ENTRY_AGE_TIME

```



*The define specifies the filtering database age entry time. Static entries older than IX\_ETH\_DB\_LEARNING\_ENTRY\_AGE\_TIME +/- IX\_ETH\_DB\_MAINTENANCE\_TIME shall be removed.*

## Typedefs

**typedef UINT32 IxEthDBVlanId**  
*VLAN ID type, valid range is 0..4094, 0 signifying no VLAN membership.*

**typedef UINT32 IxEthDBVlanTag**  
*802.1Q VLAN tag, contains 3 bits user priority, 1 bit CFI, 12 bits VLAN ID*

**typedef UINT32 IxEthDBPriority**  
*QoS priority/traffic class type, valid range is 0..7, 0 being the lowest.*

**typedef UINT8 IxEthDBPriorityTable [8]**  
*Priority mapping table; 0..7 QoS priorities used to index, table contains traffic classes.*

**typedef UINT8 IxEthDBVlanSet [512]**  
*A 4096 bit array used to map the complete VLAN ID range.*

**typedef UINT32 IxEthDBProperty**  
*Property ID type.*

**typedef UINT32 IxEthDBPortId**  
*Definition of an IXP400 port.*

**typedef UINT8 IxEthDBPortMap [32]**  
*Port dependency map definition.*

## Enumerations

```
enum IxEthDBStatus {  
    IX_ETH_DB_SUCCESS,  
    IX_ETH_DB_FAIL,  
    IX_ETH_DB_INVALID_PORT,  
    IX_ETH_DB_PORT_UNINITIALIZED,  
    IX_ETH_DB_MAC_UNINITIALIZED,  
    IX_ETH_DB_INVALID_ARG,  
    IX_ETH_DB_NO_SUCH_ADDR,  
    IX_ETH_DB_NOMEM,  
    IX_ETH_DB_BUSY,  
    IX_ETH_DB_END,  
    IX_ETH_DB_INVALID_VLAN,  
    IX_ETH_DB_INVALID_PRIORITY,  
    IX_ETH_DB_NO_PERMISSION,  
    IX_ETH_DB_FEATURE_UNAVAILABLE,  
}
```

```

    IX_ETH_DB_INVALID_KEY,
    IX_ETH_DB_INVALID_RECORD_TYPE
}
Ethernet Database API return values.

enum IxEthDBFrameFilter {
    IX_ETH_DB_UNTAGGED_FRAMES,
    IX_ETH_DB_VLAN_TAGGED_FRAMES,
    IX_ETH_DB_PRIORITY_TAGGED_FRAMES,
    IX_ETH_DB_ACCEPT_ALL_FRAMES
}

enum IxEthDBTaggingAction {
    IX_ETH_DB_PASS_THROUGH,
    IX_ETH_DB_ADD_TAG,
    IX_ETH_DB_REMOVE_TAG,
    IX_ETH_DB_ENABLE_VLAN,
    IX_ETH_DB_DISABLE_VLAN
}

enum IxEthDBFirewallMode {
    IX_ETH_DB_FIREWALL_WHITE_LIST,
    IX_ETH_DB_FIREWALL_BLACK_LIST
}

enum IxEthDBRecordType {
    IX_ETH_DB_FILTERING_RECORD,
    IX_ETH_DB_FILTERING_VLAN_RECORD,
    IX_ETH_DB_WIFI_RECORD,
    IX_ETH_DB_FIREWALL_RECORD,
    IX_ETH_DB_GATEWAY_RECORD,
    IX_ETH_DB_MASK_RECORD,
    IX_ETH_DB_MAX_RECORD_TYPE_INDEX,
    IX_ETH_DB_NO_RECORD_TYPE,
    IX_ETH_DB_ALL_FILTERING_RECORDS,
    IX_ETH_DB_MASKED_FIREWALL_RECORD,
    IX_ETH_DB_ALL_RECORD_TYPES
}

enum IxEthDBFeature {
    IX_ETH_DB_LEARNING,
    IX_ETH_DB_FILTERING,
    IX_ETH_DB_VLAN_QOS,
    IX_ETH_DB_FIREWALL,
    IX_ETH_DB_SPANNING_TREE_PROTOCOL,
    IX_ETH_DB_WIFI_HEADER_CONVERSION,
    IX_ETH_DB_ADDRESS_MASKING
}

enum IxEthDBPropertyType {
    IX_ETH_DB_INTEGER_PROPERTY,
    IX_ETH_DB_STRING_PROPERTY,
    IX_ETH_DB_MAC_ADDR_PROPERTY,
    IX_ETH_DB_BOOL_PROPERTY
}

enum

```

```

IxEthDBWiFiRecordType {
    IX_ETH_DB_WIFI_AP_TO_STA,
    IX_ETH_DB_WIFI_AP_TO_AP,
    IX_ETH_DB_WIFI_TO_ETHER,
    IX_ETH_DB_WIFI_TO_LOCAL
}

```

*The WI-FI record types enum.*

```

enum IxEthDBWiFiVlanTag {
    IX_ETH_DB_WIFI_VLAN_NOTAG,
    IX_ETH_DB_WIFI_VLAN_TAG
}

```

*The WI-FI VLAN tag/untag enum.*

## Functions

**IX\_ETH\_DB\_PUBLIC**

**IxEthDBStatus** **ixEthDBInit** (void)

*Initializes the Ethernet learning/filtering database.*

**IX\_ETH\_DB\_PUBLIC**

**IxEthDBStatus** **ixEthDBUnload** (void)

*Stops and prepares the EthDB component for unloading.*

**IX\_ETH\_DB\_PUBLIC**

void **ixEthDBPortInit** (**IxEthDBPortId** portID)

*Initializes a port.*

**IX\_ETH\_DB\_PUBLIC**

**IxEthDBStatus** **ixEthDBPortEnable** (**IxEthDBPortId** portID)

*Enables a port.*

**IX\_ETH\_DB\_PUBLIC**

**IxEthDBStatus** **ixEthDBPortDisable** (**IxEthDBPortId** portID)

*Disables processing on a port.*

**IX\_ETH\_DB\_PUBLIC**

**IxEthDBStatus** **ixEthDBPortAddressSet** (**IxEthDBPortId** portID, **IxEthDBMacAddr** \*macAddr)

*Sets the port MAC address.*

**IX\_ETH\_DB\_PUBLIC** **ixEthDBFilteringPortMaximumFrameSizeSet** (**IxEthDBPortId** portID, **UINT32**

**IxEthDBStatus** maximumFrameSize)

*Set the maximum frame size supported on the given port ID.*

**IX\_ETH\_DB\_PUBLIC** **ixEthDBFilteringStaticEntryProvision** (**IxEthDBPortId** portID,

**IxEthDBStatus** **IxEthDBMacAddr** \*macAddr)

*Populate the Ethernet learning/filtering database with a static MAC address.*

**IX\_ETH\_DB\_PUBLICIxEthDBFilteringDynamicEntryProvision** (**IxEthDBPortId** portID,  
**IxEthDBStatus** IxEthDBMacAddr \*macAddr)  
*Populate the Ethernet learning/filtering database with a dynamic MAC address.*

**IX\_ETH\_DB\_PUBLIC**  
**IxEthDBStatus ixEthDBFilteringEntryDelete** (**IxEthDBMacAddr** \*macAddr)  
*Removes a MAC address entry from the Ethernet learning/filtering database.*

**IX\_ETH\_DB\_PUBLICIxEthDBFilteringPortSearch** (**IxEthDBPortId** portID, **IxEthDBMacAddr**  
**IxEthDBStatus** \*macAddr)  
*Search the Ethernet learning/filtering database for the given MAC address and port ID.*

**IX\_ETH\_DB\_PUBLICIxEthDBFilteringDatabaseSearch** (**IxEthDBPortId** \*portID, **IxEthDBMacAddr**  
**IxEthDBStatus** \*macAddr)  
*Search the Ethernet learning/filtering database for a MAC address and return the port ID.*

**IX\_ETH\_DB\_PUBLICIxEthDBFilteringPortUpdatingSearch** (**IxEthDBPortId** \*portID,  
**IxEthDBStatus** IxEthDBMacAddr \*macAddr)  
*Search the filtering database for a MAC address, return the port ID and reset the record age.*

**IX\_ETH\_DB\_PUBLIC**  
**IxEthDBStatus ixEthDBPortAgingDisable** (**IxEthDBPortId** portID)  
*Disable the aging function for a specific port.*

**IX\_ETH\_DB\_PUBLIC**  
**IxEthDBStatus ixEthDBPortAgingEnable** (**IxEthDBPortId** portID)  
*Enable the aging function for a specific port.*

**IX\_ETH\_DB\_PUBLIC**  
void **ixEthDBDatabaseMaintenance** (void)  
*Performs a maintenance operation on the Ethernet learning/filtering database.*

**IX\_ETH\_DB\_PUBLIC**  
**IxEthDBStatus ixEthDBEventProcessorPauseModeSet** (BOOL pauseEnable)  
*Pauses/resumes Ethernet DB event processor.*

**IX\_ETH\_DB\_PUBLIC**  
**IxEthDBStatus ixEthDBFilteringDatabaseShow** (**IxEthDBPortId** portID)  
*This function displays the Mac Ethernet MAC address filtering tables.*

**IX\_ETH\_DB\_PUBLIC**  
void **ixEthDBFilteringDatabaseShowAll** (void)  
*Displays the MAC address recorded in the filtering database for all registered ports (see **IxEthDBPortDefs.h**), grouped by port ID.*

**IX\_ETH\_DB\_PUBLICIxEthDBFilteringDatabaseShowRecords** (**IxEthDBPortId** portID,  
**IxEthDBStatus** **IxEthDBRecordType** recordFilter)

*This function displays per port database records, given a record type filter.*

**IX\_ETH\_DB\_PUBLICIxEthDBPortDependencyMapSet (IxEthDBPortId portID, IxEthDBPortMap IxEthDBStatus dependencyPortMap)**

*Sets the dependency port map for a port.*

**IX\_ETH\_DB\_PUBLICIxEthDBPortDependencyMapGet (IxEthDBPortId portID, IxEthDBPortMap IxEthDBStatus dependencyPortMap)**

*Retrieves the dependency port map for a port.*

**IX\_ETH\_DB\_PUBLIC**

**IxEthDBStatus ixEthDBPortVlanTagSet (IxEthDBPortId portID, IxEthDBVlanTag vlanTag)**

*Sets the default 802.1Q VLAN tag for a given port.*

**IX\_ETH\_DB\_PUBLIC**

**IxEthDBStatus ixEthDBPortVlanTagGet (IxEthDBPortId portID, IxEthDBVlanTag \*vlanTag)**

*Retrieves the default 802.1Q port VLAN tag for a given port (see also ixEthDBPortVlanTagSet).*

**IX\_ETH\_DB\_PUBLIC**

**IxEthDBStatus ixEthDBVlanTagSet (IxEthDBMacAddr \*macAddr, IxEthDBVlanTag vlanTag)**

*Sets the 802.1Q VLAN tag for a database record.*

**IX\_ETH\_DB\_PUBLIC**

**IxEthDBStatus ixEthDBVlanTagGet (IxEthDBMacAddr \*macAddr, IxEthDBVlanTag \*vlanTag)**

*Retrieves the 802.1Q VLAN tag from a database record given the record MAC address.*

**IX\_ETH\_DB\_PUBLICIxEthDBPortVlanMembershipAdd (IxEthDBPortId portID, IxEthDBVlanId IxEthDBStatus vlanID)**

*Adds a VLAN ID to a port's VLAN membership table.*

**IX\_ETH\_DB\_PUBLICIxEthDBPortVlanMembershipRangeAdd (IxEthDBPortId portID, IxEthDBStatus IxEthDBVlanId vlanIDMin, IxEthDBVlanId vlanIDMax)**

*Adds a VLAN ID range to a port's VLAN membership table.*

**IX\_ETH\_DB\_PUBLICIxEthDBPortVlanMembershipRemove (IxEthDBPortId portID, IxEthDBVlanId IxEthDBStatus vlanID)**

*Removes a VLAN ID from a port's VLAN membership table.*

**IX\_ETH\_DB\_PUBLICIxEthDBPortVlanMembershipRangeRemove (IxEthDBPortId portID, IxEthDBStatus IxEthDBVlanId vlanIDMin, IxEthDBVlanId vlanIDMax)**

*Removes a VLAN ID range from a port's VLAN membership table.*

**IX\_ETH\_DB\_PUBLICIxEthDBPortVlanMembershipSet (IxEthDBPortId portID, IxEthDBVlanSet IxEthDBStatus vlanSet)**

*Sets a port's VLAN membership table.*

**IX\_ETH\_DB\_PUBLICIxEthDBPortVlanMembershipGet (IxEthDBPortId portID, IxEthDBVlanSet IxEthDBStatus vlanSet)**

*Retrieves a port's VLAN membership table.*

**IX\_ETH\_DB\_PUBLICIxEthDBAcceptableFrameTypeSet (IxEthDBPortId portID,  
IxEthDBStatus IxEthDBFrameFilter frameFilter)**

*Sets a port's acceptable frame type filter.*

**IX\_ETH\_DB\_PUBLICIxEthDBAcceptableFrameTypeGet (IxEthDBPortId portID,  
IxEthDBStatus IxEthDBFrameFilter \*frameFilter)**

*Retrieves a port's acceptable frame type filter.*

**IX\_ETH\_DB\_PUBLICIxEthDBPriorityMappingTableSet (IxEthDBPortId portID,  
IxEthDBStatus IxEthDBPriorityTable priorityTable)**

*Sets a port's priority mapping table.*

**IX\_ETH\_DB\_PUBLICIxEthDBPriorityMappingTableGet (IxEthDBPortId portID,  
IxEthDBStatus IxEthDBPriorityTable priorityTable)**

*Retrieves a port's priority mapping table.*

**IX\_ETH\_DB\_PUBLIC**

**IxEthDBStatus ixEthDBPriorityMappingTableUpdate (IxEthDBPortId portID)**

*Reloads the last port priority mapping table set by the user. (see also  
ixEthDBPriorityMappingTableSet).*

**IX\_ETH\_DB\_PUBLICIxEthDBPriorityMappingClassSet (IxEthDBPortId portID, IxEthDBPriority  
IxEthDBStatus userPriority, IxEthDBPriority trafficClass)**

*Sets one QoS/user priority => traffic class mapping in a port's priority mapping  
table.*

**IX\_ETH\_DB\_PUBLICIxEthDBPriorityMappingClassGet (IxEthDBPortId portID, IxEthDBPriority  
IxEthDBStatus userPriority, IxEthDBPriority \*trafficClass)**

*Retrieves one QoS/user priority => traffic class mapping in a port's priority mapping  
table.*

**IX\_ETH\_DB\_PUBLICIxEthDBEgressVlanEntryTaggingEnabledSet (IxEthDBPortId portID,  
IxEthDBStatus IxEthDBVlanId vlanID, BOOL enabled)**

*Enables or disables Egress VLAN tagging for a port and a given VLAN.*

**IX\_ETH\_DB\_PUBLICIxEthDBEgressVlanEntryTaggingEnabledGet (IxEthDBPortId portID,  
IxEthDBStatus IxEthDBVlanId vlanID, BOOL \*enabled)**

*Retrieves the Egress VLAN tagging enabling status for a port and VLAN ID.*

**IX\_ETH\_DB\_PUBLICIxEthDBEgressVlanRangeTaggingEnabledSet (IxEthDBPortId portID,  
IxEthDBStatus IxEthDBVlanId vlanIDMin, IxEthDBVlanId vlanIDMax, BOOL enabled)**

*Enables or disables Egress VLAN tagging for a port and given VLAN range.*

**IX\_ETH\_DB\_PUBLICIxEthDBEgressVlanTaggingEnabledSet (IxEthDBPortId portID,  
IxEthDBStatus IxEthDBVlanSet vlanSet)**

*Sets the complete Egress VLAN tagging table for a port.*

**IX\_ETH\_DB\_PUBLICIxEthDBEgressVlanTaggingEnabledGet (IxEthDBPortId portID,  
IxEthDBStatus IxEthDBVlanSet vlanSet)**

*Retrieves the complete Egress VLAN tagging table from a port.*

**IX\_ETH\_DB\_PUBLICIxEthDBIngressVlanTaggingEnabledSet (IxEthDBPortId portID, IxEthDBStatus IxEthDBTaggingAction taggingAction)**

*Sets the Ingress VLAN tagging behavior for a port.*

**IX\_ETH\_DB\_PUBLICIxEthDBIngressVlanTaggingEnabledGet (IxEthDBPortId portID, IxEthDBStatus IxEthDBTaggingAction \*taggingAction)**

*Retrieves the Ingress VLAN tagging behavior from a port (see **ixEthDBIngressVlanTaggingEnabledSet**).*

**IX\_ETH\_DB\_PUBLIC**

**IxEthDBStatus ixEthDBVlanPortExtractionEnable (IxEthDBPortId portID, BOOL enable)**

*Enables or disables port ID extraction.*

**IX\_ETH\_DB\_PUBLICIxEthDBFeatureCapabilityGet (IxEthDBPortId portID, IxEthDBFeature IxEthDBStatus \*featureSet)**

*Retrieves the feature capability set for a port.*

**IX\_ETH\_DB\_PUBLICIxEthDBFeatureEnable (IxEthDBPortId portID, IxEthDBFeature feature, BOOL IxEthDBStatus enabled)**

*Enables or disables one or more EthDB features.*

**IX\_ETH\_DB\_PUBLICIxEthDBFeatureStatusGet (IxEthDBPortId portID, IxEthDBFeature feature, IxEthDBStatus BOOL \*present, BOOL \*enabled)**

*Retrieves the availability and status of a feature set.*

**IX\_ETH\_DB\_PUBLICIxEthDBFeaturePropertyGet (IxEthDBPortId portID, IxEthDBFeature feature, IxEthDBStatus IxEthDBProperty property, IxEthDBPropertyType \*type, void \*value)**

*Retrieves the value of a feature property.*

**IX\_ETH\_DB\_PUBLICIxEthDBFeaturePropertySet (IxEthDBPortId portID, IxEthDBFeature feature, IxEthDBStatus IxEthDBProperty property, void \*value)**

*Sets the value of a feature property.*

**IX\_ETH\_DB\_PUBLIC**

**IxEthDBStatus ixEthDBFeatureStatesRestore (IxEthDBPortId portId)**

*Restores the state of EthDB based on latest settings, following the occurrence of an NPE soft-error. State is restored by re-downloading tables for the enabled features (e.g. Header Conversion and Firewall) or sending configuration messages to NPE.*

**IX\_ETH\_DB\_PUBLICIxEthDBDatabaseClear (IxEthDBPortId portID, IxEthDBRecordType IxEthDBStatus recordType)**

*Deletes a set of record types from the Ethernet Database.*

**IX\_ETH\_DB\_PUBLICIxEthDBWiFiRecordEntryAdd (IxEthDBPortId portID, IxEthDBMacAddr IxEthDBStatus \*macAddr, IxEthDBWiFiRecData \*wifiRecData)**

*Adds "APMAC/BSSID/STATIONS" record to the database, for 802.3 => 802.11 frame header conversion.*

**IX\_ETH\_DB\_PUBLIC****CxEthDBWiFiStationEntryAdd** (**IxEthDBPortId** portID, **IxEthDBMacAddr** **IxEthDBStatus** \*macAddr)  
*Adds an "Access Point to Station" record to the database, for 802.3 => 802.11 frame header conversion.*

**IX\_ETH\_DB\_PUBLIC****CxEthDBWiFiAccessPointEntryAdd** (**IxEthDBPortId** portID, **IxEthDBMacAddr** **IxEthDBStatus** \*macAddr, **IxEthDBMacAddr** \*gatewayMacAddr)  
*Adds an "Access Point to Access Point" record to the database.*

**IX\_ETH\_DB\_PUBLIC****CxEthDBWiFiEntryRemove** (**IxEthDBPortId** portID, **IxEthDBMacAddr** **IxEthDBStatus** \*macAddr)  
*Removes a WiFi station record.*

**IX\_ETH\_DB\_PUBLIC**  
**IxEthDBStatus** **ixEthDBWiFiConversionTableDownload** (**IxEthDBPortId** portID)  
*Downloads the MAC address table for 802.3 => 802.11 frame header conversion to the NPE.*

**IX\_ETH\_DB\_PUBLIC**  
**IxEthDBStatus** **ixEthDBWiFiFrameControlSet** (**IxEthDBPortId** portID, **UINT16** frameControl)  
*Sets the GlobalFrameControl field.*

**IX\_ETH\_DB\_PUBLIC**  
**IxEthDBStatus** **ixEthDBWiFiDurationIDSet** (**IxEthDBPortId** portID, **UINT16** durationID)  
*Sets the GlobalDurationID field.*

**IX\_ETH\_DB\_PUBLIC**  
**IxEthDBStatus** **ixEthDBWiFiBSSIDSet** (**IxEthDBPortId** portID, **IxEthDBMacAddr** \*bssid)  
*Sets the BSSID field.*

**IX\_ETH\_DB\_PUBLIC**  
**IxEthDBStatus** **ixEthDBSpanningTreeBlockingStateSet** (**IxEthDBPortId** portID, **BOOL** blocked)  
*Sets the STP blocked/unblocked state for a port.*

**IX\_ETH\_DB\_PUBLIC****CxEthDBSpanningTreeBlockingStateGet** (**IxEthDBPortId** portID, **BOOL** **IxEthDBStatus** \*blocked)  
*Retrieves the STP blocked/unblocked state for a port.*

**IX\_ETH\_DB\_PUBLIC**  
**IxEthDBStatus** **ixEthDBFirewallModeSet** (**IxEthDBPortId** portID, **IxEthDBFirewallMode** mode)  
*Sets the firewall mode to use white or black listing.*

**IX\_ETH\_DB\_PUBLIC****CxEthDBFirewallInvalidAddressFilterEnable** (**IxEthDBPortId** portID, **BOOL** **IxEthDBStatus** enable)  
*Enables or disables invalid MAC address filtering.*

**IX\_ETH\_DB\_PUBLIC****CxEthDBFirewallEntryAdd** (**IxEthDBPortId** portID, **IxEthDBMacAddr** **IxEthDBStatus** \*macAddr)  
*Adds a MAC address to the firewall address list.*



**IX\_ETH\_DB\_PUBLICIxEthDBFirewallEntryRemove** (**IxEthDBPortId** portID, IxEthDBMacAddr  
**IxEthDBStatus** \*macAddr)

*Removes a MAC address from the firewall address list.*

**IX\_ETH\_DB\_PUBLICIxEthDBFirewallMaskedEntryAdd** (**IxEthDBPortId** portID, IxEthDBMacAddr  
**IxEthDBStatus** \*macAddr, IxEthDBMacAddr \*addrMask)

*Adds a MAC address + mask to the firewall address list.*

**IX\_ETH\_DB\_PUBLICIxEthDBFirewallMaskedEntryRemove** (**IxEthDBPortId** portID,  
**IxEthDBStatus** IxEthDBMacAddr \*macAddr, IxEthDBMacAddr \*addrMask)

*Removes a MAC address + mask from the firewall address list.*

**IX\_ETH\_DB\_PUBLIC**

**IxEthDBStatus ixEthDBFirewallTableDownload** (**IxEthDBPortId** portID)

*Downloads the MAC firewall table to a port.*

**IX\_ETH\_DB\_PUBLICIxEthDBUserFieldSet** (**IxEthDBRecordType** recordType, IxEthDBMacAddr  
**IxEthDBStatus** \*macAddr, **IxEthDBPortId** portID, **IxEthDBVlanId** vlanID, void \*field)

*Adds a user-defined field to a database record.*

**IX\_ETH\_DB\_PUBLICIxEthDBUserFieldGet** (**IxEthDBRecordType** recordType, IxEthDBMacAddr  
**IxEthDBStatus** \*macAddr, **IxEthDBPortId** portId, **IxEthDBVlanId** vlanID, void \*\*field)

*Retrieves a user-defined field from a database record.*

---

## Detailed Description

ethDB is a library that does provides a MAC address database learning/filtering capability

---

## Define Documentation

```
#define IX_ETH_DB_802_1Q_MAX_VLAN_ID
```

Maximum VLAN IDs.

Definition at line **85** of file **IxEthDB.h**.

```
#define IX_ETH_DB_802_1Q_QOS_MASK
```

QoS Mask.

Definition at line **83** of file **IxEthDB.h**.

```
#define IX_ETH_DB_802_1Q_VLAN_MASK
```

VLAN mask.

Definition at line **82** of file **IxEthDB.h**.

```
#define IX_ETH_DB_CHECK_VLAN_ID ( vlanId )
```

checks the VLAN ID

Definition at line **129** of file **IxEthDB.h**.

```
#define IX_ETH_DB_CHECK_VLAN_TAG ( vlanTag )
```

checks the VLAN ID of the given 802.1Q tag

Definition at line **123** of file **IxEthDB.h**.

```
#define IX_ETH_DB_GET_QOS_PRIORITY ( vlanTag )
```

gets the QOS priority from the given 802.1Q tag

Definition at line **111** of file **IxEthDB.h**.

```
#define IX_ETH_DB_GET_VLAN_ID ( vlanTag )
```

returns the VLAN ID from the given 802.1Q tag

Definition at line **105** of file **IxEthDB.h**.

```
#define IX_ETH_DB_LEARNING_ENTRY_AGE_TIME
```

The define specifies the filtering database age entry time. Static entries older than IX\_ETH\_DB\_LEARNING\_ENTRY\_AGE\_TIME +/- IX\_ETH\_DB\_MAINTENANCE\_TIME shall be removed.

Definition at line **644** of file **IxEthDB.h**.

```
#define IX_ETH_DB_MAINTENANCE_TIME
```

The **ixEthDBDatabaseMaintenance** must be called by the user at a frequency of IX\_ETH\_DB\_MAINTENANCE\_TIME.

Definition at line **633** of file **IxEthDB.h**.

```
#define IX_ETH_DB_QOS_QUEUE_CONFIGURATION_COMPLETE
```

Queue configuration complete.

Definition at line **222** of file **IxEthDB.h**.

```
#define IX_ETH_DB_QOS_TRAFFIC_CLASS_0_RX_QUEUE_PROPERTY
```

Rx queue assigned to traffic class 0.

Definition at line **212** of file **IxEthDB.h**.

```
#define IX_ETH_DB_QOS_TRAFFIC_CLASS_1_RX_QUEUE_PROPERTY
```

Rx queue assigned to traffic class 1.

Definition at line **213** of file **IxEthDB.h**.

```
#define IX_ETH_DB_QOS_TRAFFIC_CLASS_2_RX_QUEUE_PROPERTY
```

Rx queue assigned to traffic class 2.

Definition at line **214** of file **IxEthDB.h**.

```
#define IX_ETH_DB_QOS_TRAFFIC_CLASS_3_RX_QUEUE_PROPERTY
```

Rx queue assigned to traffic class 3.

Definition at line **215** of file **IxEthDB.h**.

```
#define IX_ETH_DB_QOS_TRAFFIC_CLASS_4_RX_QUEUE_PROPERTY
```

Rx queue assigned to traffic class 4.

Definition at line **216** of file **IxEthDB.h**.

```
#define IX_ETH_DB_QOS_TRAFFIC_CLASS_5_RX_QUEUE_PROPERTY
```

Rx queue assigned to traffic class 5.

Definition at line **217** of file **IxEthDB.h**.

```
#define IX_ETH_DB_QOS_TRAFFIC_CLASS_6_RX_QUEUE_PROPERTY
```

Rx queue assigned to traffic class 6.

Definition at line **218** of file **IxEthDB.h**.

```
#define IX_ETH_DB_QOS_TRAFFIC_CLASS_7_RX_QUEUE_PROPERTY
```

Rx queue assigned to traffic class 7.

Definition at line **219** of file **IxEthDB.h**.

```
#define IX_ETH_DB_QOS_TRAFFIC_CLASS_COUNT_PROPERTY
```

Property identifying number the supported number of traffic classes.

Definition at line **211** of file **IxEthDB.h**.

```
#define IX_ETH_DB_SET_QOS_PRIORITY ( vlanTag,  
                                   priority )
```

sets the QOS priority to the given 802.1Q tag

Definition at line **117** of file **IxEthDB.h**.

```
#define IX_ETH_DB_SET_VLAN_ID ( vlanTag,  
                                vlanID )
```

returns the given 802.1Q tag with the VLAN ID field substituted with the given VLAN ID

This macro is used to change the VLAN ID in a 802.1Q tag.

Example:

tag = **IX\_ETH\_DB\_SET\_VLAN\_ID(tag, 32)**

inserts the VLAN ID "32" in the given tag.

Definition at line **99** of file **IxEthDB.h**.

```
#define IX_ETH_DB_WIFI_MAX_PAD_SIZE
```

Maximum pad size.

Definition at line **226** of file **IxEthDB.h**.

```
#define IX_ETH_DB_WIFI_MIN_PAD_SIZE
```

Minimum pad size.

Definition at line **225** of file **IxEthDB.h**.

```
#define IX_IEEE802_1Q_QOS_PRIORITY_COUNT
```

Number of QoS priorities defined by IEEE802.1Q.

Definition at line **41** of file **IxEthDB.h**.

```
#define IX_IEEE802_1Q_VLAN_TPID
```

returns the VLAN TPID (0x8100)

Definition at line **135** of file **IxEthDB.h**.

```
#define IX_IEEE803_MAC_ADDRESS_SIZE
```

The size of the MAC address.

Definition at line **35** of file **IxEthDB.h**.

---

## Typedef Documentation

```
typedef UINT32 IxEthDBPortId
```

Definition of an IXP400 port.

Definition at line **290** of file **IxEthDB.h**.

```
typedef UINT8 IxEthDBPortMap[32]
```

Port dependency map definition.

Definition at line **297** of file **IxEthDB.h**.

```
typedef UINT32 IxEthDBPriority
```

QoS priority/traffic class type, valid range is 0..7, 0 being the lowest.

Definition at line **74** of file **IxEthDB.h**.

```
typedef UINT8 IxEthDBPriorityTable[8]
```

Priority mapping table; 0..7 QoS priorities used to index, table contains traffic classes.

Definition at line **77** of file **IxEthDB.h**.

```
typedef UINT32 IxEthDBProperty
```

Property ID type.

Definition at line **200** of file **IxEthDB.h**.

```
typedef UINT32 IxEthDBVlanId
```

VLAN ID type, valid range is 0..4094, 0 signifying no VLAN membership.

Definition at line **68** of file **IxEthDB.h**.

```
typedef UINT8 IxEthDBVlanSet[512]
```

A 4096 bit array used to map the complete VLAN ID range.

Definition at line **80** of file **IxEthDB.h**.

```
typedef UINT32 IxEthDBVlanTag
```

802.1Q VLAN tag, contains 3 bits user priority, 1 bit CFI, 12 bits VLAN ID

Definition at line **71** of file **IxEthDB.h**.

---

## Enumeration Type Documentation

```
enum IxEthDBFeature
```

**Enumeration values:**

<i>IX_ETH_DB_LEARNING</i>	Learning feature; enables EthDB to learn MAC address (filtering) records, including 802.1Q enabled records.
<i>IX_ETH_DB_FILTERING</i>	Filtering feature; enables EthDB to communicate with the NPEs for downloading filtering information in the NPEs; depends on the learning feature.
<i>IX_ETH_DB_VLAN_QOS</i>	VLAN/QoS feature; enables EthDB to configure NPEs to operate in VLAN/QoS aware modes.
<i>IX_ETH_DB_FIREWALL</i>	Firewall feature; enables EthDB to configure NPEs to operate in firewall mode, using white/black address lists.
<i>IX_ETH_DB_SPANNING_TREE_PROTOCOL</i>	Spanning tree protocol feature; enables EthDB to configure the NPEs as STP nodes.
<i>IX_ETH_DB_WIFI_HEADER_CONVERSION</i>	WiFi 802.3 to 802.11 header conversion feature; enables EthDB to handle WiFi conversion data.
<i>IX_ETH_DB_ADDRESS_MASKING</i>	Masking of MAC addresses using an address mask.
	Currently only usable in conjunction with the <i>IX_ETH_DB_FIREWALL</i> feature

Definition at line **189** of file **IxEthDB.h**.

```
enum IxEthDBFirewallMode
```

**Enumeration values:**

<i>IX_ETH_DB_FIREWALL_WHITE_LIST</i>	Firewall operates in white-list mode (MAC address based admission).
<i>IX_ETH_DB_FIREWALL_BLACK_LIST</i>	Firewall operates in black-list mode (MAC address based blocking).

Definition at line **155** of file **IxEthDB.h**.

```
enum IxEthDBFrameFilter
```

**Enumeration values:**

<i>IX_ETH_DB_UNTAGGED_FRAMES</i>	Accepts untagged frames.
<i>IX_ETH_DB_VLAN_TAGGED_FRAMES</i>	Accepts tagged frames.
<i>IX_ETH_DB_PRIORITY_TAGGED_FRAMES</i>	Accepts tagged frames with VLAN ID set to 0 (no VLAN membership).
<i>IX_ETH_DB_ACCEPT_ALL_FRAMES</i>	Accepts all the frames.

Definition at line **137** of file **IxEthDB.h**.

enum IxEthDBPropertyType

<b>Enumeration values:</b>	
<i>IX_ETH_DB_INTEGER_PROPERTY</i>	4 byte unsigned integer type
<i>IX_ETH_DB_STRING_PROPERTY</i>	NULL-terminated string type of maximum 255 characters (including the terminator).
<i>IX_ETH_DB_MAC_ADDR_PROPERTY</i>	6 byte MAC address type
<i>IX_ETH_DB_BOOL_PROPERTY</i>	4 byte boolean type; can contain only TRUE and FALSE values

Definition at line **202** of file **IxEthDB.h**.

enum IxEthDBRecordType

<b>Enumeration values:</b>					
<i>IX_ETH_DB_FILTERING_RECORD</i>	Filtering record <table border="1"><tr><td>MAC address</td><td>static/dynamic type</td><td>age</td></tr></table>	MAC address	static/dynamic type	age	
MAC address	static/dynamic type	age			
<i>IX_ETH_DB_FILTERING_VLAN_RECORD</i>	VLAN-enabled filtering record <table border="1"><tr><td>MAC address</td><td>static/dynamic type</td><td>age</td><td>802.1Q tag</td></tr></table>	MAC address	static/dynamic type	age	802.1Q tag
MAC address	static/dynamic type	age	802.1Q tag		
<i>IX_ETH_DB_WIFI_RECORD</i>	WiFi header conversion record <table border="1"><tr><td>MAC address</td><td>optional gateway MAC address</td></tr></table>	MAC address	optional gateway MAC address		
MAC address	optional gateway MAC address				
<i>IX_ETH_DB_FIREWALL_RECORD</i>	Firewall record <table border="1"><tr><td>MAC address</td></tr></table>	MAC address			
MAC address					
<i>IX_ETH_DB_GATEWAY_RECORD</i>	<i>For internal use only</i>				
<i>IX_ETH_DB_MASK_RECORD</i>	<i>For internal use only</i>				
<i>IX_ETH_DB_MAX_RECORD_TYPE_INDEX</i>	<i>For internal use only</i>				
<i>IX_ETH_DB_NO_RECORD_TYPE</i>	None of the registered record types.				
<i>IX_ETH_DB_ALL_FILTERING_RECORDS</i>	All the filtering records.				
<i>IX_ETH_DB_MASKED_FIREWALL_RECORD</i>	Masked firewall records.				
<i>IX_ETH_DB_ALL_RECORD_TYPES</i>	All the record types registered within EthDB.				

Definition at line **161** of file **IxEthDB.h**.

enum IxEthDBStatus



Ethernet Database API return values.

**Enumeration values:**

<i>IX_ETH_DB_SUCCESS</i>	Success.
<i>IX_ETH_DB_FAIL</i>	Failure.
<i>IX_ETH_DB_INVALID_PORT</i>	Invalid port.
<i>IX_ETH_DB_PORT_UNINITIALIZED</i>	Port not initialized.
<i>IX_ETH_DB_MAC_UNINITIALIZED</i>	MAC not initialized.
<i>IX_ETH_DB_INVALID_ARG</i>	Invalid argument.
<i>IX_ETH_DB_NO_SUCH_ADDR</i>	Address not found for search or delete operations.
<i>IX_ETH_DB_NOMEM</i>	Learning database memory full.
<i>IX_ETH_DB_BUSY</i>	Learning database cannot complete operation, access temporarily blocked.
<i>IX_ETH_DB_END</i>	Database browser passed the end of the record set.
<i>IX_ETH_DB_INVALID_VLAN</i>	Invalid VLAN ID (valid range is 0..4094, 0 signifies no VLAN membership, used for priority tagged frames).
<i>IX_ETH_DB_INVALID_PRIORITY</i>	Invalid QoS priority/traffic class (valid range for QoS priority is 0..7, valid range for traffic class depends on run-time configuration).
<i>IX_ETH_DB_NO_PERMISSION</i>	No permission for attempted operation.
<i>IX_ETH_DB_FEATURE_UNAVAILABLE</i>	Feature not available (or not enabled).
<i>IX_ETH_DB_INVALID_KEY</i>	Invalid search key.
<i>IX_ETH_DB_INVALID_RECORD_TYPE</i>	Invalid record type.

Definition at line **47** of file **IxEthDB.h**.

```
enum IxEthDBTaggingAction
```

**Enumeration values:**

<i>IX_ETH_DB_PASS_THROUGH</i>	Leave frame as-is.
<i>IX_ETH_DB_ADD_TAG</i>	Add default port VLAN tag.
<i>IX_ETH_DB_REMOVE_TAG</i>	Remove VLAN tag from frame.
<i>IX_ETH_DB_ENABLE_VLAN</i>	VLAN enable bit.
<i>IX_ETH_DB_DISABLE_VLAN</i>	VLAN disable bit.

Definition at line **146** of file **IxEthDB.h**.

```
enum IxEthDBWiFiRecordType
```

The WI-FI record types enum.

The type value should be any of the types

**Enumeration values:**

*IX\_ETH\_DB\_WIFI\_AP\_TO\_STA* Ap to Sta  
record.  
*IX\_ETH\_DB\_WIFI\_AP\_TO\_AP* Ap to Ap  
record.  
*IX\_ETH\_DB\_WIFI\_TO\_ETHER* To Ether  
record.  
*IX\_ETH\_DB\_WIFI\_TO\_LOCAL* To Local  
record.

Definition at line **248** of file **IxEthDB.h**.

```
enum IxEthDBWiFiVlanTag
```

The WI-FI VLAN tag/untag enum.

The tag value should be either tag or untag

**Enumeration values:**

*IX\_ETH\_DB\_WIFI\_VLAN\_NOTAG* Tag 802.11  
frames.  
*IX\_ETH\_DB\_WIFI\_VLAN\_TAG* Untag  
802.11  
frames.

Definition at line **263** of file **IxEthDB.h**.

---

## Function Documentation

```
IxEthDBStatus ixEthDBAcceptableFrameTypeGet ( IxEthDBPortId portID,  
                                                IxEthDBFrameFilter * frameFilter  
                                                )
```

Retrieves a port's acceptable frame type filter.

For a description of the acceptable frame types see **ixEthDBAcceptableFrameTypeSet**

- Reentrant – no
- ISR Callable – no

**Parameters:**

*portID* **IxEthDBPortId** [in] – port ID to retrieve the acceptable frame type filter from  
*frameFilter* **IxEthDBFrameFilter** [out] – location to store the acceptable frame type filter

**Return values:**

*IX\_ETH\_DB\_SUCCESS* operation completed successfully  
*IX\_ETH\_DB\_INVALID\_PORT* portID is not a valid port identifier

<i>IX_ETH_DB_PORT_UNINITIALIZED</i>	port is not initialized
<i>IX_ETH_DB_INVALID_ARG</i>	invalid <i>frameFilter</i> pointer argument
<i>IX_ETH_DB_FEATURE_UNAVAILABLE</i>	VLAN/QoS feature is not available or not enabled for the port

```
IxEthDBStatus ixEthDBAcceptableFrameTypeSet ( IxEthDBPortId    portID,
                                                IxEthDBFrameFilter frameFilter
                                                )
```

Sets a port's acceptable frame type filter.

The acceptable frame type is one (or a combination) of the following values:

- *IX\_ETH\_DB\_ACCEPT\_ALL\_FRAMES* – accepts all the frames
- *IX\_ETH\_DB\_UNTAGGED\_FRAMES* – accepts untagged frames
- *IX\_ETH\_DB\_VLAN\_TAGGED\_FRAMES* – accepts tagged frames
- *IX\_ETH\_DB\_PRIORITY\_TAGGED\_FRAMES* – accepts tagged frames with VLAN ID set to 0 (no VLAN membership)

Except for using the exact values given above only the following combinations are valid:

- *IX\_ETH\_DB\_UNTAGGED\_FRAMES* | *IX\_ETH\_DB\_VLAN\_TAGGED\_FRAMES*
- *IX\_ETH\_DB\_UNTAGGED\_FRAMES* | *IX\_ETH\_DB\_PRIORITY\_TAGGED\_FRAMES*

Please note that *IX\_ETH\_DB\_UNTAGGED\_FRAMES* | *IX\_ETH\_DB\_VLAN\_TAGGED\_FRAMES* is equivalent to *IX\_ETH\_DB\_ACCEPT\_ALL\_FRAMES*.

- Reentrant – no
- ISR Callable – no

**Note:**

by default the acceptable frame type filter is set to *IX\_ETH\_DB\_ACCEPT\_ALL\_FRAMES*

setting the acceptable frame type to *PRIORITY\_TAGGED\_FRAMES* is internally accomplished by changing the frame filter to *VLAN\_TAGGED\_FRAMES* and setting the VLAN membership list to include only VLAN ID 0; the membership list will need to be restored manually to an appropriate value if the acceptable frame type filter is changed back to *ACCEPT\_ALL\_FRAMES* or *VLAN\_TAGGED\_FRAMES*; failure to do so will filter all VLAN traffic bar frames tagged with VLAN ID 0

**Parameters:**

*portID*      **IxEthDBPortId** [in] – port ID to set the acceptable frame type filter to  
*frameFilter* **IxEthDBFrameFilter** [in] – acceptable frame type filter

**Return values:**

<i>IX_ETH_DB_SUCCESS</i>	operation completed successfully
<i>IX_ETH_DB_INVALID_PORT</i>	portID is not a valid port identifier
<i>IX_ETH_DB_PORT_UNINITIALIZED</i>	port is not initialized
<i>IX_ETH_DB_INVALID_ARG</i>	invalid frame type filter

*IX\_ETH\_DB\_FEATURE\_UNAVAILABLE* VLAN/QoS feature is not available or not enabled for the port  
*IX\_FAIL* unknown OS or NPE communication error

```
IxEthDBStatus ixEthDBDatabaseClear ( IxEthDBPortId portID,  

IxEthDBRecordType recordType  

)
```

Deletes a set of record types from the Ethernet Database.

This function deletes all the records of certain types (specified in the recordType filter) associated with a port. Additionally, the IX\_ETH\_DB\_ALL\_PORTS value can be used as port ID to indicate that the specified record types should be deleted for all the ports.

The record type filter can be an ORed combination of the following types:

Record types

- **IX\_ETH\_DB\_FILTERING\_RECORD**  
Filtering record

MAC address	static/dynamic type	age
-------------	---------------------	-----

- **IX\_ETH\_DB\_FILTERING\_VLAN\_RECORD**  
VLAN-enabled filtering record

MAC address	static/dynamic type	age	802.1Q tag
-------------	---------------------	-----	------------

- **IX\_ETH\_DB\_WIFI\_RECORD**  
WiFi header conversion record

MAC address	optional gateway MAC address
-------------	------------------------------

- **IX\_ETH\_DB\_FIREWALL\_RECORD**  
Firewall record

MAC address
-------------

- **IX\_ETH\_DB\_ALL\_RECORD\_TYPES**

Any combination of the above types is valid e.g.

(IX\_ETH\_DB\_FILTERING\_RECORD | IX\_ETH\_DB\_FILTERING\_VLAN\_RECORD | IX\_ETH\_DB\_FIREWALL\_RECORD),

although some might be redundant (it is not an error to do so) e.g.

(IX\_ETH\_DB\_FILTERING\_RECORD | IX\_ETH\_DB\_ALL\_RECORD\_TYPES)

**Parameters:**

*portID*        **IxEthDBPortId** [in] – ID of the port  
*recordType* **IxEthDBRecordType** [in] – record type filter

**Return values:**

*IX\_ETH\_DB\_SUCCESS*        operation completed successfully  
*IX\_ETH\_DB\_INVALID\_PORT* *portID* is not a valid port identifier  
*IX\_ETH\_DB\_INVALID\_ARG*    invalid *recordType* filter

**Note:**

If the record type filter contains any unrecognized value (hence the IX\_ETH\_DB\_INVALID\_ARG error value is returned) no actual records will be deleted.

```
void ixEthDBDatabaseMaintenance ( void )
```

Performs a maintenance operation on the Ethernet learning/filtering database.

In order to perform a database maintenance this function must be called every **IX\_ETH\_DB\_MAINTENANCE\_TIME** seconds. It should be called regardless of whether learning is enabled or not.

- Reentrant – no
- ISR Callable – no

**Note:**

this function call will be ignored if the learning feature is disabled

```
IxEthDBStatus ixEthDBEgressVlanEntryTaggingEnabledGet ( IxEthDBPortId portID,  
                                                         IxEthDBVlanId vlanID,  
                                                         BOOL * enabled  
                                                         )
```

Retrieves the Egress VLAN tagging enabling status for a port and VLAN ID.

**Parameters:**

*portID* [in] – ID of the port to extract the Egress VLAN ID tagging status from  
*vlanID* VLAN [in] – ID whose tagging status is to be extracted  
*enabled* [in] – user-specified location where the status is copied to; following the successful execution of this function the value will be TRUE if Egress VLAN tagging is enabled for the given port and VLAN ID, and FALSE otherwise

- Reentrant – no
- ISR Callable – no

**See also:**

**ixEthDBEgressVlanEntryTaggingEnabledGet**

**Return values:**

<i>IX_ETH_DB_SUCCESS</i>	operation completed successfully
<i>IX_ETH_DB_INVALID_PORT</i>	portID is not a valid port identifier
<i>IX_ETH_DB_PORT_UNINITIALIZED</i>	port is not initialized
<i>IX_ETH_DB_INVALID_VLAN</i>	invalid VLAN ID (out of range)
<i>IX_ETH_DB_INVALID_ARG</i>	invalid <i>enabled</i> argument pointer
<i>IX_ETH_DB_FEATURE_UNAVAILABLE</i>	VLAN/QoS feature is not available or not enabled for the port

```
IxEthDBStatus ixEthDBEgressVlanEntryTaggingEnabledSet ( IxEthDBPortId portID,
                                                         IxEthDBVlanId vlanID,
                                                         BOOL enabled
                                                         )
```

Enables or disables Egress VLAN tagging for a port and a given VLAN.

This function enables or disables Egress VLAN tagging for the given port and VLAN ID. If the VLAN tagging for a certain VLAN ID is enabled then all the frames to be transmitted on the given port tagged with the same VLAN ID will be transmitted in a tagged format. If tagging is not enabled for the given VLAN ID, the VLAN tag from the frames matching this VLAN ID will be removed (the frames will be untagged).

VLAN ID 4095 is reserved and should never be used with this function. VLAN ID 0 has the special meaning of "No VLAN membership" and it is used in this context to allow the port to send priority-tagged frames or not.

By default, no Egress VLAN tagging is enabled on any port.

- Reentrant – no
- ISR Callable – no

**Parameters:**

*portID* **IxEthDBPortId** [in] – ID of the port to enable or disable the VLAN ID Egress tagging on  
*vlanID* **IxEthDBVlanId** [in] – VLAN ID to be matched against outgoing frames  
*enabled* **BOOL** [in] – TRUE to enable Egress VLAN tagging on the port and given VLAN, and FALSE to disable Egress VLAN tagging

**Return values:**

<i>IX_ETH_DB_SUCCESS</i>	operation completed successfully
<i>IX_ETH_DB_INVALID_PORT</i>	portID is not a valid port identifier
<i>IX_ETH_DB_PORT_UNINITIALIZED</i>	port is not initialized
<i>IX_ETH_DB_INVALID_VLAN</i>	invalid VLAN ID (out of range)
<i>IX_ETH_DB_FEATURE_UNAVAILABLE</i>	VLAN/QoS feature is not available or not enabled for the port
<i>IX_FAIL</i>	unknown OS or NPE communication error

```

IxEthDBStatus ixEthDBEgressVlanRangeTaggingEnabledSet ( IxEthDBPortId portID,
                                                         IxEthDBVlanId vlanIDMin,
                                                         IxEthDBVlanId vlanIDMax,
                                                         BOOL enabled
                                                         )

```

Enables or disables Egress VLAN tagging for a port and given VLAN range.

This function is very similar to **ixEthDBEgressVlanEntryTaggingEnabledSet** with the difference that it can manipulate the Egress tagging status on multiple VLAN IDs, defined by a contiguous range. Note that both limits in the range are explicitly included in the execution of this function.

- Reentrant – no
- ISR Callable – no

**Parameters:**

*portID*      **IxEthDBPortId** [in] – ID of the port to enable or disable the VLAN ID Egress tagging on

*vlanIDMin* **IxEthDBVlanId** [in] – start of the VLAN range to be matched against outgoing frames

*vlanIDMax* **IxEthDBVlanId** [in] – end of the VLAN range to be matched against outgoing frames

*enabled*     **BOOL** [in] – TRUE to enable Egress VLAN tagging on the port and given VLAN range, and FALSE to disable Egress VLAN tagging

**Return values:**

<i>IX_ETH_DB_SUCCESS</i>	operation completed successfully
<i>IX_ETH_DB_INVALID_PORT</i>	portID is not a valid port identifier
<i>IX_ETH_DB_PORT_UNINITIALIZED</i>	port is not initialized
<i>IX_ETH_DB_INVALID_VLAN</i>	invalid VLAN ID (out of range), or do not constitute a range
<i>IX_ETH_DB_FEATURE_UNAVAILABLE</i>	VLAN/QoS feature is not available or not enabled for the port
<i>IX_ETH_DB_NO_PERMISSION</i>	attempted to explicitly remove the default port VLAN ID from the tagging table
<i>IX_FAIL</i>	unknown OS or NPE communication error

**Note:**

Specifically removing the default port VLAN ID from the Egress tagging table by setting both *vlanIDMin* and *vlanIDMax* to the VLAN ID portion of the PVID is not allowed by this function and will return *IX\_ETH\_DB\_NO\_PERMISSION*. However, this can be circumvented, should the user specifically desire this, by either using a larger range (*vlanIDMin* < *vlanIDMax*) or by using **ixEthDBEgressVlanEntryTaggingEnabledSet**.

```

IxEthDBStatus ixEthDBEgressVlanTaggingEnabledGet ( IxEthDBPortId portID,
                                                         IxEthDBVlanSet vlanSet
                                                         )

```

Retrieves the complete Egress VLAN tagging table from a port.

This function copies the 4096 bit table controlling the Egress VLAN tagging into a user specified area. Each bit in the array indicates whether tagging for the corresponding VLAN (the bit position in the array) is enabled (the bit is set) or not (the bit is unset).

Bit 4095 is reserved and should not be set (it will be ignored if set).

*See also:*

**ixEthDBEgressVlanTaggingEnabledSet**

*Parameters:*

<i>portID</i>	<b>IxEthDBPortId</b> [in] – ID of the port whose Egress VLAN tagging behavior is retrieved
<i>vlanSet</i>	<b>IxEthDBVlanSet</b> [out] – user location to copy the Egress tagging table into; should have room to store 4096 bits (512 bytes)

*Return values:*

<i>IX_ETH_DB_SUCCESS</i>	operation completed successfully
<i>IX_ETH_DB_INVALID_PORT</i>	portID is not a valid port identifier
<i>IX_ETH_DB_PORT_UNINITIALIZED</i>	port is not initialized
<i>IX_ETH_DB_INVALID_ARG</i>	invalid <i>vlanSet</i> pointer
<i>IX_ETH_DB_FEATURE_UNAVAILABLE</i>	VLAN/QoS feature is not available or not enabled for the port

```
IxEthDBStatus ixEthDBEgressVlanTaggingEnabledSet ( IxEthDBPortId portID,  
                                                    IxEthDBVlanSet vlanSet  
                                                    )
```

Sets the complete Egress VLAN tagging table for a port.

This function is used to set the VLAN tagging/untagging per VLAN ID for a given port covering the entire VLAN ID range (0..4094). The *vlanSet* parameter is a 4096 bit array, each bit indicating the Egress behavior for the corresponding VLAN ID. If a bit is set then outgoing frames with the corresponding VLAN ID will be transmitted with the VLAN tag, otherwise the frame will be transmitted without the VLAN tag.

Bit 0 has a special significance, indicating tagging or tag removal for priority-tagged frames.

Bit 4095 is reserved and should never be set (it will be ignored if set).

- Reentrant – no
- ISR Callable – no

*Parameters:*

<i>portID</i>	<b>IxEthDBPortId</b> [in] – ID of the port whose Egress VLAN tagging behavior is set
<i>vlanSet</i>	<b>IxEthDBVlanSet</b> [in] – 4096 bit array controlling per-VLAN tagging and untagging

*Return values:*



<i>IX_ETH_DB_SUCCESS</i>	operation completed successfully
<i>IX_ETH_DB_INVALID_PORT</i>	portID is not a valid port identifier
<i>IX_ETH_DB_PORT_UNINITIALIZED</i>	port is not initialized
<i>IX_ETH_DB_INVALID_ARG</i>	invalid <i>vlanSet</i> pointer
<i>IX_ETH_DB_FEATURE_UNAVAILABLE</i>	VLAN/QoS feature is not available or not enabled for the port
<i>IX_FAIL</i>	unknown OS or NPE communication error

**Warning:**

This function will automatically add the default port VLAN ID to the Egress tagging table every time it is called. The user should manually call `ixEthDBEgressVlanEntryTaggingEnabledSet` to prevent tagging on the default port VLAN ID if the default behavior is not intended.

**IxEthDBStatus** `ixEthDBEventProcessorPauseModeSet ( BOOL pauseEnable )`

Pauses/resumes Ethernet DB event processor.

This API is provided to pause/resume Ethernet DB event processor without the need to kill and recreate event processor thread.

- Reentrant – no
- ISR Callable – no

**Parameters:**

*pauseEnable* BOOL [in] – pause mode: TRUE/FALSE

**Return values:**

*IX\_ETH\_DB\_SUCCESS* Changing the pause mode is successful.  
*IX\_ETH\_DB\_FAIL* Ethernet event processor is not started. So, changing the pause mode is unsuccessful.

**IxEthDBStatus** `ixEthDBFeatureCapabilityGet ( IxEthDBPortId portID,  
IxEthDBFeature * featureSet  
)`

Retrieves the feature capability set for a port.

This function retrieves the feature capability set for a port or the common capabilities shared between all the ports, writing the feature capability set in a user specified location.

The feature capability set will consist of a set formed by OR-ing one or more of the following values:

- *IX\_ETH\_DB\_LEARNING* – Learning feature; enables EthDB to learn MAC address (filtering) records, including 802.1Q enabled records
- *IX\_ETH\_DB\_FILTERING* – Filtering feature; enables EthDB to communicate with the NPEs for downloading filtering information in the NPEs; depends on the learning feature
- *IX\_ETH\_DB\_VLAN\_QOS* – VLAN/QoS feature; enables EthDB to configure NPEs to operate in

VLAN/QoS aware modes

- **IX\_ETH\_DB\_FIREWALL** – Firewall feature; enables EthDB to configure NPEs to operate in firewall mode, using white/black address lists
- **IX\_ETH\_DB\_SPANNING\_TREE\_PROTOCOL** – Spanning tree protocol feature; enables EthDB to configure the NPEs as STP nodes
- **IX\_ETH\_DB\_WIFI\_HEADER\_CONVERSION** – WiFi 802.3 to 802.11 header conversion feature; enables EthDB to handle WiFi conversion data

Note that EthDB provides only the LEARNING feature for non-NPE ports.

**Parameters:**

*portID*     **IxEthDBPortId** [in] – ID of the port to retrieve the capability set for (use **IX\_ETH\_DB\_ALL\_PORTS** to retrieve the common capabilities shared between all the ports)

*featureSet* **IxEthDBFeature** [out] – location where the capability set will be written to

**Return values:**

<b>IX_ETH_DB_SUCCESS</b>	operation completed successfully
<b>IX_ETH_DB_INVALID_PORT</b>	<i>portID</i> is not a valid port identifier
<b>IX_ETH_DB_PORT_UNINITIALIZED</b>	port is not initialized
<b>IX_ETH_DB_INVALID_ARG</b>	invalid <i>featureSet</i> pointer

```
IxEthDBStatus ixEthDBFeatureEnable ( IxEthDBPortId portID,  
                                     IxEthDBFeature feature,  
                                     BOOL enabled  
                                     )
```

Enables or disables one or more EthDB features.

Selects one or more features (see **ixEthDBFeatureCapabilityGet** for a description of the supported features) to be enabled or disabled on the selected port (or all the ports).

Note that some features are mutually incompatible:

- **IX\_ETH\_DB\_FILTERING** is incompatible with **IX\_ETH\_DB\_WIFI\_HEADER\_CONVERSION**

Also note that some features require other features to be enabled:

- **IX\_ETH\_DB\_FILTERING** requires **IX\_ETH\_DB\_LEARNING**

This function will either enable the entire selected feature set for the selected port (or all the ports), in which case it will return **IX\_ETH\_DB\_SUCCESS**, or in case of error it will not enable any feature at all and return an appropriate error message.

The following features are enabled by default (for ports with the respective capability), for compatibility reasons with previous versions of CSR:

- **IX\_ETH\_DB\_LEARNING**
- **IX\_ETH\_DB\_FILTERING**

All other features are disabled by default and require manual enabling using `ixEthDBFeatureEnable`.

### Default settings for VLAN, QoS, Firewall and WiFi header conversion features:

#### *VLAN*

When the VLAN/QoS feature is enabled for a port for the first time the default VLAN behavior of the port is set to be as **permissive** (it will accept all the frames) and **non-interferential** (it will not change any frames) as possible:

- the port VLAN ID (VID) is set to 0
- the Ingress acceptable frame filter is set to accept all frames
- the VLAN port membership is set to the complete VLAN range (0 – 4094)
- the Ingress tagging mode is set to pass-through (will not change frames)
- the Egress tagging mode is to send tagged frames in the entire VLAN range (0 – 4094)

Note that further disabling and re-enabling the VLAN feature for a given port will not reset the port VLAN behavior to the settings listed above. Any VLAN settings made by the user are kept.

#### *QoS*

The following default priority mapping table will be used (as per IEEE 802.1Q and IEEE 802.1D):

QoS traffic classes

QoS priority	Default traffic class	Traffic type
0	2	Best effort, default class for unexpedited traffic
1	0	Background traffic
2	1	Spare bandwidth
3	3	Excellent effort
4	4	Controlled load
5	5	Video traffic
6	6	Voice traffic
7	7	Network control

#### *Firewall*

The port firewall is configured by default in black-list mode, and the firewall address table is empty. This means the firewall will not filter any frames until the feature is configured and the firewall table is downloaded to the NPE.

#### *Spanning Tree*

The port is set to STP unblocked mode, therefore it will accept all frames until re-configured.

#### *WiFi header conversion*

The WiFi header conversion database is empty, therefore no actual header conversion will take place until this feature is configured and the conversion table downloaded to the NPE.

**Parameters:**

*portID* **IxEthDBPortId** [in] – ID of the port to enable or disable the features on (use IX\_ETH\_DB\_ALL\_PORTS for all the ports)  
*feature* **IxEthDBFeature** [in] – feature or feature set to enable or disable  
*enabled* **BOOL** [in] – TRUE to enable the feature and FALSE to disable it

**Note:**

Certain features, from a functional point of view, cannot be disabled as such at NPE level; when such features are set to *disabled* using the EthDB API they will be configured in such a way to determine a behavior equivalent to the feature being disabled. As well as this, disabled features cannot be configured or accessed via the EthDB API (except for getting their status).

**Return values:**

<b>IX_ETH_DB_SUCCESS</b>	operation completed successfully
<b>IX_ETH_DB_INVALID_PORT</b>	portID is not a valid port identifier
<b>IX_ETH_DB_PORT_UNINITIALIZED</b>	port is not initialized
<b>IX_ETH_DB_NO_PERMISSION</b>	attempted to enable mutually exclusive features, or a feature that depends on another feature which is not present or enabled
<b>IX_ETH_DB_FEATURE_UNAVAILABLE</b>	at least one of the features selected is unavailable
<b>IX_FAIL</b>	unknown OS or NPE communication error

```

IxEthDBStatus ixEthDBFeaturePropertyGet ( IxEthDBPortId      portID,
                                             IxEthDBFeature      feature,
                                             IxEthDBProperty      property,
                                             IxEthDBPropertyType * type,
                                             void *                value
                                             )

```

Retrieves the value of a feature property.

The EthDB features usually contain feature-specific properties describing or controlling how the feature operates. W (e.g. the firewall operating mode) have their own API, secondary properties can be retrieved using this function.

Properties can be read-only or read-write. ixEthDBFeaturePropertyGet operates with both types of features.

Properties have types associated with them. A descriptor indicating the property type is returned in the *type* argument.

The currently supported properties and their corresponding features are as follows:

Properties for IX\_ETH\_DB\_VLAN\_QOS

Property identifier	Property type
IX_ETH_DB_QOS_TRAFFIC_CLASS_COUNT_PROPERTY	IX_ETH_DB_INTEGER_PROPER

<b>IX_ETH_DB_QOS_TRAFFIC_CLASS_0_RX_QUEUE_PROPERTY</b>	<b>IX_ETH_DB_INTEGER_PROPERTY</b>
<b>IX_ETH_DB_QOS_TRAFFIC_CLASS_1_RX_QUEUE_PROPERTY</b>	<b>IX_ETH_DB_INTEGER_PROPERTY</b>
<b>IX_ETH_DB_QOS_TRAFFIC_CLASS_2_RX_QUEUE_PROPERTY</b>	<b>IX_ETH_DB_INTEGER_PROPERTY</b>
<b>IX_ETH_DB_QOS_TRAFFIC_CLASS_3_RX_QUEUE_PROPERTY</b>	<b>IX_ETH_DB_INTEGER_PROPERTY</b>
<b>IX_ETH_DB_QOS_TRAFFIC_CLASS_4_RX_QUEUE_PROPERTY</b>	<b>IX_ETH_DB_INTEGER_PROPERTY</b>
<b>IX_ETH_DB_QOS_TRAFFIC_CLASS_5_RX_QUEUE_PROPERTY</b>	<b>IX_ETH_DB_INTEGER_PROPERTY</b>
<b>IX_ETH_DB_QOS_TRAFFIC_CLASS_6_RX_QUEUE_PROPERTY</b>	<b>IX_ETH_DB_INTEGER_PROPERTY</b>
<b>IX_ETH_DB_QOS_TRAFFIC_CLASS_7_RX_QUEUE_PROPERTY</b>	<b>IX_ETH_DB_INTEGER_PROPERTY</b>

*See also:*

**ixEthDBFeaturePropertySet**

*Parameters:*

*portID*    **IxEthDBPortId** [in] – ID of the port  
*feature*   **IxEthDBFeature** [in] – EthDB feature for which the property is retrieved  
*property*   **IxEthDBProperty** [in] – property identifier  
*type*        **IxEthDBPropertyType** [out] – location where the property type will be stored

*value*      void [out] – location where the property value will be stored

**Return values:**

<i>IX_ETH_DB_SUCCESS</i>	operation completed successfully
<i>IX_ETH_DB_INVALID_PORT</i>	portID is not a valid port identifier
<i>IX_ETH_DB_INVALID_ARG</i>	invalid property identifier, <i>type</i> or <i>value</i> pointer arguments
<i>IX_ETH_DB_FAIL</i>	incorrect property value or unknown error

```
IxEthDBStatus ixEthDBFeaturePropertySet ( IxEthDBPortId   portID,  
                                           IxEthDBFeature  feature,  
                                           IxEthDBProperty property,  
                                           void *           value  
                                           )
```

Sets the value of a feature property.

Unlike **ixEthDBFeaturePropertyGet**, this function operates only with read–write properties

The currently supported properties and their corresponding features are as follows:

- **IX\_ETH\_DB\_QOS\_QUEUE\_CONFIGURATION\_COMPLETE** (for **IX\_ETH\_DB\_VLAN\_QOS**): freezes the availability of traffic classes to the number of traffic classes currently in use

Note that this function creates deep copies of the property values; once the function is invoked the client can free or reuse the memory area containing the original property value.

Copy behavior for different property types is defined as follows:

- **IX\_ETH\_DB\_INTEGER\_PROPERTY** – 4 bytes are copied from the source location
- **IX\_ETH\_DB\_STRING\_PROPERTY** – the source string will be copied up to the NULL " string terminator, maximum of 255 characters
- **IX\_ETH\_DB\_MAC\_ADDR\_PROPERTY** – 6 bytes are copied from the source location
- **IX\_ETH\_DB\_BOOL\_PROPERTY** – 4 bytes are copied from the source location; the only allowed values are TRUE (1L) and false (0L)

**See also:**

**ixEthDBFeaturePropertySet**

**Warning:**

**IX\_ETH\_DB\_QOS\_QUEUE\_CONFIGURATION\_COMPLETE** is provided for EthAcc internal use; do not attempt to set this property directly

**Parameters:**

<i>portID</i>	<b>IxEthDBPortId</b> [in] – ID of the port
<i>feature</i>	<b>IxEthDBFeature</b> [in] – EthDB feature for which the property is set
<i>property</i>	<b>IxEthDBProperty</b> [in] – property identifier
<i>value</i>	void [in] – location where the property value is to be copied from

**Return values:**

<i>IX_ETH_DB_SUCCESS</i>	operation completed successfully
<i>IX_ETH_DB_INVALID_PORT</i>	portID is not a valid port identifier
<i>IX_ETH_DB_INVALID_ARG</i>	invalid property identifier, <i>value</i> pointer, or invalid property value

**IxEthDBStatus** ixEthDBFeatureStatesRestore ( **IxEthDBPortId** *portId* )

Restores the state of EthDB based on latest settings, following the occurrence of an NPE soft-error. State is restored by re-downloading tables for the enabled features (e.g. Header Conversion and Firewall) or sending configuration messages to NPE.

**Parameters:**

*portId* **IxEthDBPortId** [in] – ID of the port

**Return values:**

<i>IX_ETH_DB_SUCCESS</i>	operation completed successfully
<i>IX_ETH_DB_FAIL</i>	operation fails
<i>IX_ETH_DB_INVALID_PORT</i>	portId is not a valid port identifier
<i>IX_ETH_DB_PORT_UNINITIALIZED</i>	port is not initialized

**Note:**

The function is useful for error-handling module to handle soft-error in Ethernet NPE.

This API will not restore learning table in Ethernet NPE. As the mechanism, to restore the original learning table is not trivial, after soft-error is handled it is expected that Ethernet NPE to learn the new source address again.

**IxEthDBStatus** ixEthDBFeatureStatusGet ( **IxEthDBPortId** *portId*,  
**IxEthDBFeature** *feature*,  
 BOOL \* *present*,  
 BOOL \* *enabled*  
 )

Retrieves the availability and status of a feature set.

This function returns the availability and status for a feature set. Note that if more than one feature is selected (e.g. IX\_ETH\_DB\_LEARNING | IX\_ETH\_DB\_FILTERING) the "present" and "enabled" return values will be set to TRUE only if all the features in the feature set are present and enabled (not only some).

**Parameters:**

<i>portId</i>	<b>IxEthDBPortId</b> [in] – ID of the port
<i>feature</i>	<b>IxEthDBFeature</b> [in] – identifier of the feature to retrieve the status for
<i>present</i>	BOOL [out] – location where a boolean flag indicating whether this feature is present will be written to
<i>enabled</i>	BOOL [out] – location where a boolean flag indicating whether this feature is enabled will be written to

**Return values:**

<i>IX_ETH_DB_SUCCESS</i>	operation completed successfully
<i>IX_ETH_DB_INVALID_PORT</i>	portID is not a valid port identifier
<i>IX_ETH_DB_PORT_UNINITIALIZED</i>	port is not initialized
<i>IX_ETH_DB_INVALID_ARG</i>	either <i>present</i> or <i>enabled</i> pointer argument is invalid

```
IxEthDBStatus ixEthDBFilteringDatabaseSearch ( IxEthDBPortId * portID,
                                                IxEthDBMacAddr * macAddr
                                                )
```

Search the Ethernet learning/filtering database for a MAC address and return the port ID.

Searches the database for a MAC address. The function returns the portID for the MAC address record, if found. If no match is found the function returns IX\_ETH\_DB\_NO\_SUCH\_ADDR. The portID is only valid if the function finds a match.

- Reentrant – yes
- ISR Callable – no

**Parameters:**

*portID*    **IxEthDBPortId** [in] – port ID the address belongs to (populated only on a successful search)

*macAddr* [in] – MAC address to search for

**Return values:**

*IX\_ETH\_DB\_SUCCESS*            the record exists in the database

*IX\_ETH\_DB\_NO\_SUCH\_ADDR*    the record was not found in the database

*IX\_ETH\_DB\_INVALID\_ARG*      invalid macAddr or portID pointer argument(s)

```
IxEthDBStatus ixEthDBFilteringDatabaseShow ( IxEthDBPortId portID )
```

This function displays the Mac Ethernet MAC address filtering tables.

It displays the MAC address, port ID, entry type (dynamic/static), and age for the given port ID.

- Reentrant – no
- ISR Callable – no

**Parameters:**

*portID*    **IxEthDBPortId** [in] – port ID to display the MAC address entries

**Return values:**

*IX\_ETH\_DB\_SUCCESS*            operation completed successfully

*IX\_ETH\_DB\_INVALID\_PORT*      portID is invalid

*IX\_ETH\_DB\_PORT\_UNINITIALIZED* port ID is not initialized

*IX\_ETH\_DB\_FAIL*                record browser failed due to an internal busy or lock condition



**Note:**

this function is deprecated and kept for compatibility reasons; use **ixEthDBFilteringDatabaseShowRecords** instead

**See also:**

**ixEthDBFilteringDatabaseShowRecords**

```
void ixEthDBFilteringDatabaseShowAll ( void )
```

Displays the MAC address recorded in the filtering database for all registered ports (see **IxEthDBPortDefs.h**), grouped by port ID.

\* – Reentrant – no

- ISR Callable – no

**Return values:**

*void*

**Note:**

this function is deprecated and kept for compatibility reasons; use **ixEthDBFilteringDatabaseShowRecords** instead

**See also:**

**ixEthDBFilteringDatabaseShowRecords**

```
IxEthDBStatus ixEthDBFilteringDatabaseShowRecords ( IxEthDBPortId      portID,  
                                                    IxEthDBRecordType recordFilter  
                                                    )
```

This function displays per port database records, given a record type filter.

The supported record type filters are:

- **IX\_ETH\_DB\_FILTERING\_RECORD** – displays the non-VLAN filtering records (MAC address, age, static/dynamic)
- **IX\_ETH\_DB\_FILTERING\_VLAN\_RECORD** – displays the VLAN filtering records (MAC address, age, static/dynamic, VLAN ID, CFI, QoS class)
- **IX\_ETH\_DB\_FILTERING\_RECORD | IX\_ETH\_DB\_FILTERING\_VLAN\_RECORD** – displays the previous two types of records
- **IX\_ETH\_DB\_WIFI\_RECORD** – displays the WiFi header conversion records (MAC address, optional gateway MAC address) and WiFi header conversion parameters (BSSID, Duration/ID)
- **IX\_ETH\_DB\_FIREWALL\_RECORD** – displays the firewall MAC address table and firewall operating mode (white list/black list)
- **IX\_ETH\_DB\_ALL\_RECORD\_TYPES** – displays all the record types
- **IX\_ETH\_DB\_NO\_RECORD\_TYPE** – displays only the port status (no records are displayed)

Additionally, the status of each port will be displayed, containing the following information: type, capabilities, enabled status, aging enabled status, group membership and maximum frame size.

The port ID can either be an actual port or IX\_ETH\_DB\_ALL\_PORTS, in which case the requested information will be displayed for all the ports (grouped by port)

- Reentrant – no
- ISR Callable – no

**Parameters:**

*portID* ID of the port to display information on (use IX\_ETH\_DB\_ALL\_PORTS for all the ports)  
*recordFilter* record type filter

**Return values:**

*IX\_ETH\_DB\_SUCCESS* operation completed successfully  
*IX\_ETH\_DB\_INVALID\_PORT* portID is invalid  
*IX\_ETH\_DB\_PORT\_UNINITIALIZED* port ID is not initialized

```
IxEthDBStatus ixEthDBFilteringDynamicEntryProvision ( IxEthDBPortId portID,
                                                         IxEthDBMacAddr * macAddr
                                                         )
```

Populate the Ethernet learning/filtering database with a dynamic MAC address.

Populates the Ethernet learning/filtering database with a dynamic MAC address. This entry will be subject to normal aging function, if aging is enabled on its port. If there is an entry (static or dynamic) with the same MAC address on any port this entry will take precedence. Any other entry with the same MAC address will be removed.

- Reentrant – yes
- ISR Callable – yes

**Parameters:**

*portID* **IxEthDBPortId** [in] – port ID to add the dynamic address to  
*macAddr* [in] – static MAC address to add

**Return values:**

*IX\_ETH\_DB\_SUCCESS* the add was successful  
*IX\_ETH\_DB\_FAIL* failed to populate the database entry  
*IX\_ETH\_DB\_BUSY* failed due to a temporary busy condition (i.e. lack of CPU cycles), try again later  
*IX\_ETH\_DB\_INVALID\_PORT* portID is invalid  
*IX\_ETH\_DB\_PORT\_UNINITIALIZED* port is not initialized  
*IX\_ETH\_DB\_INVALID\_ARG* invalid *macAddr* pointer argument  
*IX\_ETH\_DB\_FEATURE\_UNAVAILABLE* learning feature is disabled

**IxEthDBStatus** ixEthDBFilteringEntryDelete ( IxEthDBMacAddr \* *macAddr* )

Removes a MAC address entry from the Ethernet learning/filtering database.

**Parameters:**

*macAddr* IxEthDBMacAddr [in] – MAC address to remove

- Reentrant – yes
- ISR Callable – no

**Return values:**

<i>IX_ETH_DB_SUCCESS</i>	the removal was successful
<i>IX_ETH_DB_NO_SUCH_ADDR</i>	failed to remove the address (not in the database)
<i>IX_ETH_DB_INVALID_ARG</i>	invalid <i>macAddr</i> pointer argument
<i>IX_ETH_DB_BUSY</i>	failed due to a temporary busy condition (i.e. lack of CPU cycles), try again later

**IxEthDBStatus** ixEthDBFilteringPortMaximumFrameSizeSet ( **IxEthDBPortId** *portID*,  
 UINT32 *maximumFrameSize*  
 )

Set the maximum frame size supported on the given port ID.

This functions set the maximum frame size supported on a specific port ID

- Reentrant – yes
- ISR Callable – no

**Parameters:**

*portID* **IxEthDBPortId** [in] – port ID to configure  
*maximumFrameSize* UINT32 [in] – maximum frame size to configure

**Return values:**

<i>IX_ETH_DB_SUCCESS</i>	the port is configured
<i>IX_ETH_DB_PORT_UNINITIALIZED</i>	the port has not been initialized
<i>IX_ETH_DB_INVALID_PORT</i>	<i>portID</i> is invalid
<i>IX_ETH_DB_INVALID_ARG</i>	size parameter is out of range
<i>IX_ETH_DB_NO_PERMISSION</i>	selected port is not an Ethernet NPE
<i>IX_FAIL</i>	unknown OS or NPE communication error

**Note:**

This maximum frame size is used to filter the frames based on their destination addresses and the capabilities of the destination port. The maximum value that can be set for a NPE port is 16320. (IX\_ETHNPE\_ACC\_FRAME\_LENGTH\_MAX)

```
IxEthDBStatus ixEthDBFilteringPortSearch ( IxEthDBPortId    portID,
                                           IxEthDBMacAddr * macAddr
                                           )
```

Search the Ethernet learning/filtering database for the given MAC address and port ID.

This functions searches the database for a specific port ID and MAC address. Both the port ID and the MAC address have to match in order for the record to be reported as found.

- Reentrant – yes
- ISR Callable – no

**Parameters:**

*portID*     **IxEthDBPortId** [in] – port ID to search for  
*macAddr* [in] – MAC address to search for

**Return values:**

<i>IX_ETH_DB_SUCCESS</i>	the record exists in the database
<i>IX_ETH_DB_INVALID_ARG</i>	invalid <i>macAddr</i> pointer argument
<i>IX_ETH_DB_NO_SUCH_ADDR</i>	the record was not found in the database
<i>IX_ETH_DB_INVALID_PORT</i>	<i>portID</i> is invalid
<i>IX_ETH_DB_PORT_UNINITIALIZED</i>	port ID is not initialized
<i>IX_ETH_DB_FEATURE_UNAVAILABLE</i>	learning feature is disabled

```
IxEthDBStatus ixEthDBFilteringPortUpdatingSearch ( IxEthDBPortId * portID,
                                                    IxEthDBMacAddr * macAddr
                                                    )
```

Search the filtering database for a MAC address, return the port ID and reset the record age.

Searches the database for a MAC address. The function returns the *portID* for the MAC address record and resets the entry age to 0, if found. If no match is found the function returns *IX\_ETH\_DB\_NO\_SUCH\_ADDR*. The *portID* is only valid if the function finds a match.

- Reentrant – yes
- ISR Callable – no

**Return values:**

<i>IX_ETH_DB_SUCCESS</i>	the MAC address was found
<i>IX_ETH_DB_NO_SUCH_ADDR</i>	the MAC address was not found
<i>IX_ETH_DB_INVALID_ARG</i>	invalid <i>macAddr</i> or <i>portID</i> pointer argument(s)

```
IxEthDBStatus ixEthDBFilteringStaticEntryProvision ( IxEthDBPortId    portID,
                                                       IxEthDBMacAddr * macAddr
                                                       )
```

Populate the Ethernet learning/filtering database with a static MAC address.

Populates the Ethernet learning/filtering database with a static MAC address. The entry will not be subject to aging. If there is an entry (static or dynamic) with the corresponding MAC address on any port this entry will take precedence. Any other entry with the same MAC address will be removed.

- Reentrant – yes
- ISR Callable – yes

**Parameters:**

*portID*     **IxEthDBPortId** [in] – port ID to add the static address to  
*macAddr* [in] – static MAC address to add

**Return values:**

<i>IX_ETH_DB_SUCCESS</i>	the add was successful
<i>IX_ETH_DB_FAIL</i>	failed to populate the database entry
<i>IX_ETH_DB_BUSY</i>	failed due to a temporary busy condition (i.e. lack of CPU cycles), try again later
<i>IX_ETH_DB_INVALID_PORT</i>	portID is invalid
<i>IX_ETH_DB_PORT_UNINITIALIZED</i>	port is not initialized
<i>IX_ETH_DB_INVALID_ARG</i>	invalid <i>macAddr</i> pointer argument
<i>IX_ETH_DB_FEATURE_UNAVAILABLE</i>	learning feature is disabled

```
IxEthDBStatus ixEthDBFirewallEntryAdd ( IxEthDBPortId     portID,  
                                           IxEthDBMacAddr * macAddr  
                                           )
```

Adds a MAC address to the firewall address list.

Note that adding the same MAC address twice will not return an error but will not actually accomplish anything.

The firewall MAC address list has a limited number of entries; once the maximum number of entries has been reached this function will failed to add more addresses, returning *IX\_ETH\_DB\_NOMEM*.

**Parameters:**

*portID*     **IxEthDBPortId** [in] – ID of the port  
*macAddr* [in] – MAC address to be added

**Return values:**

<i>IX_ETH_DB_SUCCESS</i>	operation completed successfully
<i>IX_ETH_DB_INVALID_PORT</i>	portID is not a valid port identifier
<i>IX_ETH_DB_PORT_UNINITIALIZED</i>	port not initialized
<i>IX_ETH_DB_INVALID_ARG</i>	invalid <i>macAddr</i> pointer argument
<i>IX_ETH_DB_FAIL</i>	maximum number of records reached
<i>IX_ETH_DB_BUSY</i>	lock condition or transaction in progress, try again later
<i>IX_ETH_DB_FEATURE_UNAVAILABLE</i>	Firewall feature not enabled

```
IxEthDBStatus ixEthDBFirewallEntryRemove ( IxEthDBPortId portID,
                                             IxEthDBMacAddr * macAddr
                                             )
```

Removes a MAC address from the firewall address list.

**Parameters:**

*portID* **IxEthDBPortId** [in] – ID of the port  
*macAddr* [in] – MAC address to be removed

**Return values:**

<i>IX_ETH_DB_SUCCESS</i>	operation completed successfully
<i>IX_ETH_DB_INVALID_PORT</i>	<i>portID</i> is not a valid port identifier
<i>IX_ETH_DB_PORT_UNINITIALIZED</i>	port not initialized
<i>IX_ETH_DB_INVALID_ARG</i>	invalid <i>macAddr</i> pointer argument
<i>IX_ETH_DB_NO_SUCH_ADDR</i>	address not found
<i>IX_ETH_DB_FEATURE_UNAVAILABLE</i>	Firewall feature not enabled

```
ixEthDBFirewallInvalidAddressFilterEnable ( IxEthDBPortId portID,
                                             BOOL enable
                                             )
```

Enables or disables invalid MAC address filtering.

According to IEEE802 it is illegal for a source address to be a multicast or broadcast address. If this feature is enabled the NPE inspects the source MAC addresses of incoming frames and discards them if invalid addresses are detected.

By default this service is enabled, if the firewall feature is supported by the NPE image.

**Parameters:**

*portID* ID of the port  
*enable* TRUE to enable invalid MAC address filtering and FALSE to disable it

**Return values:**

<i>IX_ETH_DB_SUCCESS</i>	operation completed successfully
<i>IX_ETH_DB_INVALID_PORT</i>	<i>portID</i> is not a valid port identifier
<i>IX_ETH_DB_PORT_UNINITIALIZED</i>	port not initialized
<i>IX_ETH_DB_FEATURE_UNAVAILABLE</i>	Firewall feature not enabled
<i>IX_ETH_DB_FAIL</i>	unknown OS or NPE communication error

```
IxEthDBStatus ixEthDBFirewallMaskedEntryAdd ( IxEthDBPortId    portID,
                                                IxEthDBMacAddr * macAddr,
                                                IxEthDBMacAddr * addrMask
                                                )
```

Adds a MAC address + mask to the firewall address list.

Note that adding the same MAC address twice will not return an error but will not actually accomplish anything.

The firewall MAC address list has a limited number of entries; once the maximum number of entries has been reached this function will failed to add more addresses, returning `IX_ETH_DB_NOMEM`.

**Parameters:**

*portID*      **IxEthDBPortId** [in] – ID of the port  
*macAddr*    [in] – MAC address to be added  
*addrMask*   [in] – address mask to be added

**Return values:**

<code>IX_ETH_DB_SUCCESS</code>	operation completed successfully
<code>IX_ETH_DB_INVALID_PORT</code>	<i>portID</i> is not a valid port identifier
<code>IX_ETH_DB_PORT_UNINITIALIZED</code>	port not initialized
<code>IX_ETH_DB_INVALID_ARG</code>	invalid <i>macAddr</i> pointer argument
<code>IX_ETH_DB_FAIL</code>	maximum number of records reached
<code>IX_ETH_DB_BUSY</code>	lock condition or transaction in progress, try again later
<code>IX_ETH_DB_FEATURE_UNAVAILABLE</code>	Firewall feature not enabled

```
IxEthDBStatus ixEthDBFirewallMaskedEntryRemove ( IxEthDBPortId    portID,
                                                    IxEthDBMacAddr * macAddr,
                                                    IxEthDBMacAddr * addrMask
                                                    )
```

Removes a MAC address + mask from the firewall address list.

**Parameters:**

*portID*      **IxEthDBPortId** [in] – ID of the port  
*macAddr*    [in] – MAC address to be removed  
*addrMask*   [in] – address mask to be added

**Return values:**

<code>IX_ETH_DB_SUCCESS</code>	operation completed successfully
<code>IX_ETH_DB_INVALID_PORT</code>	<i>portID</i> is not a valid port identifier
<code>IX_ETH_DB_PORT_UNINITIALIZED</code>	port not initialized
<code>IX_ETH_DB_INVALID_ARG</code>	invalid <i>macAddr</i> pointer argument
<code>IX_ETH_DB_NO_SUCH_ADDR</code>	address not found

*IX\_ETH\_DB\_FEATURE\_UNAVAILABLE* Firewall feature not enabled

```
IxEthDBStatus ixEthDBFirewallModeSet ( IxEthDBPortId portID,  
                                         IxEthDBFirewallMode mode  
                                         )
```

Sets the firewall mode to use white or black listing.

When enabled, the NPE MAC address based firewall support operates in two modes:

- white-list mode (MAC address based admission)
  - ◆ *mode* set to *IX\_ETH\_DB\_FIREWALL\_WHITE\_LIST*
  - ◆ only packets originating from MAC addresses contained in the firewall address list are allowed on the Rx path
- black-list mode (MAC address based blocking)
  - ◆ *mode* set to *IX\_ETH\_DB\_FIREWALL\_BLACK\_LIST*
  - ◆ packets originating from MAC addresses contained in the firewall address list are discarded

**Parameters:**

*portID* **IxEthDBPortId** [in] – ID of the port

*mode* **IxEthDBFirewallMode** [in] – firewall mode (*IX\_ETH\_DB\_FIREWALL\_WHITE\_LIST* or *IX\_ETH\_DB\_FIREWALL\_BLACK\_LIST*)

**Note:**

by default the firewall operates in black-list mode with an empty address list, hence it doesn't filter any packets

**Return values:**

*IX\_ETH\_DB\_SUCCESS* operation completed successfully

*IX\_ETH\_DB\_INVALID\_PORT* portID is not a valid port identifier

*IX\_ETH\_DB\_PORT\_UNINITIALIZED* port not initialized

*IX\_ETH\_DB\_FEATURE\_UNAVAILABLE* Firewall feature not enabled

*IX\_ETH\_DB\_INVALID\_ARGUMENT* *mode* argument is not a valid firewall configuration mode

*IX\_ETH\_DB\_FAIL* unknown OS or NPE communication error

```
IxEthDBStatus ixEthDBFirewallTableDownload ( IxEthDBPortId portID )
```

Downloads the MAC firewall table to a port.

**Parameters:**

*portID* ID of the port

**Return values:**

*IX\_ETH\_DB\_SUCCESS* operation completed successfully



<i>IX_ETH_DB_INVALID_PORT</i>	portID is not a valid port identifier
<i>IX_ETH_DB_PORT_UNINITIALIZED</i>	port not initialized
<i>IX_ETH_DB_FEATURE_UNAVAILABLE</i>	Firewall feature not enabled
<i>IX_ETH_DB_FAIL</i>	unknown OS or NPE communication error

```
IxEthDBStatus ixEthDBIngressVlanTaggingEnabledGet ( IxEthDBPortId      portID,
                                                    IxEthDBTaggingAction * taggingAction
                                                    )
```

Retrieves the Ingress VLAN tagging behavior from a port (see **ixEthDBIngressVlanTaggingEnabledSet**).

**Parameters:**

*portID*            **IxEthDBPortId** [in] – ID of the port whose Ingress VLAN tagging behavior is set  
*taggingAction* **IxEthDBTaggingAction** [out] – location where the tagging behavior for the port is written to

**Return values:**

<i>IX_ETH_DB_SUCCESS</i>	operation completed successfully
<i>IX_ETH_DB_INVALID_PORT</i>	portID is not a valid port identifier
<i>IX_ETH_DB_PORT_UNINITIALIZED</i>	port is not initialized
<i>IX_ETH_DB_INVALID_ARG</i>	invalid <i>taggingAction</i> pointer argument
<i>IX_ETH_DB_FEATURE_UNAVAILABLE</i>	VLAN/QoS feature is not available or not enabled for the port

```
IxEthDBStatus ixEthDBIngressVlanTaggingEnabledSet ( IxEthDBPortId      portID,
                                                    IxEthDBTaggingAction taggingAction
                                                    )
```

Sets the Ingress VLAN tagging behavior for a port.

A port's Ingress tagging behavior is controlled by the *taggingAction* parameter, which can take one of the following values:

- **IX\_ETH\_DB\_PASS\_THROUGH** – leaves the frame unchanged (does not add or remove the VLAN tag)
- **IX\_ETH\_DB\_ADD\_TAG** – adds the VLAN tag if not present, using the default port VID
- **IX\_ETH\_DB\_REMOVE\_TAG** – removes the VLAN tag if present

**Parameters:**

*portID*            **IxEthDBPortId** [in] – ID of the port whose Ingress VLAN tagging behavior is set  
*taggingAction* **IxEthDBTaggingAction** [in] – tagging behavior for the port

**Return values:**

<i>IX_ETH_DB_SUCCESS</i>	operation completed successfully
<i>IX_ETH_DB_INVALID_PORT</i>	portID is not a valid port identifier
<i>IX_ETH_DB_PORT_UNINITIALIZED</i>	port is not initialized
<i>IX_ETH_DB_INVALID_ARG</i>	invalid <i>taggingAction</i> argument
<i>IX_ETH_DB_FEATURE_UNAVAILABLE</i>	VLAN/QoS feature is not available or not enabled for the port
<i>IX_FAIL</i>	unknown OS or NPE communication error

```
IxEthDBStatus ixEthDBInit ( void )
```

Initializes the Ethernet learning/filtering database.

**Note:**

calling this function multiple times does not constitute an error; redundant calls will be ignored, returning *IX\_ETH\_DB\_SUCCESS*

**Return values:**

*IX\_ETH\_DB\_SUCCESS* initialization was successful  
*IX\_ETH\_DB\_FAIL* initialization failed (OS error)

```
IxEthDBStatus ixEthDBPortAddressSet ( IxEthDBPortId portID,  
                                       IxEthDBMacAddr * macAddr  
                                       )
```

Sets the port MAC address.

This function is to be called from the Ethernet Access component top-level *ixEthDBUnicastAddressSet()*. Event processing cannot be enabled for a port until its MAC address has been set.

**Parameters:**

*portID* **IxEthDBPortId** [in] – ID of the port whose MAC address is set  
*macAddr* [in] – port MAC address

**Return values:**

*IX\_ETH\_DB\_SUCCESS* MAC address was set successfully  
*IX\_ETH\_DB\_FAIL* MAC address was not set due to a message handler failure  
*IX\_ETH\_DB\_INVALID\_PORT* if the port is not an Ethernet NPE

**See also:**

**IxEthDBPortDefs.h** for port definitions

```
IxEthDBStatus ixEthDBPortAgingDisable ( IxEthDBPortId portID )
```

Disable the aging function for a specific port.

**Parameters:**

*portID* **IxEthDBPortId** [in] – port ID to disable aging on

- Reentrant – yes
- ISR Callable – no

**Return values:**

<i>IX_ETH_DB_SUCCESS</i>	aging disabled successfully
<i>IX_ETH_DB_INVALID_PORT</i>	portID is invalid
<i>IX_ETH_DB_PORT_UNINITIALIZED</i>	port ID is not initialized
<i>IX_ETH_DB_FEATURE_UNAVAILABLE</i>	learning feature is disabled

**IxEthDBStatus** ixEthDBPortAgingEnable ( **IxEthDBPortId** *portID* )

Enable the aging function for a specific port.

Enables the aging of dynamic MAC address entries stored in the learning/filtering database

**Note:**

The aging function relies on the **ixEthDBDatabaseMaintenance** being called with a period of **IX\_ETH\_DB\_MAINTENANCE\_TIME** seconds.

- Reentrant – yes
- ISR Callable – no

**Parameters:**

*portID* **IxEthDBPortId** [in] – port ID to enable aging on

**Return values:**

<i>IX_ETH_DB_SUCCESS</i>	aging enabled successfully
<i>IX_ETH_DB_INVALID_PORT</i>	portID is invalid
<i>IX_ETH_DB_PORT_UNINITIALIZED</i>	port ID is not initialized
<i>IX_ETH_DB_FEATURE_UNAVAILABLE</i>	learning feature is disabled

**IxEthDBStatus** ixEthDBPortDependencyMapGet ( **IxEthDBPortId** *portID*,  
**IxEthDBPortMap** *dependencyPortMap*  
)

Retrieves the dependency port map for a port.

**Parameters:**

*portID* ID of the port to set the dependency map to

*dependencyPortMap* location where the port dependency map is to be copied

This function will copy the port dependency map to a user specified location.

- Reentrant – no
- ISR Callable – no

**Return values:**

<i>IX_ETH_DB_SUCCESS</i>	operation completed successfully
<i>IX_ETH_DB_INVALID_PORT</i>	portID is not a valid port identifier
<i>IX_ETH_DB_PORT_UNINITIALIZED</i>	port is not initialized
<i>IX_ETH_DB_INVALID_ARG</i>	invalid <i>dependencyPortMap</i> pointer
<i>IX_ETH_DB_FEATURE_UNAVAILABLE</i>	Filtering is not available or not enabled for the port

```
IxEthDBStatus ixEthDBPortDependencyMapSet ( IxEthDBPortId portID,  
                                              IxEthDBPortMap dependencyPortMap  
                                              )
```

Sets the dependency port map for a port.

**Parameters:**

<i>portID</i>	ID of the port to set the dependency map to
<i>dependencyPortMap</i>	new dependency map (as bitmap, each bit set indicates a port being included)

This function is used to share filtering information between ports. By adding a port into another port's dependency map the target port filtering data will import the filtering data from the port it depends on. Any changes to filtering data for a port – such as adding, updating or removing records – will trigger updates in the filtering information for all the ports depending on on the updated port.

For example, if ports 2 and 3 are set in the port 0 dependency map the filtering information for port 0 will also include the filtering information from ports 2 and 3. Adding a record to port 2 will also trigger an update not only on port 2 but also on port 0.

The dependency map is a 256 bit array where each bit corresponds to a port corresponding to the bit offset (bit 0 – port 0, bit 1 – port 1 etc). Setting a bit to 1 indicates that the corresponding port is the port map. For example, a dependency port map of 0x14 consists in the ports with IDs 2 and 4. Note that the last bit (offset 255) is reserved and should never be set (it will be automatically cleared by the function).

By default, each port has a dependency port map consisting only of itself, i.e.

```
IxEthDBPortMap portMap;  
  
// clear all ports from port map  
memset(portMap, 0, sizeof (portMap));  
  
// include portID in port map  
portMap[portID / 8] = 1 << (portID % 8);
```

- Reentrant – no
- ISR Callable – no

**Note:**

Setting dependency maps is useful for NPE ports, which benefit from automatic updates of filtering information. Setting dependency maps for user-defined ports is not an error but will have no actual effect.

Including a port in its own dependency map is not compulsory, however note that in this case updating the port will not trigger an update on the port itself, which might not be the intended behavior

**Return values:**

<i>IX_ETH_DB_SUCCESS</i>	operation completed successfully
<i>IX_ETH_DB_INVALID_PORT</i>	portID is not a valid port identifier
<i>IX_ETH_DB_PORT_UNINITIALIZED</i>	port is not initialized
<i>IX_ETH_DB_INVALID_ARG</i>	invalid <i>dependencyPortMap</i> pointer
<i>IX_ETH_DB_FEATURE_UNAVAILABLE</i>	Filtering is not available or not enabled for the port

**IxEthDBStatus** *ixEthDBPortDisable* ( **IxEthDBPortId** *portID* )

Disables processing on a port.

This function is called automatically from the Ethernet Access component **ixEthAccPortDisable()** routine for Ethernet NPE ports and should be manually called for any user-defined port (any port that is not one of the Ethernet NPEs).

**Note:**

Calling **ixEthAccPortDisable()** will disable the respective Ethernet NPE. After Ethernet NPEs are disabled they are stopped therefore when re-enabled they need to be reset, downloaded with microcode and started. For learning to restart working the user needs to call again *ixEthAccPortUnicastMacAddressSet* or *ixEthDBUnicastAddressSet* with the respective port MAC address. Residual MAC addresses learnt before the port was disabled are deleted as soon as the port is disabled. This only applies to dynamic (learnt) entries, static entries do not disappear when the port is disabled.

**Parameters:**

*portID* **IxEthDBPortId** [in] – ID of the port to disable processing on

**Return values:**

<i>IX_ETH_DB_SUCCESS</i>	if disabling is successful
<i>IX_ETH_DB_FAIL</i>	if the disabling was not successful due to a message handler error
<i>IX_ETH_DB_INVALID_PORT</i>	if portID is invalid

**Note:**

calling this function multiple times after the first time completed successfully does not constitute an error; redundant calls will be ignored and return *IX\_ETH\_DB\_SUCCESS*

**IxEthDBStatus** ixEthDBPortEnable ( **IxEthDBPortId** *portID* )

Enables a port.

This function is called automatically from the Ethernet Access component **ixEthAccPortEnable()** routine for Ethernet NPE ports and should be manually called for any user-defined port (any port that is not one of the Ethernet NPEs).

**Parameters:**

*portID* **IxEthDBPortId** [in] – ID of the port to enable processing on

**Return values:**

<i>IX_ETH_DB_SUCCESS</i>	if enabling is successful
<i>IX_ETH_DB_FAIL</i>	if the enabling was not successful due to a message handler error
<i>IX_ETH_DB_MAC_UNINITIALIZED</i>	the MAC address of this port was not initialized (only for Ethernet NPEs)
<i>IX_ETH_DB_INVALID_PORT</i>	if portID is invalid

**Precondition:**

ixEthDBPortAddressSet needs to be called prior to enabling the port events for Ethernet NPEs

**See also:**

**ixEthDBPortAddressSet**

**IxEthDBPortDefs.h** for port definitions

**Note:**

calling this function multiple times does not constitute an error; redundant calls will be ignored

**void** ixEthDBPortInit ( **IxEthDBPortId** *portID* )

Initializes a port.

This function is called automatically by the Ethernet Access **ixEthAccPortInit()** routine for Ethernet NPE ports and should be manually called for any user-defined port (any port that is not one of the two Ethernet NPEs).

**Parameters:**

*portID* **IxEthDBPortId** [in] – ID of the port to be initialized

**See also:**

**IxEthDBPortDefs.h** for port definitions

**Note:**

calling this function multiple times does not constitute an error; redundant calls will be ignored

```
IxEthDBStatus ixEthDBPortVlanMembershipAdd ( IxEthDBPortId portID,
                                                IxEthDBVlanId vlanID
                                                )
```

Adds a VLAN ID to a port's VLAN membership table.

Adding a VLAN ID to a port's VLAN membership table will cause frames tagged with the specified VLAN ID to be accepted by the frame filter, if Ingress VLAN membership filtering is enabled.

- Reentrant – no
- ISR Callable – no

**Parameters:**

*portID* **IxEthDBPortId** [in] – ID of the port to add the VLAN ID membership to  
*vlanID* **IxEthDBVlanId** [in] – VLAN ID to be added to the port membership table

**Return values:**

<i>IX_ETH_DB_SUCCESS</i>	operation completed successfully
<i>IX_ETH_DB_INVALID_PORT</i>	portID is not a valid port identifier
<i>IX_ETH_DB_PORT_UNINITIALIZED</i>	port is not initialized
<i>IX_ETH_DB_INVALID_VLAN</i>	vlanID is not a valid VLAN ID
<i>IX_ETH_DB_FEATURE_UNAVAILABLE</i>	VLAN/QoS feature is not available or not enabled for the port
<i>IX_FAIL</i>	unknown OS or NPE communication error

**Note:**

A port's default VLAN ID is always in its own membership table, hence there is no need to explicitly add it using this function (although it is not an error to do so)

```
IxEthDBStatus ixEthDBPortVlanMembershipGet ( IxEthDBPortId portID,
                                                IxEthDBVlanSet vlanSet
                                                )
```

Retrieves a port's VLAN membership table.

Retrieves the complete VLAN membership table from a port, containing all the possible 4096 VLAN IDs. The table format is an array containing 4096 bits (512 bytes), where each bit indicates whether the VLAN at that bit index is in the port's membership list (if set) or not (unset).

The bit at index 0, indicating VLAN ID 0, indicates no VLAN membership and therefore no other bit will be set if bit 0 is set.

The bit at index 4095 is reserved and will not be set (it will be ignored if set).

The bit referencing the same VLAN ID as the default port VLAN ID will always be set, as the membership list must contain at least the default port VLAN ID.

- Reentrant – no

- ISR Callable – no

**Parameters:**

*portID* **IxEthDBPortId** [in] – port ID to retrieve the VLAN membership table from  
*vlanSet* **IxEthDBVlanSet** [out] – pointer a location where the VLAN membership table will be written to

**Return values:**

*IX\_ETH\_DB\_SUCCESS* operation completed successfully  
*IX\_ETH\_DB\_INVALID\_PORT* portID is not a valid port identifier  
*IX\_ETH\_DB\_PORT\_UNINITIALIZED* port is not initialized  
*IX\_ETH\_DB\_INVALID\_ARG* invalid *vlanSet* pointer  
*IX\_ETH\_DB\_FEATURE\_UNAVAILABLE* VLAN/QoS feature is not available or not enabled for the port

```
IxEthDBStatus ixEthDBPortVlanMembershipRangeAdd ( IxEthDBPortId portID,
                                                    IxEthDBVlanId vlanIDMin,
                                                    IxEthDBVlanId vlanIDMax
                                                    )
```

Adds a VLAN ID range to a port's VLAN membership table.

All the VLAN IDs in the specified range will be added to the port VLAN membership table, including the range start and end VLAN IDs. Tagged frames with VLAN IDs in the specified range will be accepted by the frame filter, if Ingress VLAN membership filtering is enabled.

- Reentrant – no
- ISR Callable – no

**Parameters:**

*portID* **IxEthDBPortId** [in] – port ID to add the VLAN membership range into  
*vlanIDMin* **IxEthDBVlanId** [in] – start of the VLAN ID range  
*vlanIDMax* **IxEthDBVlanId** [in] – end of the VLAN ID range

**Return values:**

*IX\_ETH\_DB\_SUCCESS* operation completed successfully  
*IX\_ETH\_DB\_INVALID\_PORT* portID is not a valid port identifier  
*IX\_ETH\_DB\_PORT\_UNINITIALIZED* port is not initialized  
*IX\_ETH\_DB\_INVALID\_VLAN* the specified VLAN IDs are invalid or do not constitute a range  
*IX\_ETH\_DB\_FEATURE\_UNAVAILABLE* VLAN/QoS feature is not available or not enabled for the port  
*IX\_FAIL* unknown OS or NPE communication error

**Note:**

Is is valid to use the same VLAN ID for both *vlanIDMin* and *vlanIDMax*, in which case this function will behave as **ixEthDBPortVlanMembershipAdd**



A port's default VLAN ID is always in its own membership table, hence there is no need to explicitly add it using this function (although it is not an error to do so)

```
IxEthDBStatus ixEthDBPortVlanMembershipRangeRemove ( IxEthDBPortId portID,
                                                         IxEthDBVlanId vlanIDMin,
                                                         IxEthDBVlanId vlanIDMax
                                                         )
```

Removes a VLAN ID range from a port's VLAN membership table.

All the VLAN IDs in the specified range will be removed from the port VLAN membership table, including the range start and end VLAN IDs. Tagged frames with VLAN IDs in the range will be discarded by the frame filter, if Ingress membership filtering is enabled.

- Reentrant – no
- ISR Callable – no

**Parameters:**

*portID*        **IxEthDBPortId** [in] – ID of the port to remove the VLAN membership range from  
*vlanIDMin*   **IxEthDBVlanId** [in] – start of the VLAN ID range  
*vlanIDMax*   **IxEthDBVlanId** [in] – end of the VLAN ID range

**Return values:**

<i>IX_ETH_DB_SUCCESS</i>	operation completed successfully
<i>IX_ETH_DB_INVALID_PORT</i>	portID is not a valid port identifier
<i>IX_ETH_DB_PORT_UNINITIALIZED</i>	port is not initialized
<i>IX_ETH_DB_INVALID_VLAN</i>	the specified VLAN IDs are invalid or do not constitute a range
<i>IX_ETH_DB_NO_PERMISSION</i>	attempted to remove the default VLAN ID from the port membership table (both vlanIDMin and vlanIDMax were set to the default port VLAN ID)
<i>IX_ETH_DB_FEATURE_UNAVAILABLE</i>	VLAN/QoS feature is not available or not enabled for the port
<i>IX_FAIL</i>	unknown OS or NPE communication error

**Note:**

It is valid to use the same VLAN ID for both vlanIDMin and vlanIDMax, in which case function will behave as **ixEthDBPortVlanMembershipRemove**

If the given range overlaps the default port VLAN ID this function will remove all the VLAN IDs in the range except for the port VLAN ID from its own membership table. This situation will be silently dealt with (no error message will be returned) as long as the range contains more than one value (i.e. at least one other value, apart from the default port VLAN ID). If the function is called with the vlanIDMin and vlanIDMax parameters both set to the port default VLAN ID, the function will infer that an attempt was specifically made to remove the default port VLAN ID from the port membership table, in which case the return value will be *IX\_ETH\_DB\_NO\_PERMISSION*.

```
IxEthDBStatus ixEthDBPortVlanMembershipRemove ( IxEthDBPortId portID,
                                                    IxEthDBVlanId vlanID
                                                    )
```

Removes a VLAN ID from a port's VLAN membership table.

Frames tagged with a VLAN ID which is not in a port's VLAN membership table will be discarded by the frame filter, if Ingress membership filtering is enabled.

- Reentrant – no
- ISR Callable – no

**Parameters:**

*portID* **IxEthDBPortId** [in] – ID of the port to remove the VLAN ID membership from  
*vlanID* **IxEthDBVlanId** [in] – VLAN ID to be removed from the port membership table

**Return values:**

<i>IX_ETH_DB_SUCCESS</i>	operation completed successfully
<i>IX_ETH_DB_INVALID_PORT</i>	portID is not a valid port identifier
<i>IX_ETH_DB_INVALID_VLAN</i>	vlanID is not a valid VLAN ID
<i>IX_ETH_DB_NO_PERMISSION</i>	attempted to remove the default VLAN ID from the port membership table (vlanID was set to the default port VLAN ID)
<i>IX_ETH_DB_FEATURE_UNAVAILABLE</i>	VLAN/QoS feature is not available or not enabled for the port
<i>IX_FAIL</i>	unknown OS or NPE communication error

**Note:**

A port's default VLAN ID cannot be removed from the port's membership table; attempting it will return *IX\_ETH\_DB\_NO\_PERMISSION*

```
IxEthDBStatus ixEthDBPortVlanMembershipSet ( IxEthDBPortId portID,
                                                IxEthDBVlanSet vlanSet
                                                )
```

Sets a port's VLAN membership table.

Sets a port's VLAN membership table from a complete VLAN table containing all the possible 4096 VLAN IDs. The table format is an array containing 4096 bits (512 bytes), where each bit indicates whether the VLAN at that bit index is in the port's membership list (if set) or not (unset).

The bit at index 0, indicating VLAN ID 0, indicates no VLAN membership and therefore no other bit must be set if bit 0 is set.

The bit at index 4095 is reserved and should never be set (it will be ignored if set).

The bit referencing the same VLAN ID as the default port VLAN ID should always be set, as the membership list must contain at least the default port VLAN ID.

- Reentrant – no
- ISR Callable – no

**Parameters:**

*portID* **IxEthDBPortId** [in] – port ID to set the VLAN membership table to  
*vlanSet* **IxEthDBVlanSet** [in] – pointer to the VLAN membership table

**Return values:**

<i>IX_ETH_DB_SUCCESS</i>	operation completed successfully
<i>IX_ETH_DB_INVALID_PORT</i>	<i>portID</i> is not a valid port identifier
<i>IX_ETH_DB_PORT_UNINITIALIZED</i>	port is not initialized
<i>IX_ETH_DB_INVALID_ARG</i>	invalid <i>vlanSet</i> pointer
<i>IX_ETH_DB_FEATURE_UNAVAILABLE</i>	VLAN/QoS feature is not available or not enabled for the port
<i>IX_FAIL</i>	unknown OS or NPE communication error

```
IxEthDBStatus ixEthDBPortVlanTagGet ( IxEthDBPortId    portID,
                                         IxEthDBVlanTag * vlanTag
                                         )
```

Retrieves the default 802.1Q port VLAN tag for a given port (see also **ixEthDBPortVlanTagSet**).

**Parameters:**

*portID* **IxEthDBPortId** [in] – ID of the port to retrieve the default VLAN tag from  
*vlanTag* **IxEthDBVlanTag** [out] – location to write the default port 802.1Q VLAN tag to

- Reentrant – no
- ISR Callable – no

**Return values:**

<i>IX_ETH_DB_SUCCESS</i>	operation completed successfully
<i>IX_ETH_DB_INVALID_PORT</i>	<i>portID</i> is not a valid port identifier
<i>IX_ETH_DB_PORT_UNINITIALIZED</i>	port is not initialized
<i>IX_ETH_DB_INVALID_ARG</i>	invalid <i>vlanTag</i> pointer
<i>IX_ETH_DB_FEATURE_UNAVAILABLE</i>	VLAN/QoS feature is not available or not enabled for the port

```
IxEthDBStatus ixEthDBPortVlanTagSet ( IxEthDBPortId    portID,
                                         IxEthDBVlanTag vlanTag
                                         )
```

Sets the default 802.1Q VLAN tag for a given port.

**Parameters:**

*portID* **IxEthDBPortId** [in] – ID of the port to set the default VLAN tag to  
*vlanTag* **IxEthDBVlanTag** [in] – default 802.1Q VLAN tag

The tag format has 16 bits and it is defined in the IEEE802.1Q specification. This tag will be used for tagging untagged frames (if enabled) and classifying unexpedited traffic into an internal traffic class (using the user priority field).

802.1Q tag format

3 bits	1 bit	12 bits
user priority	CFI	VID

**User Priority :** Defines user priority, giving eight ( $2^3$ ) priority levels. IEEE 802.1P defines the operation for these 3 user priority bits

**CFI :** Canonical Format Indicator is always set to zero for Ethernet switches. CFI is used for compatibility reason between Ethernet type network and Token Ring type network. If a frame received at an Ethernet port has a CFI set to 1, then that frame should not be forwarded as it is to an untagged port.

**VID :** VLAN ID is the identification of the VLAN, which is basically used by the standard 802.1Q. It has 12 bits and allow the id entification of 4096 ( $2^{12}$ ) VLANs. Of the 4096 possible VIDs, a VID of 0 is used to identify priority frames and value 4095 (FFF) is reserved, so the maximum possible VLAN configurations are 4,094.

- Reentrant – no
- ISR Callable – no

**Return values:**

<i>IX_ETH_DB_SUCCESS</i>	operation completed successfully
<i>IX_ETH_DB_INVALID_PORT</i>	portID is not a valid port identifier
<i>IX_ETH_DB_PORT_UNINITIALIZED</i>	port is not initialized
<i>IX_ETH_DB_FEATURE_UNAVAILABLE</i>	VLAN/QoS feature is not available or not enabled for the port
<i>IX_ETH_DB_INVALID_VLAN</i>	<i>vlanTag</i> argument does not parse to a valid 802.1Q VLAN tag

**Note:**

a VLAN ID value of 0 indicates that the port is not part of any VLAN

the value of the canonical frame indicator (CFI) field is ignored, the field being used only in frame tagging operations

```
IxEthDBStatus ixEthDBPriorityMappingClassGet ( IxEthDBPortId    portID,
IxEthDBPriority    userPriority,
IxEthDBPriority * trafficClass
)
```

Retrieves one QoS/user priority => traffic class mapping in a port's priority mapping table.

This function retrieves the internal traffic class associated with a QoS (user) priority from a given port's priority mapping table. Use this function when not all the QoS priority mappings are required (see also **ixEthDBPriorityMappingTableGet**)

- Reentrant – no
- ISR Callable – no

**Parameters:**

<i>portID</i>	<b>IxEthDBPortId</b> [in] – ID of the port to set the mapping to
<i>userPriority</i>	<b>IxEthDBPriority</b> [in] – user (QoS) priority, between 0 and 7 (0 being the lowest)
<i>trafficClass</i>	<b>IxEthDBPriority</b> [out] – location to write the corresponding internal traffic class to

**Return values:**

<i>IX_ETH_DB_SUCCESS</i>	operation completed successfully
<i>IX_ETH_DB_INVALID_PORT</i>	portID is not a valid port identifier
<i>IX_ETH_DB_PORT_UNINITIALIZED</i>	port is not initialized
<i>IX_ETH_DB_INVALID_PRIORITY</i>	invalid userPriority value (out of range)
<i>IX_ETH_DB_FEATURE_UNAVAILABLE</i>	VLAN/QoS feature is not available or not enabled for the port
<i>IX_ETH_DB_INVALID_ARG</i>	invalid <i>trafficClass</i> pointer argument

```
IxEthDBStatus ixEthDBPriorityMappingClassSet ( IxEthDBPortId portID,  
                                                IxEthDBPriority userPriority,  
                                                IxEthDBPriority trafficClass  
                                                )
```

Sets one QoS/user priority => traffic class mapping in a port's priority mapping table.

This function establishes a mapping between a user (QoS) priority and an internal traffic class. The mapping will be saved in the port's priority mapping table. Use this function when not all the QoS priorities need remapping (see also **ixEthDBPriorityMappingTableSet**)

- Reentrant – no
- ISR Callable – no

**Parameters:**

<i>portID</i>	<b>IxEthDBPortId</b> [in] – ID of the port to set the mapping to
<i>userPriority</i>	<b>IxEthDBPriority</b> [in] – user (QoS) priority, between 0 and 7 (0 being the lowest)
<i>trafficClass</i>	<b>IxEthDBPriority</b> [in] – internal traffic class, between 0 and 3 (0 being the lowest)

**Return values:**

<i>IX_ETH_DB_SUCCESS</i>	operation completed successfully
--------------------------	----------------------------------

<i>IX_ETH_DB_INVALID_PORT</i>	portID is not a valid port identifier
<i>IX_ETH_DB_PORT_UNINITIALIZED</i>	port is not initialized
<i>IX_ETH_DB_INVALID_PRIORITY</i>	<i>userPriority</i> out of range or <i>trafficClass</i> is beyond the number of currently available traffic classes
<i>IX_ETH_DB_FEATURE_UNAVAILABLE</i>	VLAN/QoS feature is not available or not enabled for the port
<i>IX_FAIL</i>	unknown OS or NPE communication error

```
IxEthDBStatus ixEthDBPriorityMappingTableGet ( IxEthDBPortId      portID,
                                                IxEthDBPriorityTable priorityTable
                                                )
```

Retrieves a port's priority mapping table.

The priority mapping table for the given port will be copied in the location specified by the caller using "priorityTable"

- Reentrant – no
- ISR Callable – no

**Parameters:**

*portID*            ID **IxEthDBPortId** [in] – of the port to retrieve the priority mapping table from  
*priorityTable* **IxEthDBPriorityTable** [out] – pointer to a user specified location where the table will be copied to

**Return values:**

<i>IX_ETH_DB_SUCCESS</i>	operation completed successfully
<i>IX_ETH_DB_INVALID_PORT</i>	portID is not a valid port identifier
<i>IX_ETH_DB_PORT_UNINITIALIZED</i>	port is not initialized
<i>IX_ETH_DB_INVALID_ARG</i>	invalid priorityTable pointer
<i>IX_ETH_DB_FEATURE_UNAVAILABLE</i>	VLAN/QoS feature is not available or not enabled for the port

```
IxEthDBStatus ixEthDBPriorityMappingTableSet ( IxEthDBPortId      portID,
                                                IxEthDBPriorityTable priorityTable
                                                )
```

Sets a port's priority mapping table.

The priority mapping table is an 8x2 table mapping a QoS (user) priority into an internal traffic class. There are 8 valid QoS priorities (0..7, 0 being the lowest) which can be mapped into one of the 8 available traffic classes (0..7, 0 being the lowest). If a custom priority mapping table is not specified using this function the following default priority table will be used (as per IEEE 802.1Q and IEEE 802.1D):

QoS traffic classes

QoS priority	Default traffic class	Traffic type
--------------	-----------------------	--------------

0	2	Best effort, default class for unexpedited traffic
1	0	Background traffic
2	1	Spare bandwidth
3	3	Excellent effort
4	4	Controlled load
5	5	Video traffic
6	6	Voice traffic
7	7	Network control

- Reentrant – no
- ISR Callable – no

**Parameters:**

*portID* **IxEthDBPortId** [in] – port ID of the port to set the priority mapping table to  
*priorityTable* **IxEthDBPriorityTable** [in] – location of the user priority table

**Note:**

The provided table will be copied into internal data structures in EthDB and can be deallocated by the called after this function has completed its execution, if so desired

**Warning:**

The number of available traffic classes differs depending on the NPE images and queue configuration. Check **IxEthDBQoS.h** for up-to-date information on the availability of traffic classes. Note that specifying a traffic class in the priority map which exceeds the system availability will produce an **IX\_ETH\_DB\_INVALID\_PRIORITY** return error code and no priority will be remapped.

**Return values:**

<b>IX_ETH_DB_SUCCESS</b>	operation completed successfully
<b>IX_ETH_DB_INVALID_PORT</b>	portID is not a valid port identifier
<b>IX_ETH_DB_PORT_UNINITIALIZED</b>	port is not initialized
<b>IX_ETH_DB_INVALID_ARG</b>	invalid <i>priorityTable</i> pointer
<b>IX_ETH_DB_INVALID_PRIORITY</b>	at least one priority value exceeds the current number of available traffic classes
<b>IX_ETH_DB_FEATURE_UNAVAILABLE</b>	VLAN/QoS feature is not available or not enabled for the port
<b>IX_FAIL</b>	unknown OS or NPE communication error

**IxEthDBStatus** ixEthDBPriorityMappingTableUpdate ( **IxEthDBPortId** *portID* )

Reloads the last port priority mapping table set by the user. (see also **ixEthDBPriorityMappingTableSet**).

**Parameters:**

*portID* **IxEthDBPortId** [in] – ID of the port

**Return values:**

<i>IX_ETH_DB_SUCCESS</i>	operation completed successfully
<i>IX_ETH_DB_INVALID_PORT</i>	portID is not a valid port identifier
<i>IX_ETH_DB_PORT_UNINITIALIZED</i>	port is not initialized
<i>IX_ETH_DB_FAIL</i>	operatoin fails

**Note:**

The function is useful for error-handling module to handle soft-error in Ethernet NPE.  
As this function is needed in non VLAN/QoS case to reconfigure Ethernet Rx queue, it does not checks for VLAN/QoS feature is enabled.

```
IxEthDBStatus ixEthDBSpanningTreeBlockingStateGet ( IxEthDBPortId portID,
                                                    BOOL * blocked
                                                    )
```

Retrieves the STP blocked/unblocked state for a port.

**Parameters:**

*portID* **IxEthDBPortId** [in] – ID of the port  
*blocked* **BOOL \*** [in] – set to TRUE if the port is STP blocked, FALSE otherwise

**Return values:**

<i>IX_ETH_DB_SUCCESS</i>	operation completed successfully
<i>IX_ETH_DB_INVALID_PORT</i>	portID is not a valid port identifier
<i>IX_ETH_DB_PORT_UNINITIALIZED</i>	port not initialized
<i>IX_ETH_DB_INVALID_ARG</i>	invalid <i>blocked</i> pointer argument
<i>IX_ETH_DB_FEATURE_UNAVAILABLE</i>	Spanning Tree Protocol feature not enabled

```
IxEthDBStatus ixEthDBSpanningTreeBlockingStateSet ( IxEthDBPortId portID,
                                                    BOOL blocked
                                                    )
```

Sets the STP blocked/unblocked state for a port.

**Parameters:**

*portID* **IxEthDBPortId** [in] – ID of the port  
*blocked* **BOOL** [in] – TRUE to set the port as STP blocked, FALSE to set it as unblocked

**Return values:**

<i>IX_ETH_DB_SUCCESS</i>	operation completed successfully
<i>IX_ETH_DB_INVALID_PORT</i>	portID is not a valid port identifier
<i>IX_ETH_DB_PORT_UNINITIALIZED</i>	port not initialized
<i>IX_ETH_DB_FEATURE_UNAVAILABLE</i>	Spanning Tree Protocol feature not enabled



*IX\_ETH\_DB\_FAIL*

unknown OS or NPE communication  
error

**IxEthDBStatus** ixEthDBUnload ( void )

Stops and prepares the EthDB component for unloading.

**Return values:**

*IX\_ETH\_DB\_SUCCESS* de-initialization was successful  
*IX\_ETH\_DB\_BUSY* de-initialization failed, ports must be disabled first  
*IX\_ETH\_DB\_FAIL* de-initialization failed (OS error)

```
IxEthDBStatus ixEthDBUserFieldGet ( IxEthDBRecordType recordType,  
                                     IxEthDBMacAddr * macAddr,  
                                     IxEthDBPortId portId,  
                                     IxEthDBVlanId vlanId,  
                                     void ** field  
                                     )
```

Retrieves a user-defined field from a database record.

The database record is identified using a combination of the given parameters, depending on the record type. All the record types require the record MAC address.

- *IX\_ETH\_DB\_FILTERING\_RECORD* requires only the MAC address
- *IX\_ETH\_DB\_VLAN\_FILTERING\_RECORD* requires the MAC address and the VLAN ID
- *IX\_ETH\_DB\_WIFI\_RECORD* requires the MAC address and the portID
- *IX\_ETH\_DB\_FIREWALL\_RECORD* requires the MAC address and the portID

Please note that if a parameter is not required it is completely ignored (it does not undergo parameter checking).

If no user-defined field was registered with the specified record then **NULL** will be written at the location specified by *field*.

**Parameters:**

*recordType* type of record (can be *IX\_ETH\_DB\_FILTERING\_RECORD*,  
*IX\_ETH\_DB\_FILTERING\_VLAN\_RECORD*, *IX\_ETH\_DB\_WIFI\_RECORD* or  
*IX\_ETH\_DB\_FIREWALL\_RECORD*)  
*portID* ID of the port (required only for WIFI and FIREWALL records)  
*macAddr* MAC address of the record  
*vlanID* VLAN ID of the record (required only for *FILTERING\_VLAN* records)  
*field* location to write the user defined field into

**Return values:**

*IX\_ETH\_DB\_SUCCESS* operation completed successfully

<i>IX_ETH_DB_INVALID_PORT</i>	portID was required but it is not a valid port identifier
<i>IX_ETH_DB_INVALID_ARG</i>	invalid <i>macAddr</i> or <i>field</i> pointer arguments
<i>IX_ETH_DB_NO_SUCH_ADDR</i>	record not found

```
IxEthDBStatus ixEthDBUserFieldSet ( IxEthDBRecordType recordType,
                                     IxEthDBMacAddr * macAddr,
                                     IxEthDBPortId portID,
                                     IxEthDBVlanId vlanID,
                                     void * field
                                     )
```

Adds a user-defined field to a database record.

This function associates a user-defined field to a database record. The user-defined field is passed as a (*void \**) parameter, hence it can be used for any purpose (such as identifying a structure). Retrieving the user-defined field from a record is done using **ixEthDBUserFieldGet**. Note that EthDB never uses the user-defined field for any internal operation and it is not aware of the significance of its contents. The field is only stored as a pointer.

The database record is identified using a combination of the given parameters, depending on the record type. All the record types require the record MAC address.

- *IX\_ETH\_DB\_FILTERING\_RECORD* requires only the MAC address
- *IX\_ETH\_DB\_VLAN\_FILTERING\_RECORD* requires the MAC address and the VLAN ID
- *IX\_ETH\_DB\_WIFI\_RECORD* requires the MAC address and the portID
- *IX\_ETH\_DB\_FIREWALL\_RECORD* requires the MAC address and the portID

Please note that if a parameter is not required it is completely ignored (it does not undergo parameter checking). The user-defined field can be cleared using a **NULL** *field* parameter.

**Parameters:**

<i>recordType</i>	<b>IxEthDBRecordType</b> [in] – type of record (can be <i>IX_ETH_DB_FILTERING_RECORD</i> , <i>IX_ETH_DB_FILTERING_VLAN_RECORD</i> , <i>IX_ETH_DB_WIFI_RECORD</i> or <i>IX_ETH_DB_FIREWALL_RECORD</i> )
<i>portID</i>	<b>IxEthDBPortId</b> [in] – ID of the port (required only for <i>WIFI</i> and <i>FIREWALL</i> records)
<i>macAddr</i>	* [in] – MAC address of the record
<i>vlanID</i>	<b>IxEthDBVlanId</b> [in] – VLAN ID of the record (required only for <i>FILTERING_VLAN</i> records)
<i>field</i>	void * [in] – user defined field

**Return values:**

<i>IX_ETH_DB_SUCCESS</i>	operation completed successfully
<i>IX_ETH_DB_INVALID_PORT</i>	portID was required but it is not a valid port identifier
<i>IX_ETH_DB_INVALID_ARG</i>	invalid <i>macAddr</i> pointer argument
<i>IX_ETH_DB_NO_SUCH_ADDR</i>	record not found

```
IxEthDBStatus ixEthDBVlanPortExtractionEnable ( IxEthDBPortId portID,
                                                    BOOL enable
                                                    )
```

Enables or disables port ID extraction.

This feature can be used in the situation when a multi-port device (e.g. a switch) is connected to an IXP4XX port and the device can provide incoming frame port identification by tagging the TPID field in the Ethernet frame. Enabling port extraction will instruct the NPE to copy the TPID field from the frame and place it in the *ixp\_ne\_src\_port* of the *ixp\_buf* header. In addition, the NPE restores the TPID field to 0.

If the frame is not tagged the NPE will fill the *ixp\_ne\_src\_port* with the port ID of the MII interface the frame was received from.

The TPID field is the least significant byte of the type/length field, which is normally set to 0x8100 for 802.1Q-tagged frames.

This feature is disabled by default.

**Parameters:**

*portID* ID of the port to configure port ID extraction on  
*enable* TRUE to enable port ID extraction and FALSE to disable it

**Return values:**

*IX\_ETH\_DB\_SUCCESS* operation completed successfully  
*IX\_ETH\_DB\_INVALID\_PORT* portID is not a valid port identifier  
*IX\_ETH\_DB\_PORT\_UNINITIALIZED* port is not initialized  
*IX\_ETH\_DB\_FEATURE\_UNAVAILABLE* VLAN/QoS feature is not available or not enabled for the port  
*IX\_FAIL* unknown OS or NPE communication error

```
ixEthDBVlanTagGet ( IxEthDBMacAddr * macAddr,
                    IxEthDBVlanTag * vlanTag
                    )
```

Retrieves the 802.1Q VLAN tag from a database record given the record MAC address.

**Parameters:**

*macAddr* MAC address  
*vlanTag* location to write the record 802.1Q VLAN tag to

**Note:**

VLAN tags can be retrieved only from IX\_ETH\_DB\_FILTERING\_VLAN\_RECORD type records

This function is used together with ixEthDBVlanTagSet to provide MAC-based VLAN classification support. Please note that the bridging application must contain specific code to make use of this feature (see **ixEthDBVlanTagSet**).

- Reentrant – no
- ISR Callable – no

**Return values:**

*IX\_ETH\_DB\_SUCCESS* operation completed successfully  
*IX\_ETH\_DB\_INVALID\_ARG* invalid *macAddr* or *vlanTag* pointer  
*IX\_ETH\_DB\_NO\_SUCH\_ADDR* a filtering record with the specified MAC address was not found

```
IxEthDBStatus ixEthDBVlanTagSet ( IxEthDBMacAddr * macAddr,
                                   IxEthDBVlanTag vlanTag
                                   )
```

Sets the 802.1Q VLAN tag for a database record.

**Parameters:**

*macAddr* MAC address  
*vlanTag* 802.1Q VLAN tag

This function is used together with **ixEthDBVlanTagGet** to provide MAC-based VLAN classification support. Please note that the bridging application must contain specific code to make use of this feature (see below).

VLAN tags can be set only in *IX\_ETH\_DB\_FILTERING\_RECORD* or *IX\_ETH\_DB\_FILTERING\_VLAN\_RECORD* type records. If to an *IX\_ETH\_DB\_FILTERING\_RECORD* type record is added a VLAN tag the record type is automatically changed to *IX\_ETH\_DB\_FILTERING\_VLAN\_RECORD*. Once this has occurred the record type will never revert to a non-VLAN type (unless deleted and re-added).

Record types used for different purposes (such as *IX\_ETH\_DB\_WIFI\_RECORD*) will be ignored by this function.

After using this function to associate a VLAN ID with a MAC address the VLAN ID can be extracted knowing the MAC address using **ixEthDBVlanTagGet**. This mechanism can be used to implement MAC-based VLAN classification if a bridging application searches for the VLAN tag when receiving a frame based on the source MAC address (contained in the *ixp\_ne\_src\_mac* field of the buffer header). If found in the database, the application can instruct the NPE to tag the frame by writing the VLAN tag in the *ixp\_ne\_vlan\_tci* field of the buffer header. This way the NPE will inspect the Egress tagging rule associated with the given VLAN ID on the Tx port and tag the frame if Egress tagging on the VLAN is allowed. Additionally, Egress tagging can be forced by setting the *ixp\_ne\_tx\_flags.tag\_over* and *ixp\_ne\_tx\_flags.tag\_mode* flags in the buffer header.

- Reentrant – no
- ISR Callable – no

**Note:**

this function will **not** add a filtering record, it can only be used to update an existing one

**Return values:**

*IX\_ETH\_DB\_SUCCESS* operation completed successfully

*IX\_ETH\_DB\_INVALID\_ARG*     invalid *macAddr* pointer  
*IX\_ETH\_DB\_NO\_SUCH\_ADDR*   a filtering record with the specified MAC address was not found  
*IX\_ETH\_DB\_INVALID\_VLAN*   *vlanTag* argument does not parse to a valid 802.1Q VLAN tag

```
IxEthDBStatus ixEthDBWiFiAccessPointEntryAdd ( IxEthDBPortId     portID,
                                                IxEthDBMacAddr * macAddr,
                                                IxEthDBMacAddr * gatewayMacAddr
                                                )
```

Adds an "Access Point to Access Point" record to the database.

*See also:*

**ixEthDBWiFiStationEntryAdd**

Note that adding the same MAC address twice will simply overwrite the previously defined gateway MAC address value in the same record, if the record was previously of the "Access Point to Access Point" type.

Re-adding a MAC address as "Access Point to Access Point", which was previously added as "Access Point to Station" will migrate the record type to "Access Point to Access Point" and record the gateway MAC address.

*Parameters:*

*portID*                    **IxEthDBPortId** [in] – ID of the port  
*macAddr*                   [in] – MAC address to add  
*gatewayMacAddr* [in] – MAC address of the gateway Access Point

*Return values:*

*IX\_ETH\_DB\_SUCCESS*                    operation completed successfully  
*IX\_ETH\_DB\_INVALID\_PORT*               portID is not a valid port identifier  
*IX\_ETH\_DB\_PORT\_UNINITIALIZED*       port is not initialized  
*IX\_ETH\_DB\_FEATURE\_UNAVAILABLE*     WiFi feature not enabled  
*IX\_ETH\_DB\_INVALID\_ARG*               invalid *macAddr* or *gatewayMacAddr* or *bssid* pointer argument  
*IX\_ETH\_DB\_FAIL*                        maximum number of records reached  
*IX\_ETH\_DB\_BUSY*                        lock condition or transaction in progress, try again later

```
IxEthDBStatus ixEthDBWiFiBSSIDSet ( IxEthDBPortId     portID,
                                       IxEthDBMacAddr * bssid
                                       )
```

Sets the BSSID field.

The BSSID field is a 6-byte value which identifies the infrastructure of the service set managed by the Access Point having the IXP400 as its processor. The value is written in the *BSSID* field of the 802.11 frame header. The BSSID value is the MAC address of the Access Point.

*Parameters:*

*portID* **IxEthDBPortId** [in] – ID of the port  
*bssid* [in] – pointer to 6 bytes containing the BSSID

**Return values:**

<i>IX_ETH_DB_SUCCESS</i>	operation completed successfully
<i>IX_ETH_DB_INVALID_PORT</i>	portID is not a valid port identifier
<i>IX_ETH_DB_PORT_UNINITIALIZED</i>	port not initialized
<i>IX_ETH_DB_INVALID_ARG</i>	invalid <i>bssid</i> pointer argument
<i>IX_ETH_DB_FEATURE_UNAVAILABLE</i>	WiFi feature not enabled
<i>IX_ETH_DB_FAIL</i>	unknown OS or NPE communication error

**IxEthDBStatus** ixEthDBWiFiConversionTableDownload ( **IxEthDBPortId** *portID* )

Downloads the MAC address table for 802.3 => 802.11 frame header conversion to the NPE.

Note that the frame conversion MAC address table must be individually downloaded to each NPE for which the frame header conversion feature is enabled (i.e. it is not possible to specify *IX\_ETH\_DB\_ALL\_PORTS*).

**Parameters:**

*portID* **IxEthDBPortId** [in] – ID of the port

**Return values:**

<i>IX_ETH_DB_SUCCESS</i>	operation completed successfully
<i>IX_ETH_DB_PORT_UNINITIALIZED</i>	port not initialized
<i>IX_ETH_DB_INVALID_PORT</i>	portID is not a valid port identifier
<i>IX_ETH_DB_FEATURE_UNAVAILABLE</i>	WiFi feature not enabled
<i>IX_ETH_DB_FAIL</i>	unknown OS or NPE communication error

**IxEthDBStatus** ixEthDBWiFiDurationIDSet ( **IxEthDBPortId** *portID*,  
 UINT16 *durationID*  
 )

Sets the GlobalDurationID field.

The GlobalDurationID field is a 2–byte value inserted in the *Duration/ID* field for all 802.3 to 802.11 frame header conversions

**Parameters:**

*portID* **IxEthDBPortId** [in] – ID of the port  
*durationID* UINT16 [in] – GlobalDurationID field

**Return values:**

<i>IX_ETH_DB_SUCCESS</i>	operation completed successfully
<i>IX_ETH_DB_INVALID_PORT</i>	portID is not a valid port identifier
<i>IX_ETH_DB_PORT_UNINITIALIZED</i>	port not initialized
<i>IX_ETH_DB_FEATURE_UNAVAILABLE</i>	WiFi feature not enabled

*IX\_ETH\_DB\_FAIL*

unknown OS or NPE communication error

```
IxEthDBStatus ixEthDBWiFiEntryRemove ( IxEthDBPortId    portID,  
                                           IxEthDBMacAddr * macAddr  
                                           )
```

Removes a WiFi station record.

This function removes both types of WiFi records ("Access Point to Station" and "Access Point to Access Point").

**Parameters:**

*portID*      **IxEthDBPortId** [in] – ID of the port  
*macAddr* [in] – MAC address to remove

**Return values:**

<i>IX_ETH_DB_SUCCESS</i>	operation completed successfully
<i>IX_ETH_DB_INVALID_PORT</i>	<i>portID</i> is not a valid port identifier
<i>IX_ETH_DB_PORT_UNINITIALIZED</i>	port is not initialized
<i>IX_ETH_DB_INVALID_ARG</i>	invalid <i>macAddr</i> pointer argument
<i>IX_ETH_DB_NO_SUCH_ADDR</i>	specified address was not found in the database
<i>IX_ETH_DB_FEATURE_UNAVAILABLE</i>	WiFi feature not enabled
<i>IX_ETH_DB_BUSY</i>	lock condition or transaction in progress, try again later

```
IxEthDBStatus ixEthDBWiFiFrameControlSet ( IxEthDBPortId portID,  
                                             UINT16      frameControl  
                                             )
```

Sets the GlobalFrameControl field.

The GlobalFrameControl field is a 2-byte value inserted in the *Frame Control* field for all 802.3 to 802.11 frame header conversions

**Parameters:**

*portID*      **IxEthDBPortId** [in] – ID of the port  
*frameControl*  UINT16 [in] – GlobalFrameControl value

**Return values:**

<i>IX_ETH_DB_SUCCESS</i>	operation completed successfully
<i>IX_ETH_DB_INVALID_PORT</i>	<i>portID</i> is not a valid port identifier
<i>IX_ETH_DB_PORT_UNINITIALIZED</i>	port not initialized
<i>IX_ETH_DB_FEATURE_UNAVAILABLE</i>	WiFi feature not enabled
<i>IX_ETH_DB_FAIL</i>	unknown OS or NPE communication error

```
IxEthDBStatus ixEthDBWiFiRecordEntryAdd ( IxEthDBPortId      portID,
                                             IxEthDBMacAddr *   macAddr,
                                             IxEthDBWiFiRecData * wifiRecData
                                             )
```

Adds "APMAC/BSSID/STATIONS" record to the database, for 802.3 => 802.11 frame header conversion.

Frame header conversion is controlled by the set of MAC addresses and bssids , for the backward compatibility the old APIs are still usable to add gateway MAC address and station entry **ixEthDBWiFiAccessPointEntryAdd** and **ixEthDBWiFiStationEntryAdd**. Conversion arguments are added using **ixEthDBWiFiFrameControlSet**, **ixEthDBWiFiDurationIDSet** and **ixEthDBWiFiRecordEntryAdd**.

Note that adding the same MAC address twice will not return an error (but will not accomplish anything either)

**Parameters:**

*portID*        **IxEthDBPortId** [in] – ID of the port  
*macAddr*      [in] – MAC address to add  
*wifiRecData* pointer to the wifi specific data (flags, gw etc.)

**Return values:**

*IX\_ETH\_DB\_SUCCESS*                      operation completed successfully  
*IX\_ETH\_DB\_INVALID\_PORT*                portID is not a valid port identifier  
*IX\_ETH\_DB\_FEATURE\_UNAVAILABLE*      WiFi feature not enabled  
*IX\_ETH\_DB\_INVALID\_ARG*                invalid *macAddr* , *wifiRecData* , *recType* , *logPort* ,  
    *vlanFlag* or *padLen* arguments  
*IX\_ETH\_DB\_FAIL*                         maximum number of records reached  
*IX\_ETH\_DB\_BUSY*                        lock condition or transaction in progress, try again later

```
IxEthDBStatus ixEthDBWiFiStationEntryAdd ( IxEthDBPortId    portID,
                                             IxEthDBMacAddr * macAddr
                                             )
```

Adds an "Access Point to Station" record to the database, for 802.3 => 802.11 frame header conversion.

Frame header conversion is controlled by the set of MAC addresses added using **ixEthDBWiFiStationEntryAdd** and **ixEthDBWiFiAccessPointEntryAdd**. Conversion arguments are added using **ixEthDBWiFiFrameControlSet**, **ixEthDBWiFiDurationIDSet** and **ixEthDBWiFiBSSIDSet**.

Note that adding the same MAC address twice will not return an error (but will not accomplish anything either), while re-adding a record previously added as an "Access Point to Access Point" will migrate the record to the "Access Point to Station" type.

**Parameters:**

*portID*        **IxEthDBPortId** [in] – ID of the port  
*macAddr*      [in] – MAC address to add



***Return values:***

<i>IX_ETH_DB_SUCCESS</i>	operation completed successfully
<i>IX_ETH_DB_INVALID_PORT</i>	portID is not a valid port identifier
<i>IX_ETH_DB_FEATURE_UNAVAILABLE</i>	WiFi feature not enabled
<i>IX_ETH_DB_INVALID_ARG</i>	invalid <i>macAddr</i> or <i>bssid</i> pointer argument
<i>IX_ETH_DB_FAIL</i>	maximum number of records reached
<i>IX_ETH_DB_BUSY</i>	lock condition or transaction in progress, try again later

# Intel (R) IXP400 Software Ethernet Database Port Definitions (IxEthDBPortDefs)

IXP400 Public definition of the ports and port capabilities.

## Data Structures

struct **IxEthDBPortDefinition**  
*Port Definition – a structure contains the Port type and capabilities.*

## Defines

#define **IX\_ETH\_DB\_NUMBER\_OF\_PORTS**  
*number of supported ports*

#define **IX\_ETH\_DB\_UNKNOWN\_PORT**  
*definition of an unknown port*

#define **IX\_ETH\_DB\_ALL\_PORTS**  
*Special port ID indicating all the ports.*

#define **IX\_ETH\_DB\_PORTS\_ASSERTION**  
*catch invalid port definitions (<2) with a compile-time assertion resulting in a duplicate case error.*

#define **IX\_ETH\_DB\_CHECK\_PORT**(portID)  
*safety checks to verify whether the port is invalid or uninitialized*

#define **IX\_ETH\_DB\_CHECK\_PORT\_ALL**(portID)  
*safety checks to verify whether the port is invalid or uninitialized; tolerates the use of IX\_ETH\_DB\_ALL\_PORTS*

#define **IX\_ETH\_DB\_QUEUE\_UNAVAILABLE**  
*alias to indicate a queue (traffic class) is not available*

#define **IX\_IEEE802\_1Q\_QOS\_PRIORITY\_COUNT**  
*number of QoS priorities, according to IEEE 802.1Q*

#define **IX\_ETH\_DB\_NPE\_A\_FUNCTIONALITY\_ID\_INDEX**  
*value used to index the NPE A functionality ID in the traffic class definition table*

#define **IX\_ETH\_DB\_TRAFFIC\_CLASS\_COUNT\_INDEX**  
*value used to index the traffic class count in the traffic class definition table*

```
#define IX_ETH_DB_QUEUE_ASSIGNMENT_INDEX  
value used to index the queue assignment index in the traffic class  
definition table
```

## Enumerations

```
enum IxEthDBPortType {  
    IX_ETH_GENERIC,  
    IX_ETH_NPE  
}  
Port types – currently only Ethernet NPEs are recognized as specific  
types All other (user-defined) ports must be specified as  
IX_ETH_GENERIC.
```

```
enum IxEthDBPortCapability {  
    IX_ETH_NO_CAPABILITIES,  
    IX_ETH_ENTRY_AGING  
}  
Port capabilities – used by ixEthAccDatabaseMaintenance to decide  
whether it should manually age entries or not depending on the port  
capabilities.
```

## Variables

```
IxEthDBPortDefinition ixEthDBPortDefinitions [IX_ETH_DB_NUMBER_OF_PORTS]  
Port definitions structure, indexed on the port ID.
```

---

## Detailed Description

IXP400 Public definition of the ports and port capabilities.

---

## Define Documentation

```
#define IX_ETH_DB_ALL_PORTS
```

Special port ID indicating all the ports.

**Note:**

This port ID can be used only by a subset of the EthDB API; each function specifically mentions whether this is a valid parameter as the port ID

Definition at line **83** of file **IxEthDBPortDefs.h**.

```
#define IX_ETH_DB_CHECK_PORT ( portID )
```

safety checks to verify whether the port is invalid or uninitialized

Definition at line **96** of file **IxEthDBPortDefs.h**.

```
#define IX_ETH_DB_CHECK_PORT_ALL ( portID )
```

safety checks to verify whether the port is invalid or uninitialized; tolerates the use of IX\_ETH\_DB\_ALL\_PORTS

Definition at line **114** of file **IxEthDBPortDefs.h**.

```
#define IX_ETH_DB_NPE_A_FUNCTIONALITY_ID_INDEX
```

value used to index the NPE A functionality ID in the traffic class definition table

Definition at line **51** of file **IxEthDBQoS.h**.

```
#define IX_ETH_DB_NUMBER_OF_PORTS
```

number of supported ports

Definition at line **57** of file **IxEthDBPortDefs.h**.

```
#define IX_ETH_DB_PORTS_ASSERTION
```

catch invalid port definitions (<2) with a compile-time assertion resulting in a duplicate case error.

Definition at line **90** of file **IxEthDBPortDefs.h**.

```
#define IX_ETH_DB_QUEUE_ASSIGNMENT_INDEX
```

value used to index the queue assignment index in the traffic class definition table

Definition at line **61** of file **IxEthDBQoS.h**.

```
#define IX_ETH_DB_QUEUE_UNAVAILABLE
```

alias to indicate a queue (traffic class) is not available

Definition at line **25** of file **IxEthDBQoS.h**.

```
#define IX_ETH_DB_TRAFFIC_CLASS_COUNT_INDEX
```

value used to index the traffic class count in the traffic class definition table

Definition at line **56** of file **IxEthDBQoS.h**.

```
#define IX_ETH_DB_UNKNOWN_PORT
```

definition of an unknown port

Definition at line **75** of file **IxEthDBPortDefs.h**.

```
#define IX_IEEE802_1Q_QOS_PRIORITY_COUNT
```

number of QoS priorities, according to IEEE 802.1Q

Definition at line **32** of file **IxEthDBQoS.h**.

---

## Enumeration Type Documentation

```
enum IxEthDBPortCapability
```

Port capabilities – used by ixEthAccDatabaseMaintenance to decide whether it should manually age entries or not depending on the port capabilities.

Ethernet NPEs have aging capabilities, meaning that they will age the entries automatically (by themselves).

### ***Enumeration values:***

<i>IX_ETH_NO_CAPABILITIES</i>	no aging capabilities
<i>IX_ETH_ENTRY_AGING</i>	aging capabilities present

Definition at line **37** of file **IxEthDBPortDefs.h**.

```
enum IxEthDBPortType
```

Port types – currently only Ethernet NPEs are recognized as specific types All other (user-defined) ports must be specified as IX\_ETH\_GENERIC.

### ***Enumeration values:***

<i>IX_ETH_GENERIC</i>	generic ethernet port
<i>IX_ETH_NPE</i>	specific Ethernet NPE

Definition at line **25** of file **IxEthDBPortDefs.h**.

---

## Variable Documentation

**IxEthDBPortDefinition** ixEthDBPortDefinitions[IX\_ETH\_DB\_NUMBER\_OF\_PORTS]

Port definitions structure, indexed on the port ID.

**Warning:**

Ports 0 and 1 are used by the Ethernet access component therefore it is essential to be left untouched. Port 2 can be Ethernet Port or WAN port. Port 3 here (WAN) is given as an example port. The NPE firmware also assumes the NPE B to be the port 0, NPE C to be the port 1, and NPE A to be port 2.

**Note:**

that only 32 ports (0..31) are supported by EthDB

Definition at line **69** of file **IxEthDBPortDefs.h**.

# Intel (R) IXP400 Software Ethernet Phy Access (IxEthMii) API

ethMii is a library that does provides access to the Ethernet PHYs

## Functions

**PUBLIC**  
**IX\_STATUS ixEthMiiPhyScan** (BOOL phyPresent[], UINT32 maxPhyCount)  
*Scan the MDIO bus for PHYs This function scans PHY addresses 0 through 31, and sets phyPresent[n] to TRUE if a phy is discovered at address n.*

**PUBLIC ixEthMiiPhyConfig** (UINT32 phyAddr, BOOL speed100, BOOL fullDuplex, BOOL  
**IX\_STATUS** autonegotiate)  
*Configure a PHY Configure a PHY's speed, duplex and autonegotiation status.*

**PUBLIC**  
**IX\_STATUS ixEthMiiPhyLoopbackEnable** (UINT32 phyAddr)  
*Enable PHY Loopback in a specific Eth MII port.*

**PUBLIC**  
**IX\_STATUS ixEthMiiPhyLoopbackDisable** (UINT32 phyAddr)  
*Disable PHY Loopback in a specific Eth MII port.*

**PUBLIC**  
**IX\_STATUS ixEthMiiPhyReset** (UINT32 phyAddr)  
*Reset a PHY Reset a PHY.*

**PUBLIC ixEthMiiLinkStatus** (UINT32 phyAddr, BOOL \*linkUp, BOOL \*speed100, BOOL  
**IX\_STATUS** \*fullDuplex, BOOL \*autoneg)  
*Retrieve the current status of a PHY Retrieve the link, speed, duplex and autonegotiation status of a PHY.*

**PUBLIC**  
**IX\_STATUS ixEthMiiPhyShow** (UINT32 phyAddr)  
*Display information on a specified PHY Display link status, speed, duplex and Auto Negotiation status.*

---

## Detailed Description

ethMii is a library that does provides access to the Ethernet PHYs

---

# Function Documentation

```
ixEthMiiLinkStatus ( UINT32 phyAddr,  
                     BOOL * linkUp,  
                     BOOL * speed100,  
                     BOOL * fullDuplex,  
                     BOOL * autoneg  
                     )
```

Retrieve the current status of a PHY Retrieve the link, speed, duplex and autonegotiation status of a PHY.

\* – Reentrant – no

- ISR Callable – no

## **Precondition:**

The MAC on Ethernet Port 2 (NPE C) must be initialised, and generating the MDIO clock.

## **Parameters:**

*phyAddr*    UINT32 [in] – the address of the Ethernet PHY (0–31)  
*linkUp*     BOOL [out] – set to TRUE if the link is up  
*speed100*    BOOL [out] – set to TRUE indicates 100Mbit/s, FALSE indicates 10Mbit/s  
*fullDuplex*  BOOL [out] – set to TRUE indicates Full Duplex, FALSE indicates Half Duplex  
*autoneg*    BOOL [out] – set to TRUE indicates autonegotiation is enabled, FALSE indicates autonegotiation is disabled

## **Returns:**

IX\_STATUS  
  ◇ IX\_SUCCESS  
  ◇ IX\_FAIL : invalid arguments.

---

```
ixEthMiiPhyConfig ( UINT32 phyAddr,  
                    BOOL speed100,  
                    BOOL fullDuplex,  
                    BOOL autonegotiate  
                    )
```

Configure a PHY Configure a PHY's speed, duplex and autonegotiation status.

\* – Reentrant – no

- ISR Callable – no

## **Precondition:**

The MAC on Ethernet Port 2 (NPE C) must be initialised, and generating the MDIO clock.



**Parameters:**

*phyAddr*        UINT32 [in]  
*speed100*        BOOL [in] – set to TRUE for 100Mbit/s operation, FALSE for 10Mbit/s  
*fullDuplex*      BOOL [in] – set to TRUE for Full Duplex, FALSE for Half Duplex  
*autonegotiate*    BOOL [in] – set to TRUE to enable autonegotiation

**Returns:**

IX\_STATUS  
     ◇ IX\_SUCCESS  
     ◇ IX\_FAIL : invalid arguments.

---

**ixEthMiiPhyLoopbackDisable ( UINT32 *phyAddr* )**

Disable PHY Loopback in a specific Eth MII port.

\* – Reentrant – no

- ISR Callable – no

**Parameters:**

*phyAddr*    UINT32 [in] – the address of the Ethernet PHY (0–31)

**Returns:**

IX\_STATUS  
     ◇ IX\_SUCCESS  
     ◇ IX\_FAIL : invalid arguments.

---

**ixEthMiiPhyLoopbackEnable ( UINT32 *phyAddr* )**

Enable PHY Loopback in a specific Eth MII port.

**Note:**

When PHY Loopback is enabled, frames sent out to the PHY from the IXP400 will be looped back to the IXP400. They will not be transmitted out on the wire.

- Reentrant – no
- ISR Callable – no

**Parameters:**

*phyAddr*    UINT32 [in] – the address of the Ethernet PHY (0–31)

**Returns:**

IX\_STATUS

- ◇ IX\_SUCCESS
  - ◇ IX\_FAIL : invalid arguments.
- 

**ixEthMiiPhyReset** ( `UINT32 phyAddr` )

Reset a PHY Reset a PHY.

\* – Reentrant – no

- ISR Callable – no

**Precondition:**

The MAC on Ethernet Port 2 (NPE C) must be initialised, and generating the MDIO clock.

**Parameters:**

*phyAddr* `UINT32` [in] – the address of the Ethernet PHY (0–31)

**Returns:**

- IX\_STATUS
  - ◇ IX\_SUCCESS
  - ◇ IX\_FAIL : invalid arguments.
- 

**ixEthMiiPhyScan** ( `BOOL phyPresent[]`,  
                          `UINT32 maxPhyCount`  
                          )

Scan the MDIO bus for PHYs This function scans PHY addresses 0 through 31, and sets `phyPresent[n]` to TRUE if a phy is discovered at address n.

\* – Reentrant – no

- ISR Callable – no

**Precondition:**

The MAC on Ethernet Port 2 (NPE C) must be initialised, and generating the MDIO clock.

**Parameters:**

*phyPresent* `BOOL` [in] – boolean array of IXP400\_ETH\_ACC\_MII\_MAX\_ADDR entries  
*maxPhyCount* `UINT32` [in] – number of PHYs to search for (the scan will stop when the indicated number of PHYs is found).

**Returns:**

- IX\_STATUS
- ◇ IX\_ETH\_ACC\_SUCCESS
- ◇ IX\_ETH\_ACC\_FAIL : invalid arguments.

---

`ixEthMiiPhyShow ( UINT32 phyAddr )`

Display information on a specified PHY Display link status, speed, duplex and Auto Negotiation status.

\* – Reentrant – no

- ISR Callable – no

***Precondition:***

The MAC on Ethernet Port 2 (NPE C) must be initialised, and generating the MDIO clock.

***Parameters:***

*phyAddr* UINT32 [in] – the address of the Ethernet PHY (0–31)

***Returns:***

IX\_STATUS  
    ◇ IX\_SUCCESS  
    ◇ IX\_FAIL : invalid arguments.

---

# Intel(R) IXP Software Feature Control (featureCtrl) Public API

The Public API for the IXP Feature Control.

## Modules

Software Configuration for featureCtrl  
Component

*This section describes software configuration in access component.*

## Defines

```
#define IX_FEATURE_CTRL_COMPONENT_DISABLED  
    Hardware Component is disabled/unavailable. Return status by  
    ixFeatureCtrlComponentCheck().
```

```
#define IX_FEATURE_CTRL_COMPONENT_ENABLED  
    Hardware Component is available. Return status by  
    ixFeatureCtrlComponentCheck().
```

```
#define IX_FEATURE_CTRL_SILICON_TYPE_A0  
    This is the value of A0 Silicon in product ID.
```

```
#define IX_FEATURE_CTRL_SILICON_TYPE_B0  
    This is the value of B0 Silicon in product ID.
```

```
#define IX_FEATURE_CTRL_SILICON_STEPPING_MASK  
    This is the mask of silicon stepping in product ID.
```

```
#define IX_FEATURE_CTRL_DEVICE_TYPE_MASK  
    This is the mask of silicon stepping in product ID.
```

```
#define IX_FEATURE_CTRL_DEVICE_TYPE_OFFSET  
    This is the mask of silicon stepping in product ID.
```

```
#define IX_FEATURE_CTRL_XSCALE_FREQ_533  
    This is the value of 533MHz Intel XScale(R) Processor in product ID.
```

```
#define IX_FEATURE_CTRL_XSCALE_FREQ_400  
    This is the value of 400MHz Intel XScale(R) Processor in product ID.
```

```
#define IX_FEATURE_CTRL_XSCALE_FREQ_266  
    This is the value of 266MHz Intel XScale(R) Processor in product ID.
```

```

#define IX_FEATURE_CTRL_XSCALE_FREQ_MASK
    This is the mask of Intel XScale(R) Processor in product ID.

#define IX_FEATURECTRL_REG_UTOPIA_32PHY
    Maximum UTOPIA PHY available is 32.

#define IX_FEATURECTRL_REG_UTOPIA_16PHY
    Maximum UTOPIA PHY available is 16.

#define IX_FEATURECTRL_REG_UTOPIA_8PHY
    Maximum UTOPIA PHY available to is 8.

#define IX_FEATURECTRL_REG_UTOPIA_4PHY
    Maximum UTOPIA PHY available to is 4.

#define IX_FEATURECTRL_REG_XSCALE_533FREQ
    Maximum frequency available to Intel (R) IXP46X Product Line of Network Processors is 533 MHz.

#define IX_FEATURECTRL_REG_XSCALE_667FREQ
    Maximum frequency available to Intel (R) IXP46X Product Line of Network Processors is 667 MHz.

#define IX_FEATURECTRL_REG_XSCALE_400FREQ
    Maximum frequency available to Intel (R) IXP46X Product Line of Network Processors is 400 MHz.

#define IX_FEATURECTRL_REG_XSCALE_266FREQ
    Maximum frequency available to Intel (R) IXP46X Product Line of Network Processors is 266 MHz.

#define IX_FEATURECTRL_COMPONENT_NOT_AVAILABLE
    Component selected is not available for device.

#define IX_FEATURECTRL_COMPONENT_ALWAYS_AVAILABLE
    Component selected is not available for device.

```

## Typedefs

```

typedef UINT32 IxFeatureCtrlReg
    Feature Control Register that contains hardware components' availability information.

typedef UINT32 IxFeatureCtrlProductId
    Product ID of Silicon that contains Silicon Stepping and Maximum Intel XScale(R) Processor Frequency information.

```

## Functions

**IxFeatureCtrlDeviceId IxFeatureCtrlDeviceRead** (void)

*This function gets the type of device that the software is currently running on.*

**IxFeatureCtrlBuildDevice IxFeatureCtrlSoftwareBuildGet** (void)

*This function refers to the value set by the compiler flag to determine the type of device the software is built for.*

PUBLIC

**IxFeatureCtrlReg IxFeatureCtrlHwCapabilityRead** (void)

*This function reads out the hardware capability of a silicon type as defined in feature control register. This value is different from that returned by IxFeatureCtrlRead() because this function returns the actual hardware component availability.*

PUBLIC IX\_STATUS **IxFeatureCtrlComponentCheck** (IxFeatureCtrlComponentType componentType)

*This function will check the availability of hardware component specified as componentType value.*

PUBLIC

**IxFeatureCtrlProductId IxFeatureCtrlProductIdRead** (void)

*This function will return the device product ID.*

PUBLIC IX\_STATUS **IxFeatureCtrlSwConfigurationCheck** (IxFeatureCtrlSwConfig swConfigType)

*This function checks whether the specified software configuration is enabled or disabled.*

PUBLIC void **IxFeatureCtrlSwConfigurationWrite** (IxFeatureCtrlSwConfig swConfigType, BOOL enabled)

*This function enable/disable the specified software configuration.*

PUBLIC void **IxFeatureCtrlSwVersionShow** (void)

*This function shows the current software release information for the device.*

---

## Detailed Description

The Public API for the IXP Feature Control.

---

## Define Documentation

```
#define IX_FEATURE_CTRL_COMPONENT_DISABLED
```

Hardware Component is disabled/unavailable. Return status by **IxFeatureCtrlComponentCheck()**.

Definition at line **221** of file **IxFeatureCtrl.h**.

```
#define IX_FEATURE_CTRL_COMPONENT_ENABLED
```

Hardware Component is available. Return status by **ixFeatureCtrlComponentCheck()**.

Definition at line **231** of file **IxFeatureCtrl.h**.

```
#define IX_FEATURE_CTRL_DEVICE_TYPE_MASK
```

This is the mask of silicon stepping in product ID.

Definition at line **301** of file **IxFeatureCtrl.h**.

```
#define IX_FEATURE_CTRL_DEVICE_TYPE_OFFSET
```

This is the mask of silicon stepping in product ID.

Definition at line **313** of file **IxFeatureCtrl.h**.

```
#define IX_FEATURE_CTRL_SILICON_STEPPING_MASK
```

This is the mask of silicon stepping in product ID.

Definition at line **292** of file **IxFeatureCtrl.h**.

```
#define IX_FEATURE_CTRL_SILICON_TYPE_A0
```

This is the value of A0 Silicon in product ID.

Definition at line **274** of file **IxFeatureCtrl.h**.

```
#define IX_FEATURE_CTRL_SILICON_TYPE_B0
```

This is the value of B0 Silicon in product ID.

Definition at line **283** of file **IxFeatureCtrl.h**.

```
#define IX_FEATURE_CTRL_XSCALE_FREQ_266
```

This is the value of 266MHz Intel XScale(R) Processor in product ID.

Definition at line **343** of file **IxFeatureCtrl.h**.

```
#define IX_FEATURE_CTRL_XSCALE_FREQ_400
```

This is the value of 400MHz Intel XScale(R) Processor in product ID.

Definition at line **334** of file **IxFeatureCtrl.h**.

```
#define IX_FEATURE_CTRL_XSCALE_FREQ_533
```

This is the value of 533MHz Intel XScale(R) Processor in product ID.

Definition at line **325** of file **IxFeatureCtrl.h**.

```
#define IX_FEATURE_CTRL_XSCALE_FREQ_MASK
```

This is the mask of Intel XScale(R) Processor in product ID.

Definition at line **352** of file **IxFeatureCtrl.h**.

```
#define IX_FEATURECTRL_COMPONENT_ALWAYS_AVAILABLE
```

Component selected is not available for device.

Definition at line **507** of file **IxFeatureCtrl.h**.

```
#define IX_FEATURECTRL_COMPONENT_NOT_AVAILABLE
```

Component selected is not available for device.

Definition at line **497** of file **IxFeatureCtrl.h**.

```
#define IX_FEATURECTRL_REG_UTOPIA_16PHY
```

Maximum UTOPIA PHY available is 16.

Definition at line **372** of file **IxFeatureCtrl.h**.

```
#define IX_FEATURECTRL_REG_UTOPIA_32PHY
```

Maximum UTOPIA PHY available is 32.



Definition at line **362** of file **IxFeatureCtrl.h**.

```
#define IX_FEATURECTRL_REG_UTOPIA_4PHY
```

Maximum UTOPIA PHY available to is 4.

Definition at line **392** of file **IxFeatureCtrl.h**.

```
#define IX_FEATURECTRL_REG_UTOPIA_8PHY
```

Maximum UTOPIA PHY available to is 8.

Definition at line **382** of file **IxFeatureCtrl.h**.

```
#define IX_FEATURECTRL_REG_XSCALE_266FREQ
```

Maximum frequency available to Intel (R) IXP46X Product Line of Network Processors is 266 MHz.

Definition at line **436** of file **IxFeatureCtrl.h**.

```
#define IX_FEATURECTRL_REG_XSCALE_400FREQ
```

Maximum frequency available to Intel (R) IXP46X Product Line of Network Processors is 400 MHz.

Definition at line **425** of file **IxFeatureCtrl.h**.

```
#define IX_FEATURECTRL_REG_XSCALE_533FREQ
```

Maximum frequency available to Intel (R) IXP46X Product Line of Network Processors is 533 MHz.

Definition at line **403** of file **IxFeatureCtrl.h**.

```
#define IX_FEATURECTRL_REG_XSCALE_667FREQ
```

Maximum frequency available to Intel (R) IXP46X Product Line of Network Processors is 667 MHz.

Definition at line **414** of file **IxFeatureCtrl.h**.

---

## Typedef Documentation

```
IxFeatureCtrlProductId
```

Product ID of Silicon that contains Silicon Stepping and Maximum Intel XScale(R) Processor Frequency information.

Definition at line **898** of file **IxFeatureCtrl.h**.

## **IxFeatureCtrlReg**

Feature Control Register that contains hardware components' availability information.

Definition at line **888** of file **IxFeatureCtrl.h**.

---

## Function Documentation

**IX\_STATUS** ixFeatureCtrlComponentCheck ( **IxFeatureCtrlComponentType** *componentType* )

This function will check the availability of hardware component specified as *componentType* value.

Usage Example:

- if(IX\_FEATURE\_CTRL\_COMPONENT\_DISABLED != ixFeatureCtrlComponentCheck(IX\_FEATURECTRL\_NPEA))
- if(IX\_FEATURE\_CTRL\_COMPONENT\_ENABLED == ixFeatureCtrlComponentCheck(IX\_FEATURECTRL\_NPEB))

This function is typically called during component initialization time.

### **Parameters:**

*componentType* **IxFeatureCtrlComponentType** [in] – the type of a component as defined above as IX\_FEATURECTRL\_XXX

### **Returns:**

- ◇ IX\_FEATURE\_CTRL\_COMPONENT\_ENABLED if component is available
- ◇ IX\_FEATURE\_CTRL\_COMPONENT\_DISABLED if component is unavailable

**IxFeatureDeviceId** ixFeatureCtrlDeviceRead ( void )

This function gets the type of device that the software is currently running on.

This function reads the feature Ctrl register specifically to obtain the device id. The definitions of the available IDs are as above.

### **Returns:**

- ◇ IxFeatureCtrlDeviceId – the type of device currently running

**IxFeatureCtrlReg** ixFeatureCtrlHwCapabilityRead ( void )

This function reads out the hardware capability of a silicon type as defined in feature control register. This value is different from that returned by `ixFeatureCtrlRead()` because this function returns the actual hardware component availability.

The bit location of each hardware component is defined above. A value of '1' in bit means the hardware component is not available. A value of '0' means the hardware component is available.

**Returns:**

◇ `IxFeatureCtrlReg` – the hardware capability of the device.

**Warning:**

◇ This function must not be called when the device is running as the result is undefined.

**`IxFeatureCtrlProductId`** `ixFeatureCtrlProductIdRead ( void )`

This function will return the device product ID.

**Returns:**

◇ `IxFeatureCtrlProductId` – the value of product ID.

**`IxFeatureCtrlBuildDevice`** `ixFeatureCtrlSoftwareBuildGet ( void )`

This function refers to the value set by the compiler flag to determine the type of device the software is built for.

**`IX_STATUS`** `ixFeatureCtrlSwConfigurationCheck ( IxFeatureCtrlSwConfig swConfigType )`

This function checks whether the specified software configuration is enabled or disabled.

Usage Example:

- `if(IX_FEATURE_CTRL_SWCONFIG_DISABLED != ixFeatureCtrlSwConfigurationCheck(IX_FEATURECTRL_ETH_LEARNING))`
- `if(IX_FEATURE_CTRL_SWCONFIG_ENABLED == ixFeatureCtrlSwConfigurationCheck(IX_FEATURECTRL_ETH_LEARNING))`

This function is typically called during access component initialization time.

**Parameters:**

*swConfigType* **Software Configuration for featureCtrl Component** [in] – the type of a software configuration defined in `IxFeatureCtrlSwConfig` enumeration.

**Returns:**

◇ `IX_FEATURE_CTRL_SWCONFIG_ENABLED` if software configuration is enabled.  
◇ `IX_FEATURE_CTRL_SWCONFIG_DISABLED` if software configuration is disabled.

```
void ixFeatureCtrlSwConfigurationWrite ( IxFeatureCtrlSwConfig swConfigType,
                                         BOOL enabled
                                         )
```

This function enable/disable the specified software configuration.

Usage Example:

- ixFeatureCtrlSwConfigurationWrite(IX\_FEATURECTRL\_ETH\_LEARNING, TRUE) is used to enable Ethernet Learning Feature
- ixFeatureCtrlSwConfigurationWrite(IX\_FEATURECTRL\_ETH\_LEARNING, FALSE) is used to disable Ethernet Learning Feature

**Parameters:**

*swConfigType* IxFeatureCtrlSwConfig [in] – the type of a software configuration defined in IxFeatureCtrlSwConfig enumeration.

*enabled* **BOOL** [in] – To enable(TRUE) / disable (FALSE) the specified software configuration.

**Returns:**

none

```
void ixFeatureCtrlSwVersionShow ( void )
```

This function shows the current software release information for the device.

**Returns:**

none

# Software Configuration for featureCtrl Component

## [Intel(R) IXP Software Feature Control (featureCtrl) Public API]

This section describes software configuration in access component.

### Defines

**#define IX\_FEATURE\_CTRL\_SWCONFIG\_DISABLED**  
*Software configuration is disabled.*

**#define IX\_FEATURE\_CTRL\_SWCONFIG\_ENABLED**  
*Software configuration is enabled.*

### Enumerations

**enum IxFeatureCtrlBuildDevice {**  
    **IX\_FEATURE\_CTRL\_SW\_BUILD\_IXP42X,**  
    **IX\_FEATURE\_CTRL\_SW\_BUILD\_IXP46X,**  
    **IX\_FEATURE\_CTRL\_SW\_BUILD\_MAX**  
**}**

*Indicates software build type.*

**enum IxFeatureCtrlSwConfig {**  
    **IX\_FEATURECTRL\_ETH\_LEARNING,**  
    **IX\_FEATURECTRL\_ORIGB0\_DISPATCHER,**  
    **IX\_FEATURECTRL\_SWCONFIG\_MAX**  
**}**

*Enumeration for software configuration in access components.*

**enum IxFeatureCtrlComponentType {**  
    **IX\_FEATURECTRL\_RCOMP,**  
    **IX\_FEATURECTRL\_USB,**  
    **IX\_FEATURECTRL\_HASH,**  
    **IX\_FEATURECTRL\_AES,**  
    **IX\_FEATURECTRL\_DES,**  
    **IX\_FEATURECTRL\_HDLC,**  
    **IX\_FEATURECTRL\_AAL,**  
    **IX\_FEATURECTRL\_HSS,**  
    **IX\_FEATURECTRL\_UTOPIA,**  
    **IX\_FEATURECTRL\_ETH0,**  
    **IX\_FEATURECTRL\_ETH1,**  
    **IX\_FEATURECTRL\_NPEA,**  
    **IX\_FEATURECTRL\_NPEB,**  
    **IX\_FEATURECTRL\_NPEC,**  
    **IX\_FEATURECTRL\_PCI,**  
    **IX\_FEATURECTRL\_ECC\_TIMESYNC,**  
**}**

```

IX_FEATURECTRL_UTOPIA_PHY_LIMIT,
IX_FEATURECTRL_UTOPIA_PHY_LIMIT_BIT2,
IX_FEATURECTRL_USB_HOST_CONTROLLER,
IX_FEATURECTRL_NPEA_ETH,
IX_FEATURECTRL_NPEB_ETH,
IX_FEATURECTRL_RSA,
IX_FEATURECTRL_XSCALE_MAX_FREQ,
IX_FEATURECTRL_XSCALE_MAX_FREQ_BIT2,
IX_FEATURECTRL_MAX_COMPONENTS
}

```

*Enumeration for components availavble.*

```

enum IxFeatureCtrlDeviceId {
    IX_FEATURE_CTRL_DEVICE_TYPE_IXP42X,
    IX_FEATURE_CTRL_DEVICE_TYPE_IXP46X,
    IX_FEATURE_CTRL_DEVICE_TYPE_MAX
}

```

*Enumeration for device type.*

---

## Detailed Description

This section describes software configuration in access component.

The configuration can be changed at run–time. **ixFeatureCtrlSwConfigurationCheck()** will be used across applicable access layer components to check the configuration. **ixFeatureCtrlSwConfigurationWrite()** is used to write the software configuration.

### *Note:*

All software configurations are default to be enabled.

---

## Define Documentation

```
#define IX_FEATURE_CTRL_SWCONFIG_DISABLED
```

Software configuration is disabled.

Definition at line **531** of file **IxFeatureCtrl.h**.

```
#define IX_FEATURE_CTRL_SWCONFIG_ENABLED
```

Software configuration is enabled.

Definition at line **541** of file **IxFeatureCtrl.h**.

---

# Enumeration Type Documentation

## enum IxFeatureCtrlBuildDevice

Indicates software build type.

### *Enumeration values:*

<i>IX_FEATURE_CTRL_SW_BUILD_IXP42X</i>	Build type is IXP42X.
<i>IX_FEATURE_CTRL_SW_BUILD_IXP46X</i>	Build type is IXP46X.
<i>IX_FEATURE_CTRL_SW_BUILD_MAX</i>	Max build types.

Definition at line **555** of file **IxFeatureCtrl.h**.

## enum IxFeatureCtrlComponentType

Enumeration for components availavble.

### *Enumeration values:*

<i>IX_FEATURECTRL_RCOMP</i>	bit location for RComp Circuitry
<i>IX_FEATURECTRL_USB</i>	bit location for USB Controller
<i>IX_FEATURECTRL_HASH</i>	bit location for Hashing Coprocessor
<i>IX_FEATURECTRL_AES</i>	bit location for AES Coprocessor
<i>IX_FEATURECTRL_DES</i>	bit location for DES Coprocessor
<i>IX_FEATURECTRL_HDLC</i>	bit location for HDLC Coprocessor
<i>IX_FEATURECTRL_AAL</i>	bit location for AAL Coprocessor
<i>IX_FEATURECTRL_HSS</i>	bit location for HSS Coprocessor
<i>IX_FEATURECTRL_UTOPIA</i>	bit location for UTOPIA Coprocessor
<i>IX_FEATURECTRL_ETH0</i>	bit location for Ethernet 0 Coprocessor
<i>IX_FEATURECTRL_ETH1</i>	bit location for Ethernet 1 Coprocessor
<i>IX_FEATURECTRL_NPEA</i>	bit location for NPE A
<i>IX_FEATURECTRL_NPEB</i>	bit location for NPE B
<i>IX_FEATURECTRL_NPEC</i>	bit location for NPE C
<i>IX_FEATURECTRL_PCI</i>	bit location for PCI Controller
<i>IX_FEATURECTRL_ECC_TIMESYNC</i>	bit location for TimeSync Coprocessor
<i>IX_FEATURECTRL_UTOPIA_PHY_LIMIT</i>	bit location for Utopia PHY Limit Status
<i>IX_FEATURECTRL_UTOPIA_PHY_LIMIT_BIT2</i>	2nd bit of PHY limit status
<i>IX_FEATURECTRL_USB_HOST_CONTROLLER</i>	bit location for USB host controller
<i>IX_FEATURECTRL_NPEA_ETH</i>	bit location for NPE–A Ethernet Disable
<i>IX_FEATURECTRL_NPEB_ETH</i>	bit location for NPE–B Ethernet 1–3 Coprocessors Disable
<i>IX_FEATURECTRL_RSA</i>	bit location for RSA Crypto block Coprocessors Disable

<i>IX_FEATURECTRL_XSCALE_MAX_FREQ</i>	bit location for Intel XScale(R) Processor max frequency
<i>IX_FEATURECTRL_XSCALE_MAX_FREQ_BIT2</i>	2nd xscale max freq bit NOT TO BE USED

Definition at line **642** of file **IxFeatureCtrl.h**.

```
enum IxFeatureCtrlDeviceId
```

Enumeration for device type.

**Warning:**

This enum is closely related to the npe image. Its format should comply with formats used in the npe image ImageID. This is indicated by the first nibble of the image ID. This should also be in sync with the with what is defined in CP15. Current available formats are

**Enumeration values:**

<i>IX_FEATURE_CTRL_DEVICE_TYPE_IXP42X</i>	Device type is IXP42X.
<i>IX_FEATURE_CTRL_DEVICE_TYPE_IXP46X</i>	Device type is IXP46X.
<i>IX_FEATURE_CTRL_DEVICE_TYPE_MAX</i>	Max devices.

Definition at line **861** of file **IxFeatureCtrl.h**.

```
enum IxFeatureCtrlSwConfig
```

Enumeration for software configuration in access components.

Entry for new run-time software configuration should be added here.

**Enumeration values:**

<i>IX_FEATURECTRL_ETH_LEARNING</i>	EthDB Learning Feature.
<i>IX_FEATURECTRL_ORIGB0_DISPATCHER</i>	IXP42X B0 Silicon and IXP46X processor dispatcher without livelock prevention functionality Feature.
<i>IX_FEATURECTRL_SWCONFIG_MAX</i>	Maximum boudary for IxFeatureCtrlSwConfig.

Definition at line **574** of file **IxFeatureCtrl.h**.



# Intel (R) IXP400 Software HSS Access (IxHssAcc) API

The public API for the IXP400 HssAccess component.

## Data Structures

- struct **IxHssAccConfigParams**  
*Structure containing HSS configuration parameters.*
- struct **IxHssAccHdlcMode**  
*This structure contains 56Kbps, HDLC-mode configuration parameters.*
- struct **IxHssAccPktHdlcFraming**  
*This structure contains information required by the NPE to configure the HDLC co-processor.*
- struct **IxHssAccPortConfig**  
*Structure containing HSS port configuration parameters.*

## Defines

- #define **IX\_HSSACC\_TSLOTS\_PER\_HSS\_PORT**  
*The max number of TDM timeslots supported per HSS port – 4E1's = 32x4 = 128.*
- #define **IX\_HSSACC\_CHAN\_TSLOTSWITCH\_NUM\_GCT\_ENTRY\_MAX**  
*The max number of entries supported per gain control table for a timeslot switching voice channel.*
- #define **IX\_HSSACC\_CHAN\_TSLOTSWITCH\_NUM\_CHAN\_MIN**  
*The minimum number of TDM timeslots that must be setup as channelised timeslots before timeslot switching service can be enabled. This is to maximize NPE resource utilization in order to guarantee high voice quality and minimum latency. Client can choose to ignore the unwanted channelised timeslots.*
- #define **IX\_HSSACC\_CHAN\_TSLOTSWITCH\_NUM\_BYPASS\_MAX**  
*The max number of timeslot switching (bypass) channels supported per HSS port at any one time. In current release, only HSS port 0 supports this feature.*
- #define **IX\_HSSACC\_CHAN\_TSLOTSWITCH\_NUM\_HSS\_PORT\_MAX**  
*The max number of HSS ports that support timeslot switching (bypass) feature. In current release, only HSS port 0 supports this feature.*
- #define **IX\_HSSACC\_PARAM\_ERR**  
*HssAccess function return value for a parameter error.*

```

#define IX_HSSACC_RESOURCE_ERR
    HssAccess function return value for a resource error.

#define IX_HSSACC_PKT_DISCONNECTING
    Indicates that a disconnect call is progressing and will disconnect soon.

#define IX_HSSACC_Q_WRITE_OVERFLOW
    Indicates that an attempt to Tx or to replenish an RxFree Q failed due to Q overflow.

#define IX_HSSACC_NO_ERROR
    HSS port no error present.

#define IX_HSSACC_TX_FRM_SYNC_ERR
    HSS port TX Frame Sync error.

#define IX_HSSACC_TX_OVER_RUN_ERR
    HSS port TX over-run error.

#define IX_HSSACC_CHANNELISED_SW_TX_ERR
    NPE software error in channelised TX.

#define IX_HSSACC_PACKETISED_SW_TX_ERR
    NPE software error in packetised TX.

#define IX_HSSACC_RX_FRM_SYNC_ERR
    HSS port RX Frame Sync error.

#define IX_HSSACC_RX_OVER_RUN_ERR
    HSS port RX over-run error.

#define IX_HSSACC_CHANNELISED_SW_RX_ERR
    NPE software error in channelised RX.

#define IX_HSSACC_PACKETISED_SW_RX_ERR
    NPE software error in packetised TX.

#define IX_HSSACC_PKT_MIN_RX_MBUF_SIZE
    Minimum size of the Rx mbuf in bytes which the client must supply to the component.

```

## Typedefs

```

typedef
UINT32 IxHssAccPktUserId
    The client supplied value which will be supplied as a parameter with a given callback.

typedef
void(* IxHssAccLastErrorCallback )(unsigned lastHssError, unsigned servicePort)
    Prototype of the clients function to accept notification of the last error.

```

```
typedef IxHssAccPktRxCallback )(IX_OSAL_MBUF *buffer, unsigned numHssErrs,
void(* IxHssAccPktStatus pktStatus, IxHssAccPktUserId rxUserId)
```

*Prototype of the clients function to accept notification of packetised rx.*

```
typedef
```

```
void(* IxHssAccPktRxFreeLowCallback )(IxHssAccPktUserId rxFreeLowUserId)
```

*Prototype of the clients function to accept notification of requirement of more Rx Free buffers.*

```
typedef IxHssAccPktTxDoneCallback )(IX_OSAL_MBUF *buffer, unsigned numHssErrs,
```

```
void(* IxHssAccPktStatus pktStatus, IxHssAccPktUserId txDoneUserId)
```

*Prototype of the clients function to accept notification of completion with Tx buffers.*

```
typedef IxHssAccChanRxCallback )(IxHssAccHssPort hssPortId, unsigned rxOffset, unsigned
```

```
void(* txOffset, unsigned numHssErrs)
```

*Prototype of the clients function to accept notification of channelised rx.*

## Enumerations

```
enum IxHssAccHssPort {
    IX_HSSACC_HSS_PORT_0,
    IX_HSSACC_HSS_PORT_1,
    IX_HSSACC_HSS_PORT_MAX
}
```

*The HSS port ID – There are two identical ports (0–1).*

```
enum IxHssAccHdlcPort {
    IX_HSSACC_HDLC_PORT_0,
    IX_HSSACC_HDLC_PORT_1,
    IX_HSSACC_HDLC_PORT_2,
    IX_HSSACC_HDLC_PORT_3,
    IX_HSSACC_HDLC_PORT_MAX
}
```

*The HDLC port ID – There are four identical HDLC ports (0–3) per HSS port and they correspond to the 4 E1/T1 trunks.*

```
enum IxHssAccTdmSlotUsage {
    IX_HSSACC_TDM_MAP_UNASSIGNED,
    IX_HSSACC_TDM_MAP_HDLC,
    IX_HSSACC_TDM_MAP_VOICE56K,
    IX_HSSACC_TDM_MAP_VOICE64K,
    IX_HSSACC_TDM_MAP_MAX
}
```

*The HSS TDM stream timeslot assignment types.*

```
enum IxHssAccFrmSyncType {
    IX_HSSACC_FRM_SYNC_ACTIVE_LOW,
    IX_HSSACC_FRM_SYNC_ACTIVE_HIGH,
    IX_HSSACC_FRM_SYNC_FALLINGEDGE,
    IX_HSSACC_FRM_SYNC_RISINGEDGE,
```

```

    IX_HSSACC_FRM_SYNC_TYPE_MAX
}

```

*The HSS frame sync pulse type.*

```

enum IxHssAccFrmSyncEnable {
    IX_HSSACC_FRM_SYNC_INPUT,
    IX_HSSACC_FRM_SYNC_INVALID_VALUE,
    IX_HSSACC_FRM_SYNC_OUTPUT_FALLING,
    IX_HSSACC_FRM_SYNC_OUTPUT_RISING,
    IX_HSSACC_FRM_SYNC_ENABLE_MAX
}

```

*The IxHssAccFrmSyncEnable determines how the frame sync pulse is used.*

```

enum IxHssAccClkEdge {
    IX_HSSACC_CLK_EDGE_FALLING,
    IX_HSSACC_CLK_EDGE_RISING,
    IX_HSSACC_CLK_EDGE_MAX
}

```

*IxHssAccClkEdge is used to determine the clk edge to use for framing and data.*

```

enum IxHssAccClkDir {
    IX_HSSACC_SYNC_CLK_DIR_INPUT,
    IX_HSSACC_SYNC_CLK_DIR_OUTPUT,
    IX_HSSACC_SYNC_CLK_DIR_MAX
}

```

*The HSS clock direction.*

```

enum IxHssAccFrmPulseUsage {
    IX_HSSACC_FRM_PULSE_ENABLED,
    IX_HSSACC_FRM_PULSE_DISABLED,
    IX_HSSACC_FRM_PULSE_MAX
}

```

*The HSS frame pulse usage.*

```

enum IxHssAccDataRate {
    IX_HSSACC_CLK_RATE,
    IX_HSSACC_HALF_CLK_RATE,
    IX_HSSACC_DATA_RATE_MAX
}

```

*The HSS Data rate in relation to the clock.*

```

enum IxHssAccDataPolarity {
    IX_HSSACC_DATA_POLARITY_SAME,
    IX_HSSACC_DATA_POLARITY_INVERT,
    IX_HSSACC_DATA_POLARITY_MAX
}

```

*The HSS data polarity type.*

```

enum IxHssAccBitEndian {
    IX_HSSACC_LSB_ENDIAN,
    IX_HSSACC_MSB_ENDIAN,
}

```

```

    IX_HSSACC_ENDIAN_MAX
}
HSS Data endianness.

enum IxHssAccDrainMode {
    IX_HSSACC_TX_PINS_NORMAL,
    IX_HSSACC_TX_PINS_OPEN_DRAIN,
    IX_HSSACC_TX_PINS_MAX
}
Tx pin open drain mode.

enum IxHssAccSOFTType {
    IX_HSSACC_SOF_FBIT,
    IX_HSSACC_SOF_DATA,
    IX_HSSACC_SOF_MAX
}
HSS start of frame types.

enum IxHssAccDataEnable {
    IX_HSSACC_DE_TRI_STATE,
    IX_HSSACC_DE_DATA,
    IX_HSSACC_DE_MAX
}
IxHssAccDataEnable is used to determine whether or not to drive the data pins.

enum IxHssAccTxSigType {
    IX_HSSACC_TXSIG_LOW,
    IX_HSSACC_TXSIG_HIGH,
    IX_HSSACC_TXSIG_HIGH_IMP,
    IX_HSSACC_TXSIG_MAX
}
IxHssAccTxSigType is used to determine how to drive the data pins.

enum IxHssAccFbType {
    IX_HSSACC_FB_FIFO,
    IX_HSSACC_FB_HIGH_IMP,
    IX_HSSACC_FB_MAX
}
IxHssAccFbType determines how to drive the Fbit.

enum IxHssAcc56kEndianness {
    IX_HSSACC_56KE_BIT_7_UNUSED,
    IX_HSSACC_56KE_BIT_0_UNUSED,
    IX_HSSACC_56KE_MAX
}
56k data endianness when using the 56k type

enum IxHssAcc56kSel {
    IX_HSSACC_56KS_32_8_DATA,
    IX_HSSACC_56KS_56K_DATA,
    IX_HSSACC_56KS_MAX
}

```

```
}
56k data transmission type when using the 56k type
```

```
enum IxHssAccClkSpeed {
    IX_HSSACC_CLK_SPEED_512KHZ,
    IX_HSSACC_CLK_SPEED_1536KHZ,
    IX_HSSACC_CLK_SPEED_1544KHZ,
    IX_HSSACC_CLK_SPEED_2048KHZ,
    IX_HSSACC_CLK_SPEED_4096KHZ,
    IX_HSSACC_CLK_SPEED_8192KHZ,
    IX_HSSACC_CLK_SPEED_MAX
}
IxHssAccClkSpeed represents the HSS clock speeds available.
```

```
enum IxHssAccPktStatus {
    IX_HSSACC_PKT_OK,
    IX_HSSACC_STOP_SHUTDOWN_ERROR,
    IX_HSSACC_HDLC_ALN_ERROR,
    IX_HSSACC_HDLC_FCS_ERROR,
    IX_HSSACC_RXFREE_Q_EMPTY_ERROR,
    IX_HSSACC_HDLC_MAX_FRAME_SIZE_EXCEEDED,
    IX_HSSACC_HDLC_ABORT_ERROR,
    IX_HSSACC_DISCONNECT_IN_PROGRESS
}
Indicates the status of packets passed to the client.
```

```
enum IxHssAccPktCrcType {
    IX_HSSACC_PKT_16_BIT_CRC,
    IX_HSSACC_PKT_32_BIT_CRC
}
HDLC CRC type.
```

```
enum IxHssAccPktHdlcIdleType {
    IX_HSSACC_HDLC_IDLE_ONES,
    IX_HSSACC_HDLC_IDLE_FLAGS
}
HDLC idle transmission type.
```

## Functions

**PUBLIC**  
**IX\_STATUS IxHssAccPortInit** (**IxHssAccHssPort** hssPortId, **IxHssAccConfigParams** \*configParams, **IX\_STATUS IxHssAccTdmSlotUsage** \*tdmMap, **IxHssAccLastErrorCallback** lastHssErrorCallback)  
*Initialise a HSS port. No channelised or packetised connections should exist in the HssAccess layer while this interface is being called.*

**PUBLIC**  
**IX\_STATUS ixHssAccLastErrorRetrievalInitiate** (**IxHssAccHssPort** hssPortId)  
*Initiate the retrieval of the last HSS error. The HSS port should be configured before attempting to call this interface.*

**PUBLIC**  
**IX\_STATUS ixHssAccInit** (void)  
*This function is responsible for initialising resources for use by the packetised and channelised clients. It should be called after HSS NPE image has been downloaded into NPE–A and before any other HssAccess interface is called. No other HssAccPacketised interface should be called while this interface is being processed.*

**PUBLIC**  
**IX\_STATUS ixHssAccUninit** (void)  
*This function is responsible for un-initialize of resources for use by the packetised and channelised clients. It internally calls the uninitialize functions of sub components. This function should be the last function to be called before exiting HssAcc component.*

**PUBLIC ixHssAccPktPortConnect** (**IxHssAccHssPort** hssPortId, **IxHssAccHdlcPort** hdlcPortId, **IX\_STATUS** BOOL hdlcFraming, **IxHssAccHdlcMode** hdlcMode, **BOOL** hdlcBitInvert, unsigned blockSizeInWords, **UINT32** rawIdleBlockPattern, **IxHssAccPktHdlcFraming** hdlcTxFraming, **IxHssAccPktHdlcFraming** hdlcRxFraming, unsigned frmFlagStart, **IxHssAccPktRxCallback** rxCallback, **IxHssAccPktUserId** rxUserId, **IxHssAccPktRxFreeLowCallback** rxFreeLowCallback, **IxHssAccPktUserId** rxFreeLowUserId, **IxHssAccPktTxDoneCallback** txDoneCallback, **IxHssAccPktUserId** txDoneUserId)  
*This function is responsible for connecting a client to one of the 4 available HDLC ports. The HSS port should be configured before attempting a connect. No other HssAccPacketised interface should be called while this connect is being processed.*

**PUBLIC**  
**IX\_STATUS ixHssAccPktPortEnable** (**IxHssAccHssPort** hssPortId, **IxHssAccHdlcPort** hdlcPortId)  
*This function is responsible for enabling a packetised service for the specified HSS/HDLC port combination. It enables the RX flow. The client must have already connected to a packetised service and is responsible for ensuring an adequate amount of RX mbufs have been supplied to the access component before enabling the packetised service. This function must be called on a given port before any call to ixHssAccPktPortTx on the same port. No other HssAccPacketised interface should be called while this interface is being processed.*

**PUBLIC**  
**IX\_STATUS ixHssAccPktPortDisable** (**IxHssAccHssPort** hssPortId, **IxHssAccHdlcPort** hdlcPortId)  
*This function is responsible for disabling a packetised service for the specified HSS/HDLC port combination. It disables the RX flow. The client must have already connected to and enabled a packetised service for the specified HDLC port. This disable interface can be called before a disconnect, but is not required to.*

**PUBLIC**  
**IX\_STATUS ixHssAccPktPortDisconnect** (**IxHssAccHssPort** hssPortId, **IxHssAccHdlcPort** hdlcPortId)  
*This function is responsible for disconnecting a client from one of the 4 available HDLC ports. It is not required that the Rx Flow has been disabled before calling this function. If the RX Flow has not been disabled, the disconnect will disable it before proceeding with the disconnect. No other HssAccPacketised interface should be called while this interface is being processed.*

**PUBLIC****ixHssAccPktPortIsDisconnectComplete** (**ixHssAccHssPort** hssPortId, **ixHssAccHdlcPort** hdlcPortId)  
**BOOL** hdlcPortId)

*This function is called to check if a given HSS/HDLC port combination is in a connected state or not. This function may be called at any time to determine a ports state. No other HssAccPacketised interface should be called while this interface is being processed.*

**PUBLIC****ixHssAccPktPortRxFreeReplenish** (**ixHssAccHssPort** hssPortId, **ixHssAccHdlcPort** hdlcPortId, **IX\_STATUS** hdlcPortId, **IX\_OSAL\_MBUF** \*buffer)

*Function which the client calls at regular intervals to provide mbufs to the access component for RX. A connection should exist for the specified hssPortId/hdlcPortId combination before attempting to call this interface. Also, the connection should not be in a disconnecting state.*

**PUBLIC****ixHssAccPktPortTx** (**ixHssAccHssPort** hssPortId, **ixHssAccHdlcPort** hdlcPortId, **IX\_STATUS** **IX\_OSAL\_MBUF** \*buffer)

*Function which the client calls when it wants to transmit packetised data. An enabled connection should exist on the specified hssPortId/hdlcPortId combination before attempting to call this interface. No other HssAccPacketised interface should be called while this interface is being processed.*

**PUBLIC****ixHssAccChanConnect** (**ixHssAccHssPort** hssPortId, unsigned bytesPerTSTrigger, **UINT8** **IX\_STATUS** \*rxCircular, unsigned numRxBytesPerTS, **UINT32** \*txPtrList, unsigned numTxPtrLists, unsigned numTxBytesPerBlk, **ixHssAccChanRxCallback** rxCallback)

*This function allows the client to connect to the Tx/Rx NPE Channelised Service. There can only be one client per HSS port. The client is responsible for ensuring that the HSS port is configured appropriately before its connect request. No other HssAccChannelised interface should be called while this interface is being processed.*

**PUBLIC**  
**IX\_STATUS** **ixHssAccChanPortEnable** (**ixHssAccHssPort** hssPortId)

*This function is responsible for enabling a channelised service for the specified HSS port. It enables the NPE RX flow. The client must have already connected to a channelised service before enabling the channelised service. No other HssAccChannelised interface should be called while this interface is being processed.*

**PUBLIC**  
**IX\_STATUS** **ixHssAccChanPortDisable** (**ixHssAccHssPort** hssPortId)

*This function is responsible for disabling a channelised service for the specified HSS port. It disables the NPE RX flow. The client must have already connected to and enabled a channelised service for the specified HSS port. This disable interface can be called before a disconnect, but is not required to. No other HssAccChannelised interface should be called while this interface is being processed.*

**PUBLIC**  
**IX\_STATUS** **ixHssAccChanDisconnect** (**ixHssAccHssPort** hssPortId)

*This function allows the client to Disconnect from a channelised service. If the NPE RX Flow has not been disabled, the disconnect will disable it before proceeding with other disconnect functionality. No other HssAccChannelised interface should be called while this interface is being processed.*

**PUBLIC****ixHssAccChanStatusQuery** (**ixHssAccHssPort** hssPortId, **BOOL** \*dataRecvd, unsigned **IX\_STATUS** \*rxOffset, unsigned \*txOffset, unsigned \*numHssErrs)



*This function is called by the client to query whether or not channelised data has been received. If there is, hssChanAcc will return the details in the output parameters. An enabled connection should exist on the specified hssPortId before attempting to call this interface. No other HssAccChannelised interface should be called while this interface is being processed.*

**PUBLIC**  
**IX\_STATUS** **IxHssAccChanTslotSwitchEnable** (**IxHssAccHssPort** hssPortId, **UINT32** srcTimeslot, **UINT32** destTimeslot, **UINT32** \*tsSwitchHandle)

*This function is responsible for enabling timeslot switching (bypass) channel between two voice channels for the specified HSS port. The voice channels must have already been configured as channelised timeslot for the specified HSS port. In current release, only up to two timeslot switching channels can be enabled at any one time. In order to minimize bypass delay and ensure better voice quality, this function requires at least 8 TDM timeslots on the specified HSS port to be setup as channelised timeslots. In timeslot switching mode, data received on srcTimeslot is transmitted onto a partner timeslot (i.e. destTimeslot) at NPE level. A copy of the received data on srcTimeslot is also sent to client via HssAccess component. No other HssAccChannelised interface should be called while this interface is being processed.*

**PUBLIC**  
**IX\_STATUS** **IxHssAccChanTslotSwitchDisable** (**IxHssAccHssPort** hssPortId, **UINT32** tsSwitchHandle)  
*This function is responsible for disabling timeslot switching (bypass) channel, that is associated with tsSwitchHandle, for the specified HSS port. The bypass channel to be disabled must have already been enabled for the specified HSS port. No other HssAccChannelised interface should be called while this interface is being processed.*

**PUBLIC**  
**IX\_STATUS** **IxHssAccChanTslotSwitchGctDownload** (**IxHssAccHssPort** hssPortId, **UINT8** \*gainCtrlTable, **UINT32** tsSwitchHandle)  
*This function is responsible for downloading a gain control table (256 bytes) to NPE for the specified timeslot switching (bypass) channel, associated with tsSwitchHandle, on the specified HSS port. The bypass voice channel must have already been enabled for the specified HSS port before this API can be called to download the gain control table to NPE. No other HssAccChannelised interface should be called while this interface is being processed.*

**PUBLIC void** **IxHssAccShow** (void)  
*This function will display the current state of the IxHssAcc component. The output is sent to stdout.*

**PUBLIC void** **IxHssAccStatsInit** (void)  
*This function will reset the IxHssAcc statistics.*

---

## Detailed Description

The public API for the IXP400 HssAccess component.

IxHssAcc is the access layer to the HSS packetised and channelised services

### Design Notes

- When a packet-pipe is configured for 56Kbps RAW mode, byte alignment of the transmitted data is not preserved. All raw data that is transmitted will be received in proper order by the receiver, but the first bit of the packet may be seen at any offset within a byte; all subsequent bytes will have the same offset for the duration of the packet. The same offset also applies to all subsequent packets received on the packet-pipe too. (Similar results will occur for data received from remote end.) While this behavior will also occur for 56Kbps HDLC mode, the HDLC encoding/decoding will preserve the original byte alignment at the receiver end.

### 56Kbps Packetised Service Bandwidth Limitation

- IxHssAcc supports 56Kbps packetised service at a maximum aggregate rate for all HSS ports/HDLC channels of 12.288Mbps[1] in each direction, i.e. it supports 56Kbps packetised service on up to 8 T1 trunks. It does not support 56Kbps packetised service on 8 E1 trunks (i.e. 4 trunks per HSS port) unless those trunks are running 'fractional E1' with maximum aggregate rate of 12.288 Mbps in each direction.

[1]  $12.288\text{Mbps} = 1.536\text{Mbp} * 8 \text{ T1}$

---

## Define Documentation

```
#define IX_HSSACC_CHAN_TSLOTSWITCH_NUM_BYPASS_MAX
```

The max number of timeslot switching (bypass) channels supported per HSS port at any one time. In current release, only HSS port 0 supports this feature.

Definition at line **94** of file **IxHssAcc.h**.

```
#define IX_HSSACC_CHAN_TSLOTSWITCH_NUM_CHAN_MIN
```

The minimum number of TDM timeslots that must be setup as channelised timeslots before timeslot switching service can be enabled. This is to maximize NPE resource utilization in order to guarantee high voice quality and minimum latency. Client can choose to ignore the unwanted channelised timeslots.

Definition at line **85** of file **IxHssAcc.h**.

```
#define IX_HSSACC_CHAN_TSLOTSWITCH_NUM_GCT_ENTRY_MAX
```

The max number of entries supported per gain control table for a timeslot switching voice channel.

Definition at line **74** of file **IxHssAcc.h**.

```
#define IX_HSSACC_CHAN_TSLOTSWITCH_NUM_HSS_PORT_MAX
```

The max number of HSS ports that support timeslot switching (bypass) feature. In current release, only HSS port 0 supports this feature.

Definition at line **102** of file **IxHssAcc.h**.

```
#define IX_HSSACC_CHANNELISED_SW_RX_ERR
```

NPE software error in channelised RX.

Definition at line **196** of file **IxHssAcc.h**.

```
#define IX_HSSACC_CHANNELISED_SW_TX_ERR
```

NPE software error in channelised TX.

Definition at line **168** of file **IxHssAcc.h**.

```
#define IX_HSSACC_NO_ERROR
```

HSS port no error present.

Definition at line **147** of file **IxHssAcc.h**.

```
#define IX_HSSACC_PACKETISED_SW_RX_ERR
```

NPE software error in packetised TX.

Definition at line **203** of file **IxHssAcc.h**.

```
#define IX_HSSACC_PACKETISED_SW_TX_ERR
```

NPE software error in packetised TX.

Definition at line **175** of file **IxHssAcc.h**.

```
#define IX_HSSACC_PARAM_ERR
```

HssAccess function return value for a parameter error.

Definition at line **114** of file **IxHssAcc.h**.

```
#define IX_HSSACC_PKT_DISCONNECTING
```

Indicates that a disconnect call is progressing and will disconnect soon.

Definition at line **129** of file **IxHssAcc.h**.

```
#define IX_HSSACC_PKT_MIN_RX_MBUF_SIZE
```

Minimum size of the Rx mbuf in bytes which the client must supply to the component.

Definition at line **215** of file **IxHssAcc.h**.

```
#define IX_HSSACC_Q_WRITE_OVERFLOW
```

Indicates that an attempt to Tx or to replenish an RxFree Q failed due to Q overflow.

Definition at line **137** of file **IxHssAcc.h**.

```
#define IX_HSSACC_RESOURCE_ERR
```

HssAccess function return value for a resource error.

Definition at line **121** of file **IxHssAcc.h**.

```
#define IX_HSSACC_RX_FRM_SYNC_ERR
```

HSS port RX Frame Sync error.

Definition at line **182** of file **IxHssAcc.h**.

```
#define IX_HSSACC_RX_OVER_RUN_ERR
```

HSS port RX over-run error.

Definition at line **189** of file **IxHssAcc.h**.

```
#define IX_HSSACC_TSLOTS_PER_HSS_PORT
```

The max number of TDM timeslots supported per HSS port –  $4E1's = 32 \times 4 = 128$ .

Definition at line **66** of file **IxHssAcc.h**.

```
#define IX_HSSACC_TX_FRM_SYNC_ERR
```

HSS port TX Frame Sync error.

Definition at line **154** of file **IxHssAcc.h**.

```
#define IX_HSSACC_TX_OVER_RUN_ERR
```

HSS port TX over-run error.

Definition at line **161** of file **IxHssAcc.h**.

---

## Typedef Documentation

### IxHssAccChanRxCallback

Prototype of the clients function to accept notification of channelised rx.

This callback, if defined by the client in the connect, will get called in the context of an IRQ. The IRQ will be triggered when the hssSyncQMQ is not empty. The queued entry will be dequeued and this function will be executed.

**Parameters:**

<i>hssPortId</i>	<b>IxHssAccHssPort</b> – The HSS port Id. There are two identical ports (0–1).
<i>txOffset</i>	unsigned [in] – an offset indicating from where within the txPtrList the NPE is currently transmitting from.
<i>rxOffset</i>	unsigned [in] – an offset indicating where within the receive buffers the NPE has just written the received data to.
<i>numHssErrs</i>	unsigned [in] – This is the number of hssErrors the Npe has received

**Returns:**

void

Definition at line **732** of file **IxHssAcc.h**.

### IxHssAccLastErrorCallback

Prototype of the clients function to accept notification of the last error.

This function is registered through the config. The client will initiate the last error retrieval. The HssAccess component will send a message to the NPE through the NPE Message Handler. When a response to the read is received, the NPE Message Handler will callback the HssAccess component which will execute this function in the same IxNpeMh context. The client will be passed the last error and the related service port (packetised 0–3, channelised 0)

**Parameters:**

<i>lastHssError</i>	unsigned [in] – The last Hss error registered that has been registered.
<i>servicePort</i>	unsigned [in] – This is the service port number. (packetised 0–3, channelised 0)

**Returns:**

void

Definition at line **641** of file **IxHssAcc.h**.

#### IxHssAccPktRxCallback

Prototype of the clients function to accept notification of packetised rx.

This function is registered through the ixHssAccPktPortConnect. hssPktAcc will pass received data in the form of mbufs to the client. The mbuf passed back to the client could contain a chain of buffers, depending on the packet size received.

**Parameters:**

*\*buffer* [in] – This is the mbuf which contains the payload received.  
*numHssErrs* unsigned [in] – This is the number of hssErrors the Npe has received  
*pktStatus* **IxHssAccPktStatus** [in] – This is the status of the mbuf that has been received.  
*rxUserId* **IxHssAccPktUserId** [in] – This is the client supplied value passed in at ixHssAccPktPortConnect time which is now returned to the client.

**Returns:**

void

Definition at line **665** of file **IxHssAcc.h**.

#### IxHssAccPktRxFreeLowCallback

Prototype of the clients function to accept notification of requirement of more Rx Free buffers.

The client can choose to register a callback of this type when calling a connecting. This function is registered through the ixHssAccPktPortConnect. If defined, the access layer will provide the trigger for this callback. The callback will be responsible for supplying mbufs to the access layer for use on the receive path from the HSS using ixHssPktAccFreeBufReplenish.

**Returns:**

void

Definition at line **684** of file **IxHssAcc.h**.

#### IxHssAccPktTxDoneCallback

Prototype of the clients function to accept notification of completion with Tx buffers.

This function is registered through the ixHssAccPktPortConnect. It enables the hssPktAcc to pass buffers back to the client when transmission is complete.

**Parameters:**

*\*buffer* [in] – This is the mbuf which contained the payload that was for Tx.  
*numHssErrs* unsigned [in] – This is the number of hssErrors the Npe has received  
*pktStatus* **IxHssAccPktStatus** [in] – This is the status of the mbuf that has been transmitted.  
*txDoneUserId* **IxHssAccPktUserId** [in] – This is the client supplied value passed in at  
 ixHssAccPktPortConnect time which is now returned to the client.

**Returns:**

void

Definition at line **706** of file **IxHssAcc.h**.

## UINT32 IxHssAccPktUserId

The client supplied value which will be supplied as a parameter with a given callback.

This value will be passed into the ixHssAccPktPortConnect function once each with given callbacks. This value will then be passed back to the client as one of the parameters to each of these callbacks, when these callbacks are called.

Definition at line **618** of file **IxHssAcc.h**.

# Enumeration Type Documentation

## enum IxHssAcc56kEndianness

56k data endianness when using the 56k type

**Enumeration values:**

*IX\_HSSACC\_56KE\_BIT\_7\_UNUSED* High bit is  
 unused.  
*IX\_HSSACC\_56KE\_BIT\_0\_UNUSED* Low bit is  
 unused.  
*IX\_HSSACC\_56KE\_MAX* Delimiter for  
 error checks.

Definition at line **437** of file **IxHssAcc.h**.

## enum IxHssAcc56kSel

56k data transmission type when using the 56k type

**Enumeration values:**

*IX\_HSSACC\_56KS\_32\_8\_DATA* 32/8 bit data  
*IX\_HSSACC\_56KS\_56K\_DATA* 56K data  
*IX\_HSSACC\_56KS\_MAX* Delimiter for

error checks.

Definition at line **449** of file **IxHssAcc.h**.

```
enum IxHssAccBitEndian
```

HSS Data endianness.

***Enumeration values:***

*IX\_HSSACC\_LSB\_ENDIAN* TX/RX Least Significant Bit first.  
*IX\_HSSACC\_MSB\_ENDIAN* TX/RX Most Significant Bit first.  
*IX\_HSSACC\_ENDIAN\_MAX* Delimiter for the purposes of error checks.

Definition at line **360** of file **IxHssAcc.h**.

```
enum IxHssAccClkDir
```

The HSS clock direction.

***Enumeration values:***

*IX\_HSSACC\_SYNC\_CLK\_DIR\_INPUT* Clock is an input.  
*IX\_HSSACC\_SYNC\_CLK\_DIR\_OUTPUT* Clock is an output.  
*IX\_HSSACC\_SYNC\_CLK\_DIR\_MAX* Delimiter for error checks.

Definition at line **310** of file **IxHssAcc.h**.

```
enum IxHssAccClkEdge
```

IxHssAccClkEdge is used to determine the clk edge to use for framing and data.

***Enumeration values:***

*IX\_HSSACC\_CLK\_EDGE\_FALLING* Clock sampled off a falling edge.  
*IX\_HSSACC\_CLK\_EDGE\_RISING* Clock sampled off a rising edge.  
*IX\_HSSACC\_CLK\_EDGE\_MAX* Delimiter for error checks.

Definition at line **298** of file **IxHssAcc.h**.

```
enum IxHssAccClkSpeed
```



IxHssAccClkSpeed represents the HSS clock speeds available.

**Enumeration values:**

<i>IX_HSSACC_CLK_SPEED_512KHZ</i>	512KHz
<i>IX_HSSACC_CLK_SPEED_1536KHZ</i>	1.536MHz
<i>IX_HSSACC_CLK_SPEED_1544KHZ</i>	1.544MHz
<i>IX_HSSACC_CLK_SPEED_2048KHZ</i>	2.048MHz
<i>IX_HSSACC_CLK_SPEED_4096KHZ</i>	4.096MHz
<i>IX_HSSACC_CLK_SPEED_8192KHZ</i>	8.192MHz
<i>IX_HSSACC_CLK_SPEED_MAX</i>	Delimiter for error checking.

Definition at line **462** of file **IxHssAcc.h**.

```
enum IxHssAccDataEnable
```

IxHssAccDataEnable is used to determine whether or not to drive the data pins.

**Enumeration values:**

<i>IX_HSSACC_DE_TRI_STATE</i>	TRI-State the data pins.
<i>IX_HSSACC_DE_DATA</i>	Push data out the data pins.
<i>IX_HSSACC_DE_MAX</i>	Delimiter for error checks.

Definition at line **398** of file **IxHssAcc.h**.

```
enum IxHssAccDataPolarity
```

The HSS data polarity type.

**Enumeration values:**

<i>IX_HSSACC_DATA_POLARITY_SAME</i>	Don't invert data between NPE and HSS FIFOs.
<i>IX_HSSACC_DATA_POLARITY_INVERT</i>	Invert data between NPE and HSS FIFOs.
<i>IX_HSSACC_DATA_POLARITY_MAX</i>	Delimiter for error checks.

Definition at line **346** of file **IxHssAcc.h**.

```
enum IxHssAccDataRate
```

The HSS Data rate in relation to the clock.

**Enumeration values:**

<i>IX_HSSACC_CLK_RATE</i>	Data rate is at the configured clk speed.
<i>IX_HSSACC_HALF_CLK_RATE</i>	

Data rate is half the configured clk speed.

*IX\_HSSACC\_DATA\_RATE\_MAX* Delimiter for error checks.

Definition at line **334** of file **IxHssAcc.h**.

enum IxHssAccDrainMode

Tx pin open drain mode.

**Enumeration values:**

<i>IX_HSSACC_TX_PINS_NORMAL</i>	Normal mode.
<i>IX_HSSACC_TX_PINS_OPEN_DRAIN</i>	Open Drain mode.
<i>IX_HSSACC_TX_PINS_MAX</i>	Delimiter for error checks.

Definition at line **373** of file **IxHssAcc.h**.

enum IxHssAccFbType

IxHssAccFbType determines how to drive the Fbit.

**Warning:**

This will only be used for T1 @ 1.544MHz

**Enumeration values:**

<i>IX_HSSACC_FB_FIFO</i>	Fbit is dictated in FIFO.
<i>IX_HSSACC_FB_HIGH_IMP</i>	Fbit is high impedance.
<i>IX_HSSACC_FB_MAX</i>	Delimiter for error checks.

Definition at line **425** of file **IxHssAcc.h**.

enum IxHssAccFrmPulseUsage

The HSS frame pulse usage.

**Enumeration values:**

<i>IX_HSSACC_FRM_PULSE_ENABLED</i>	Generate/Receive frame pulses.
<i>IX_HSSACC_FRM_PULSE_DISABLED</i>	Disregard frame pulses.

<i>IX_HSSACC_FRM_PULSE_MAX</i>	Delimiter for error checks.
--------------------------------	-----------------------------

Definition at line **322** of file **IxHssAcc.h**.

```
enum IxHssAccFrmSyncEnable
```

The IxHssAccFrmSyncEnable determines how the frame sync pulse is used.

**Enumeration values:**

<i>IX_HSSACC_FRM_SYNC_INPUT</i>	Frame sync is sampled as an input.
<i>IX_HSSACC_FRM_SYNC_INVALID_VALUE</i>	1 is not used
<i>IX_HSSACC_FRM_SYNC_OUTPUT_FALLING</i>	Frame sync is an output generated off a falling clock edge.
<i>IX_HSSACC_FRM_SYNC_OUTPUT_RISING</i>	Frame sync is an output generated off a rising clock edge.
<i>IX_HSSACC_FRM_SYNC_ENABLE_MAX</i>	Delimiter for error checks.

Definition at line **281** of file **IxHssAcc.h**.

```
enum IxHssAccFrmSyncType
```

The HSS frame sync pulse type.

**Enumeration values:**

<i>IX_HSSACC_FRM_SYNC_ACTIVE_LOW</i>	Frame sync is sampled low.
<i>IX_HSSACC_FRM_SYNC_ACTIVE_HIGH</i>	sampled high
<i>IX_HSSACC_FRM_SYNC_FALLINGEDGE</i>	sampled on a falling edge
<i>IX_HSSACC_FRM_SYNC_RISINGEDGE</i>	sampled on a rising edge
<i>IX_HSSACC_FRM_SYNC_TYPE_MAX</i>	Delimiter for error checks.

Definition at line **267** of file **IxHssAcc.h**.

```
enum IxHssAccHdlcPort
```

The HDLC port ID – There are four identical HDLC ports (0–3) per HSS port and they correspond to the 4 E1/T1 trunks.

**Enumeration values:**

<i>IX_HSSACC_HDLC_PORT_0</i>	HDLC Port 0.
<i>IX_HSSACC_HDLC_PORT_1</i>	HDLC Port 1.
<i>IX_HSSACC_HDLC_PORT_2</i>	HDLC Port 2.

*IX\_HSSACC\_HDLC\_PORT\_3* HDLC Port 3.  
*IX\_HSSACC\_HDLC\_PORT\_MAX* Delimiter for error checks.

Definition at line **239** of file **IxHssAcc.h**.

enum IxHssAccHssPort

The HSS port ID – There are two identical ports (0–1).

**Enumeration values:**

*IX\_HSSACC\_HSS\_PORT\_0* HSS Port 0.  
*IX\_HSSACC\_HSS\_PORT\_1* HSS Port 1.  
*IX\_HSSACC\_HSS\_PORT\_MAX* Delimiter for error checks.

Definition at line **226** of file **IxHssAcc.h**.

enum IxHssAccPktCrcType

HDLC CRC type.

**Enumeration values:**

*IX\_HSSACC\_PKT\_16\_BIT\_CRC* 16 bit CRC is being used  
*IX\_HSSACC\_PKT\_32\_BIT\_CRC* 32 bit CRC is being used

Definition at line **502** of file **IxHssAcc.h**.

enum IxHssAccPktHdlcIdleType

HDLC idle transmission type.

**Enumeration values:**

*IX\_HSSACC\_HDLC\_IDLE\_ONES* idle tx/rx will be a succession of ones  
*IX\_HSSACC\_HDLC\_IDLE\_FLAGS* idle tx/rx will be repeated flags

Definition at line **513** of file **IxHssAcc.h**.

enum IxHssAccPktStatus

Indicates the status of packets passed to the client.

**Enumeration values:**

<i>IX_HSSACC_PKT_OK</i>	Error free.
<i>IX_HSSACC_STOP_SHUTDOWN_ERROR</i>	Errored due to stop or shutdown occurrence.
<i>IX_HSSACC_HDLC_ALN_ERROR</i>	HDLC alignment error.
<i>IX_HSSACC_HDLC_FCS_ERROR</i>	HDLC Frame Check Sum error.
<i>IX_HSSACC_RXFREE_Q_EMPTY_ERROR</i>	RxFree Q became empty while receiving this packet.
<i>IX_HSSACC_HDLC_MAX_FRAME_SIZE_EXCEEDED</i>	HDLC frame size received is greater than max specified at connect.
<i>IX_HSSACC_HDLC_ABORT_ERROR</i>	HDLC frame received is invalid due to an abort sequence received.
<i>IX_HSSACC_DISCONNECT_IN_PROGRESS</i>	Packet returned because a disconnect is in progress.

Definition at line **478** of file **IxHssAcc.h**.

```
enum IxHssAccSOFTType
```

HSS start of frame types.

**Enumeration values:**

<i>IX_HSSACC_SOF_FBIT</i>	Framing bit transmitted and expected on rx.
<i>IX_HSSACC_SOF_DATA</i>	Framing bit not transmitted nor expected on rx.
<i>IX_HSSACC_SOF_MAX</i>	Delimiter for error checks.

Definition at line **385** of file **IxHssAcc.h**.

```
enum IxHssAccTdmSlotUsage
```

The HSS TDM stream timeslot assignment types.

**Enumeration values:**

<i>IX_HSSACC_TDMMAP_UNASSIGNED</i>	Unassigned.
<i>IX_HSSACC_TDMMAP_HDLC</i>	HDLC – packetised.
<i>IX_HSSACC_TDMMAP_VOICE56K</i>	Voice56K – channelised.
<i>IX_HSSACC_TDMMAP_VOICE64K</i>	Voice64K – channelised.
<i>IX_HSSACC_TDMMAP_MAX</i>	Delimiter for error checks.

Definition at line **253** of file **IxHssAcc.h**.

```
enum IxHssAccTxSigType
```

IxHssAccTxSigType is used to determine how to drive the data pins.

**Enumeration values:**

<i>IX_HSSACC_TXSIG_LOW</i>	Drive the data pins low.
<i>IX_HSSACC_TXSIG_HIGH</i>	Drive the data pins high.
<i>IX_HSSACC_TXSIG_HIGH_IMP</i>	Drive the data pins with high impedance.
<i>IX_HSSACC_TXSIG_MAX</i>	Delimiter for error checks.

Definition at line **410** of file **IxHssAcc.h**.

---

## Function Documentation

```
IX_STATUS ixHssAccChanConnect ( IxHssAccHssPort          hssPortId,
                                unsigned                    bytesPerTSTrigger,
                                UINT8 *                     rxCircular,
                                unsigned                    numRxBytesPerTS,
                                UINT32 *                    txPtrList,
                                unsigned                    numTxPtrLists,
                                unsigned                    numTxBytesPerBlk,
                                IxHssAccChanRxCallback rxCallback
                                )
```

This function allows the client to connect to the Tx/Rx NPE Channelised Service. There can only be one client per HSS port. The client is responsible for ensuring that the HSS port is configured appropriately before its connect request. No other HssAccChannelised interface should be called while this interface is being processed.

**Parameters:**

<i>hssPortId</i>	<b>IxHssAccHssPort</b> [in] – The HSS port Id. There are two identical ports (0–1).
<i>bytesPerTSTrigger</i>	unsigned [in] – The NPE will trigger the access component after bytesPerTSTrigger have been received for all trunk timeslots. This figure is a multiple of 8 e.g. 8 for 1ms trigger, 16 for 2ms trigger.
<i>*rxCircular</i>	UINT8 [in] – A pointer to memory allocated by the client to be filled by data received. The buffer at this address is part of a pool of buffers to be accessed in a circular fashion. This address will be written to by the NPE. Therefore, it needs to be a physical address.
<i>numRxBytesPerTS</i>	unsigned [in] – The number of bytes allocated per timeslot within the receive memory. This figure will depend on the latency of the system. It needs to be deep enough for data to be read by the client before the NPE re–writes over that memory e.g. if the client samples at a rate of 40bytes per timeslot, numRxBytesPerTS may need to be 40bytes * 3. This would give the client 3 * 5ms of time before received data is over–written.

<i>*txPtrList</i>	UINT32 [in] – The address of an area of contiguous memory allocated by the client to be populated with pointers to data for transmission. Each pointer list contains a pointer per active channel. The txPtrs will point to data to be transmitted by the NPE. Therefore, they must point to physical addresses.
<i>numTxPtrLists</i>	unsigned [in] – The number of pointer lists in txPtrList. This figure is dependent on jitter.
<i>numTxBytesPerBlk</i>	unsigned [in] – The size of the Tx data, in bytes, that each pointer within the PtrList points to.
<i>rxCallback</i>	<b>IxHssAccChanRxCallback</b> [in] – A client function pointer to be called back to handle the actual tx/rx of channelised data. If this is not NULL, an ISR will call this function. If this pointer is NULL, it implies that the client will use a polling mechanism to detect when the tx and rx of channelised data is to occur. The client will use hssChanAccStatus for this.

**Returns:**

- ◇ IX\_SUCCESS The function executed successfully
- ◇ IX\_FAIL The function did not execute successfully
- ◇ IX\_HSSACC\_PARAM\_ERR The function did not execute successfully due to a parameter error

IX\_STATUS ixHssAccChanDisconnect ( **IxHssAccHssPort** *hssPortId* )

This function allows the client to Disconnect from a channelised service. If the NPE RX Flow has not been disabled, the disconnect will disable it before proceeding with other disconnect functionality. No other HssAccChannelised interface should be called while this interface is being processed.

**Parameters:**

*hssPortId*                      **IxHssAccHssPort** [in] – The HSS port Id. There are two identical ports (0–1).

**Returns:**

- ◇ IX\_SUCCESS The function executed successfully
- ◇ IX\_FAIL The function did not execute successfully
- ◇ IX\_HSSACC\_PARAM\_ERR The function did not execute successfully due to a parameter error

IX\_STATUS ixHssAccChanPortDisable ( **IxHssAccHssPort** *hssPortId* )

This function is responsible for disabling a channelised service for the specified HSS port. It disables the NPE RX flow. The client must have already connected to and enabled a channelised service for the specified HSS port. This disable interface can be called before a disconnect, but is not required to. No other HssAccChannelised interface should be called while this interface is being processed.

**Parameters:**

*hssPortId*                      **IxHssAccHssPort** [in] – The HSS port Id. There are two identical ports (0–1).

**Returns:**

- ◇ IX\_SUCCESS The function executed successfully
- ◇ IX\_FAIL The function did not execute successfully
- ◇ IX\_HSSACC\_PARAM\_ERR The function did not execute successfully due to a parameter error

IX\_STATUS ixHssAccChanPortEnable ( **IxHssAccHssPort** *hssPortId* )

This function is responsible for enabling a channelised service for the specified HSS port. It enables the NPE RX flow. The client must have already connected to a channelised service before enabling the channelised service. No other HssAccChannelised interface should be called while this interface is being processed.

**Parameters:**

*hssPortId*                      **IxHssAccHssPort** [in] – The HSS port Id. There are two identical ports (0–1).

**Returns:**

- ◇ IX\_SUCCESS The function executed successfully
- ◇ IX\_FAIL The function did not execute successfully
- ◇ IX\_HSSACC\_PARAM\_ERR The function did not execute successfully due to a parameter error

IX\_STATUS ixHssAccChanStatusQuery ( **IxHssAccHssPort** *hssPortId*,  
   BOOL \*                      *dataRecvd*,  
   unsigned \*                 *rxOffset*,  
   unsigned \*                 *txOffset*,  
   unsigned \*                 *numHssErrs*  
   )

This function is called by the client to query whether or not channelised data has been received. If there is, hssChanAcc will return the details in the output parameters. An enabled connection should exist on the specified hssPortId before attempting to call this interface. No other HssAccChannelised interface should be called while this interface is being processed.

**Parameters:**

*hssPortId*                      **IxHssAccHssPort** [in] – The HSS port Id. There are two identical ports (0–1).  
*\*dataRecvd*                    BOOL [out] – This BOOL indicates to the client whether or not the access component has read any data for the client. If FALSE, the other output parameters will not have been written to.  
*\*rxOffset*                      unsigned [out] – An offset to indicate to the client where within the receive buffers the NPE has just written the received data to.  
*\*txOffset*                      unsigned [out] – An offset to indicate to the client from where within the txPtrList the NPE is currently transmitting from  
*\*numHssErrs*                  unsigned [out] – The total number of HSS port errors since initial port configuration

**Returns:**

- ◇ IX\_SUCCESS The function executed successfully
- ◇ IX\_FAIL The function did not execute successfully



◇ IX\_HSSACC\_PARAM\_ERR The function did not execute successfully due to a parameter error

```
IX_STATUS ixHssAccChanTslotSwitchDisable ( IxHssAccHssPort hssPortId,  
                                           UINT32             tsSwitchHandle  
                                           )
```

This function is responsible for disabling timeslot switching (bypass) channel, that is associated with tsSwitchHandle, for the specified HSS port. The bypass channel to be disabled must have already been enabled for the specified HSS port. No other HssAccChannelised interface should be called while this interface is being processed.

**Parameters:**

*IxHssAccHssPort* hssPortId (in) – The HSS port Id. There are two identical ports (0–1). Only port 0 will be supported.  
*UINT32* tsSwitchHandle (in) – The handle that hooks to the bypass channel. This handle is the parameter returned to client by ixHssAccChanTslotSwitchEnable during timeslot switching channel enabling operation.

**Returns:**

◇ IX\_SUCCESS The function executed successfully  
◇ IX\_FAIL The function did not execute successfully  
◇ IX\_HSSACC\_PARAM\_ERR The function did not execute successfully due to a parameter error

```
IX_STATUS ixHssAccChanTslotSwitchEnable ( IxHssAccHssPort hssPortId,  
                                           UINT32             srcTimeslot,  
                                           UINT32             destTimeslot,  
                                           UINT32 *           tsSwitchHandle  
                                           )
```

This function is responsible for enabling timeslot switching (bypass) channel between two voice channels for the specified HSS port. The voice channels must have already been configured as channelised timeslot for the specified HSS port. In current release, only up to two timeslot switching channels can be enabled at any one time. In order to minimize bypass delay and ensure better voice quality, this function requires at least 8 TDM timeslots on the specified HSS port to be setup as channelised timeslots. In timeslot switching mode, data received on srcTimeslot is transmitted onto a partner timeslot (i.e. destTimeslot) at NPE level. A copy of the received data on srcTimeslot is also sent to client via HssAccess component. No other HssAccChannelised interface should be called while this interface is being processed.

**Parameters:**

*IxHssAccHssPort* hssPortId (in) – The HSS port Id. There are two identical ports (0–1). Only port 0 will be supported.  
*UINT32* srcTimeslot (in) – The voice channel Id whose its receive side will be used in the bypass (0–127).  
*UINT32* destTimeslot (in) – The voice channel Id whose its transmit side will be used in the bypass (0–127).  
*UINT32*

\*tsSwitchHandle (out) – The handle returned to client, that hooks to the bypass channel established between srcTimeslot and destTimeslot. This handle will be the mean by which client disables or downloads gain control table to NPE for the bypass channel that associates with this handle. Client must ignore the value returned through this handle if bypass channel fails to setup.

**Returns:**

- ◇ IX\_SUCCESS The function executed successfully
- ◇ IX\_FAIL The function did not execute successfully
- ◇ IX\_HSSACC\_PARAM\_ERR The function did not execute successfully due to a parameter error

```
IX_STATUS ixHssAccChanTslotSwitchGctDownload ( IxHssAccHssPort hssPortId,
                                                UINT8 *      gainCtrlTable,
                                                UINT32      tsSwitchHandle
                                                )
```

This function is responsible for downloading a gain control table (256 bytes) to NPE for the specified timeslot switching (bypass) channel, associated with tsSwitchHandle, on the specified HSS port. The bypass voice channel must have already been enabled for the specified HSS port before this API can be called to download the gain control table to NPE. No other HssAccChannelised interface should be called while this interface is being processed.

**Parameters:**

- IxHssAccHssPort* hssPortId (in) – The HSS port Id. There are two identical ports (0–1). Only port 0 will be supported.
- UINT8* \*gainCtrlTable (in) – A pointer to an array of size IX\_HSSACC\_ENTRIES\_PER\_GAIN\_CTRL\_TABLE, defining each entry for a gain control table for the specified bypass voice channel.
- UINT32* tsSwitchHandle (in) – The handle that hooks to the bypass channel. This handle is the parameter returned to client by ixHssAccChanTslotSwitchEnable during timeslot switching channel enabling operation.

**Returns:**

- ◇ IX\_SUCCESS The function executed successfully
- ◇ IX\_FAIL The function did not execute successfully
- ◇ IX\_HSSACC\_PARAM\_ERR The function did not execute successfully due to a parameter error

```
IX_STATUS ixHssAccInit ( void )
```

This function is responsible for initialising resources for use by the packetised and channelised clients. It should be called after HSS NPE image has been downloaded into NPE–A and before any other HssAccess interface is called. No other HssAccPacketised interface should be called while this interface is being processed.

**Returns:**

- ◇ IX\_SUCCESS The function executed successfully

- ◇ IX\_FAIL The function did not execute successfully
- ◇ IX\_HSSACC\_RESOURCE\_ERR The function did not execute successfully due to a resource error

IX\_STATUS ixHssAccLastErrorRetrievalInitiate ( **IxHssAccHssPort** *hssPortId* )

Initiate the retrieval of the last HSS error. The HSS port should be configured before attempting to call this interface.

**Parameters:**

*hssPortId* **IxHssAccHssPort** [in] – the HSS port ID

**Returns:**

- ◇ IX\_SUCCESS The function executed successfully
- ◇ IX\_FAIL The function did not execute successfully
- ◇ IX\_HSSACC\_PARAM\_ERR The function did not execute successfully due to a parameter error

```

ixHssAccPktPortConnect ( IxHssAccHssPort          hssPortId,
                        IxHssAccHdlcPort          hdlcPortId,
                        BOOL                          hdlcFraming,
                        IxHssAccHdlcMode          hdlcMode,
                        BOOL                          hdlcBitInvert,
                        unsigned                       blockSizeInWords,
                        UINT32                        rawIdleBlockPattern,
                        IxHssAccPktHdlcFraming      hdlcTxFraming,
                        IxHssAccPktHdlcFraming      hdlcRxFraming,
                        unsigned                       frmFlagStart,
                        IxHssAccPktRxCallback        rxCallback,
                        IxHssAccPktUserId           rxUserId,
                        IxHssAccPktRxFreeLowCallback rxFreeLowCallback,
                        IxHssAccPktUserId           rxFreeLowUserId,
                        IxHssAccPktTxDoneCallback   txDoneCallback,
                        IxHssAccPktUserId           txDoneUserId
                        )

```

This function is responsible for connecting a client to one of the 4 available HDLC ports. The HSS port should be configured before attempting a connect. No other HssAccPacketised interface should be called while this connect is being processed.

**Parameters:**

*hssPortId* **IxHssAccHssPort** [in] – The HSS port Id. There are two identical ports (0–1).

*hdlcPortId* **IxHssAccHdlcPort** [in] – This is the number of the HDLC port and it corresponds to the physical E1/T1 trunk i.e. 0, 1, 2, 3

*hdlcFraming* BOOL [in] – This value determines whether the service will use HDLC data or the debug, raw data type i.e. no HDLC processing

*hdlcMode*

	<b>IxHssAccHdlcMode</b> [in] – This structure contains 56Kbps, HDLC–mode configuration parameters
<i>hdlcBitInvert</i>	BOOL [in] – This value determines whether bit inversion will occur between HDLC and HSS co–processors i.e. post–HDLC processing for transmit and pre–HDLC processing for receive, for the specified HDLC Termination Point
<i>blockSizeInWords</i>	unsigned [in] – The max tx/rx block size
<i>rawIdleBlockPattern</i>	UINT32 [in] – Tx idle pattern in raw mode
<i>hdlcTxFraming</i>	<b>IxHssAccPktHdlcFraming</b> [in] – This structure contains the following information required by the NPE to configure the HDLC co–processor for TX
<i>hdlcRxFraming</i>	<b>IxHssAccPktHdlcFraming</b> [in] – This structure contains the following information required by the NPE to configure the HDLC co–processor for RX
<i>frmFlagStart</i>	unsigned – Number of flags to precede to transmitted flags (0–2).
<i>rxCallback</i>	<b>IxHssAccPktRxCallback</b> [in] – Pointer to the clients packet receive function.
<i>rxUserId</i>	<b>IxHssAccPktUserId</b> [in] – The client supplied rx value to be passed back as an argument to the supplied rxCallback
<i>rxFreeLowCallback</i>	<b>IxHssAccPktRxFreeLowCallback</b> [in] – Pointer to the clients Rx free buffer request function. If NULL, assume client will trigger independently.
<i>rxFreeLowUserId</i>	<b>IxHssAccPktUserId</b> [in] – The client supplied RxFreeLow value to be passed back as an argument to the supplied rxFreeLowCallback
<i>txDoneCallback</i>	<b>IxHssAccPktTxDoneCallback</b> [in] – Pointer to the clients Tx done callback function
<i>txDoneUserId</i>	<b>IxHssAccPktUserId</b> [in] – The client supplied txDone value to be passed back as an argument to the supplied txDoneCallback

**Returns:**

- ◊ IX\_SUCCESS The function executed successfully
- ◊ IX\_FAIL The function did not execute successfully
- ◊ IX\_HSSACC\_PARAM\_ERR The function did not execute successfully due to a parameter error
- ◊ IX\_HSSACC\_RESOURCE\_ERR The function did not execute successfully due to a resource error

```

IX_STATUS ixHssAccPktPortDisable ( IxHssAccHssPort  hssPortId,
                                   IxHssAccHdlcPort hdlcPortId
                                   )

```

This function is responsible for disabling a packetised service for the specified HSS/HDLC port combination. It disables the RX flow. The client must have already connected to and enabled a packetised service for the specified HDLC port. This disable interface can be called before a disconnect, but is not required to.

**Parameters:**

- hssPortId* **IxHssAccHssPort** [in] – The HSS port Id. There are two identical ports (0–1).
- hdlcPortId* **IxHssAccHdlcPort** [in] – The port id (0,1,2,3) to disable the service on.

**Returns:**

- ◊ IX\_SUCCESS The function executed successfully
- ◊ IX\_FAIL The function did not execute successfully

◇ IX\_HSSACC\_PARAM\_ERR The function did not execute successfully due to a parameter error

```
IX_STATUS ixHssAccPktPortDisconnect ( IxHssAccHssPort  hssPortId,  
                                       IxHssAccHdlcPort hdlcPortId  
                                       )
```

This function is responsible for disconnecting a client from one of the 4 available HDLC ports. It is not required that the Rx Flow has been disabled before calling this function. If the RX Flow has not been disabled, the disconnect will disable it before proceeding with the disconnect. No other HssAccPacketised interface should be called while this interface is being processed.

**Parameters:**

<i>hssPortId</i>	<b>IxHssAccHssPort</b> [in] – The HSS port Id. There are two identical ports (0–1).
<i>hdlcPortId</i>	<b>IxHssAccHdlcPort</b> [in] – This is the number of the HDLC port to disconnect and it corresponds to the physical E1/T1 trunk i.e. 0, 1, 2, 3

**Returns:**

- ◇ IX\_SUCCESS The function executed successfully
- ◇ IX\_FAIL The function did not execute successfully
- ◇ IX\_HSSACC\_PKT\_DISCONNECTING The function has initiated the disconnecting procedure but it has not completed yet.

```
IX_STATUS ixHssAccPktPortEnable ( IxHssAccHssPort  hssPortId,  
                                   IxHssAccHdlcPort hdlcPortId  
                                   )
```

This function is responsible for enabling a packetised service for the specified HSS/HDLC port combination. It enables the RX flow. The client must have already connected to a packetised service and is responsible for ensuring an adequate amount of RX mbufs have been supplied to the access component before enabling the packetised service. This function must be called on a given port before any call to ixHssAccPktPortTx on the same port. No other HssAccPacketised interface should be called while this interface is being processed.

**Parameters:**

<i>hssPortId</i>	<b>IxHssAccHssPort</b> [in] – The HSS port Id. There are two identical ports (0–1).
<i>hdlcPortId</i>	<b>IxHssAccHdlcPort</b> [in] – The port id (0,1,2,3) to enable the service on.

**Returns:**

- ◇ IX\_SUCCESS The function executed successfully
- ◇ IX\_FAIL The function did not execute successfully
- ◇ IX\_HSSACC\_PARAM\_ERR The function did not execute successfully due to a parameter error

```

BOOL ixHssAccPktPortIsDisconnectComplete ( IxHssAccHssPort  hssPortId,
                                             IxHssAccHdlcPort hdlcPortId
                                             )

```

This function is called to check if a given HSS/HDLC port combination is in a connected state or not. This function may be called at any time to determine a ports state. No other HssAccPacketised interface should be called while this interface is being processed.

**Parameters:**

*hssPortId* **IxHssAccHssPort** [in] – The HSS port Id. There are two identical ports (0–1).

*hdlcPortId* **IxHssAccHdlcPort** [in] – This is the number of the HDLC port to disconnect and it corresponds to the physical E1/T1 trunk i.e. 0, 1, 2, 3

**Returns:**

- ◇ TRUE The state of this HSS/HDLC port combination is disconnected, so if a disconnect was called, it is now completed.
- ◇ FALSE The state of this HSS/HDLC port combination is connected, so if a disconnect was called, it is not yet completed.

```

IX_STATUS ixHssAccPktPortRxFreeReplenish ( IxHssAccHssPort  hssPortId,
                                             IxHssAccHdlcPort hdlcPortId,
                                             IX_OSAL_MBUF * buffer
                                             )

```

Function which the client calls at regular intervals to provide mbufs to the access component for RX. A connection should exist for the specified hssPortId/hdlcPortId combination before attempting to call this interface. Also, the connection should not be in a disconnecting state.

**Parameters:**

*hssPortId* **IxHssAccHssPort** [in] – The HSS port Id. There are two identical ports (0–1).

*hdlcPortId* **IxHssAccHdlcPort** [in] – This is the number of the HDLC port and it corresponds to the physical E1/T1 trunk i.e. 0, 1, 2, 3

*\*buffer* [in] – A pointer to a free mbuf to filled with payload.

**Returns:**

- ◇ IX\_SUCCESS The function executed successfully
- ◇ IX\_FAIL The function did not execute successfully
- ◇ IX\_HSSACC\_PARAM\_ERR The function did not execute successfully due to a parameter error
- ◇ IX\_HSSACC\_RESOURCE\_ERR The function did not execute successfully due to a resource error
- ◇ IX\_HSSACC\_Q\_WRITE\_OVERFLOW The function did not succeed due to a Q overflow

```

IX_STATUS ixHssAccPktPortTx ( IxHssAccHssPort  hssPortId,
                              IxHssAccHdlcPort hdlcPortId,
                              IX_OSAL_MBUF * buffer
                              )

```

Function which the client calls when it wants to transmit packetised data. An enabled connection should exist on the specified `hssPortId/hdlcPortId` combination before attempting to call this interface. No other `HssAccPacketised` interface should be called while this interface is being processed.

**Parameters:**

*hssPortId*    **IxHssAccHssPort** [in] – The HSS port Id. There are two identical ports (0–1).  
*hdlcPortId* **IxHssAccHdlcPort** [in] – This is the number of the HDLC port and it corresponds to the physical E1/T1 trunk i.e. 0, 1, 2, 3  
*\*buffer*        [in] – A pointer to a chain of mbufs which the client has filled with the payload

**Returns:**

- ◇ **IX\_SUCCESS** The function executed successfully
- ◇ **IX\_FAIL** The function did not execute successfully
- ◇ **IX\_HSSACC\_PARAM\_ERR** The function did not execute successfully due to a parameter error
- ◇ **IX\_HSSACC\_RESOURCE\_ERR** The function did not execute successfully due to a resource error. See note.
- ◇ **IX\_HSSACC\_Q\_WRITE\_OVERFLOW** The function did not succeed due to a Q overflow

**Note:**

**IX\_HSSACC\_RESOURCE\_ERR** is returned when a free descriptor cannot be obtained to send the chain of mbufs to the NPE. This is a normal scenario. `HssAcc` has a pool of descriptors and this error means that they are currently all in use. The recommended approach to this is to retry until a descriptor becomes free and the packet is successfully transmitted. Alternatively, the user could wait until the next `IxHssAccPktTxDoneCallback` callback is triggered, and then retry, as it is this event that causes a transmit descriptor to be freed.

```
IX_STATUS ixHssAccPortInit ( IxHssAccHssPort          hssPortId,
                             IxHssAccConfigParams *   configParams,
                             IxHssAccTdmSlotUsage *    tdmMap,
                             IxHssAccLastErrorCallback lastHssErrorCallback
                             )
```

Initialise a HSS port. No channelised or packetised connections should exist in the `HssAccess` layer while this interface is being called.

**Parameters:**

*hssPortId*        **IxHssAccHssPort** [in] – The HSS port Id. There are two identical ports (0–1).  
*\*configParams*    **IxHssAccConfigParams** [in] – A pointer to the HSS configuration structure  
*\*tdmMap*           **IxHssAccTdmSlotUsage** [in] – A pointer to an array of size `IX_HSSACC_TSLOTS_PER_HSS_PORT`, defining the slot usage over the HSS port  
*lastHssErrorCallback* **IxHssAccLastErrorCallback** [in] – Client callback to report last error

**Returns:**

- ◇ **IX\_SUCCESS** The function executed successfully
- ◇ **IX\_FAIL** The function did not execute successfully

◇ IX\_HSSACC\_PARAM\_ERR The function did not execute successfully due to a parameter error

```
void ixHssAccShow ( void )
```

This function will display the current state of the IxHssAcc component. The output is sent to stdout.

**Returns:**

void

```
void ixHssAccStatsInit ( void )
```

This function will reset the IxHssAcc statistics.

**Returns:**

void

```
IX_STATUS ixHssAccUninit ( void )
```

This function is responsible for un-initialize of resources for use by the packetised and channelised clients. It internally calls the uninitialize functions of sub components. This function should be the last function to be called before exiting HssAcc component.

**Returns:**

- ◇ IX\_SUCCESS The function executed successfully
- ◇ IX\_FAIL The function did not execute successfully



# Intel (R) IXP400 Software I2C Driver(IxI2cDrv) API

IXP400 I2C Driver Public API.

## Data Structures

struct **IxI2cInitVars**

*contains all the variables required to initialize the I2C unit*

struct **IxI2cStatsCounters**

*contains results of counters and their overflow*

## Defines

#define **IX\_I2C\_US\_POLL\_FOR\_XFER\_STATUS**

*The interval of micro/mili seconds the Intel (R) IXP4XX Product Line of Network Processors will wait before it polls for status from the ixI2cIntrXferStatus; Every 20us is 1 byte @ 400Kbps and 4 bytes @ 100Kbps. This is dependent on delay type selected through the API ixI2cDrvDelayTypeSelect.*

#define **IX\_I2C\_NUM\_OF\_TRIES\_TO\_CALL\_CALLBACK\_FUNC**

*The number of tries that will be attempted to call a callback function if the callback does not or is unable to resolve the issue it is called to resolve.*

#define **IX\_I2C\_NUM\_TO\_POLL\_IDBR\_RX\_FULL**

*Number of tries slave will poll the IDBR Rx full bit before it gives up.*

#define **IX\_I2C\_NUM\_TO\_POLL\_IDBR\_TX\_EMPTY**

*Number of tries slave will poll the IDBR Tx empty bit before it gives up.*

## Typedefs

typedef void(\* **IxI2cMasterReadCallbackP** )(IxI2cMasterStatus, IxI2cXferMode, char \*, UINT32)

*The pointer to the function that will be called when the master has completed its receive. The parameter that is passed will provide the status of the read (success, arb loss, or bus error), the transfer mode (normal or repeated start, the buffer pointer and number of bytes transferred.*

typedef void(\* **IxI2cMasterWriteCallbackP** )(IxI2cMasterStatus, IxI2cXferMode, char \*, UINT32)

*The pointer to the function that will be called when the master has completed its transmit. The parameter that is passed will provide the status of the write (success, arb loss, or buss error), the transfer mode (normal or repeated start), the buffer pointer and number of bytes transferred.*

typedef void(\* **IxI2cSlaveReadCallbackP** )(IX\_I2C\_STATUS, char \*, UINT32, UINT32)

*The pointer to the function that will be called when a slave address detected in interrupt mode for a read. The parameters that is passed will provide the read status, buffer pointer, buffer size, and the bytes received. When a start of a read is initiated there will be no buffer allocated and this callback will be called to request for a buffer. While receiving, if the buffer gets filled, this callback will be called to request for a new buffer while sending the filled buffer's pointer and size, and data size received. When the receive is complete, this callback will be called to process the data and free the memory by passing the buffer's pointer and size, and data size received.*

```
typedef void(* IxI2cSlaveWriteCallbackP )(IX_I2C_STATUS, char *, UINT32, UINT32)
```

*The pointer to the function that will be called when a slave address detected in interrupt mode for a write. The parameters that is passed will provide the write status, buffer pointer, buffer size, and the bytes received. When a start of a write is initiated there will be no buffer allocated and this callback will be called to request for a buffer and to fill it with data. While transmitting, if the data in the buffer empties, this callback will be called to request for more data to be filled in the same or new buffer. When the transmit is complete, this callback will be called to free the memory or other actions to be taken.*

```
typedef void(* IxI2cGenCallCallbackP )(IX_I2C_STATUS, char *, UINT32, UINT32)
```

*The pointer to the function that will be called when a general call detected in interrupt mode for a read. The parameters that is passed will provide the read status, buffer pointer, buffer size, and the bytes received. When a start of a read is initiated there will be no buffer allocated and this callback will be called to request for a buffer. While receiving, if the buffer gets filled, this callback will be called to request for a new buffer while sending the filled buffer's pointer and size, and data size received. When the receive is complete, this callback will be called to process the data and free the memory by passing the buffer's pointer and size, and data size received.*

## Enumerations

```
enum IxI2cMasterStatus {  
    IX_I2C_MASTER_XFER_COMPLETE,  
    IX_I2C_MASTER_XFER_BUS_ERROR,  
    IX_I2C_MASTER_XFER_ARB_LOSS  
}
```

*The master status – transfer complete, bus error or arbitration loss.*

```
enum IX_I2C_STATUS {  
    IX_I2C_SUCCESS,  
    IX_I2C_FAIL,  
    IX_I2C_NOT_SUPPORTED,  
    IX_I2C_NULL_POINTER,  
    IX_I2C_INVALID_SPEED_MODE_ENUM_VALUE,  
    IX_I2C_INVALID_FLOW_MODE_ENUM_VALUE,  
    IX_I2C_SLAVE_ADDR_CB_MISSING,  
    IX_I2C_GEN_CALL_CB_MISSING,  
    IX_I2C_INVALID_SLAVE_ADDR,  
    IX_I2C_INT_BIND_FAIL,  
    IX_I2C_INT_UNBIND_FAIL,  
}
```

```

IX_I2C_NOT_INIT,
IX_I2C_MASTER_BUS_BUSY,
IX_I2C_MASTER_ARB_LOSS,
IX_I2C_MASTER_XFER_ERROR,
IX_I2C_MASTER_BUS_ERROR,
IX_I2C_MASTER_NO_BUFFER,
IX_I2C_MASTER_INVALID_XFER_MODE,
IX_I2C_SLAVE_ADDR_NOT_DETECTED,
IX_I2C_GEN_CALL_ADDR_DETECTED,
IX_I2C_SLAVE_READ_DETECTED,
IX_I2C_SLAVE_WRITE_DETECTED,
IX_I2C_SLAVE_NO_BUFFER,
IX_I2C_DATA_SIZE_ZERO,
IX_I2C_SLAVE_WRITE_BUFFER_EMPTY,
IX_I2C_SLAVE_WRITE_ERROR,
IX_I2C_SLAVE_OR_GEN_READ_BUFFER_FULL,
IX_I2C_SLAVE_OR_GEN_READ_ERROR
}

```

*The status that can be returned in a I2C driver initialization.*

```

enum IxI2cSpeedMode {
    IX_I2C_NORMAL_MODE,
    IX_I2C_FAST_MODE
}

```

*Type of speed modes supported by the I2C hardware.*

```

enum IxI2cXferMode {
    IX_I2C_NORMAL,
    IX_I2C_REPEATED_START
}

```

*Used for indicating it is a repeated start or normal transfer.*

```

enum IxI2cFlowMode {
    IX_I2C_POLL_MODE,
    IX_I2C_INTERRUPT_MODE
}

```

*Used for indicating it is a poll or interrupt mode.*

```

enum IxI2cDelayMode {
    IX_I2C_LOOP_DELAY,
    IX_I2C_SCHED_DELAY
}

```

*Used for selecting looping delay or OS scheduler delay.*

## Functions

```

PUBLIC
IX_I2C_STATUS ixI2cDrvInit (IxI2cInitVars *InitVarsSelected)

```

*Initializes the I2C Driver.*

PUBLIC

**IX\_I2C\_STATUS ixI2cDrvUninit** (void)  
*Disables the I2C hardware.*

PUBLIC

**IX\_I2C\_STATUS ixI2cDrvSlaveAddrSet** (UINT8 SlaveAddrSet)  
*Sets the I2C Slave Address.*

PUBLIC

**IX\_I2C\_STATUS ixI2cDrvBusScan** (void)  
*scans the I2C bus for slave devices*

PUBLIC **ixI2cDrvWriteTransfer** (UINT8 SlaveAddr, char \*bufP, UINT32 dataSize,  
**IX\_I2C\_STATUS ixI2cXferMode** XferModeSelect)

PUBLIC **ixI2cDrvReadTransfer** (UINT8 SlaveAddr, char \*bufP, UINT32 dataSize,  
**IX\_I2C\_STATUS ixI2cXferMode** XferModeSelect)  
*Initiates a transfer to receive bytes of data from a slave device through the I2C bus.*

PUBLIC

**IX\_I2C\_STATUS ixI2cDrvSlaveAddrAndGenCallDetectedCheck** (void)  
*Checks the I2C Status Register to determine if a slave address is detected.*

PUBLIC **ixI2cDrvSlaveOrGenDataReceive** (char \*bufP, const UINT32 bufSize, UINT32  
**IX\_I2C\_STATUS** \*dataSizeRcvd)  
*Performs the slave receive or general call receive data transfer.*

PUBLIC **ixI2cDrvSlaveDataTransmit** (char \*bufP, const UINT32 dataSize, UINT32  
**IX\_I2C\_STATUS** \*dataSizeXmtd)  
*Performs the slave write data transfer.*

PUBLIC void **ixI2cDrvSlaveOrGenCallBufReplenish** (char \*bufP, UINT32 bufSize)  
*Replenishes the buffer which stores buffer info for both slave and general call.*

PUBLIC

**IX\_I2C\_STATUS ixI2cDrvStatsGet** (**IxI2cStatsCounters** \*I2cStats)  
*Returns the I2C Statistics through the pointer passed in.*

PUBLIC void **ixI2cDrvStatsReset** (void)  
*Reset I2C statistics counters.*

PUBLIC

**IX\_I2C\_STATUS ixI2cDrvShow** (void)  
*Displays the I2C status register and the statistics counter.*

PUBLIC void **ixI2cDrvDelayTypeSelect** (**IxI2cDelayMode** delayTypeSelect)  
*Sets the delay type of either looping delay or OS scheduler delay according to the argument provided.*

## Detailed Description

IXP400 I2C Driver Public API.

---

## Define Documentation

```
#define IX_I2C_NUM_OF_TRIES_TO_CALL_CALLBACK_FUNC
```

The number of tries that will be attempted to call a callback function if the callback does not or is unable to resolve the issue it is called to resolve.

Definition at line **44** of file **IxI2cDrv.h**.

```
#define IX_I2C_NUM_TO_POLL_IDBR_RX_FULL
```

Number of tries slave will poll the IDBR Rx full bit before it gives up.

Definition at line **52** of file **IxI2cDrv.h**.

```
#define IX_I2C_NUM_TO_POLL_IDBR_TX_EMPTY
```

Number of tries slave will poll the IDBR Tx empty bit before it gives up.

Definition at line **59** of file **IxI2cDrv.h**.

```
#define IX_I2C_US_POLL_FOR_XFER_STATUS
```

The interval of micro/mili seconds the Intel (R) IXP4XX Product Line of Network Processors will wait before it polls for status from the ixI2cIntrXferStatus; Every 20us is 1 byte @ 400Kbps and 4 bytes @ 100Kbps. This is dependent on delay type selected through the API ixI2cDrvDelayTypeSelect.

Definition at line **36** of file **IxI2cDrv.h**.

---

## Typedef Documentation

```
typedef void(* IxI2cGenCallCallbackP)(IX_I2C_STATUS, char*, UINT32, UINT32)
```

The pointer to the function that will be called when a general call detected in interrupt mode for a read. The parameters that is passed will provide the read status, buffer pointer, buffer size, and the bytes received. When a start of a read is initiated there will be no buffer allocated and this callback will be called to request

for a buffer. While receiving, if the buffer gets filled, this callback will be called to request for a new buffer while sending the filled buffer's pointer and size, and data size received. When the receive is complete, this callback will be called to process the data and free the memory by passing the buffer's pointer and size, and data size received.

Definition at line **242** of file **IxI2cDrv.h**.

```
typedef void(* IxI2cMasterReadCallbackP)(IxI2cMasterStatus, IxI2cXferMode, char*, UINT32)
```

The pointer to the function that will be called when the master has completed its receive. The parameter that is passed will provide the status of the read (success, arb loss, or bus error), the transfer mode (normal or repeated start), the buffer pointer and number of bytes transferred.

Definition at line **180** of file **IxI2cDrv.h**.

```
typedef void(* IxI2cMasterWriteCallbackP)(IxI2cMasterStatus, IxI2cXferMode, char*, UINT32)
```

The pointer to the function that will be called when the master has completed its transmit. The parameter that is passed will provide the status of the write (success, arb loss, or bus error), the transfer mode (normal or repeated start), the buffer pointer and number of bytes transferred.

Definition at line **191** of file **IxI2cDrv.h**.

```
typedef void(* IxI2cSlaveReadCallbackP)(IX_I2C_STATUS, char*, UINT32, UINT32)
```

The pointer to the function that will be called when a slave address detected in interrupt mode for a read. The parameters that is passed will provide the read status, buffer pointer, buffer size, and the bytes received. When a start of a read is initiated there will be no buffer allocated and this callback will be called to request for a buffer. While receiving, if the buffer gets filled, this callback will be called to request for a new buffer while sending the filled buffer's pointer and size, and data size received. When the receive is complete, this callback will be called to process the data and free the memory by passing the buffer's pointer and size, and data size received.

Definition at line **208** of file **IxI2cDrv.h**.

```
typedef void(* IxI2cSlaveWriteCallbackP)(IX_I2C_STATUS, char*, UINT32, UINT32)
```

The pointer to the function that will be called when a slave address detected in interrupt mode for a write. The parameters that is passed will provide the write status, buffer pointer, buffer size, and the bytes received. When a start of a write is initiated there will be no buffer allocated and this callback will be called to request for a buffer and to fill it with data. While transmitting, if the data in the buffer empties, this callback will be called to request for more data to be filled in the same or new buffer. When the transmit is complete, this callback will be called to free the memory or other actions to be taken.

Definition at line **225** of file **IxI2cDrv.h**.

---

# Enumeration Type Documentation

enum IX\_I2C\_STATUS

The status that can be returned in a I2C driver initialization.

**Enumeration values:**

<i>IX_I2C_SUCCESS</i>	Success status.
<i>IX_I2C_FAIL</i>	Fail status.
<i>IX_I2C_NOT_SUPPORTED</i>	hardware does not have dedicated I2C hardware
<i>IX_I2C_NULL_POINTER</i>	parameter passed in is NULL
<i>IX_I2C_INVALID_SPEED_MODE_ENUM_VALUE</i>	speed mode selected is invalid
<i>IX_I2C_INVALID_FLOW_MODE_ENUM_VALUE</i>	flow mode selected is invalid
<i>IX_I2C_SLAVE_ADDR_CB_MISSING</i>	slave callback is NULL
<i>IX_I2C_GEN_CALL_CB_MISSING</i>	general callback is NULL
<i>IX_I2C_INVALID_SLAVE_ADDR</i>	invalid slave address specified
<i>IX_I2C_INT_BIND_FAIL</i>	interrupt bind fail
<i>IX_I2C_INT_UNBIND_FAIL</i>	interrupt unbind fail
<i>IX_I2C_NOT_INIT</i>	I2C is not initialized yet.
<i>IX_I2C_MASTER_BUS_BUSY</i>	master detected a I2C bus busy
<i>IX_I2C_MASTER_ARB_LOSS</i>	master experienced arbitration loss
<i>IX_I2C_MASTER_XFER_ERROR</i>	master experienced a transfer error
<i>IX_I2C_MASTER_BUS_ERROR</i>	master detected a I2C bus error
<i>IX_I2C_MASTER_NO_BUFFER</i>	no buffer provided for master transfer
<i>IX_I2C_MASTER_INVALID_XFER_MODE</i>	xfer mode selected is invalid
<i>IX_I2C_SLAVE_ADDR_NOT_DETECTED</i>	polled slave addr not detected
<i>IX_I2C_GEN_CALL_ADDR_DETECTED</i>	polling detected general call
<i>IX_I2C_SLAVE_READ_DETECTED</i>	polling detected slave read request
<i>IX_I2C_SLAVE_WRITE_DETECTED</i>	polling detected slave

<i>IX_I2C_SLAVE_NO_BUFFER</i>	write request no buffer provided for slave transfers
<i>IX_I2C_DATA_SIZE_ZERO</i>	data size transfer is zero – invalid
<i>IX_I2C_SLAVE_WRITE_BUFFER_EMPTY</i>	slave buffer is used till empty
<i>IX_I2C_SLAVE_WRITE_ERROR</i>	slave write experienced an error
<i>IX_I2C_SLAVE_OR_GEN_READ_BUFFER_FULL</i>	slave buffer is filled up
<i>IX_I2C_SLAVE_OR_GEN_READ_ERROR</i>	slave read experienced an error

Definition at line **87** of file **IxI2cDrv.h**.

#### enum IxI2cDelayMode

Used for selecting looping delay or OS scheduler delay.

##### **Enumeration values:**

*IX\_I2C\_LOOP\_DELAY* delay in microseconds  
*IX\_I2C\_SCHED\_DELAY* delay in milliseconds

Definition at line **165** of file **IxI2cDrv.h**.

#### enum IxI2cFlowMode

Used for indicating it is a poll or interrupt mode.

Definition at line **152** of file **IxI2cDrv.h**.

#### enum IxI2cMasterStatus

The master status – transfer complete, bus error or arbitration loss.

Definition at line **72** of file **IxI2cDrv.h**.

#### enum IxI2cSpeedMode

Type of speed modes supported by the I2C hardware.

Definition at line **126** of file **IxI2cDrv.h**.



enum IxI2cXferMode

Used for indicating it is a repeated start or normal transfer.

Definition at line **139** of file **IxI2cDrv.h**.

---

## Function Documentation

ixI2cDrvBusScan ( void )

scans the I2C bus for slave devices

**Parameters:**

- None

Global Data :

- None.

This API will prompt all slave addresses for a reply except its own

**Returns:**

- ◇ IX\_I2C\_SUCCESS – found at least one slave device
- ◇ IX\_I2C\_FAIL – Fail to find even one slave device
- ◇ IX\_I2C\_BUS\_BUSY – The I2C bus is busy (held by another I2C master)
- ◇ IX\_I2C\_ARB\_LOSS – The I2C bus was loss to another I2C master
- ◇ IX\_I2C\_NOT\_INIT – I2C not init yet.

- Reentrant : yes
- ISR Callable : yes

ixI2cDrvDelayTypeSelect ( **IxI2cDelayMode** *delayTypeSelect* )

Sets the delay type of either looping delay or OS scheduler delay according to the argument provided.

**Parameters:**

- "IxI2cDelayMode [in] delayTypeSelect" – the I2C delay type selected

Global Data :

- None.

This API will set the delay type used by the I2C Driver to either looping delay or OS scheduler delay.

**Returns:**

◇ None

- Reentrant : yes
- ISR Callable : no

```
ixI2cDrvInit ( IxI2cInitVars * InitVarsSelected )
```

Initializes the I2C Driver.

**Parameters:**

*IxI2cInitVars* [in] \**InitVarsSelected* – struct containing required variables for initialization

Global Data :

- None.

This API will check if the hardware supports this I2C driver and the validity of the parameters passed in. It will continue to process the parameters passed in by setting the speed of the I2C unit (100kbps or 400kbps), setting the flow to either interrupt or poll mode, setting the address of the I2C unit, enabling/disabling the respond to General Calls, enabling/disabling the respond to Slave Address and SCL line driving. If it is interrupt mode, then it will register the callback routines for master, slavetransfer and general call receive.

**Returns:**

- ◇ IX\_I2C\_SUCCESS – Successfully initialize and enable the I2C hardware.
- ◇ IX\_I2C\_NOT\_SUPPORTED – The hardware does not support or have a dedicated I2C unit to support this driver
- ◇ IX\_I2C\_NULL\_POINTER – The parameter passed in is a NULL pointed
- ◇ IX\_I2C\_INVALID\_SPEED\_MODE\_ENUM\_VALUE – The speed mode selected in the *InitVarsSelected* is invalid
- ◇ IX\_I2C\_INVALID\_FLOW\_MODE\_ENUM\_VALUE – The flow mode selected in the *InitVarsSelected* is invalid
- ◇ IX\_I2C\_INVALID\_SLAVE\_ADDR – The address 0x0 is reserved for general call.
- ◇ IX\_I2C\_SLAVE\_ADDR\_CB\_MISSING – interrupt mode is selected but slave address callback pointer is NULL
- ◇ IX\_I2C\_GEN\_CALL\_CB\_MISSING – interrupt mode is selected but general call callback pointer is NULL
- ◇ IX\_I2C\_INT\_BIND\_FAIL – The ISR for the I2C failed to bind
- ◇ IX\_I2C\_INT\_UNBIND\_FAIL – The ISR for the I2C failed to unbind

- Reentrant : yes
- ISR Callable : yes

```
ixI2cDrvReadTransfer ( UINT8           SlaveAddr,  
                      char *           bufP,  
                      UINT32          dataSize,  
                      IxI2cXferMode XferModeSelect  
                      )
```

Initiates a transfer to receive bytes of data from a slave device through the I2C bus.

**Parameters:**

<i>UINT8 [in] SlaveAddr</i>	– The slave address to request data from.
<i>char [out] *bufP</i>	– The pointer to the buffer to store the requested data.
<i>UINT32 [in] dataSize</i>	– The number of bytes requested.
<i>IxI2cXferMode [in]</i>	– the transfer mode selected, either repeated start (ends w/o stop) or
<i>XferModeSelect</i>	normal (start and stop)

Global Data :

- None.

This API will try to obtain master control of the I2C bus and receive the number of bytes, specified by *dataSize*, from the user specified address into the receive buffer. It will use either interrupt or poll mode depending on the mode selected.

If in interrupt mode and *IxI2cMasterReadCallbackP* is not NULL, the driver will initiate the transfer and return immediately. The function pointed to by *IxI2cMasterReadCallbackP* will be called in the interrupt service handlers when the operation is complete.

If in interrupt mode and *IxI2cMasterReadCallbackP* is NULL, then the driver will wait for the operation to complete, and then return.

And if the repeated start transfer mode is selected, then it will not send a stop signal at the end of all the transfers. \*NOTE\*: If repeated start transfer mode is selected, it has to end with a normal mode transfer mode else the bus will continue to be held by the Intel (R) IXP4XX Product Line of Network Processors.

**Returns:**

- ◇ IX\_I2C\_SUCCESS – Successfully read slave data
- ◇ IX\_I2C\_MASTER\_BUS\_BUSY – The I2C bus is busy (held by another I2C master)
- ◇ IX\_I2C\_MASTER\_ARB\_LOSS – The I2C bus was loss to another I2C master
- ◇ IX\_I2C\_MASTER\_XFER\_ERROR – There was a bus error during transfer
- ◇ IX\_I2C\_MASTER\_BUS\_ERROR – There was a bus error during transfer
- ◇ IX\_I2C\_MASTER\_NO\_BUFFER – buffer pointer is NULL
- ◇ IX\_I2C\_MASTER\_INVALID\_XFER\_MODE – Xfer mode selected is invalid
- ◇ IX\_I2C\_INVALID\_SLAVE\_ADDR – invalid slave address (zero) specified
- ◇ IX\_I2C\_DATA\_SIZE\_ZERO – *dataSize* passed in is zero, which is invalid
- ◇ IX\_I2C\_NOT\_INIT – I2C not init yet.

- Reentrant : no
- ISR Callable : no

`ixI2cDrvShow ( void )`

Displays the I2C status register and the statistics counter.

**Parameters:**

- None

Global Data :

- None.

This API will display the I2C Status register and is useful if any error occurs. It displays the detection of bus error, slave address, general call, address, IDBR receive full, IDBR transmit empty, arbitration loss, slave STOP signal, I2C bus busy, unit busy, ack/nack, read/write mode, and delay type selected. It will also call the ixI2cDrvGetStats and then display the statistics counter.

**Returns:**

- ◇ IX\_I2C\_SUCCESS – successfully displayed statistics and status register
- ◇ IX\_I2C\_NOT\_INIT – I2C not init yet.

- Reentrant : yes
- ISR Callable : no

```
ixI2cDrvSlaveAddrAndGenCallDetectedCheck ( void )
```

Checks the I2C Status Register to determine if a slave address is detected.

**Parameters:**

- None

Global Data :

- None.

This API is used in polled mode to determine if the I2C unit is requested for a slave or general call transfer. If it is requested for a slave transfer then it will determine if it is a general call (read only), read, or write transfer requested.

**Returns:**

- ◇ IX\_I2C\_SLAVE\_ADDR\_NOT\_DETECTED – The I2C unit is not requested for slave transfer
- ◇ IX\_I2C\_GEN\_CALL\_ADDR\_DETECTED – The I2C unit is not requested for slave transfer but for general call
- ◇ IX\_I2C\_SLAVE\_READ\_DETECTED – The I2C unit is requested for a read
- ◇ IX\_I2C\_SLAVE\_WRITE\_DETECTED – The I2C unit is requested for a write
- ◇ IX\_I2C\_NOT\_INIT – I2C not init yet.

- Reentrant : no
- ISR Callable : no

```
ixI2cDrvSlaveAddrSet ( UINT8 SlaveAddrSet )
```

Sets the I2C Slave Address.

**Parameters:**

*UINT8 [in] SlaveAddrSet* – Slave Address to be inserted into ISAR

Global Data :

- None.

This API will insert the SlaveAddrSet into the ISAR.

**Returns:**

- ◇ IX\_I2C\_SUCCESS – successfully set the slave addr
- ◇ IX\_I2C\_INVALID\_SLAVE\_ADDR – invalid slave address (zero) specified
- ◇ IX\_I2C\_NOT\_INIT – I2C not init yet.

- Reentrant : yes
- ISR Callable : yes

```
ixI2cDrvSlaveDataTransmit ( char *      bufP,  
                           const UINT32 dataSize,  
                           UINT32 *    dataSizeXmtd  
                           )
```

Performs the slave write data transfer.

**Parameters:**

*char [in]* – the pointer to the buffer for data to be transmitted "const UINT32 [in] bufSize" – the  
*\*bufP* buffer size allocated "UINT32 [in] \*dataSizeRcvd" – the length of data trasnmited in  
bytes

Global Data :

- None.

This API is only used in polled mode to perform the slave transmit data. It will continuously transmit the data from bufP until complete or until bufP is empty in which it will return IX\_I2C\_SLAVE\_WRITE\_BUFFER\_EMPTY. If in interrupt mode, the callback will be used.

**Returns:**

- ◇ IX\_I2C\_SUCCESS – The I2C driver transferred the data successfully.
- ◇ IX\_I2C\_SLAVE\_WRITE\_BUFFER\_EMPTY – The I2C driver needs more data to transmit.
- ◇ IX\_I2C\_SLAVE\_WRITE\_ERROR –The I2C driver didn't manage to detect the IDBR Tx empty bit or the slave stop bit.
- ◇ IX\_I2C\_DATA\_SIZE\_ZERO – dataSize passed in is zero, which is invalid
- ◇ IX\_I2C\_SLAVE\_NO\_BUFFER – buffer pointer is NULL
- ◇ IX\_I2C\_NULL\_POINTER – dataSizeXmtd is NULL
- ◇ IX\_I2C\_NOT\_INIT – I2C not init yet.

- Reentrant : no

- ISR Callable : no

```
ixI2cDrvSlaveOrGenCallBufReplenish ( char *   bufP,
                                     UINT32 bufSize
                                     )
```

Replenishes the buffer which stores buffer info for both slave and general call.

**Parameters:**

*char [in] \*bufP* – pointer to the buffer allocated "UINT32 [in] bufSize" – size of the buffer

Global Data :

- None.

This API is only used in interrupt mode for replenishing the same buffer that is used by both slave and general call by updating the buffer info with new info and clearing previous offsets set by previous transfers.

**Returns:**

◇ None

- Reentrant : no
- ISR Callable : no

```
ixI2cDrvSlaveOrGenDataReceive ( char *           bufP,
                                const UINT32 bufSize,
                                UINT32 *      dataSizeRcvd
                                )
```

Performs the slave receive or general call receive data transfer.

**Parameters:**

*char [in] \*bufP* – the pointer to the buffer to store data "const UINT32 [in] bufSize" – the buffer size allocated "UINT32 [in] \*dataSizeRcvd" – the length of data received in bytes

Global Data :

- None.

This API is only used in polled mode to perform the slave read or general call receive data. It will continuously store the data received into bufP until complete or until bufP is full in which it will return IX\_I2C\_SLAVE\_OR\_GEN\_READ\_BUFFER\_FULL. If in interrupt mode, the callback will be used.

**Returns:**

- ◇ IX\_I2C\_SUCCESS – The I2C driver transferred the data successfully.
- ◇ IX\_I2C\_SLAVE\_OR\_GEN\_READ\_BUFFER\_FULL – The I2C driver has ran out of space to store the received data.

- ◇ IX\_I2C\_SLAVE\_OR\_GEN\_READ\_ERROR – The I2C driver didn't manage to detect the IDBR Rx Full bit
- ◇ IX\_I2C\_DATA\_SIZE\_ZERO – bufSize passed in is zero, which is invalid
- ◇ IX\_I2C\_SLAVE\_NO\_BUFFER – buffer pointer is NULL
- ◇ IX\_I2C\_NULL\_POINTER – dataSizeRcvd is NULL
- ◇ IX\_I2C\_NOT\_INIT – I2C not init yet.

- Reentrant : no
- ISR Callable : no

```
ixI2cDrvStatsGet ( IxI2cStatsCounters * I2cStats )
```

Returns the I2C Statistics through the pointer passed in.

**Parameters:**

- "IxI2cStatsCounters [out] \*I2cStats" – I2C statistics counter will be read and written to the location pointed by this pointer.

Global Data :

- None.

This API will return the statistics counters of the I2C driver.

**Returns:**

- ◇ IX\_I2C\_NULL\_POINTER – pointer passed in is NULL
- ◇ IX\_I2C\_SUCCESS – successfully obtained I2C statistics

- Reentrant : yes
- ISR Callable : no

```
ixI2cDrvStatsReset ( void )
```

Reset I2C statistics counters.

**Parameters:**

- None

Global Data :

- None.

This API will reset the statistics counters of the I2C driver.

**Returns:**

- ◇ None

- Reentrant : yes

- ISR Callable : no

```
ixI2cDrvUninit ( void )
```

Disables the I2C hardware.

**Parameters:**

- None

Global Data :

- None.

This API will disable the I2C hardware, unbind interrupt, and unmap memory.

**Returns:**

- ◊ IX\_I2C\_SUCCESS – successfully un-initialized I2C
- ◊ IX\_I2C\_INT\_UNBIND\_FAIL – failed to unbind the I2C interrupt
- ◊ IX\_I2C\_NOT\_INIT – I2C not init yet.

- Reentrant : yes
- ISR Callable : yes

```
ixI2cDrvWriteTransfer (  UINT8      SlaveAddr,
                        char *      bufP,
                        UINT32      dataSize,
                        IxI2cXferMode XferModeSelect
                        )
```

**Parameters:**

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| <i>UINT8 [in] SlaveAddr</i>              | – The slave address to request data from.  |
| <i>char [in] *bufP</i>                   | – The pointer to the data to be transmitted.   |
| <i>UINT32 [in] dataSize</i>              | – The number of bytes requested.   |
| <i>IxI2cXferMode [in] XferModeSelect</i> | – the transfer mode selected, either repeated start (ends w/o stop) or normal (start and stop) |

Global Data :

- None.

This API will try to obtain master control of the I2C bus and transmit the number of bytes, specified by *dataSize*, to the user specified slave address from the buffer pointer. It will use either interrupt or poll mode depending on the method selected.

If in interrupt mode and *IxI2cMasterWriteCallbackP* is not NULL, the driver will initiate the transfer and return immediately. The function pointed to by *IxI2cMasterWriteCallbackP* will be called in the interrupt



service handlers when the operation is complete.

If in interrupt mode and `IxI2cMasterWriteCallbackP` is `NULL`, then the driver will wait for the operation to complete, and then return.

And if the repeated start transfer mode is selected, then it will not send a stop signal at the end of all the transfers. \*NOTE\*: If repeated start transfer mode is selected, it has to end with a normal mode transfer mode else the bus will continue to be held by the Intel (R) IXP4XX Product Line of Network Processors.

**Returns:**

- ◇ `IX_I2C_SUCCESS` – Successfully wrote data to slave.
- ◇ `IX_I2C_MASTER_BUS_BUSY` – The I2C bus is busy (held by another I2C master)
- ◇ `IX_I2C_MASTER_ARB_LOSS` – The I2C bus was lost to another I2C master
- ◇ `IX_I2C_MASTER_XFER_ERROR` – There was a transfer error
- ◇ `IX_I2C_MASTER_BUS_ERROR` – There was a bus error during transfer
- ◇ `IX_I2C_MASTER_NO_BUFFER` – buffer pointer is `NULL`
- ◇ `IX_I2C_MASTER_INVALID_XFER_MODE` – Xfer mode selected is invalid
- ◇ `IX_I2C_DATA_SIZE_ZERO` – `dataSize` passed in is zero, which is invalid
- ◇ `IX_I2C_NOT_INIT` – I2C not init yet.

- Reentrant : no
- ISR Callable : no

# Intel (R) IXP NPE–Downloader (IxnpeDI) API

The Public API for the IXP NPE Downloader.

## Modules

Intel (R) IXP  
Image ID  
Definition

*Definition of Image ID to be passed to **ixNpeDIInitAndStart()** or **ixNpeDICustomImageNpeInitAndStart()** as input of type **UINT32** which has the following fields format:.*

## Defines

#define **IX\_NPEDL\_PARAM\_ERR**

*NpeDI function return value for a parameter error.*

#define **IX\_NPEDL\_RESOURCE\_ERR**

*NpeDI function return value for a resource error.*

#define **IX\_NPEDL\_CRITICAL\_NPE\_ERR**

*NpeDI function return value for a Critical NPE error occurring during download. Assume NPE is left in unstable condition if this value is returned or NPE is hang / halt.*

#define **IX\_NPEDL\_CRITICAL\_MICROCODE\_ERR**

*NpeDI function return value for a Critical Microcode error discovered during download. Assume NPE is left in unstable condition if this value is returned.*

#define **IX\_NPEDL\_DEVICE\_ERR**

*NpeDI function return value when image being downloaded is not meant for the device in use.*

## Functions

PUBLIC

IX\_STATUS **ixNpeDIInitAndStart** (UINT32 imageId)

*Stop, reset, download microcode (firmware) and finally start NPE.*

PUBLIC

IX\_STATUS **ixNpeDICustomImageNpeInitAndStart** (UINT32 \*imageLibrary, UINT32 imageId)

*Stop, reset, download microcode (firmware) and finally start NPE.*

PUBLIC

IX\_STATUS **ixNpeDILoadedImageFunctionalityGet** (IxnpeDI npeId, UINT8 \*functionalityId)

*Gets the functionality of the image last loaded on a particular NPE.*

PUBLIC  
IX\_STATUS **ixNpeDI NpeStopAndReset** (IxNpeDI NpeId npeId)  
*Stops and Resets an NPE.*

PUBLIC  
IX\_STATUS **ixNpeDI NpeExecutionStart** (IxNpeDI NpeId npeId)  
*Starts code execution on a NPE.*

PUBLIC  
IX\_STATUS **ixNpeDI NpeExecutionStop** (IxNpeDI NpeId npeId)  
*Stops code execution on a NPE.*

PUBLIC  
IX\_STATUS **ixNpeDI Unload** (void)  
*This function will uninitialise the IxNpeDI component.*

PUBLIC void **ixNpeDI StatsShow** (void)  
*This function will display run–time statistics from the IxNpeDI component.*

PUBLIC void **ixNpeDI StatsReset** (void)  
*This function will reset the statistics of the IxNpeDI component.*

PUBLIC  
UINT32 **ixNpeDI DataMemRead** (UINT32 npeId, UINT32 dataMemAddress)  
*This function will read 1 WORD from the DMEM of the NPE.*

PUBLIC  
IX\_STATUS **ixNpeDI LoadedImageGet** (IxNpeDI NpeId npeId, IxNpeDI ImageId \*imageIdPtr)  
*Gets the Id of the image currently loaded on a particular NPE.*

---

## Detailed Description

The Public API for the IXP NPE Downloader.

---

## Define Documentation

```
#define IX_NPEDL_CRITICAL_MICROCODE_ERR
```

NpeDI function return value for a Critical Microcode error discovered during download. Assume NPE is left in unstable condition if this value is returned.

Definition at line **65** of file **IxNpeDI.h**.

```
#define IX_NPEDL_CRITICAL_NPE_ERR
```

NpeDI function return value for a Critical NPE error occurring during download. Assume NPE is left in unstable condition if this value is returned or NPE is hang / halt.

Definition at line **56** of file **IxNpeDI.h**.

```
#define IX_NPEDL_DEVICE_ERR
```

NpeDI function return value when image being downloaded is not meant for the device in use.

Definition at line **73** of file **IxNpeDI.h**.

```
#define IX_NPEDL_PARAM_ERR
```

NpeDI function return value for a parameter error.

Definition at line **40** of file **IxNpeDI.h**.

```
#define IX_NPEDL_RESOURCE_ERR
```

NpeDI function return value for a resource error.

Definition at line **47** of file **IxNpeDI.h**.

---

## Function Documentation

```
PUBLIC IX_STATUS ixNpeDICustomImageNpeInitAndStart ( UINT32 * imageLibrary,  
                                                    UINT32 imageId  
                                                    )
```

Stop, reset, download microcode (firmware) and finally start NPE.

**Parameters:**

*imageId* UINT32 [in] – Id of the microcode image to download.

This function locates the image specified by the *imageId* parameter from the specified microcode image library which is pointed to by the *imageLibrary* parameter. It then stops and resets the NPE, loads the firmware image onto the NPE, and then restarts the NPE.

This is a facility for users who wish to use an image from an external library of NPE firmware images. To use a standard image from the built-in library, see **ixNpeDINpeInitAndStart** instead.

**Note:**

A list of valid image IDs is included in this header file. See #defines with prefix IX\_NPEDL\_NPEIMAGE\_...

**Precondition:**

- ◇ The Client is responsible for ensuring mutual access to the NPE.
- ◇ The image library supplied must be in the correct format for use by the NPE Downloader (IxNpeDI) component. Details of the library format are contained in the Functional Specification document for IxNpeDI.

**Postcondition:**

- ◇ The NPE Instruction Pipeline will be cleared if State Information has been downloaded.
- ◇ If the download fails with a critical error, the NPE may be left in an usable state.

**Returns:**

- ◇ IX\_SUCCESS if the download was successful;
- ◇ IX\_NPEDL\_PARAM\_ERR if a parameter error occurred
- ◇ IX\_NPEDL\_CRITICAL\_NPE\_ERR if a critical NPE error occurred during download
- ◇ IX\_NPEDL\_CRITICAL\_MICROCODE\_ERR if a critical microcode error occurred during download
- ◇ IX\_NPEDL\_DEVICE\_ERR if the image being loaded is not meant for the device currently running.

```
UINT32 ixNpeDIDataMemRead ( UINT32 npelId,
                             UINT32 dataMemAddress
                           )
```

This function will read 1 WORD from the DMEM of the NPE.

**Parameters:**

<i>npelId</i>	<b>IxNpeDI<del>N</del>pelId</b> [in] – Id of the target NPE
<i>dataMemAddress</i>	UINT32 [in] – DMEM Address

**Returns:**

DMEM Memory contents value in WORD size

```
PUBLIC IX_STATUS ixNpeDILoadedImageFunctionalityGet ( IxNpeDINpelId npelId,
                                                       UINT8 * functionalityId
                                                     )
```

Gets the functionality of the image last loaded on a particular NPE.

**Parameters:**

<i>npelId</i>	<b>IxNpeDI<del>N</del>pelId</b> [in] – Id of the target NPE.
<i>functionalityId</i>	UINT8* [out] – the functionality ID of the image last loaded on the NPE.

This function retrieves the functionality ID of the image most recently downloaded successfully to the specified NPE. If the NPE does not contain a valid image, this function returns a FAIL status.

**Warning:**

This function is not intended for general use, as a knowledge of how to interpret the functionality ID is required. As such, this function should only be used by other Access Layer components of the IXP Software Release.

**Precondition:**

**Postcondition:**

**Returns:**

- ◇ IX\_SUCCESS if the operation was successful
- ◇ IX\_NPEDL\_PARAM\_ERR if a parameter error occurred
- ◇ IX\_FAIL if the NPE does not have a valid image loaded

```
PUBLIC IX_STATUS ixNpeDILoadedImageGet ( IxNpeDINpeId    npelId,  
                                         IxNpeDIImageId * imageIdPtr  
                                         )
```

Gets the Id of the image currently loaded on a particular NPE.

**Parameters:**

*npelId*        **IxNpeDINpeId** [in] – Id of the target NPE.  
*imageIdPtr* **IxNpeDIImageId**\* [out] – Pointer to the where the image id should be stored.

If an image of microcode was previously downloaded successfully to the NPE by NPE Downloader, this function returns in *imageIdPtr* the image Id of that image loaded on the NPE.

**Precondition:**

- ◇ The Client has allocated memory to the *imageIdPtr* pointer.

**Postcondition:**

**Returns:**

- ◇ IX\_SUCCESS if the operation was successful
- ◇ IX\_NPEDL\_PARAM\_ERR if a parameter error occurred
- ◇ IX\_FAIL if the NPE doesn't currently have a image loaded

```
PUBLIC IX_STATUS ixNpeDINpeExecutionStart ( IxNpeDINpeId npelId )
```

Starts code execution on a NPE.

**Parameters:**

*npelId* **IxNpeDINpeId** [in] – Id of the target NPE

Starts execution of code on a particular NPE. A client would typically use this after a download to NPE is performed, to start/restart code execution on the NPE.

**Note:**

It is no longer necessary to call this function after downloading a new image to the NPE. It is left on the API only to allow greater control of NPE execution if required. Where appropriate, use **ixNpeDlNpeInitAndStart** or **ixNpeDlCustomImageNpeInitAndStart** instead.

**Precondition:**

- ◇ The Client is responsible for ensuring mutual access to the NPE.
- ◇ Note that this function does not set the NPE's Next Program Counter (NextPC), so it should be set beforehand if required by downloading appropriate State Information (using **ixNpeDlNpeInitAndStart()**).

**Postcondition:**

**Returns:**

- ◇ IX\_SUCCESS if the operation was successful
- ◇ IX\_NPEDL\_PARAM\_ERR if a parameter error occurred
- ◇ IX\_FAIL otherwise

```
PUBLIC IX_STATUS ixNpeDlNpeExecutionStop ( IxNpeDlNpeId npelId )
```

Stops code execution on a NPE.

**Parameters:**

*npelId* **IxNpeDlNpeId** [in] – Id of the target NPE

Stops execution of code on a particular NPE. This would typically be used by a client before a download to NPE is performed, to stop code execution on an NPE, unless **ixNpeDlNpeStopAndReset()** is used instead. Unlike **ixNpeDlNpeStopAndReset()**, this function only halts the NPE and leaves all registers and settings intact. This is useful, for example, between stages of a multi-stage download, to stop the NPE prior to downloading the next image while leaving the current state of the NPE intact..

**Precondition:**

- ◇ The Client is responsible for ensuring mutual access to the NPE.

**Postcondition:**

**Returns:**

- ◇ IX\_SUCCESS if the operation was successful
- ◇ IX\_NPEDL\_PARAM\_ERR if a parameter error occurred
- ◇ IX\_FAIL otherwise

```
PUBLIC IX_STATUS ixNpeDlNpeInitAndStart ( UINT32 imageId )
```

Stop, reset, download microcode (firmware) and finally start NPE.

**Parameters:**

*imageId* UINT32 [in] – Id of the microcode image to download.

This function locates the image specified by the *imageId* parameter from the default microcode image library which is included internally by this component. It then stops and resets the NPE, loads the firmware image onto the NPE, and then restarts the NPE.

**Note:**

A list of valid image IDs is included in this header file. See #defines with prefix IX\_NPEDL\_NPEIMAGE\_...

**Precondition:**

◇ The Client is responsible for ensuring mutual access to the NPE.

**Postcondition:**

◇ The NPE Instruction Pipeline will be cleared if State Information has been downloaded.  
 ◇ If the download fails with a critical error, the NPE may be left in an unusable state.

**Returns:**

◇ IX\_SUCCESS if the download was successful;  
 ◇ IX\_NPEDL\_PARAM\_ERR if a parameter error occurred  
 ◇ IX\_NPEDL\_CRITICAL\_NPE\_ERR if a critical NPE error occurred during download  
 ◇ IX\_NPEDL\_CRITICAL\_MICROCODE\_ERR if a critical microcode error occurred during download  
 ◇ IX\_NPEDL\_DEVICE\_ERR if the image being loaded is not meant for the device currently running.

```
PUBLIC IX_STATUS ixNpeDlNpeStopAndReset ( IxNpeDlNpeId npeId )
```

Stops and Resets an NPE.

**Parameters:**

*npeId* **IxNpeDlNpeId** [in] – Id of the target NPE.

This function performs a soft NPE reset by writing reset values to particular NPE registers. Note that this does not reset NPE co-processors. This implicitly stops NPE code execution before resetting the NPE.

**Note:**

It is no longer necessary to call this function before downloading a new image to the NPE. It is left on the API only to allow greater control of NPE execution if required. Where appropriate, use **ixNpeDlNpeInitAndStart** or **ixNpeDlCustomImageNpeInitAndStart** instead.

**Precondition:**

◇ The Client is responsible for ensuring mutual access to the NPE.

**Postcondition:****Returns:**

◇ IX\_SUCCESS if the operation was successful



- ◇ IX\_NPEDL\_PARAM\_ERR if a parameter error occurred
- ◇ IX\_FAIL otherwise
- ◇ IX\_NPEDL\_CRITICAL\_NPE\_ERR failed to reset NPE due to timeout error. Timeout error could happen if NPE hang

```
PUBLIC void ixNpeDIStatsReset ( void )
```

This function will reset the statistics of the IxNpeDI component.

**Returns:**

none

```
PUBLIC void ixNpeDIStatsShow ( void )
```

This function will display run-time statistics from the IxNpeDI component.

**Returns:**

none

```
PUBLIC IX_STATUS ixNpeDIUnload ( void )
```

This function will uninitialise the IxNpeDI component.

This function will uninitialise the IxNpeDI component. It should only be called once, and only if the IxNpeDI component has already been initialised by calling any of the following functions:

- **ixNpeDINpeInitAndStart**
- **ixNpeDICustomImageNpeInitAndStart**

If possible, this function should be called before a soft reboot or unloading a kernel module to perform any clean up operations required for IxNpeDI.

The following actions will be performed by this function:

- Unmapping of any kernel memory mapped by IxNpeDI

**Returns:**

- ◇ IX\_SUCCESS if the operation was successful
- ◇ IX\_FAIL otherwise

# Intel (R) IXP Image ID Definition

## [Intel (R) IXP NPE–Downloader (IxnpeDI) API]

Definition of Image ID to be passed to **ixNpeDIInitAndStart()** or **ixNpeDICustomImageNpeInitAndStart()** as input of type UINT32 which has the following fields format..

## Data Structures

```
struct IxnpeDIImageId  
    Image Id to identify each image contained in an image library.
```

## Defines

```
#define IX_NPEDL_NPEIMAGE_FIELD_MASK  
    Mask for NPE Image ID's Field.  
  
#define IX_NPEDL_NPEIMAGE_NPEID_MASK  
    Mask for NPE Image NPE ID's Field.  
  
#define IX_NPEDL_NPEIMAGE_DEVICEID_MASK  
    Mask for NPE Image Device ID's Field.  
  
#define IX_NPEIMAGEID_FUNCTIONID_OFFSET  
    NPE Image function ID's offset (16bits).  
  
#define IX_FUNCTIONID_FROM_NPEIMAGEID_GET(imageId)  
    Macro to extract Functionality ID field from Image ID.
```

## Typedefs

```
typedef  
UINT8 IxnpeDIFunctionalityId  
    Used to make up Functionality ID field of Image Id.  
  
typedef  
UINT8 IxnpeDIMajor  
    Used to make up Major Release field of Image Id.  
  
typedef  
UINT8 IxnpeDIMinor  
    Used to make up Minor Revision field of Image Id.  
  
typedef  
UINT8 IxnpeDIDeviceId
```

*Used to make up Device Id field of Image Id.*

## Enumerations

```
enum IxNpeDlNpeId {  
    IX_NPEDL_NPEID_NPEA,  
    IX_NPEDL_NPEID_NPEB,  
    IX_NPEDL_NPEID_NPEC,  
    IX_NPEDL_NPEID_MAX  
}
```

*NpeId numbers to identify the system's NPEs.*

```
enum IxNpePortId {  
    IX_NPEB_PORT,  
    IX_NPEC_PORT,  
    IX_NPEA_PORT  
}
```

*NPE Port ID numbers to identify NPE A, B or C This will be removed once updates have been made to ethDB.*

---

## Detailed Description

Definition of Image ID to be passed to **ixNpeDlNpeInitAndStart()** or **ixNpeDlCustomImageNpeInitAndStart()** as input of type UINT32 which has the following fields format..

The following is the structure of the Image ID. The first row shows the fields; the second shows the bit locations.

Device ID	NPE ID	Functionality ID	Major Release Number	Minor Release Number
31	27	23	15	7

Field [Bit Location] – Purpose

- 
- Device ID [31 – 28] – Specifies the type of device the image is to be downloaded to
  - NPE ID [27 – 24] – Specifies the NPE the image is to be downloaded to
  - Functionality ID [23 – 16] – Specifies the functionality of the image
  - Major Release Number [15 – 8] – Specifies the major version number of the image
  - Minor Release Number [7 – 0] – Specifies the minor version number of the image

---

## Define Documentation

```
#define IX_FUNCTIONID_FROM_NPEIMAGEID_GET ( imageId )
```

Macro to extract Functionality ID field from Image ID.

Definition at line **164** of file **IxNpeDl.h**.

```
#define IX_NPEDL_NPEIMAGE_DEVICEID_MASK
```

Mask for NPE Image Device ID's Field.

Definition at line **149** of file **IxNpeDl.h**.

```
#define IX_NPEDL_NPEIMAGE_FIELD_MASK
```

Mask for NPE Image ID's Field.

Definition at line **133** of file **IxNpeDl.h**.

```
#define IX_NPEDL_NPEIMAGE_NPEID_MASK
```

Mask for NPE Image NPE ID's Field.

Definition at line **141** of file **IxNpeDl.h**.

```
#define IX_NPEIMAGEID_FUNCTIONID_OFFSET
```

NPE Image function ID's offset (16bits).

Definition at line **157** of file **IxNpeDl.h**.

---

## Typedef Documentation

```
IxNpeDIDeviceId
```

Used to make up Device Id field of Image Id.

See **ixNpeDIInitAndStart** for more information.

Definition at line **201** of file **IxNpeDl.h**.

```
IxNpeDIFunctionalityId
```

Used to make up Functionality ID field of Image Id.

See **ixNpeDlNpeInitAndStart** for more information.

Definition at line **177** of file **IxNpeDl.h**.

#### IxNpeDlMajor

Used to make up Major Release field of Image Id.

See **ixNpeDlNpeInitAndStart** for more information.

Definition at line **185** of file **IxNpeDl.h**.

#### IxNpeDlMinor

Used to make up Minor Revision field of Image Id.

See **ixNpeDlNpeInitAndStart** for more information.

Definition at line **193** of file **IxNpeDl.h**.

---

## Enumeration Type Documentation

#### enum IxNpeDlNpeId

NpeId numbers to identify the system's NPEs.

***Enumeration values:***

*IX\_NPEDL\_NPEID\_NPEA* Identifies NPE  
A.

*IX\_NPEDL\_NPEID\_NPEB* Identifies NPE  
B.

*IX\_NPEDL\_NPEID\_NPEC* Identifies NPE  
C.

*IX\_NPEDL\_NPEID\_MAX* Total Number  
of NPEs.

Definition at line **224** of file **IxNpeDl.h**.

#### enum IxNpePortId

NPE Port ID numbers to identify NPE A, B or C This will be removed once updates have been made to ethDB.

***Enumeration values:***

<i>IX_NPEB_PORT</i>	Identifies NPE B.
<i>IX_NPEC_PORT</i>	Identifies NPE C.
<i>IX_NPEA_PORT</i>	Identifies NPE A.

Definition at line **236** of file **IxNpeDl.h**.

# Intel (R) IXP Software NPE Message Handler (IxNpeMh) API

The public API for the IXP NPE Message Handler component.

## Data Structures

struct **IxNpeMhMessage**  
*The 2–word message structure to send to and receive from the NPEs.*

## Defines

```
#define IX_NPEMH_MIN_MESSAGE_ID  
    minimum valid message ID  
  
#define IX_NPEMH_MAX_MESSAGE_ID  
    maximum valid message ID  
  
#define IX_NPEMH_SEND_RETRIES_DEFAULT  
    default msg send retries  
  
#define IX_NPEMH_CRITICAL_NPE_ERR  
    NpeMH function return value for a Critical NPE error occurring during  
    sending/receiving message. Assume NPE hang / halt if this value is  
    returned.
```

## Typedefs

```
typedef UINT32 IxNpeMhMessageId  
    message ID  
  
typedef void(* IxNpeMhCallback )(IxNpeMhNpeId, IxNpeMhMessage)  
    This prototype shows the format of a message callback function.
```

## Enumerations

```
enum IxNpeMhNpeId {  
    IX_NPEMH_NPEID_NPEA,  
    IX_NPEMH_NPEID_NPEB,  
    IX_NPEMH_NPEID_NPEC,  
    IX_NPEMH_NUM_NPES  
}
```

*The ID of a particular NPE.*

```
enum IxNpeMhNpeInterrupts {  
    IX_NPEMH_NPEINTERRUPTS_NO,  
    IX_NPEMH_NPEINTERRUPTS_YES  
}
```

*Indicator specifying whether or not NPE interrupts should drive receiving of messages from the NPEs.*

## Functions

**PUBLIC IX\_STATUS IxNpeMhInitialize (IxNpeMhNpeInterrupts npeInterrupts)**

*This function will initialise the IxNpeMh component.*

**PUBLIC IX\_STATUS IxNpeMhUnload (void)**

*This function will uninitialise the IxNpeMh component.*

**PUBLIC IX\_STATUS IxNpeMhUnsolicitedCallbackRegister (IxNpeMhNpeId npeId, IxNpeMhMessageId messageId, IxNpeMhCallback unsolicitedCallback)**

*This function will register an unsolicited callback for a particular NPE and message ID.*

**PUBLIC IX\_STATUS IxNpeMhUnsolicitedCallbackForRangeRegister (IxNpeMhNpeId npeId, IxNpeMhMessageId minMessageId, IxNpeMhMessageId maxMessageId, IxNpeMhCallback unsolicitedCallback)**

*This function will register an unsolicited callback for a particular NPE and range of message IDs.*

**PUBLIC IX\_STATUS IxNpeMhMessageSend (IxNpeMhNpeId npeId, IxNpeMhMessage message, UINT32 maxSendRetries)**

*This function will send a message to a particular NPE.*

**PUBLIC IX\_STATUS IxNpeMhMessageWithResponseSend (IxNpeMhNpeId npeId, IxNpeMhMessage message, IxNpeMhMessageId solicitedMessageId, IxNpeMhCallback solicitedCallback, UINT32 maxSendRetries)**

*This function is equivalent to the **IxNpeMhMessageSend()** function, but must be used when the message being sent will solicited a response.*

**PUBLIC IX\_STATUS IxNpeMhMessagesReceive (IxNpeMhNpeId npeId)**

*This function will receive messages from a particular NPE and pass each message to the client via a solicited callback (for solicited messages) or an unsolicited callback (for unsolicited messages).*

**PUBLIC IX\_STATUS IxNpeMhShow (IxNpeMhNpeId npeId)**

*This function will display the current state of the IxNpeMh component.*

**PUBLIC IX\_STATUS IxNpeMhShowReset (IxNpeMhNpeId npeId)**



*This function will reset the current state of the IxNpeMh component.*

**IX\_STATUS IxNpeMhConfigStateRestore (IxNpeMhNpeId npeId)**

*This function will restore the Interrupt Configuration setting.*

---

## Detailed Description

The public API for the IXP NPE Message Handler component.

---

## Define Documentation

```
#define IX_NPEMH_CRITICAL_NPE_ERR
```

NpeMH function return value for a Critical NPE error occuring during sending/receiving message. Assume NPE hang / halt if this value is returned.

Definition at line **44** of file **IxNpeMh.h**.

```
#define IX_NPEMH_MAX_MESSAGE_ID
```

maximum valid message ID

Definition at line **32** of file **IxNpeMh.h**.

```
#define IX_NPEMH_MIN_MESSAGE_ID
```

minimum valid message ID

Definition at line **31** of file **IxNpeMh.h**.

```
#define IX_NPEMH_SEND_RETRIES_DEFAULT
```

default msg send retries

Definition at line **34** of file **IxNpeMh.h**.

---

## Typedef Documentation

```
IxNpeMhCallback
```

This prototype shows the format of a message callback function.

This prototype shows the format of a message callback function. The message callback will be passed the message to be handled and will also be told from which NPE the message was received. The message callback will either be registered by **ixNpeMhUnsolicitedCallbackRegister()** or passed as a parameter to **ixNpeMhMessageWithResponseSend()**. It will be called from within an ISR triggered by the NPE's "outFIFO not empty" interrupt (see **ixNpeMhInitialize()**). The parameters passed are the ID of the NPE that the message was received from, and the message to be handled.

**Re-entrancy:** This function is only a prototype, and will be implemented by the client. It does not need to be re-entrant.

Definition at line **118** of file **IxNpeMh.h**.

```
typedef UINT32 IxNpeMhMessageId
```

message ID

Definition at line **99** of file **IxNpeMh.h**.

---

## Enumeration Type Documentation

```
enum IxNpeMhNpeId
```

The ID of a particular NPE.

### *Enumeration values:*

<i>IX_NPEMH_NPEID_NPEA</i>	Identifies NPE A.
<i>IX_NPEMH_NPEID_NPEB</i>	Identifies NPE B.
<i>IX_NPEMH_NPEID_NPEC</i>	Identifies NPE C.
<i>IX_NPEMH_NUM_NPES</i>	Number of NPEs.

Definition at line **66** of file **IxNpeMh.h**.

```
enum IxNpeMhNpeInterrupts
```

Indicator specifying whether or not NPE interrupts should drive receiving of messages from the NPEs.

### *Enumeration values:*

<i>IX_NPEMH_NPEINTERRUPTS_NO</i>	Don't use NPE interrupts.
<i>IX_NPEMH_NPEINTERRUPTS_YES</i>	Do use NPE interrupts.

## Function Documentation

**IX\_STATUS** ixNpeMhConfigStateRestore ( **IxNpeMhNpeId** *npeId* )

This function will restore the Interrupt Configuration setting.

**Note:**

This API restores the Interrupt Enabling configuration for the OUTFIFO of the NPE used if the ixNPEMH is set to an interrupt mode during initialization. This API must be called once the NPE is reset which may occur during an NPE error.

◊ Re-entrant : No

◊ ISR Callable : Yes

**Parameters:**

*npeId* **IxNpeMhNpeId** [in] – The ID of the NPE to restore the configuration

**Returns:**

The function returns a status indicating success or failure.

**IX\_STATUS** ixNpeMhInitialize ( **IxNpeMhNpeInterrupts** *npeInterrupts* )

This function will initialise the IxNpeMh component.

**Parameters:**

*npeInterrupts* **IxNpeMhNpeInterrupts** [in] – This parameter dictates whether or not the IxNpeMh component will service NPE "outFIFO not empty" interrupts to trigger receiving and processing of messages from the NPEs. If not then the client must use **ixNpeMhMessagesReceive()** to control message receiving and processing.

This function will initialise the IxNpeMh component. It should only be called once, prior to using the IxNpeMh component. The following actions will be performed by this function:

1. Initialization of internal data structures (e.g. solicited and unsolicited callback tables).
2. Configuration of the interface with the NPEs (e.g. enabling of NPE "outFIFO not empty" interrupts).
3. Registration of ISRs that will receive and handle messages when the NPEs' "outFIFO not empty" interrupts fire (if *npeInterrupts* equals **IX\_NPEMH\_NPEINTERRUPTS\_YES**).

**Returns:**

The function returns a status indicating success or failure.

**IX\_STATUS** ixNpeMhMessageSend ( **IxNpeMhNpeId** *npeId*,  
**IxNpeMhMessage** *message*,  
**UINT32** *maxSendRetries* )

)

This function will send a message to a particular NPE.

**Parameters:**

*npeId*                      **IxNpeMhNpeId** [in] – The ID of the NPE to send the message to.  
*message*                   **IxNpeMhMessage** [in] – The message to send.  
*maxSendRetries*    **UINT32** [in] – Max num. of retries to perform if the NPE's inFIFO is full.

This function will send a message to a particular NPE. It will be the client's responsibility to ensure that the message is properly formed. The return status will signify to the client if the message was successfully sent or not.

If the message is sent to the NPE then this function will return a status of success. Note that this will only mean the message has been placed in the NPE's inFIFO. There will be no way of knowing that the NPE has actually read the message, but once in the incoming message queue it will be safe to assume that the NPE will process it.

The inFIFO may fill up sometimes if the Xscale is sending messages faster than the NPE can handle them. This forces us to retry attempts to send the message until the NPE services the inFIFO. The client should specify a ceiling value for the number of retries suitable to their needs.

**IX\_NPEMH\_SEND\_RETRIES\_DEFAULT** can be used as a default value for the *maxSendRetries* parameter for this function. Each retry exceeding this default number will incur a blocking delay of 1 microsecond, to avoid consuming too much AHB bus bandwidth while performing retries.

Note this function **must** only be used for messages, that do not solicit responses. If the message being sent will solicit a response then the **ixNpeMhMessageWithResponseSend()** function **must** be used to ensure that the response is correctly handled.

This function will return timeout status if NPE hang / halt while sending message. The timeout error is not related to the *maxSendRetries* as mentioned above. The timeout error will only occur if the first word of the message has been sent to NPE (not exceeding *maxSendRetries* when sending 1st message word), but the second word of the message can't be written to NPE's inFIFO due to NPE hang / halt after maximum waiting time (**IX\_NPE\_MH\_MAX\_NUM\_OF\_RETRIES**).

**Re-entrancy:** This function will be callable from any thread at any time. IxOsal will be used for any necessary resource protection.

**Returns:**

The function returns a status indicating success, failure or timeout.

```
IX_STATUS ixNpeMhMessagesReceive ( IxNpeMhNpeId npeId )
```

This function will receive messages from a particular NPE and pass each message to the client via a solicited callback (for solicited messages) or an unsolicited callback (for unsolicited messages).

**Parameters:**

*npeId*    **IxNpeMhNpeId** [in] – The ID of the NPE to receive and process messages from.

This function will receive messages from a particular NPE and pass each message to the client via a solicited callback (for solicited messages) or an unsolicited callback (for unsolicited messages).

If the **IxNpeMh** component is initialised to service NPE "outFIFO not empty" interrupts (see **ixNpeMhInitialize()**) then there is no need to call this function. This function is only provided as an alternative mechanism to control the receiving and processing of messages from the NPEs.

This function will return timeout status if NPE hang / halt while receiving message. The timeout error will only occur if this function has read the first word of the message and can't read second word of the message from NPE's outFIFO after maximum retries (**IX\_NPE\_MH\_MAX\_NUM\_OF\_RETRIES**).

Note this function cannot be called from within an ISR as it will use resource protection mechanisms.

**Re-entrancy:** This function will be callable from any thread at any time. **IxOsal** will be used for any necessary resource protection.

**Returns:**

The function returns a status indicating success, failure or timeout.

```

IX_STATUS ixNpeMhMessageWithResponseSend ( IxNpeMhNpeId      npelId,
                                           IxNpeMhMessage    message,
                                           IxNpeMhMessageId solicitedMessageId,
                                           IxNpeMhCallback   solicitedCallback,
                                           UINT32              maxSendRetries
                                           )

```

This function is equivalent to the **ixNpeMhMessageSend()** function, but must be used when the message being sent will solicited a response.

**Parameters:**

<i>npelId</i>	<b>IxNpeMhNpeId</b> [in] – The ID of the NPE to send the message to.
<i>message</i>	<b>IxNpeMhMessage</b> [in] – The message to send.
<i>solicitedMessageId</i>	<b>IxNpeMhMessageId</b> [in] – The ID of the solicited response message.
<i>solicitedCallback</i>	<b>IxNpeMhCallback</b> [in] – The function to use to pass the response message back to the client. A value of NULL will cause the response message to be discarded.
<i>maxSendRetries</i>	UINT32 [in] – Max num. of retries to perform if the NPE's inFIFO is full.

This function is equivalent to the **ixNpeMhMessageSend()** function, but must be used when the message being sent will solicited a response.

The client must specify the ID of the solicited response message to allow the response to be recognised when it is received. The client must also specify a callback function to handle the received response. The **IxNpeMh** component will not offer the facility to send a message to a NPE and receive a response within the same context.

Note if the client is not interested in the response, specifying a NULL callback will cause the response message to be discarded.

The solicited callback will be stored and called some time later from an ISR that will be triggered by the NPE's "outFIFO not empty" interrupt (see **ixNpeMhInitialize()**) to handle the response message corresponding to the message sent. Response messages will be handled in the order they are received.

The inFIFO may fill up sometimes if the Xscale is sending messages faster than the NPE can handle them. This forces us to retry attempts to send the message until the NPE services the inFIFO. The client should specify a ceiling value for the number of retries suitable to their needs.

**IX\_NPEMH\_SEND\_RETRIES\_DEFAULT** can be used as a default value for the *maxSendRetries* parameter for this function. Each retry exceeding this default number will incur a blocking delay of 1 microsecond, to avoid consuming too much AHB bus bandwidth while performing retries.

This function will return timeout status if NPE hang / halt while sending message. The timeout error is not related to the *maxSendRetries* as mentioned above. The timeout error will only occur if the first word of the message has been sent to NPE (not exceeding *maxSendRetries* when sending 1st message word), but the second word of the message can't be written to NPE's inFIFO due to NPE hang / halt after maximum waiting time (**IX\_NPE\_MH\_MAX\_NUM\_OF\_RETRIES**).

**Re-entrancy:** This function will be callable from any thread at any time. IxOsal will be used for any necessary resource protection.

**Returns:**

The function returns a status indicating success or failure.

```
IX_STATUS ixNpeMhShow ( IxNpeMhNpeId npeId )
```

This function will display the current state of the IxNpeMh component.

**Re-entrancy:** This function will be callable from any thread at any time. However, no resource protection will be used so as not to impact system performance. As this function is only reading statistical information then this is acceptable.

**Parameters:**

*npeId* **IxNpeMhNpeId** [in] – The ID of the NPE to display state information for.

**Returns:**

The function returns a status indicating success or failure.

```
IX_STATUS ixNpeMhShowReset ( IxNpeMhNpeId npeId )
```

This function will reset the current state of the IxNpeMh component.

**Re-entrancy:** This function will be callable from any thread at any time. However, no resource protection will be used so as not to impact system performance. As this function is only writing statistical information then this is acceptable.

**Parameters:**

*npeId* **IxNpeMhNpeId** [in] – The ID of the NPE to reset state information for.

**Returns:**

The function returns a status indicating success or failure.

```
IX_STATUS ixNpeMhUnload ( void )
```

This function will uninitialise the IxNpeMh component.

This function will uninitialise the IxNpeMh component. It should only be called once, and only if the IxNpeMh component has already been initialised. No other IxNpeMh API functions should be called until **ixNpeMhInitialize** is called again. If possible, this function should be called before a soft reboot or unloading a kernel module to perform any clean up operations required for IxNpeMh.

The following actions will be performed by this function:

1. Unmapping of kernel memory mapped by the function **ixNpeMhInitialize**.

**Returns:**

The function returns a status indicating success or failure.

```
IX_STATUS ixNpeMhUnsolicitedCallbackForRangeRegister ( IxNpeMhNpeId      npeId,
                                                         IxNpeMhMessageId minMessageId,
                                                         IxNpeMhMessageId maxMessageId,
                                                         IxNpeMhCallback  unsolicitedCallback
                                                         )
```

This function will register an unsolicited callback for a particular NPE and range of message IDs.

**Parameters:**

<i>npeId</i>	<b>IxNpeMhNpeId</b> [in] – The ID of the NPE whose messages the unsolicited callback will handle.
<i>minMessageId</i>	<b>IxNpeMhMessageId</b> [in] – The minimum message ID in the range of message IDs the unsolicited callback will handle.
<i>maxMessageId</i>	<b>IxNpeMhMessageId</b> [in] – The maximum message ID in the range of message IDs the unsolicited callback will handle.
<i>unsolicitedCallback</i>	<b>IxNpeMhCallback</b> [in] – The unsolicited callback function. A value of NULL will deregister any previously registered callback(s) for this NPE and range of message IDs.

This function will register an unsolicited callback for a particular NPE and range of message IDs. It is a convenience function that is effectively the same as calling **ixNpeMhUnsolicitedCallbackRegister()** for each ID in the specified range. See **ixNpeMhUnsolicitedCallbackRegister()** for more information.

**Re-entrancy:** This function will be callable from any thread at any time. IxOsal will be used for any necessary resource protection.

**Returns:**

The function returns a status indicating success or failure.

```

IX_STATUS ixNpeMhUnsolicitedCallbackRegister ( IxNpeMhNpeId      npeId,
                                              IxNpeMhMessageId messageId,
                                              IxNpeMhCallback   unsolicitedCallback
                                              )

```

This function will register an unsolicited callback for a particular NPE and message ID.

**Parameters:**

*npeId*                      **IxNpeMhNpeId** [in] – The ID of the NPE whose messages the unsolicited callback will handle.

*messageId*                **IxNpeMhMessageId** [in] – The ID of the messages the unsolicited callback will handle.

*unsolicitedCallback* **IxNpeMhCallback** [in] – The unsolicited callback function. A value of NULL will deregister any previously registered callback for this NPE and message ID.

This function will register an unsolicited message callback for a particular NPE and message ID.

If an unsolicited callback is already registered for the specified NPE and message ID then the callback will be overwritten. Only one client will be responsible for handling a particular message ID associated with a NPE. Registering a NULL unsolicited callback will deregister any previously registered callback.

The callback function will be called from an ISR that will be triggered by the NPE's "outFIFO not empty" interrupt (see **ixNpeMhInitialize()**) to handle any unsolicited messages of the specific message ID received from the NPE. Unsolicited messages will be handled in the order they are received.

If no unsolicited callback can be found for a received message then it is assumed that the message is solicited.

If more than one client may be interested in a particular unsolicited message then the suggested strategy is to register a callback for the message that can itself distribute the message to multiple clients as necessary.

See also **ixNpeMhUnsolicitedCallbackForRangeRegister()**.

**Re-entrancy:** This function will be callable from any thread at any time. IxOsal will be used for any necessary resource protection.

**Returns:**

The function returns a status indicating success or failure.



# IXP400 NPE Microcode Image Library

Library containing a set of NPE firmware images, for use with NPE Downloader s/w component.

## Defines

**#define IX\_NPE\_IMAGE\_INCLUDE**

*Wrap the following Image identifiers with "#if IX\_NPE\_IMAGE\_INCLUDE ... #endif" to include the image in the library.*

**#define IX\_NPE\_IMAGE\_OMIT**

*Wrap the following Image identifiers with "#if IX\_NPE\_IMAGE\_OMIT ... #endif" to OMIT the image from the library.*

**#define IX\_NPEDL\_NPEIMAGE\_NPEA\_ATM\_MPHY\_12\_PORT**

*NPE Image Id for NPE-A with ATM-Only feature. It supports AAL5, AAL0 and OAM for UTOPIA MPHY, 12 logical ports, 32 VCs. It also has Fast Path support.*

**#define IX\_NPEDL\_NPEIMAGE\_NPEA\_HSS0**

*NPE Image Id for NPE-A with HSS-0 Only feature. It supports 32 channelized and 4 packetized.*

**#define IX\_NPEDL\_NPEIMAGE\_NPEA\_HSS0\_ATM\_SPHY\_1\_PORT**

*NPE Image Id for NPE-A with HSS-0 and ATM feature. For HSS, it supports 16/32 channelized and 4/0 packetized. For ATM, it supports AAL5, AAL0 and OAM for UTOPIA SPHY, 1 logical port, 32 VCs. It also has Fast Path support.*

**#define IX\_NPEDL\_NPEIMAGE\_NPEA\_HSS0\_ATM\_MPHY\_1\_PORT**

*NPE Image Id for NPE-A with HSS-0 and ATM feature. For HSS, it supports 16/32 channelized and 4/0 packetized. For ATM, it supports AAL5, AAL0 and OAM for UTOPIA MPHY, 1 logical port, 32 VCs. It also has Fast Path support.*

**#define IX\_NPEDL\_NPEIMAGE\_NPEA\_DMA**

*NPE Image Id for NPE-A with DMA-Only feature.*

**#define IX\_NPEDL\_NPEIMAGE\_NPEA\_HSS\_2\_PORT**

*NPE Image Id for NPE-A with HSS-0 and HSS-1 feature. Each HSS port supports 32 channelized and 4 packetized.*

**#define IX\_NPEDL\_NPEIMAGE\_NPEA\_ETH**

*NPE Image Id for NPE-A with Basic Ethernet Rx/Tx which includes: MAC\_FILTERING, MAC\_LEARNING, SPANNING\_TREE, FIREWALL.*

**#define IX\_NPEDL\_NPEIMAGE\_NPEA\_ETH\_LEARN\_FILTER\_SPAN\_FIREWALL**

*NPE Image Id for NPE-A with Basic Ethernet Rx/Tx which includes: MAC\_FILTERING, MAC\_LEARNING, SPANNING\_TREE, FIREWALL.*

**#define IX\_NPEDL\_NPEIMAGE\_NPEA\_ETH\_LEARN\_FILTER\_SPAN\_FIREWALL\_VLAN\_QOS**

*NPE Image Id for NPE-A with Ethernet Rx/Tx which includes: MAC\_FILTERING, MAC\_LEARNING, SPANNING\_TREE, FIREWALL, VLAN\_QOS.*

**#define IX\_NPEDL\_NPEIMAGE\_NPEA\_ETH\_SPAN\_FIREWALL\_VLAN\_QOS\_HDR\_CONV**

*NPE Image Id for NPE-A with Ethernet Rx/Tx which includes: SPANNING\_TREE, FIREWALL, VLAN\_QOS, HDR\_CONV.*

## *HEADER\_CONVERSION.*

**#define IX\_NPEDL\_NPEIMAGE\_NPEA\_HSS\_TSLOT\_SWITCH**

*NPE Image Id for NPE–A with HSS–0 and timeslot switching feature. It supports 32 channelized and 4 packed HSS–0 as well.*

**#define IX\_NPEDL\_NPEIMAGE\_NPEA\_ETH\_LEARN\_FILTER\_SPAN\_MASK\_FIREWALL\_VLAN\_QOS**

*NPE Image Id for NPE–A with Basic Ethernet Rx/Tx which includes: MAC\_FILTERING, MAC\_LEARNING, SPANNING\_TREE, MASK\_BASED\_FIREWALL, VLAN\_QOS, EXTENDED MIBII.*

**#define IX\_NPEDL\_NPEIMAGE\_NPEA\_ETH\_SPAN\_VLAN\_QOS\_HDR\_CONV\_EXTMIB**

*NPE Image Id for NPE–A with Basic Ethernet Rx/Tx which includes: SPANNING\_TREE, VLAN\_QOS, HEADER\_CONVERSION, EXTENDED MIBII.*

**#define IX\_NPEDL\_NPEIMAGE\_NPEA\_ETH\_SPAN\_MASK\_FIREWALL\_VLAN\_QOS\_HDR\_CONV\_EXT**

*NPE Image Id for NPE–A with Basic Ethernet Rx/Tx which includes: SPANNING\_TREE, MASK\_BASED\_FIREWALL, VLAN\_QOS, HEADER\_CONVERSION, EXTENDED MIBII.*

**#define IX\_NPEDL\_NPEIMAGE\_NPEA\_ETH\_MACFILTERLEARN\_HSSCHAN\_COEXIST**

*NPE Image Id for NPE–A with HSS–0 and Ethernet (with MAC filter/learn) feature.*

**#define IX\_NPEDL\_NPEIMAGE\_NPEA\_ETH\_HDRCONV\_HSSCHAN\_COEXIST**

*NPE Image Id for NPE–A with HSS–0 and Ethernet (with header conversion) feature.*

**#define IX\_NPEDL\_NPEIMAGE\_NPEA\_HSS0\_ATM\_MPHY\_4\_PORT**

*NPE Image Id for NPE–A with ATM MPHY 4 Ports and HSS Channelized Service (with HSS Bypass) feature.*

**#define IX\_NPEDL\_NPEIMAGE\_NPEB\_ETH**

*NPE Image Id for NPE–B with Basic Ethernet Rx/Tx which includes: MAC\_FILTERING, MAC\_LEARNING, SPANNING\_TREE, FIREWALL.*

**#define IX\_NPEDL\_NPEIMAGE\_NPEB\_ETH\_LEARN\_FILTER\_SPAN\_FIREWALL**

*NPE Image Id for NPE–B with Basic Ethernet Rx/Tx which includes: MAC\_FILTERING, MAC\_LEARNING, SPANNING\_TREE, FIREWALL.*

**#define IX\_NPEDL\_NPEIMAGE\_NPEB\_ETH\_LEARN\_FILTER\_SPAN\_FIREWALL\_VLAN\_QOS**

*NPE Image Id for NPE–B with Ethernet Rx/Tx which includes: MAC\_FILTERING, MAC\_LEARNING, SPANNING\_TREE, FIREWALL, VLAN\_QOS.*

**#define IX\_NPEDL\_NPEIMAGE\_NPEB\_ETH\_SPAN\_FIREWALL\_VLAN\_QOS\_HDR\_CONV**

*NPE Image Id for NPE–B with Ethernet Rx/Tx which includes: SPANNING\_TREE, FIREWALL, VLAN\_QOS, HEADER\_CONVERSION.*

**#define IX\_NPEDL\_NPEIMAGE\_NPEB\_DMA**

*NPE Image Id for NPE–B with DMA–Only feature.*

**#define IX\_NPEDL\_NPEIMAGE\_NPEB\_ETH\_LEARN\_FILTER\_SPAN\_MASK\_FIREWALL\_VLAN\_QOS**

*NPE Image Id for NPE–B with Basic Ethernet Rx/Tx which includes: MAC\_FILTERING, MAC\_LEARNING, SPANNING\_TREE, MASK\_BASED\_FIREWALL, VLAN\_QOS, EXTENDED MIBII.*

**#define IX\_NPEDL\_NPEIMAGE\_NPEB\_ETH\_SPAN\_VLAN\_QOS\_HDR\_CONV\_EXTMIB**

*NPE Image Id for NPE–B with Basic Ethernet Rx/Tx which includes: SPANNING\_TREE, VLAN\_QOS, HEADER\_CONVERSION, EXTENDED MIBII.*

**#define IX\_NPEDL\_NPEIMAGE\_NPEB\_ETH\_SPAN\_MASK\_FIREWALL\_VLAN\_QOS\_HDR\_CONV\_EXT**  
*NPE Image Id for NPE–B with Basic Ethernet Rx/Tx which includes: SPANNING\_TREE, MASK\_BASED\_FIREWALL, VLAN\_QOS, HEADER\_CONVERSION, EXTENDED MIBII.*

**#define IX\_NPEDL\_NPEIMAGE\_NPEC\_ETH**  
*NPE Image Id for NPE–C with Basic Ethernet Rx/Tx which includes: MAC\_FILTERING, MAC\_LEARNING, SPANNING\_TREE, FIREWALL.*

**#define IX\_NPEDL\_NPEIMAGE\_NPEC\_ETH\_LEARN\_FILTER\_SPAN\_FIREWALL**  
*NPE Image Id for NPE–C with Basic Ethernet Rx/Tx which includes: MAC\_FILTERING, MAC\_LEARNING, SPANNING\_TREE, FIREWALL.*

**#define IX\_NPEDL\_NPEIMAGE\_NPEC\_ETH\_LEARN\_FILTER\_SPAN\_FIREWALL\_VLAN\_QOS**  
*NPE Image Id for NPE–C with Ethernet Rx/Tx which includes: MAC\_FILTERING, MAC\_LEARNING, SPANNING\_TREE, FIREWALL, VLAN\_QOS.*

**#define IX\_NPEDL\_NPEIMAGE\_NPEC\_ETH\_SPAN\_FIREWALL\_VLAN\_QOS\_HDR\_CONV**  
*NPE Image Id for NPE–C with Ethernet Rx/Tx which includes: SPANNING\_TREE, FIREWALL, VLAN\_QOS, HEADER\_CONVERSION.*

**#define IX\_NPEDL\_NPEIMAGE\_NPEA\_WEP**  
*NPE Image Id for NPE–A with ARC4 and WEP CRC engines.*

**#define IX\_NPEDL\_NPEIMAGE\_NPEC\_CRYPT0\_ETH\_LEARN\_FILTER\_SPAN\_FIREWALL**  
*NPE Image Id for NPE–C with Crypto and Basic Ethernet Rx/Tx which includes: MAC\_FILTERING, MAC\_LEARNING, SPANNING\_TREE, FIREWALL.*

**#define IX\_NPEDL\_NPEIMAGE\_NPEC\_CRYPT0\_AES\_CCM\_ETH**  
*NPE Image Id for NPE–C with AES and CCM Crypto and Basic Ethernet Rx/Tx.*

**#define IX\_NPEDL\_NPEIMAGE\_NPEC\_CRYPT0\_AES\_CCM\_EXTSHA\_ETH**  
*NPE Image Id for NPE–C with AES, CCM and all Hashing (incl. SHA–256/384/512) Crypto and Basic Ethernet Rx/Tx.*

**#define IX\_NPEDL\_NPEIMAGE\_NPEC\_CRYPT0\_AES\_ETH\_LEARN\_FILTER\_FIREWALL**  
*NPE Image Id for NPE–C with AES Crypto and Basic Ethernet Rx/Tx which includes: MAC\_FILTERING, MAC\_LEARNING, FIREWALL.*

**#define IX\_NPEDL\_NPEIMAGE\_NPEC\_CRYPT0\_AES\_ETH\_LEARN\_FILTER\_SPAN**  
*NPE Image Id for NPE–C with AES Crypto and Basic Ethernet Rx/Tx which includes: MAC\_FILTERING, MAC\_LEARNING, SPANNING\_TREE.*

**#define IX\_NPEDL\_NPEIMAGE\_NPEC\_DMA**  
*NPE Image Id for NPE–C with DMA–Only feature.*

**#define IX\_NPEDL\_NPEIMAGE\_NPEC\_ETH\_LEARN\_FILTER\_SPAN\_MASK\_FIREWALL\_VLAN\_QOS\_EXT**  
*NPE Image Id for NPE–C with Basic Ethernet Rx/Tx which includes: MAC\_FILTERING, MAC\_LEARNING, SPANNING\_TREE, MASK\_BASED\_FIREWALL, VLAN\_QOS, EXTENDED MIBII.*

```
#define IX_NPEDL_NPEIMAGE_NPEC_ETH_SPAN_VLAN_QOS_HDR_CONV_EXTMIB
    NPE Image Id for NPE–C with Basic Ethernet Rx/Tx which includes: SPANNING_TREE, VLAN_QOS,
    HEADER_CONVERSION, EXTENDED MIBII.

#define IX_NPEDL_NPEIMAGE_NPEC_ETH_SPAN_MASK_FIREWALL_VLAN_QOS_HDR_CONV_EXT
    NPE Image Id for NPE–C with Basic Ethernet Rx/Tx which includes: SPANNING_TREE, MASK_BASED_FL
    VLAN_QOS, HEADER_CONVERSION, EXTENDED MIBII.

#define IX_NPE_MICROCODE_AVAILABLE_VERSIONS_COUNT
```

---

## Detailed Description

Library containing a set of NPE firmware images, for use with NPE Downloader s/w component.

---

## Define Documentation

```
#define IX_NPE_IMAGE_INCLUDE
```

Wrap the following Image identifiers with "#if IX\_NPE\_IMAGE\_INCLUDE ... #endif" to include the image in the library.

Definition at line **29** of file **IxNpeMicrocode.h**.

```
#define IX_NPE_IMAGE_OMIT
```

Wrap the following Image identifiers with "#if IX\_NPE\_IMAGE\_OMIT ... #endif" to OMIT the image from the library.

Definition at line **36** of file **IxNpeMicrocode.h**.

```
#define IX_NPEDL_NPEIMAGE_NPEA_ATM_MPHY_12_PORT
```

NPE Image Id for NPE–A with ATM–Only feature. It supports AAL5, AAL0 and OAM for UTOPIA MPHY, 12 logical ports, 32 VCs. It also has Fast Path support.

Definition at line **45** of file **IxNpeMicrocode.h**.

```
#define IX_NPEDL_NPEIMAGE_NPEA_DMA
```

NPE Image Id for NPE–A with DMA–Only feature.

Definition at line **81** of file **IxNpeMicrocode.h**.

```
#define IX_NPEDL_NPEIMAGE_NPEA_ETH
```

NPE Image Id for NPE–A with Basic Ethernet Rx/Tx which includes: MAC\_FILTERING, MAC\_LEARNING, SPANNING\_TREE, FIREWALL.

Definition at line **99** of file **IxNpeMicrocode.h**.

```
#define IX_NPEDL_NPEIMAGE_NPEA_ETH_HDRCONV_HSSCHAN_COEXIST
```

NPE Image Id for NPE–A with HSS–0 and Ethernet (with header conversion) feature.

Definition at line **180** of file **IxNpeMicrocode.h**.

```
#define IX_NPEDL_NPEIMAGE_NPEA_ETH_LEARN_FILTER_SPAN_FIREWALL
```

NPE Image Id for NPE–A with Basic Ethernet Rx/Tx which includes: MAC\_FILTERING, MAC\_LEARNING, SPANNING\_TREE, FIREWALL.

Definition at line **108** of file **IxNpeMicrocode.h**.

```
#define IX_NPEDL_NPEIMAGE_NPEA_ETH_LEARN_FILTER_SPAN_FIREWALL_VLAN_QOS
```

NPE Image Id for NPE–A with Ethernet Rx/Tx which includes: MAC\_FILTERING, MAC\_LEARNING, SPANNING\_TREE, FIREWALL, VLAN\_QOS.

Definition at line **117** of file **IxNpeMicrocode.h**.

```
#define  
IX_NPEDL_NPEIMAGE_NPEA_ETH_LEARN_FILTER_SPAN_MASK_FIREWALL_VLAN_QOS_EXTMIB
```

NPE Image Id for NPE–A with Basic Ethernet Rx/Tx which includes: MAC\_FILTERING, MAC\_LEARNING, SPANNING\_TREE, MASK\_BASED\_FIREWALL, VLAN\_QOS, EXTENDED MIBII.

Definition at line **144** of file **IxNpeMicrocode.h**.

```
#define IX_NPEDL_NPEIMAGE_NPEA_ETH_MACFILTERLEARN_HSSCHAN_COEXIST
```

NPE Image Id for NPE–A with HSS–0 and Ethernet (with MAC filter/learn) feature.

Definition at line **171** of file **IxNpeMicrocode.h**.

```
#define IX_NPEDL_NPEIMAGE_NPEA_ETH_SPAN_FIREWALL_VLAN_QOS_HDR_CONV
```

NPE Image Id for NPE-A with Ethernet Rx/Tx which includes: SPANNING\_TREE, FIREWALL, VLAN\_QOS, HEADER\_CONVERSION.

Definition at line **126** of file **IxNpeMicrocode.h**.

```
#define  
IX_NPEDL_NPEIMAGE_NPEA_ETH_SPAN_MASK_FIREWALL_VLAN_QOS_HDR_CONV_EXTMIB
```

NPE Image Id for NPE-A with Basic Ethernet Rx/Tx which includes: SPANNING\_TREE, MASK\_BASED\_FIREWALL, VLAN\_QOS, HEADER\_CONVERSION, EXTENDED MIBII.

Definition at line **162** of file **IxNpeMicrocode.h**.

```
#define IX_NPEDL_NPEIMAGE_NPEA_ETH_SPAN_VLAN_QOS_HDR_CONV_EXTMIB
```

NPE Image Id for NPE-A with Basic Ethernet Rx/Tx which includes: SPANNING\_TREE, VLAN\_QOS, HEADER\_CONVERSION, EXTENDED MIBII.

Definition at line **153** of file **IxNpeMicrocode.h**.

```
#define IX_NPEDL_NPEIMAGE_NPEA_HSS0
```

NPE Image Id for NPE-A with HSS-0 Only feature. It supports 32 channelized and 4 packetized.

Definition at line **54** of file **IxNpeMicrocode.h**.

```
#define IX_NPEDL_NPEIMAGE_NPEA_HSS0_ATM_MPHY_1_PORT
```

NPE Image Id for NPE-A with HSS-0 and ATM feature. For HSS, it supports 16/32 channelized and 4/0 packetized. For ATM, it supports AAL5, AAL0 and OAM for UTOPIA MPHY, 1 logical port, 32 VCs. It also has Fast Path support.

Definition at line **72** of file **IxNpeMicrocode.h**.

```
#define IX_NPEDL_NPEIMAGE_NPEA_HSS0_ATM_MPHY_4_PORT
```

NPE Image Id for NPE-A with ATM MPHY 4 Ports and HSS Channelized Service (with HSS Bypass) feature.

Definition at line **189** of file **IxNpeMicrocode.h**.

```
#define IX_NPEDL_NPEIMAGE_NPEA_HSS0_ATM_SPHY_1_PORT
```

NPE Image Id for NPE–A with HSS–0 and ATM feature. For HSS, it supports 16/32 channelized and 4/0 packetized. For ATM, it supports AAL5, AAL0 and OAM for UTOPIA SPHY, 1 logical port, 32 VCs. It also has Fast Path support.

Definition at line **63** of file **IxNpeMicrocode.h**.

```
#define IX_NPEDL_NPEIMAGE_NPEA_HSS_2_PORT
```

NPE Image Id for NPE–A with HSS–0 and HSS–1 feature. Each HSS port supports 32 channelized and 4 packetized.

Definition at line **90** of file **IxNpeMicrocode.h**.

```
#define IX_NPEDL_NPEIMAGE_NPEA_HSS_TSLOT_SWITCH
```

NPE Image Id for NPE–A with HSS–0 and timeslot switching feature. It supports 32 channelized and 4 packetized on HSS–0 as well.

Definition at line **135** of file **IxNpeMicrocode.h**.

```
#define IX_NPEDL_NPEIMAGE_NPEA_WEP
```

NPE Image Id for NPE–A with ARC4 and WEP CRC engines.

Definition at line **306** of file **IxNpeMicrocode.h**.

```
#define IX_NPEDL_NPEIMAGE_NPEB_DMA
```

NPE Image Id for NPE–B with DMA–Only feature.

Definition at line **234** of file **IxNpeMicrocode.h**.

```
#define IX_NPEDL_NPEIMAGE_NPEB_ETH
```

NPE Image Id for NPE–B with Basic Ethernet Rx/Tx which includes: MAC\_FILTERING, MAC\_LEARNING, SPANNING\_TREE, FIREWALL.

Definition at line **198** of file **IxNpeMicrocode.h**.

```
#define IX_NPEDL_NPEIMAGE_NPEB_ETH_LEARN_FILTER_SPAN_FIREWALL
```

NPE Image Id for NPE-B with Basic Ethernet Rx/Tx which includes: MAC\_FILTERING, MAC\_LEARNING, SPANNING\_TREE, FIREWALL.

Definition at line **207** of file **IxNpeMicrocode.h**.

```
#define IX_NPEDL_NPEIMAGE_NPEB_ETH_LEARN_FILTER_SPAN_FIREWALL_VLAN_QOS
```

NPE Image Id for NPE-B with Ethernet Rx/Tx which includes: MAC\_FILTERING, MAC\_LEARNING, SPANNING\_TREE, FIREWALL, VLAN\_QOS.

Definition at line **216** of file **IxNpeMicrocode.h**.

```
#define  
IX_NPEDL_NPEIMAGE_NPEB_ETH_LEARN_FILTER_SPAN_MASK_FIREWALL_VLAN_QOS_EXTMIB
```

NPE Image Id for NPE-B with Basic Ethernet Rx/Tx which includes: MAC\_FILTERING, MAC\_LEARNING, SPANNING\_TREE, MASK\_BASED\_FIREWALL, VLAN\_QOS, EXTENDED MIBII.

Definition at line **243** of file **IxNpeMicrocode.h**.

```
#define IX_NPEDL_NPEIMAGE_NPEB_ETH_SPAN_FIREWALL_VLAN_QOS_HDR_CONV
```

NPE Image Id for NPE-B with Ethernet Rx/Tx which includes: SPANNING\_TREE, FIREWALL, VLAN\_QOS, HEADER\_CONVERSION.

Definition at line **225** of file **IxNpeMicrocode.h**.

```
#define  
IX_NPEDL_NPEIMAGE_NPEB_ETH_SPAN_MASK_FIREWALL_VLAN_QOS_HDR_CONV_EXTMIB
```

NPE Image Id for NPE-B with Basic Ethernet Rx/Tx which includes: SPANNING\_TREE, MASK\_BASED\_FIREWALL, VLAN\_QOS, HEADER\_CONVERSION, EXTENDED MIBII.

Definition at line **261** of file **IxNpeMicrocode.h**.

```
#define IX_NPEDL_NPEIMAGE_NPEB_ETH_SPAN_VLAN_QOS_HDR_CONV_EXTMIB
```

NPE Image Id for NPE-B with Basic Ethernet Rx/Tx which includes: SPANNING\_TREE, VLAN\_QOS, HEADER\_CONVERSION, EXTENDED MIBII.

Definition at line **252** of file **IxNpeMicrocode.h**.



```
#define IX_NPEDL_NPEIMAGE_NPEC_CRYPT0_AES_CCM_ETH
```

NPE Image Id for NPE–C with AES and CCM Crypto and Basic Ethernet Rx/Tx.

Definition at line **324** of file **IxNpeMicrocode.h**.

```
#define IX_NPEDL_NPEIMAGE_NPEC_CRYPT0_AES_CCM_EXTSHA_ETH
```

NPE Image Id for NPE–C with AES, CCM and all Hashing (incl. SHA–256/384/512) Crypto and Basic Ethernet Rx/Tx.

Definition at line **333** of file **IxNpeMicrocode.h**.

```
#define IX_NPEDL_NPEIMAGE_NPEC_CRYPT0_AES_ETH_LEARN_FILTER_FIREWALL
```

NPE Image Id for NPE–C with AES Crypto and Basic Ethernet Rx/Tx which includes: MAC\_FILTERING, MAC\_LEARNING, FIREWALL.

Definition at line **342** of file **IxNpeMicrocode.h**.

```
#define IX_NPEDL_NPEIMAGE_NPEC_CRYPT0_AES_ETH_LEARN_FILTER_SPAN
```

NPE Image Id for NPE–C with AES Crypto and Basic Ethernet Rx/Tx which includes: MAC\_FILTERING, MAC\_LEARNING, SPANNING\_TREE.

Definition at line **351** of file **IxNpeMicrocode.h**.

```
#define IX_NPEDL_NPEIMAGE_NPEC_CRYPT0_ETH_LEARN_FILTER_SPAN_FIREWALL
```

NPE Image Id for NPE–C with Crypto and Basic Ethernet Rx/Tx which includes: MAC\_FILTERING, MAC\_LEARNING, SPANNING\_TREE, FIREWALL.

Definition at line **315** of file **IxNpeMicrocode.h**.

```
#define IX_NPEDL_NPEIMAGE_NPEC_DMA
```

NPE Image Id for NPE–C with DMA–Only feature.

Definition at line **360** of file **IxNpeMicrocode.h**.

```
#define IX_NPEDL_NPEIMAGE_NPEC_ETH
```

NPE Image Id for NPE–C with Basic Ethernet Rx/Tx which includes: MAC\_FILTERING, MAC\_LEARNING, SPANNING\_TREE, FIREWALL.

Definition at line **270** of file **IxNpeMicrocode.h**.

```
#define IX_NPEDL_NPEIMAGE_NPEC_ETH_LEARN_FILTER_SPAN_FIREWALL
```

NPE Image Id for NPE–C with Basic Ethernet Rx/Tx which includes: MAC\_FILTERING, MAC\_LEARNING, SPANNING\_TREE, FIREWALL.

Definition at line **279** of file **IxNpeMicrocode.h**.

```
#define IX_NPEDL_NPEIMAGE_NPEC_ETH_LEARN_FILTER_SPAN_FIREWALL_VLAN_QOS
```

NPE Image Id for NPE–C with Ethernet Rx/Tx which includes: MAC\_FILTERING, MAC\_LEARNING, SPANNING\_TREE, FIREWALL, VLAN\_QOS.

Definition at line **288** of file **IxNpeMicrocode.h**.

```
#define  
IX_NPEDL_NPEIMAGE_NPEC_ETH_LEARN_FILTER_SPAN_MASK_FIREWALL_VLAN_QOS_EXTMIB
```

NPE Image Id for NPE–C with Basic Ethernet Rx/Tx which includes: MAC\_FILTERING, MAC\_LEARNING, SPANNING\_TREE, MASK\_BASED\_FIREWALL, VLAN\_QOS, EXTENDED MIBII.

Definition at line **369** of file **IxNpeMicrocode.h**.

```
#define IX_NPEDL_NPEIMAGE_NPEC_ETH_SPAN_FIREWALL_VLAN_QOS_HDR_CONV
```

NPE Image Id for NPE–C with Ethernet Rx/Tx which includes: SPANNING\_TREE, FIREWALL, VLAN\_QOS, HEADER\_CONVERSION.

Definition at line **297** of file **IxNpeMicrocode.h**.

```
#define  
IX_NPEDL_NPEIMAGE_NPEC_ETH_SPAN_MASK_FIREWALL_VLAN_QOS_HDR_CONV_EXTMIB
```

NPE Image Id for NPE–C with Basic Ethernet Rx/Tx which includes: SPANNING\_TREE, MASK\_BASED\_FIREWALL, VLAN\_QOS, HEADER\_CONVERSION, EXTENDED MIBII.

Definition at line **387** of file **IxNpeMicrocode.h**.

```
#define IX_NPEDL_NPEIMAGE_NPEC_ETH_SPAN_VLAN_QOS_HDR_CONV_EXTMIB
```

NPE Image Id for NPE-C with Basic Ethernet Rx/Tx which includes: SPANNING\_TREE, VLAN\_QOS, HEADER\_CONVERSION, EXTENDED MIBII.

Definition at line **378** of file **IxNpeMicrocode.h**.

# Intel (R) IXP400 Software Parity Error Notifier (IxParityENAcc) API

The public API for the Parity Error Notifier.

## Data Structures

struct **IxParityENAccAHBErrorTransaction**

*The Master and Slave on the AHB bus interface whose transaction might have resulted in the parity error notification to Intel XScale(R) Processor.*

struct **IxParityENAccAHBErrorTransaction**

*The Master and Slave on the AHB bus interface whose transaction might have resulted in the parity error notification to Intel XScale(R) Processor.*

struct **IxParityENAccAHBErrorTransaction**

*The Master and Slave on the AHB bus interface whose transaction might have resulted in the parity error notification to Intel XScale(R) Processor.*

struct **IxParityENAccEbcConfig**

*Expansion Bus Controller parity detection is to be enabled or disabled.*

struct **IxParityENAccEbcConfig**

*Expansion Bus Controller parity detection is to be enabled or disabled.*

struct **IxParityENAccEbcConfig**

*Expansion Bus Controller parity detection is to be enabled or disabled.*

struct **IxParityENAccEbcParityErrorStats**

*Expansion Bus Controller parity error statistics.*

struct **IxParityENAccEbcParityErrorStats**

*Expansion Bus Controller parity error statistics.*

struct **IxParityENAccEbcParityErrorStats**

*Expansion Bus Controller parity error statistics.*

struct **IxParityENAccHWParityConfig**

*Parity error configuration of the Hardware Blocks.*

struct **IxParityENAccHWParityConfig**

*Parity error configuration of the Hardware Blocks.*

struct **IxParityENAccHWParityConfig**

*Parity error configuration of the Hardware Blocks.*

struct **IxParityENAccMcuConfig**

*MCU pairty detection is to be enabled/disabled.*

struct **IxParityENAccMcuConfig**  
*MCU pairty detection is to be enabled/disabled.*

struct **IxParityENAccMcuConfig**  
*MCU pairty detection is to be enabled/disabled.*

struct **IxParityENAccMcuParityErrorStats**  
*DDR Memory Control Unit parity error statistics.*

struct **IxParityENAccMcuParityErrorStats**  
*DDR Memory Control Unit parity error statistics.*

struct **IxParityENAccMcuParityErrorStats**  
*DDR Memory Control Unit parity error statistics.*

struct **IxParityENAccNpeConfig**  
*NPE parity detection is to be enabled/disabled.*

struct **IxParityENAccNpeConfig**  
*NPE parity detection is to be enabled/disabled.*

struct **IxParityENAccNpeConfig**  
*NPE parity detection is to be enabled/disabled.*

struct **IxParityENAccNpeParityErrorStats**  
*NPE parity error statistics.*

struct **IxParityENAccNpeParityErrorStats**  
*NPE parity error statistics.*

struct **IxParityENAccNpeParityErrorStats**  
*NPE parity error statistics.*

struct **IxParityENAccParityErrorContextMessage**  
*Parity Error Context Message.*

struct **IxParityENAccParityErrorContextMessage**  
*Parity Error Context Message.*

struct **IxParityENAccParityErrorContextMessage**  
*Parity Error Context Message.*

struct **IxParityENAccParityErrorStats**  
*Parity Error Statistics for the all the hardware blocks.*

struct **IxParityENAccParityErrorStats**  
*Parity Error Statistics for the all the hardware blocks.*

struct **IxParityENAccParityErrorStats**

*Parity Error Statistics for the all the hardware blocks.*

struct **IxParityENAccPbcConfig**  
*PCI Bus Controller parity detection is to be enabled or disabled.*

struct **IxParityENAccPbcConfig**  
*PCI Bus Controller parity detection is to be enabled or disabled.*

struct **IxParityENAccPbcConfig**  
*PCI Bus Controller parity detection is to be enabled or disabled.*

struct **IxParityENAccPbcParityErrorStats**  
*PCI Bus Controller parity error statistics.*

struct **IxParityENAccPbcParityErrorStats**  
*PCI Bus Controller parity error statistics.*

struct **IxParityENAccPbcParityErrorStats**  
*PCI Bus Controller parity error statistics.*

## Typedefs

typedef UINT32 **IxParityENAccParityErrorAddress**  
*The memory location which has parity error.*

typedef UINT32 **IxParityENAccParityErrorData**  
*The data read from the memory location which has parity error.*

typedef void(\* **IxParityENAccCallback** )(void)  
*This prototype shows the format of a callback function.*

## Enumerations

enum **IxParityENAccStatus** {  
    **IX\_PARITYENACC\_SUCCESS**,  
    **IX\_PARITYENACC\_INVALID\_PARAMETERS**,  
    **IX\_PARITYENACC\_NOT\_INITIALISED**,  
    **IX\_PARITYENACC\_ALREADY\_INITIALISED**,  
    **IX\_PARITYENACC\_OPERATION\_FAILED**,  
    **IX\_PARITYENACC\_NO\_PARITY**  
}  
*The status as returned from the API.*

enum **IxParityENAccParityType** {  
    **IX\_PARITYENACC\_EVEN\_PARITY**,  
    **IX\_PARITYENACC\_ODD\_PARITY**  
}

*Odd or Even Parity Type.*

```
enum IxParityENAccConfigOption {  
    IX_PARITYENACC_DISABLE,  
    IX_PARITYENACC_ENABLE  
}
```

*The parity error enable/disable configuration option.*

```
enum IxParityENAccParityErrorSource {  
    IX_PARITYENACC_NPE_A_IMEM,  
    IX_PARITYENACC_NPE_A_DMEM,  
    IX_PARITYENACC_NPE_A_EXT,  
    IX_PARITYENACC_NPE_B_IMEM,  
    IX_PARITYENACC_NPE_B_DMEM,  
    IX_PARITYENACC_NPE_B_EXT,  
    IX_PARITYENACC_NPE_C_IMEM,  
    IX_PARITYENACC_NPE_C_DMEM,  
    IX_PARITYENACC_NPE_C_EXT,  
    IX_PARITYENACC_SWCP,  
    IX_PARITYENACC_AQM,  
    IX_PARITYENACC_MCU_SBIT,  
    IX_PARITYENACC_MCU_MBIT,  
    IX_PARITYENACC_MCU_OVERFLOW,  
    IX_PARITYENACC_PBC_INITIATOR,  
    IX_PARITYENACC_PBC_TARGET,  
    IX_PARITYENACC_EBC_CS,  
    IX_PARITYENACC_EBC_EXTMST  
}
```

*The source of the parity error notification.*

```
enum IxParityENAccParityErrorAccess {  
    IX_PARITYENACC_READ,  
    IX_PARITYENACC_WRITE  
}
```

*The type of access resulting in parity error.*

```
enum IxParityENAccParityErrorRequester {  
    IX_PARITYENACC_MPI,  
    IX_PARITYENACC_AHB_BUS  
}
```

*The requester interface through which the SDRAM memory access resulted in the parity error.*

```
enum IxParityENAccAHBErrorMaster {  
    IX_PARITYENACC_AHBN_MST_NPE_A,  
    IX_PARITYENACC_AHBN_MST_NPE_B,  
    IX_PARITYENACC_AHBN_MST_NPE_C,  
    IX_PARITYENACC_AHBS_MST_XSCALE,  
    IX_PARITYENACC_AHBS_MST_PBC,  
    IX_PARITYENACC_AHBS_MST_EBC,  
    IX_PARITYENACC_AHBS_MST_AHB_BRIDGE,  
}
```

```
IX_PARITYENACC_AHBS_MST_USBH
}
```

*The Master on the AHB bus interface whose transaction might have resulted in the parity error notification to Intel XScale(R) Processor.*

```
enum IxParityENAccAHBErrorSlave {
    IX_PARITYENACC_AHBN_SLV_MCU,
    IX_PARITYENACC_AHBN_SLV_AHB_BRIDGE,
    IX_PARITYENACC_AHBS_SLV_MCU,
    IX_PARITYENACC_AHBS_SLV_APB_BRIDGE,
    IX_PARITYENACC_AHBS_SLV_AQM,
    IX_PARITYENACC_AHBS_SLV_RSA,
    IX_PARITYENACC_AHBS_SLV_PBC,
    IX_PARITYENACC_AHBS_SLV_EBC,
    IX_PARITYENACC_AHBS_SLV_USBH
}
```

*The Slave on the AHB bus interface whose transaction might have resulted in the parity error notification to Intel XScale(R) Processor.*

## Functions

PUBLIC

**IxParityENAccStatus IxParityENAccInit** (void)

*This function will initialise the IxParityENAcc component.*

PUBLIC**IxParityENAccCallbackRegister** (IxParityENAccCallback

**IxParityENAccStatus** parityErrNfyCallBack)

*This function will register a new callback with IxParityENAcc component. It can also reregister a new callback replacing the old callback.*

PUBLIC**IxParityENAccParityDetectionConfigure** (const

**IxParityENAccStatus IxParityENAccHWParityConfig** \*hwParityConfig)

*This interface allows the client application to enable the parity error detection on the underlying hardware block.*

PUBLIC**IxParityENAccParityDetectionQuery** (IxParityENAccHWParityConfig \*const

**IxParityENAccStatus** hwParityConfig)

*This interface allows the client application to determine the status of the parity error detection on the specified hardware blocks.*

PUBLIC**IxParityENAccParityErrorContextGet**

**IxParityENAccStatus** (IxParityENAccParityErrorMessage \*const pecMessage)

*This interface allows the client application to determine the status of the parity error context on hardware block for which the current parity error interrupt triggered.*

PUBLIC**IxParityENAccParityErrorInterruptClear** (const

**IxParityENAccStatus IxParityENAccParityErrorMessage** \*pecMessage)

*This interface helps the client application to clear off the interrupt condition on the hardware block identified in the parity error context message. Please refer to the*



table below as the operation varies depending on the interrupt source.

**PUBLIC**  
**IxParityENAccStatsGet** (**IxParityENAccParityErrorStats** \*const  
**IxParityENAccStatus** ixParityErrorStats)  
*This interface allows the client application to retrieve parity error statistics for all the hardware blocks.*

**PUBLIC**  
**IxParityENAccStatus** **IxParityENAccStatsShow** (void)  
*This interface allows the client application to print all the parity error statistics.*

**PUBLIC**  
**IxParityENAccStatus** **IxParityENAccStatsReset** (void)  
*This interface allows the client application to reset all the parity error statistics.*

**PUBLIC**  
**IxParityENAccStatus** **IxParityENAccParityNPEConfigReUpdate** (UINT32 npeID)  
*This interface allows the client to restore and update the NPE Error enabling configuration.*

**PUBLIC**  
**IxParityENAccNPEParityErrorCheck** (UINT32 npeID,  
**IxParityENAccStatus** **IxParityENAccParityErrorMessage** \*const pecMessage)  
*This interface allows the client to check for any NPE Error status.*

---

## Detailed Description

The public API for the Parity Error Notifier.

---

## Typedef Documentation

### IxParityENAccCallback

This prototype shows the format of a callback function.

The callback will be used to notify the parity error to the client application. The callback will be registered by **IxParityENAccCallbackRegister**.

It will be called from an ISR when a parity error is detected and thus needs to follow the interrupt callable function conventions.

Definition at line **418** of file **IxParityENAcc.h**.

### IxParityENAccParityErrorAddress

The memory location which has parity error.

Definition at line **290** of file **IxParityENAcc.h**.

**IxParityENAccParityErrorData**

The data read from the memory location which has parity error.

Definition at line **299** of file **IxParityENAcc.h**.

---

## Enumeration Type Documentation

**enum IxParityENAccAHBErrorMaster**

The Master on the AHB bus interface whose transaction might have resulted in the parity error notification to Intel XScale(R) Processor.

### *Enumeration values:*

<i>IX_PARITYENACC_AHBN_MST_NPE_A</i>	NPE – A.
<i>IX_PARITYENACC_AHBN_MST_NPE_B</i>	NPE – B.
<i>IX_PARITYENACC_AHBN_MST_NPE_C</i>	NPE – C.
<i>IX_PARITYENACC_AHBS_MST_XSCALE</i>	Intel XScale(R) Processor Bus Interface Unit.
<i>IX_PARITYENACC_AHBS_MST_PBC</i>	PCI Bus Controller.
<i>IX_PARITYENACC_AHBS_MST_EBC</i>	Expansion Bus Controller.
<i>IX_PARITYENACC_AHBS_MST_AHB_BRIDGE</i>	AHB Bridge.
<i>IX_PARITYENACC_AHBS_MST_USBH</i>	USB Host Controller.

Definition at line **323** of file **IxParityENAcc.h**.

**enum IxParityENAccAHBErrorSlave**

The Slave on the AHB bus interface whose transaction might have resulted in the parity error notification to Intel XScale(R) Processor.

### *Enumeration values:*

<i>IX_PARITYENACC_AHBN_SLV_MCU</i>	Memory Control Unit.
<i>IX_PARITYENACC_AHBN_SLV_AHB_BRIDGE</i>	AHB Bridge.
<i>IX_PARITYENACC_AHBS_SLV_MCU</i>	Intel XScale(R) Processor Bus Interface Unit.
<i>IX_PARITYENACC_AHBS_SLV_APB_BRIDGE</i>	APB Bridge.
<i>IX_PARITYENACC_AHBS_SLV_AQM</i>	AQM.
<i>IX_PARITYENACC_AHBS_SLV_RSA</i>	RSA (Crypto Bus).
<i>IX_PARITYENACC_AHBS_SLV_PBC</i>	PCI Bus Controller.
<i>IX_PARITYENACC_AHBS_SLV_EBC</i>	Expansion Bus Controller.
<i>IX_PARITYENACC_AHBS_SLV_USBH</i>	USB Host Controller.

Definition at line **343** of file **IxParityENAcc.h**.

## enum IxParityENAccConfigOption

The parity error enable/disable configuration option.

### **Enumeration values:**

- IX\_PARITYENACC\_DISABLE* Disable parity error detection.
- IX\_PARITYENACC\_ENABLE* Enable parity error detection.

Definition at line **69** of file **IxParityENAcc.h**.

## enum IxParityENAccParityErrorAccess

The type of access resulting in parity error.

### **Enumeration values:**

- IX\_PARITYENACC\_READ* Read Access.
- IX\_PARITYENACC\_WRITE* Write Access.

Definition at line **277** of file **IxParityENAcc.h**.

## enum IxParityENAccParityErrorRequester

The requester interface through which the SDRAM memory access resulted in the parity error.

### **Enumeration values:**

- IX\_PARITYENACC\_MPI* Direct Memory Port Interface.
- IX\_PARITYENACC\_AHB\_BUS* South or North AHB Bus.

Definition at line **309** of file **IxParityENAcc.h**.

## enum IxParityENAccParityErrorSource

The source of the parity error notification.

### **Enumeration values:**

- IX\_PARITYENACC\_NPE\_A\_IMEM* NPE A – Instruction memory.
- IX\_PARITYENACC\_NPE\_A\_DMEM* NPE A – Data memory.
- IX\_PARITYENACC\_NPE\_A\_EXT* NPE A – External Entity.
- IX\_PARITYENACC\_NPE\_B\_IMEM* NPE B – Instruction memory.
- IX\_PARITYENACC\_NPE\_B\_DMEM* NPE B – Data memory.
- IX\_PARITYENACC\_NPE\_B\_EXT* NPE B – External Entity.

<i>IX_PARITYENACC_NPE_C_IMEM</i>	NPE C – Instruction memory.
<i>IX_PARITYENACC_NPE_C_DMEM</i>	NPE C – Data memory.
<i>IX_PARITYENACC_NPE_C_EXT</i>	NPE C – External Entity.
<i>IX_PARITYENACC_SWCP</i>	SWCP.
<i>IX_PARITYENACC_AQM</i>	AQM.
<i>IX_PARITYENACC_MCU_SBIT</i>	DDR Memory Controller Unit – Single bit parity.
<i>IX_PARITYENACC_MCU_MBIT</i>	DDR Memory Controller Unit – Multi bit parity.
<i>IX_PARITYENACC_MCU_OVERFLOW</i>	DDR Memory Controller Unit – Parity errors in excess of two.
<i>IX_PARITYENACC_PBC_INITIATOR</i>	PCI Bus Controller as Initiator.
<i>IX_PARITYENACC_PBC_TARGET</i>	PCI Bus Controller as Target.
<i>IX_PARITYENACC_EBC_CS</i>	Expansion Bus Controller – Chip Select.
<i>IX_PARITYENACC_EBC_EXTMST</i>	Expansion Bus Controller – External Master.

Definition at line **248** of file **IxParityENAcc.h**.

```
enum IxParityENAccParityType
```

Odd or Even Parity Type.

**Enumeration values:**

<i>IX_PARITYENACC_EVEN_PARITY</i>	Even Parity.
<i>IX_PARITYENACC_ODD_PARITY</i>	Odd Parity.

Definition at line **56** of file **IxParityENAcc.h**.

```
enum IxParityENAccStatus
```

The status as returned from the API.

**Enumeration values:**

<i>IX_PARITYENACC_SUCCESS</i>	The request is successful.
<i>IX_PARITYENACC_INVALID_PARAMETERS</i>	Invalid or NULL parameters passed.
<i>IX_PARITYENACC_NOT_INITIALISED</i>	Access layer has not been initialised before accessing the APIs.
<i>IX_PARITYENACC_ALREADY_INITIALISED</i>	Access layer has already been initialised.
<i>IX_PARITYENACC_OPERATION_FAILED</i>	Operation did not succeed due to hardware failure.
<i>IX_PARITYENACC_NO_PARITY</i>	No parity condition exists or has already been cleared.

Definition at line **39** of file **IxParityENAcc.h**.

# Function Documentation

**IxParityENAccStatus** ( **IxParityENAccCallback** *parityErrNfyCallBack* )  
**ixParityENAccCallbackRegister**

This function will register a new callback with IxParityENAcc component. It can also reregister a new callback replacing the old callback.

**Parameters:**

*parityErrNfyCallBack* [in] – This parameter will specify the call-back function supplied by the client application.

This interface registers the user application supplied call-back handler with the parity error handling access component after the init.

The callback function will be called from an ISR that will be triggered by the parity error in the IXP400 silicon.

The following actions will be performed by this function:

1. Check for the prior initialisation of the module before registering or re-registering of the callback.  
Check for parity error detection disabled before re-registration of the callback.
- Re-entrant : No
  - ISR Callable : No

**Returns:**

- ◇ **IX\_PARITYENACC\_SUCCESS** – The parameters check passed and the registration is successful.
- ◇ **IX\_PARITYENACC\_INVALID\_PARAMETERS** – Request failed due to NULL parameter passed.
- ◇ **IX\_PARITYENACC\_OPERATION\_FAILED** – The request failed because the parity error detection not yet disabled.
- ◇ **IX\_PARITYENACC\_NOT\_INITIALISED** – The operation requested prior to the initialisation of the access layer.

**IxParityENAccStatus** **ixParityENAccInit** ( void )

This function will initialise the IxParityENAcc component.

This function will initialise the IxParityENAcc component. It should only be called once, prior to using the IxParityENAcc component.

1. It initialises the internal data structures, registers the ISR that will be triggered when a parity error occurs in the supported Intel (R) IXP4XX Product Line of Network processors.
- Re-entrant : No
  - ISR Callable : No

**Returns:**

- ◇ IX\_PARITYENACC\_SUCCESS – Initialization is successful
- ◇ IX\_PARITYENACC\_ALREADY\_INITIALISED – The access layer has already been initialized
- ◇ IX\_PARITYENACC\_OPERATION\_FAILED – The request failed because the operation didn't succeed on the hardware. Refer to error trace/log for details.

```

IxParityENAccStatus ( UINT32 npeID,
IxParityENAccNPEParityErrorCheck IxParityENAccParityErrorMessage
                                *const pecMessage
                                )

```

This interface allows the client to check for any NPE Error status.

- Re-entrant : No
- ISR Callable : Yes

**Parameters:**

*npeID*            UINT32 [in] NPE ID, NPE–A (0) , NPE–B (1) and NPE–C (2)  
*pecMessage* **IxParityENAccParityErrorMessage** [out]

**Returns:**

- IX\_PARITYENACC\_SUCCESS– Existence of an NPE Parity Error
- IX\_PARITYENACC\_INVALID\_PARAMETERS–The request failed due to NULL parameter is passed
- IX\_PARITYENACC\_OPERATION\_FAILED – The request failed because the operation didn't succeed on the hardware.
- IX\_PARITYENACC\_NOT\_INITIALISED – The operation requested prior to the initialisation of the access layer.
- IX\_PARITYENACC\_NO\_PARITY – No parity condition exists or has already been cleared

```

IxParityENAccStatus ( const hwParityConfig )
IxParityENAccParityDetectionConfigure IxParityENAccHWParityConfig *

```

This interface allows the client application to enable the parity error detection on the underlying hardware block.

**Parameters:**

*hwParityConfig* [in] – Hardware blocks for which the parity error detection is to be enabled or disabled.

The client application allocates and provides the reference to the buffer.

It will also verify whether the specific hardware block is functional or not.

NOTE: Failure in enabling or disabling of one or more components result in trace message but still returns IX\_PARITYENACC\_SUCCESS. Refer to the function **IxParityENAccParityDetectionQuery** on how to verify the failures while enabling/disabling parity error detection.

It shall be invoked after the Init and CallbackRegister functions but before any other function of the IxParityENAcc layer.

- Re-entrant : No
- ISR Callable : No

**Returns:**

- ◇ IX\_PARITYENACC\_SUCCESS – The parameters check passed and the request to enable/disable is successful.
- ◇ IX\_PARITYENACC\_INVALID\_PARAMETERS–The request failed due to NULL parameter supplied.
- ◇ IX\_PARITYENACC\_OPERATION\_FAILED – The request failed because the operation didn't succeed on the hardware.
- ◇ IX\_PARITYENACC\_NOT\_INITIALISED – The operation requested prior to the initialisation of the access layer.

<b>IxParityENAccStatus</b>	( <b>IxParityENAccHWParityConfig</b>	<i>hwParityConfig</i> )
ixParityENAccParityDetectionQuery	*const	

This interface allows the client application to determine the status of the parity error detection on the specified hardware blocks.

**Parameters:**

*hwParityConfig* [out] – Hardware blocks whose parity error detection has been enabled or disabled.

The client application allocates and provides the reference to the buffer.

This interface can be used immediately after the interface **ixParityENAccParityDetectionConfigure** to see on which of the hardware blocks the parity error detection has either been enabled or disabled based on the client application request.

- Re-entrant : No
- ISR Callable : No

**Returns:**

- ◇ IX\_PARITYENACC\_SUCCESS – The parameters check passed and the request to query on whether the hardware parity error detection is enabled or disabled is successful.
- ◇ IX\_PARITYENACC\_INVALID\_PARAMETERS–The request failed due to NULL parameter or invalid values supplied.
- ◇ IX\_PARITYENACC\_NOT\_INITIALISED – The operation requested prior to the initialisation of the access layer.

<b>IxParityENAccStatus</b>	( <b>IxParityENAccParityErrorMessage</b>	<i>pecMessage</i> )
ixParityENAccParityErrorContextGet	*const	

This interface allows the client application to determine the status of the parity error context on hardware block for which the current parity error interrupt triggered.

**Parameters:**

*pecMessage* [out] – The parity error context information of the parity interrupt currently being process.

The client application allocates and provides the reference to the buffer.

Refer to the data structure **IxParityENAccParityErrorContextMessage** for details.

The routine will will fetch the parity error context in the following priority, if multiple parity errors observed.

```

0 - MCU (Multi-bit and single-bit in that order)
1 - NPE-A
2 - NPE-B
3 - NPE-C
4 - SWCP
5 - QM
6 - PCI
7 - EXP

```

NOTE: The information provided in the **IxParityENAccAHBErrorTransaction** may be of help for the client application to decide on the course of action to take. This info is taken from the Performance Monitoring Unit register which records most recent error observed on the AHB bus. This information might have been overwritten by some other error by the time it is retrieved.

- Re-entrant : No
- ISR Callable : Yes

**Returns:**

- ◇ IX\_PARITYENACC\_SUCCESS–The parameters check passed and the request to get the parity error context information is successful.
- ◇ IX\_PARITYENACC\_INVALID\_PARAMETERS–The request failed due to NULL parameter is passed
- ◇ IX\_PARITYENACC\_OPERATION\_FAILED – The request failed because the operation didn't succeed on the hardware.
- ◇ IX\_PARITYENACC\_NOT\_INITIALISED – The operation requested prior to the initialisation of the access layer.
- ◇ IX\_PARITYENACC\_NO\_PARITY – No parity condition exists or has already been cleared

<b>IxParityENAccStatus</b>	( const	<i>pecMessage</i> )
ixParityENAccParityErrorInterruptClear	<b>IxParityENAccParityErrorContextMessage</b>	
	*	

This interface helps the client application to clear off the interrupt condition on the hardware block identified in the parity error context message. Please refer to the table below as the operation varies depending on the interrupt source.

**Parameters:**

*pecMessage* [in] – The parity error context information of the hardware block whose parity error interrupt condition is to disabled.



The client application allocates and provides the reference to the buffer.

\*\*\*\*\*  
 Following actions will be taken during the interrupt clear for respective hardware blocks.

Parity Source -----	Actions taken during Interrupt clear -----
NPE-A	<p>Interrupt will be masked off at the interrupt controller so that it will not trigger continuously.</p> <p>Client application has to take appropriate action and re-configure the parity error detection subsequently. The client application will not be notified of further interrupts, until the re-configuration is done using <b>ixParityENAccParityDetectionConfigure</b>.</p>
NPE-B	<p>Interrupt will be masked off at the interrupt controller so that it will not trigger continuously.</p> <p>Client application has to take appropriate action and re-configure the parity error detection subsequently. The client application will not be notified of further interrupts, until the re-configuration is done using <b>ixParityENAccParityDetectionConfigure</b>.</p>
NPE-C	<p>Interrupt will be masked off at the interrupt controller</p> <p>Client application has to take appropriate action and re-configure the parity error detection subsequently. The client application will not be notified of further interrupts, until the re-configuration is done using <b>ixParityENAccParityDetectionConfigure</b>.</p>
SWCP	<p>Interrupt will be masked off at the interrupt controller.</p> <p>Client application has to take appropriate action and re-configure the parity error detection subsequently. The client application will not be notified of further interrupts, until the re-configuration is done using <b>ixParityENAccParityDetectionConfigure</b>.</p>
AQM	<p>Interrupt will be masked off at the interrupt controller.</p> <p>Client application has to take appropriate action and re-configure the parity error detection subsequently. The client application will not be notified of further interrupts, until the re-configuration is done using <b>ixParityENAccParityDetectionConfigure</b>.</p>
MCU	<p>Parity interrupt condition is cleared at the SDRAM MCU for the following:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Single-bit</li> <li>2. Multi-bit</li> <li>3. Overflow condition i.e., more than two parity conditions occurred</li> </ol> <p>Note that single-parity errors do not result in data abort and not all data aborts caused by multi-bit parity error.</p>
PCI	<p>Interrupt condition is cleared at the PCI bus controller.</p>
EXP	<p>Parity interrupt condition is cleared at the expansion bus controller for the following:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. External master initiated Inbound write</li> <li>2. Internal master (IXP400) initiated Outbound read</li> </ol>

\*\*\*\*\*

- Re-entrant : No
- ISR Callable : No

**Returns:**

- ◇ IX\_PARITYENACC\_SUCCESS–The parameters check passed and the request to clear the parity error interrupt condition is successful.
- ◇ IX\_PARITYENACC\_INVALID\_PARAMETERS–The request failed due to NULL parameters have been passed or contents have been supplied with invalid values.
- ◇ IX\_PARITYENACC\_OPERATION\_FAILED – The request failed because the operation didn't succeed on the hardware.
- ◇ IX\_PARITYENACC\_NOT\_INITIALISED – The operation requested prior to the initialisation of the access layer.

**IxParityENAccStatus** ixParityENAccParityNPEConfigReUpdate ( UINT32 *npeID* )

This interface allows the client to restore and update the NPE Error enabling configuration.

- Re-entrant : No
- ISR Callable : No

**Parameters:**

*npeID* – [in] NPE ID, NPE-A (0) , NPE-B (1) and NPE-C (2)

**Returns:**

- IX\_PARITYENACC\_SUCCESS – The request to Restore/Re-update the parity error control enable bits in the NPE is a success.
- IX\_PARITYENACC\_OPERATION\_FAILED – The request failed because the operation didn't succeed on the hardware.
- IX\_PARITYENACC\_NOT\_INITIALISED – The operation requested prior to the initialisation of the access layer.

<b>IxParityENAccStatus</b>	( <b>IxParityENAccParityErrorStats</b>	<i>ixParityErrorStats</i> )
ixParityENAccStatsGet	*const	

This interface allows the client application to retrieve parity error statistics for all the hardware blocks.

**Parameters:**

*ixParityErrorStats* – [out] The statistics for all the hardware blocks.

The client application allocates and provides the reference to the buffer.

- Re-entrant : No
- ISR Callable : Yes

**Returns:**

- ◇ IX\_PARITYENACC\_SUCCESS–The parameters check passed and the request to retrieve parity error statistics for the hardware block is successful.

- ◇ IX\_PARITYENACC\_INVALID\_PARAMETERS – The request failed due to a NULL parameter passed.
- ◇ IX\_PARITYENACC\_NOT\_INITIALISED – The operation requested prior to the initialisation of the access layer.

#### **IxParityENAccStatus** ixParityENAccStatsReset ( void )

This interface allows the client application to reset all the parity error statistics.

- Re-entrant : No
- ISR Callable : No

##### **Returns:**

- ◇ IX\_PARITYENACC\_SUCCESS – The request to reset the parity error statistics is successful.
- ◇ IX\_PARITYENACC\_NOT\_INITIALISED – The operation requested prior to the initialisation of the access layer.

#### **IxParityENAccStatus** ixParityENAccStatsShow ( void )

This interface allows the client application to print all the parity error statistics.

- Re-entrant : No
- ISR Callable : No

##### **Returns:**

- ◇ IX\_PARITYENACC\_SUCCESS – The request to show the parity error statistics is successful.
- ◇ IX\_PARITYENACC\_NOT\_INITIALISED – The operation requested prior to the initialisation of the access layer.

# Intel (R) IXP400 Software Performance Profiling (IxPerfProfAcc) API

IXP400 Performance Profiling Utility component Public API.

- NOTE: Xcycle measurement is not supported in Linux\*.

## Data Structures

struct **IxPerfProfAccBusPmuResults**  
*Results obtained from running the Bus Pmu component. The results are obtained when the get functions is called.*

struct **IxPerfProfAccXcycleResults**  
*Results obtained from Xcycle run.*

struct **IxPerfProfAccXscalePmuEvtCnt**  
*contains results of a counter*

struct **IxPerfProfAccXscalePmuResults**  
*contains results of counters and their overflow*

struct **IxPerfProfAccXscalePmuSamplePcProfile**  
*contains summary of samples taken*

## Defines

#define **IX\_PERFPROF\_ACC\_XSCALE\_PMU\_MAX\_PROFILE\_SAMPLES**  
*This is the maximum number of profiling samples allowed, which can be modified according to user's discretion.*

#define **IX\_PERFPROF\_ACC\_BUS\_PMU\_MAX\_PECS**  
*This is the maximum number of Programmable Event Counters available. This is a hardware specific and fixed value. Do not change.*

#define **IX\_PERFPROF\_ACC\_XCYCLE\_MAX\_NUM\_OF\_MEASUREMENTS**  
*Max number of measurement allowed. This constant is used when creating storage array for Xcycle. When run in continuous mode, Xcycle will wrap around and re-use buffer.*

#define **IX\_PERFPROF\_ACC\_XSCALE\_PMU\_SYMBOL\_ACCURACY**  
*Level of accuracy required for matching the PC Address to symbol address. This is used when the Intel XScale(R) Processor PMU time/event sampling functions get the PC address and search for the corresponding symbol address.*

#define **IX\_PERFPROF\_ACC\_LOG**(level, device, str, a, b, c, d, e, f)

## Enumerations

```
enum IxPerfProfAccBusPmuEventCounters1 {  
    IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC1_NORTH_NPEA_GRANT_SELECT,  
    IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC1_NORTH_NPEB_GRANT_SELECT,  
    IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC1_NORTH_NPEC_GRANT_SELECT,  
    IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC1_NORTH_BUS_IDLE_SELECT,  
    IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC1_NORTH_NPEA_REQ_SELECT,  
    IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC1_NORTH_NPEB_REQ_SELECT,  
    IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC1_NORTH_NPEC_REQ_SELECT,  
    IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC1_SOUTH_GSKT_GRANT_SELECT,  
    IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC1_SOUTH_ABB_GRANT_SELECT,  
    IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC1_SOUTH_PCI_GRANT_SELECT,  
    IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC1_SOUTH_APB_GRANT_SELECT,  
    IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC1_SOUTH_GSKT_REQ_SELECT,  
    IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC1_SOUTH_ABB_REQ_SELECT,  
    IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC1_SOUTH_PCI_REQ_SELECT,  
    IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC1_SOUTH_APB_REQ_SELECT,  
    IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC1_SDR_0_HIT_SELECT,  
    IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC1_SDR_1_HIT_SELECT,  
    IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC1_SDR_2_HIT_SELECT,  
    IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC1_SDR_3_HIT_SELECT,  
    IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC1_SDR_4_MISS_SELECT,  
    IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC1_SDR_5_MISS_SELECT,  
    IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC1_SDR_6_MISS_SELECT,  
    IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC1_SDR_7_MISS_SELECT  
}
```

*Type of bus pmu events supported on PEC 1.*

```
enum IxPerfProfAccBusPmuEventCounters2 {  
    IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC2_NORTH_NPEA_XFER_SELECT,  
    IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC2_NORTH_NPEB_XFER_SELECT,  
    IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC2_NORTH_NPEC_XFER_SELECT,  
    IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC2_NORTH_BUS_WRITE_SELECT,  
    IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC2_NORTH_NPEA_OWN_SELECT,  
    IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC2_NORTH_NPEB_OWN_SELECT,  
    IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC2_NORTH_NPEC_OWN_SELECT,  
    IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC2_SOUTH_GSKT_XFER_SELECT,  
    IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC2_SOUTH_ABB_XFER_SELECT,  
    IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC2_SOUTH_PCI_XFER_SELECT,  
    IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC2_SOUTH_APB_XFER_SELECT,  
    IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC2_SOUTH_GSKT_OWN_SELECT,  
    IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC2_SOUTH_ABB_OWN_SELECT,  
    IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC2_SOUTH_PCI_OWN_SELECT,  
    IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC2_SOUTH_APB_OWN_SELECT,  
    IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC2_SDR_1_HIT_SELECT,  
    IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC2_SDR_2_HIT_SELECT,  
}
```

```

IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC2_SDR_3_HIT_SELECT,
IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC2_SDR_4_HIT_SELECT,
IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC2_SDR_5_MISS_SELECT,
IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC2_SDR_6_MISS_SELECT,
IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC2_SDR_7_MISS_SELECT,
IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC2_SDR_0_MISS_SELECT
}

```

*Type of bus pmu events supported on PEC 2.*

```

enum IxPerfProfAccBusPmuEventCounters3 {
    IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC3_NORTH_NPEA_RETRY_SELECT,
    IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC3_NORTH_NPEB_RETRY_SELECT,
    IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC3_NORTH_NPEC_RETRY_SELECT,
    IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC3_NORTH_BUS_READ_SELECT,
    IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC3_NORTH_NPEA_WRITE_SELECT,
    IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC3_NORTH_NPEB_WRITE_SELECT,
    IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC3_NORTH_NPEC_WRITE_SELECT,
    IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC3_SOUTH_GSKT_RETRY_SELECT,
    IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC3_SOUTH_ABB_RETRY_SELECT,
    IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC3_SOUTH_PCI_RETRY_SELECT,
    IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC3_SOUTH_APB_RETRY_SELECT,
    IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC3_SOUTH_GSKT_WRITE_SELECT,
    IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC3_SOUTH_ABB_WRITE_SELECT,
    IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC3_SOUTH_PCI_WRITE_SELECT,
    IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC3_SOUTH_APB_WRITE_SELECT,
    IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC3_SDR_2_HIT_SELECT,
    IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC3_SDR_3_HIT_SELECT,
    IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC3_SDR_4_HIT_SELECT,
    IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC3_SDR_5_HIT_SELECT,
    IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC3_SDR_6_MISS_SELECT,
    IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC3_SDR_7_MISS_SELECT,
    IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC3_SDR_0_MISS_SELECT,
    IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC3_SDR_1_MISS_SELECT
}

```

*Type of bus pmu events supported on PEC 3.*

```

enum IxPerfProfAccBusPmuEventCounters4 {
    IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC4_SOUTH_PCI_SPLIT_SELECT,
    IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC4_SOUTH_EXP_SPLIT_SELECT,
    IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC4_SOUTH_APB_GRANT_SELECT,
    IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC4_SOUTH_APB_XFER_SELECT,
    IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC4_SOUTH_GSKT_READ_SELECT,
    IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC4_SOUTH_ABB_READ_SELECT,
    IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC4_SOUTH_PCI_READ_SELECT,
    IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC4_SOUTH_APB_READ_SELECT,
    IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC4_NORTH_ABB_SPLIT_SELECT,
    IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC4_NORTH_NPEA_REQ_SELECT,
    IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC4_NORTH_NPEA_READ_SELECT,
    IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC4_NORTH_NPEB_READ_SELECT,
    IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC4_NORTH_NPEC_READ_SELECT,
    IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC4_SDR_3_HIT_SELECT,

```

```

IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC4_SDR_4_HIT_SELECT,
IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC4_SDR_5_HIT_SELECT,
IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC4_SDR_6_HIT_SELECT,
IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC4_SDR_7_MISS_SELECT,
IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC4_SDR_0_MISS_SELECT,
IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC4_SDR_1_MISS_SELECT,
IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC4_SDR_2_MISS_SELECT

```

```

}

```

*Type of bus pmu events supported on PEC 4.*

```

enum IxPerfProfAccBusPmuEventCounters5 {
    IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC5_SOUTH_ABB_GRANT_SELECT,
    IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC5_SOUTH_ABB_XFER_SELECT,
    IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC5_SOUTH_ABB_RETRY_SELECT,
    IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC5_SOUTH_EXP_SPLIT_SELECT,
    IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC5_SOUTH_ABB_REQ_SELECT,
    IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC5_SOUTH_ABB_OWN_SELECT,
    IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC5_SOUTH_BUS_IDLE_SELECT,
    IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC5_NORTH_NPEB_GRANT_SELECT,
    IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC5_NORTH_NPEB_XFER_SELECT,
    IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC5_NORTH_NPEB_RETRY_SELECT,
    IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC5_NORTH_NPEB_REQ_SELECT,
    IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC5_NORTH_NPEB_OWN_SELECT,
    IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC5_NORTH_NPEB_WRITE_SELECT,
    IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC5_NORTH_NPEB_READ_SELECT,
    IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC5_SDR_4_HIT_SELECT,
    IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC5_SDR_5_HIT_SELECT,
    IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC5_SDR_6_HIT_SELECT,
    IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC5_SDR_7_HIT_SELECT,
    IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC5_SDR_0_MISS_SELECT,
    IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC5_SDR_1_MISS_SELECT,
    IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC5_SDR_2_MISS_SELECT,
    IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC5_SDR_3_MISS_SELECT
}

```

*Type of bus pmu events supported on PEC 5.*

```

enum IxPerfProfAccBusPmuEventCounters6 {
    IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC6_SOUTH_PCI_GRANT_SELECT,
    IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC6_SOUTH_PCI_XFER_SELECT,
    IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC6_SOUTH_PCI_RETRY_SELECT,
    IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC6_SOUTH_PCI_SPLIT_SELECT,
    IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC6_SOUTH_PCI_REQ_SELECT,
    IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC6_SOUTH_PCI_OWN_SELECT,
    IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC6_SOUTH_BUS_WRITE_SELECT,
    IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC6_NORTH_NPEC_GRANT_SELECT,
    IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC6_NORTH_NPEC_XFER_SELECT,
    IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC6_NORTH_NPEC_RETRY_SELECT,
    IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC6_NORTH_NPEC_REQ_SELECT,
    IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC6_NORTH_NPEC_OWN_SELECT,
    IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC6_NORTH_NPEB_WRITE_SELECT,
    IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC6_NORTH_NPEC_READ_SELECT,

```

```

IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC6_SDR_5_HIT_SELECT,
IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC6_SDR_6_HIT_SELECT,
IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC6_SDR_7_HIT_SELECT,
IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC6_SDR_0_HIT_SELECT,
IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC6_SDR_1_MISS_SELECT,
IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC6_SDR_2_MISS_SELECT,
IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC6_SDR_3_MISS_SELECT,
IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC6_SDR_4_MISS_SELECT
}

```

*Type of bus pmu events supported on PEC 6.*

```

enum IxPerfProfAccBusPmuEventCounters7 {
    IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC7_SOUTH_APB_RETRY_SELECT,
    IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC7_SOUTH_APB_REQ_SELECT,
    IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC7_SOUTH_APB_OWN_SELECT,
    IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC7_SOUTH_BUS_READ_SELECT,
    IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC7_CYCLE_COUNT_SELECT
}

```

*Type of bus pmu events supported on PEC 7.*

```

enum IxPerfProfAccXscalePmuEvent {
    IX_PERFPROF_ACC_XSCALE_PMU_EVENT_CACHE_MISS,
    IX_PERFPROF_ACC_XSCALE_PMU_EVENT_CACHE_INSTRUCTION,
    IX_PERFPROF_ACC_XSCALE_PMU_EVENT_STALL,
    IX_PERFPROF_ACC_XSCALE_PMU_EVENT_INST_TLB_MISS,
    IX_PERFPROF_ACC_XSCALE_PMU_EVENT_DATA_TLB_MISS,
    IX_PERFPROF_ACC_XSCALE_PMU_EVENT_BRANCH_EXEC,
    IX_PERFPROF_ACC_XSCALE_PMU_EVENT_BRANCH_MISPREDICT,
    IX_PERFPROF_ACC_XSCALE_PMU_EVENT_INST_EXEC,
    IX_PERFPROF_ACC_XSCALE_PMU_EVENT_FULL_EVERYCYCLE,
    IX_PERFPROF_ACC_XSCALE_PMU_EVENT_ONCE,
    IX_PERFPROF_ACC_XSCALE_PMU_EVENT_DATA_CACHE_ACCESS,
    IX_PERFPROF_ACC_XSCALE_PMU_EVENT_DATA_CACHE_MISS,
    IX_PERFPROF_ACC_XSCALE_PMU_EVENT_DATA_CACHE_WRITEBACK,
    IX_PERFPROF_ACC_XSCALE_PMU_EVENT_SW_CHANGE_PC,
    IX_PERFPROF_ACC_XSCALE_PMU_EVENT_MAX
}

```

*Type of Intel XScale (R) Processor PMU events supported.*

```

enum IxPerfProfAccStatus {
    IX_PERFPROF_ACC_STATUS_SUCCESS,
    IX_PERFPROF_ACC_STATUS_FAIL,
    IX_PERFPROF_ACC_STATUS_ANOTHER_UTIL_IN_PROGRESS,
    IX_PERFPROF_ACC_STATUS_XCYCLE_MEASUREMENT_IN_PROGRESS,
    IX_PERFPROF_ACC_STATUS_XCYCLE_NO_BASELINE,
    IX_PERFPROF_ACC_STATUS_XCYCLE_MEASUREMENT_REQUEST_OUT_OF_I,
    IX_PERFPROF_ACC_STATUS_XCYCLE_PRIORITY_SET_FAIL,
    IX_PERFPROF_ACC_STATUS_XCYCLE_THREAD_CREATE_FAIL,
    IX_PERFPROF_ACC_STATUS_XCYCLE_PRIORITY_RESTORE_FAIL,
    IX_PERFPROF_ACC_STATUS_XCYCLE_MEASUREMENT_NOT_RUNNING,
    IX_PERFPROF_ACC_STATUS_XSCALE_PMU_NUM_INVALID,
}

```



```

IX_PERFPROF_ACC_STATUS_XSCALE_PMU_EVENT_INVALID,
IX_PERFPROF_ACC_STATUS_XSCALE_PMU_START_NOT_CALLED,
IX_PERFPROF_ACC_STATUS_BUS_PMU_MODE_ERROR,
IX_PERFPROF_ACC_STATUS_BUS_PMU_PEC1_ERROR,
IX_PERFPROF_ACC_STATUS_BUS_PMU_PEC2_ERROR,
IX_PERFPROF_ACC_STATUS_BUS_PMU_PEC3_ERROR,
IX_PERFPROF_ACC_STATUS_BUS_PMU_PEC4_ERROR,
IX_PERFPROF_ACC_STATUS_BUS_PMU_PEC5_ERROR,
IX_PERFPROF_ACC_STATUS_BUS_PMU_PEC6_ERROR,
IX_PERFPROF_ACC_STATUS_BUS_PMU_PEC7_ERROR,
IX_PERFPROF_ACC_STATUS_BUS_PMU_START_NOT_CALLED,
IX_PERFPROF_ACC_STATUS_COMPONENT_NOT_SUPPORTED
}

```

*Invalid Status Definitions.*

```

enum IxPerfProfAccBusPmuMode {
    IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_MODE_HALT,
    IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_MODE_SOUTH,
    IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_MODE_NORTH,
    IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_MODE_SDRAM
}

```

*State selection of counters.*

## Functions

**PUBLIC****IxPerfProfAccXscalePmuEventCountStart** (BOOL clkCntDiv, UINT32 numEvents, **IxPerfProfAccStatus** **IxPerfProfAccXscalePmuEvent** pmuEvent1, **IxPerfProfAccXscalePmuEvent** pmuEvent2, **IxPerfProfAccXscalePmuEvent** pmuEvent3, **IxPerfProfAccXscalePmuEvent** pmuEvent4)  
*This API will start the clock and event counting.*

**PUBLIC****IxPerfProfAccXscalePmuEventCountStop** (**IxPerfProfAccXscalePmuResults** **IxPerfProfAccStatus** \*eventCountStopResults)  
*This API will stop the clock and event counting.*

**PUBLIC**  
**IxPerfProfAccStatus** **ixPerfProfAccXscalePmuTimeSampStart** (UINT32 samplingRate, BOOL clkCntDiv)  
*Starts the time based sampling.*

**PUBLIC****IxPerfProfAccXscalePmuTimeSampStop** (**IxPerfProfAccXscalePmuEvtCnt** \*clkCount, **IxPerfProfAccStatus** **IxPerfProfAccXscalePmuSamplePcProfile** \*timeProfile)  
*Stops the time based sampling.*

**PUBLIC****IxPerfProfAccXscalePmuEventSampStart** (UINT32 numEvents, **IxPerfProfAccXscalePmuEvent** pmuEvent1, UINT32 eventRate1, **IxPerfProfAccXscalePmuEvent** pmuEvent2, UINT32 eventRate2, **IxPerfProfAccXscalePmuEvent** pmuEvent3, UINT32 eventRate3, **IxPerfProfAccXscalePmuEvent** pmuEvent4, UINT32 eventRate4)  
*Starts the event based sampling.*

**PUBLIC** **ixPerfProfAccXscalePmuEventSampStop** (**ixPerfProfAccXscalePmuSamplePcProfile** **ixPerfProfAccStatus** \*eventProfile1, **ixPerfProfAccXscalePmuSamplePcProfile** \*eventProfile2, **ixPerfProfAccXscalePmuSamplePcProfile** \*eventProfile3, **ixPerfProfAccXscalePmuSamplePcProfile** \*eventProfile4)  
*Stops the event based sampling.*

**PUBLIC** **void ixPerfProfAccXscalePmuResultsGet** (**ixPerfProfAccXscalePmuResults** \*results)  
*Reads the current value of the counters and their overflow.*

**PUBLIC** **ixPerfProfAccBusPmuStart** (**ixPerfProfAccBusPmuMode** mode, **ixPerfProfAccStatus** **ixPerfProfAccBusPmuEventCounters1** pecEvent1, **ixPerfProfAccBusPmuEventCounters2** pecEvent2, **ixPerfProfAccBusPmuEventCounters3** pecEvent3, **ixPerfProfAccBusPmuEventCounters4** pecEvent4, **ixPerfProfAccBusPmuEventCounters5** pecEvent5, **ixPerfProfAccBusPmuEventCounters6** pecEvent6, **ixPerfProfAccBusPmuEventCounters7** pecEvent7)  
*Initializes all the counters and selects events to be monitored.*

**PUBLIC**  
**ixPerfProfAccStatus ixPerfProfAccBusPmuStop** (void)  
*Stops all counters.*

**PUBLIC** **void ixPerfProfAccBusPmuResultsGet** (**ixPerfProfAccBusPmuResults** \*BusPmuResults)  
*Gets values of all counters.*

**PUBLIC** **void ixPerfProfAccBusPmuPMSRGet** (UINT32 \*pmsrValue)  
*Get values of PMSR.*

**PUBLIC**  
**ixPerfProfAccStatus ixPerfProfAccXcycleBaselineRun** (UINT32 \*numBaselineCycle)  
*Perform baseline for Xcycle.*

**PUBLIC**  
**ixPerfProfAccStatus ixPerfProfAccXcycleStart** (UINT32 numMeasurementsRequested)  
*Start the measurement.*

**PUBLIC**  
**ixPerfProfAccStatus ixPerfProfAccXcycleStop** (void)  
*Stop the Xcycle measurement.*

**PUBLIC**  
**ixPerfProfAccStatus ixPerfProfAccXcycleResultsGet** (**ixPerfProfAccXcycleResults** \*xcycleResult)  
*Get the results of Xcycle measurement.*

**PUBLIC** **BOOL ixPerfProfAccXcycleInProgress** (void)  
*Check if Xcycle is running.*

**int ixPerfProfAccXscalePmuTimeSampCreateProcFile** (char \*buf, char \*\*start, off\_t offset, int  
 int \*eof, void \*data)  
**int ixPerfProfAccXscalePmuEventSampCreateProcFile** (char \*buf, char \*\*start, off\_t offset, int  
 int \*eof, void \*data)

## Detailed Description

IXP400 Performance Profiling Utility component Public API.

- NOTE: Xcycle measurement is not supported in Linux\*.

---

## Define Documentation

```
#define IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_MAX_PPCS
```

This is the maximum number of Programmable Event Counters available. This is a hardware specific and fixed value. Do not change.

Definition at line **49** of file **IxPerfProfAcc.h**.

```
#define IX_PERFPROF_ACC_LOG ( level,  
                             device,  
                             str,  
                             a,  
                             b,  
                             c,  
                             d,  
                             e,  
                             f      )
```

Mechanism for logging a formatted message for the PerfProfAcc component.

### ***Parameters:***

<i>level</i>	UINT32 [in] – trace level
<i>device</i>	UINT32 [in] – output device
<i>str</i>	char* [in] – format string, similar to printf().
<i>a</i>	UINT32 [in] – first argument to display
<i>b</i>	UINT32 [in] – second argument to display
<i>c</i>	UINT32 [in] – third argument to display
<i>d</i>	UINT32 [in] – fourth argument to display
<i>e</i>	UINT32 [in] – fifth argument to display
<i>f</i>	UINT32 [in] – sixth argument to display

### ***Returns:***

none

Definition at line **95** of file **IxPerfProfAcc.h**.

```
#define IX_PERFPROF_ACC_XCYCLE_MAX_NUM_OF_MEASUREMENTS
```

Max number of measurement allowed. This constant is used when creating storage array for Xcycle. When run in continuous mode, Xcycle will wrap around and re-use buffer.

Definition at line **60** of file **IxPerfProfAcc.h**.

```
#define IX_PERFPROF_ACC_XSCALE_PMU_MAX_PROFILE_SAMPLES
```

This is the maximum number of profiling samples allowed, which can be modified according to the user's discretion.

Definition at line **38** of file **IxPerfProfAcc.h**.

```
#define IX_PERFPROF_ACC_XSCALE_PMU_SYMBOL_ACCURACY
```

Level of accuracy required for matching the PC Address to symbol address. This is used when the Intel XScale(R) Processor PMU time/event sampling functions get the PC address and search for the corresponding symbol address.

Definition at line **72** of file **IxPerfProfAcc.h**.

---

## Enumeration Type Documentation

```
enum IxPerfProfAccBusPmuEventCounters1
```

Type of bus pmu events supported on PEC 1.

Lists all bus pmu events.

### *Enumeration values:*

<code>IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC1_NORTH_NPEA_GRANT_SELECT</code>	Select North NPEA grant on PEC1.
<code>IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC1_NORTH_NPEB_GRANT_SELECT</code>	Select North NPEB grant on PEC1.
<code>IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC1_NORTH_NPEC_GRANT_SELECT</code>	Select North NPEC grant on PEC1.
<code>IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC1_NORTH_BUS_IDLE_SELECT</code>	Select North bus idle on PEC1.
<code>IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC1_NORTH_NPEA_REQ_SELECT</code>	Select North NPEA req on PEC1.
<code>IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC1_NORTH_NPEB_REQ_SELECT</code>	Select North NPEB req on PEC1.
<code>IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC1_NORTH_NPEC_REQ_SELECT</code>	Select North NPEC req on PEC1.

<i>IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC1_SOUTH_GSKT_GRANT_SELECT</i>	Select south gasket grant on PEC1.
<i>IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC1_SOUTH_ABB_GRANT_SELECT</i>	Select south abb grant on PEC1.
<i>IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC1_SOUTH_PCI_GRANT_SELECT</i>	Select south pci grant on PEC1.
<i>IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC1_SOUTH_APB_GRANT_SELECT</i>	Select south apb grant on PEC1.
<i>IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC1_SOUTH_GSKT_REQ_SELECT</i>	Select south gasket request on PEC1.
<i>IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC1_SOUTH_ABB_REQ_SELECT</i>	Select south abb request on PEC1.
<i>IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC1_SOUTH_PCI_REQ_SELECT</i>	Select south pci request on PEC1.
<i>IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC1_SOUTH_APB_REQ_SELECT</i>	Select south apb request on PEC1.
<i>IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC1_SDR_0_HIT_SELECT</i>	Select sdram0 hit on PEC1.
<i>IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC1_SDR_1_HIT_SELECT</i>	Select sdram1 hit on PEC1.
<i>IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC1_SDR_2_HIT_SELECT</i>	Select sdram2 hit on PEC1.
<i>IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC1_SDR_3_HIT_SELECT</i>	Select sdram3 hit on PEC1.
<i>IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC1_SDR_4_MISS_SELECT</i>	Select sdram4 miss on PEC1.
<i>IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC1_SDR_5_MISS_SELECT</i>	Select sdram5 miss on PEC1.
<i>IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC1_SDR_6_MISS_SELECT</i>	Select sdram6 miss on PEC1.
<i>IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC1_SDR_7_MISS_SELECT</i>	Select sdram7 miss on PEC1.

Definition at line **186** of file **IxPerfProfAcc.h**.

```
enum IxPerfProfAccBusPmuEventCounters2
```

Type of bus pmu events supported on PEC 2.

Lists all bus pmu events.

**Enumeration values:**

<i>IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC2_NORTH_NPEA_XFER_SELECT</i>	Select North NPEA transfer on PEC2.
<i>IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC2_NORTH_NPEB_XFER_SELECT</i>	Select North NPEB transfer on PEC2.
<i>IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC2_NORTH_NPEC_XFER_SELECT</i>	Select North NPEC transfer on PEC2.

<i>IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC2_NORTH_BUS_WRITE_SELECT</i>	Select North bus write on PEC2.
<i>IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC2_NORTH_NPEA_OWN_SELECT</i>	Select North NPEA own on PEC2.
<i>IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC2_NORTH_NPEB_OWN_SELECT</i>	Select North NPEB own on PEC2.
<i>IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC2_NORTH_NPEC_OWN_SELECT</i>	Select North NPEC own on PEC2.
<i>IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC2_SOUTH_GSKT_XFER_SELECT</i>	Select South gasket transfer on PEC2.
<i>IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC2_SOUTH_ABB_XFER_SELECT</i>	Select South abb transfer on PEC2.
<i>IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC2_SOUTH_PCI_XFER_SELECT</i>	Select South pci transfer on PEC2.
<i>IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC2_SOUTH_APB_XFER_SELECT</i>	Select South apb transfer on PEC2.
<i>IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC2_SOUTH_GSKT_OWN_SELECT</i>	Select South gasket own on PEC2.
<i>IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC2_SOUTH_ABB_OWN_SELECT</i>	Select South abb own on PEC2.
<i>IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC2_SOUTH_PCI_OWN_SELECT</i>	Select South pci own on PEC2.
<i>IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC2_SOUTH_APB_OWN_SELECT</i>	Select South apb own transfer on PEC2.
<i>IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC2_SDR_1_HIT_SELECT</i>	Select sdram1 hit on PEC2.
<i>IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC2_SDR_2_HIT_SELECT</i>	Select sdram2 hit on PEC2.
<i>IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC2_SDR_3_HIT_SELECT</i>	Select sdram3 hit on PEC2.
<i>IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC2_SDR_4_HIT_SELECT</i>	Select sdram4 hit on PEC2.
<i>IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC2_SDR_5_MISS_SELECT</i>	Select sdram5 miss on PEC2.
<i>IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC2_SDR_6_MISS_SELECT</i>	Select sdram6 miss on PEC2.
<i>IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC2_SDR_7_MISS_SELECT</i>	Select sdram7 miss on PEC2.
<i>IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC2_SDR_0_MISS_SELECT</i>	Select sdram0 miss on PEC2.

Definition at line **224** of file **IxPerfProfAcc.h**.

```
enum IxPerfProfAccBusPmuEventCounters3
```

Type of bus pmu events supported on PEC 3.

Lists all bus pmu events.

**Enumeration values:**

<i>IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC3_NORTH_NPEA_RETRY_SELECT</i>	Select north NPEA retry on PEC3.
<i>IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC3_NORTH_NPEB_RETRY_SELECT</i>	Select north NPEB retry on PEC3.
<i>IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC3_NORTH_NPEC_RETRY_SELECT</i>	Select north NPEC retry on PEC3.
<i>IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC3_NORTH_BUS_READ_SELECT</i>	Select north bus read on PEC3.
<i>IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC3_NORTH_NPEA_WRITE_SELECT</i>	Select north NPEA write on PEC3.
<i>IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC3_NORTH_NPEB_WRITE_SELECT</i>	Select north NPEB write on PEC3.
<i>IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC3_NORTH_NPEC_WRITE_SELECT</i>	Select north NPEC write on PEC3.
<i>IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC3_SOUTH_GSKT_RETRY_SELECT</i>	Select south gasket retry on PEC3.
<i>IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC3_SOUTH_ABB_RETRY_SELECT</i>	Select south abb retry on PEC3.
<i>IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC3_SOUTH_PCI_RETRY_SELECT</i>	Select south pci retry on PEC3.
<i>IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC3_SOUTH_APB_RETRY_SELECT</i>	Select south apb retry on PEC3.
<i>IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC3_SOUTH_GSKT_WRITE_SELECT</i>	Select south gasket write on PEC3.
<i>IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC3_SOUTH_ABB_WRITE_SELECT</i>	Select south abb write on PEC3.
<i>IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC3_SOUTH_PCI_WRITE_SELECT</i>	Select south pci write on PEC3.
<i>IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC3_SOUTH_APB_WRITE_SELECT</i>	Select south apb write on PEC3.
<i>IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC3_SDR_2_HIT_SELECT</i>	Select sdram2 hit on PEC3.
<i>IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC3_SDR_3_HIT_SELECT</i>	Select sdram3 hit on PEC3.
<i>IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC3_SDR_4_HIT_SELECT</i>	Select sdram4 hit on PEC3.
<i>IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC3_SDR_5_HIT_SELECT</i>	Select sdram5 hit on PEC3.
<i>IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC3_SDR_6_MISS_SELECT</i>	Select sdram6 miss on PEC3.
<i>IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC3_SDR_7_MISS_SELECT</i>	Select sdram7 miss on PEC3.
<i>IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC3_SDR_0_MISS_SELECT</i>	Select sdram0 miss

<i>IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC3_SDR_1_MISS_SELECT</i>	on PEC3. Select sdram1 miss on PEC3.
---	--

Definition at line **262** of file **IxPerfProfAcc.h**.

```
enum IxPerfProfAccBusPmuEventCounters4
```

Type of bus pmu events supported on PEC 4.

Lists all bus pmu events.

**Enumeration values:**

<i>IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC4_SOUTH_PCI_SPLIT_SELECT</i>	Select south pci split on PEC4.
<i>IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC4_SOUTH_EXP_SPLIT_SELECT</i>	Select south expansion split on PEC4.
<i>IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC4_SOUTH_APB_GRANT_SELECT</i>	Select south apb grant on PEC4.
<i>IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC4_SOUTH_APB_XFER_SELECT</i>	Select south apb transfer on PEC4.
<i>IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC4_SOUTH_GSKT_READ_SELECT</i>	Select south gasket read on PEC4.
<i>IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC4_SOUTH_ABB_READ_SELECT</i>	Select south abb read on PEC4.
<i>IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC4_SOUTH_PCI_READ_SELECT</i>	Select south pci read on PEC4.
<i>IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC4_SOUTH_APB_READ_SELECT</i>	Select south apb read on PEC4.
<i>IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC4_NORTH_ABB_SPLIT_SELECT</i>	Select north abb split on PEC4.
<i>IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC4_NORTH_NPEA_REQ_SELECT</i>	Select north NPEA req on PEC4.
<i>IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC4_NORTH_NPEA_READ_SELECT</i>	Select north NPEA read on PEC4.
<i>IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC4_NORTH_NPEB_READ_SELECT</i>	Select north NPEB read on PEC4.
<i>IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC4_NORTH_NPEC_READ_SELECT</i>	Select north NPEC read on PEC4.
<i>IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC4_SDR_3_HIT_SELECT</i>	Select sdram3 hit on PEC4.
<i>IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC4_SDR_4_HIT_SELECT</i>	Select sdram4 hit on PEC4.
<i>IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC4_SDR_5_HIT_SELECT</i>	Select sdram5 hit on PEC4.
<i>IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC4_SDR_6_HIT_SELECT</i>	Select sdram6 hit on PEC4.



<i>IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC4_SDR_7_MISS_SELECT</i>	Select sdram7 miss on PEC4.
<i>IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC4_SDR_0_MISS_SELECT</i>	Select sdram0 miss on PEC4.
<i>IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC4_SDR_1_MISS_SELECT</i>	Select sdram1 miss on PEC4.
<i>IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC4_SDR_2_MISS_SELECT</i>	Select sdram2 miss on PEC4.

Definition at line **300** of file **IxPerfProfAcc.h**.

```
enum IxPerfProfAccBusPmuEventCounters5
```

Type of bus pmu events supported on PEC 5.

Lists all bus pmu events.

**Enumeration values:**

<i>IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC5_SOUTH_ABB_GRANT_SELECT</i>	Select south abb grant on PEC5.
<i>IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC5_SOUTH_ABB_XFER_SELECT</i>	Select south abb transfer on PEC5.
<i>IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC5_SOUTH_ABB_RETRY_SELECT</i>	Select south abb retry on PEC5.
<i>IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC5_SOUTH_EXP_SPLIT_SELECT</i>	Select south expansion split on PEC5.
<i>IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC5_SOUTH_ABB_REQ_SELECT</i>	Select south abb request on PEC5.
<i>IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC5_SOUTH_ABB_OWN_SELECT</i>	Select south abb own on PEC5.
<i>IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC5_SOUTH_BUS_IDLE_SELECT</i>	Select south bus idle on PEC5.
<i>IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC5_NORTH_NPEB_GRANT_SELECT</i>	Select north NPEB grant on PEC5.
<i>IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC5_NORTH_NPEB_XFER_SELECT</i>	Select north NPEB transfer on PEC5.
<i>IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC5_NORTH_NPEB_RETRY_SELECT</i>	Select north NPEB retry on PEC5.
<i>IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC5_NORTH_NPEB_REQ_SELECT</i>	Select north NPEB request on PEC5.
<i>IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC5_NORTH_NPEB_OWN_SELECT</i>	Select north NPEB own on PEC5.
<i>IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC5_NORTH_NPEB_WRITE_SELECT</i>	Select north NPEB write on PEC5.
<i>IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC5_NORTH_NPEB_READ_SELECT</i>	Select north NPEB read on PEC5.
<i>IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC5_SDR_4_HIT_SELECT</i>	

<i>IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC5_SDR_5_HIT_SELECT</i>	Select north sdram4 hit on PEC5.
<i>IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC5_SDR_6_HIT_SELECT</i>	Select north sdram5 hit on PEC5.
<i>IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC5_SDR_7_HIT_SELECT</i>	Select north sdram6 hit on PEC5.
<i>IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC5_SDR_0_MISS_SELECT</i>	Select north sdram7 hit on PEC5.
<i>IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC5_SDR_1_MISS_SELECT</i>	Select north sdram0 miss on PEC5.
<i>IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC5_SDR_2_MISS_SELECT</i>	Select north sdram1 miss on PEC5.
<i>IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC5_SDR_3_MISS_SELECT</i>	Select north sdram2 miss on PEC5.
	Select north sdram3 miss on PEC5.

Definition at line **336** of file **IxPerfProfAcc.h**.

```
enum IxPerfProfAccBusPmuEventCounters6
```

Type of bus pmu events supported on PEC 6.

Lists all bus pmu events.

**Enumeration values:**

<i>IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC6_SOUTH_PCI_GRANT_SELECT</i>	Select south pci grant on PEC6.
<i>IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC6_SOUTH_PCI_XFER_SELECT</i>	Select south pci transfer on PEC6.
<i>IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC6_SOUTH_PCI_RETRY_SELECT</i>	Select south pci retry on PEC6.
<i>IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC6_SOUTH_PCI_SPLIT_SELECT</i>	Select south pci split on PEC6.
<i>IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC6_SOUTH_PCI_REQ_SELECT</i>	Select south pci request on PEC6.
<i>IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC6_SOUTH_PCI_OWN_SELECT</i>	Select south pci own on PEC6.
<i>IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC6_SOUTH_BUS_WRITE_SELECT</i>	Select south pci write on PEC6.
<i>IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC6_NORTH_NPEC_GRANT_SELECT</i>	Select north NPEC grant on PEC6.
<i>IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC6_NORTH_NPEC_XFER_SELECT</i>	Select north NPEC transfer on PEC6.
<i>IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC6_NORTH_NPEC_RETRY_SELECT</i>	Select north NPEC retry on PEC6.
<i>IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC6_NORTH_NPEC_REQ_SELECT</i>	Select north NPEC request on PEC6.

<i>IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC6_NORTH_NPEC_OWN_SELECT</i>	Select north NPEC own on PEC6.
<i>IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC6_NORTH_NPEB_WRITE_SELECT</i>	Select north NPEB write on PEC6.
<i>IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC6_NORTH_NPEC_READ_SELECT</i>	Select north NPEC read on PEC6.
<i>IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC6_SDR_5_HIT_SELECT</i>	Select sdram5 hit on PEC6.
<i>IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC6_SDR_6_HIT_SELECT</i>	Select sdram6 hit on PEC6.
<i>IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC6_SDR_7_HIT_SELECT</i>	Select sdram7 hit on PEC6.
<i>IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC6_SDR_0_HIT_SELECT</i>	Select sdram0 hit on PEC6.
<i>IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC6_SDR_1_MISS_SELECT</i>	Select sdram1 miss on PEC6.
<i>IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC6_SDR_2_MISS_SELECT</i>	Select sdram2 miss on PEC6.
<i>IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC6_SDR_3_MISS_SELECT</i>	Select sdram3 miss on PEC6.
<i>IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC6_SDR_4_MISS_SELECT</i>	Select sdram4 miss on PEC6.

Definition at line **373** of file **IxPerfProfAcc.h**.

```
enum IxPerfProfAccBusPmuEventCounters7
```

Type of bus pmu events supported on PEC 7.

Lists all bus pmu events.

**Enumeration values:**

<i>IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC7_SOUTH_APB_RETRY_SELECT</i>	Select south apb retry on PEC7.
<i>IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC7_SOUTH_APB_REQ_SELECT</i>	Select south apb request on PEC7.
<i>IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC7_SOUTH_APB_OWN_SELECT</i>	Select south apb own on PEC7.
<i>IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC7_SOUTH_BUS_READ_SELECT</i>	Select south bus read on PEC7.
<i>IX_PERFPROF_ACC_BUS_PMU_PEC7_CYCLE_COUNT_SELECT</i>	Select cycle count on PEC7.

Definition at line **410** of file **IxPerfProfAcc.h**.

```
enum IxPerfProfAccBusPmuMode
```

State selection of counters.

These states will be used to determine the counters whose values are to be read.

**Enumeration values:**

*IX\_PERFPROF\_ACC\_BUS\_PMU\_MODE\_HALT* halt state  
*IX\_PERFPROF\_ACC\_BUS\_PMU\_MODE\_SOUTH* south state  
*IX\_PERFPROF\_ACC\_BUS\_PMU\_MODE\_NORTH* north state  
*IX\_PERFPROF\_ACC\_BUS\_PMU\_MODE\_SDRAM* SDRAM state.

Definition at line **532** of file **IxPerfProfAcc.h**.

```
enum IxPerfProfAccStatus
```

Invalid Status Definitions.

These status will be used by the APIs to return to the user.

**Enumeration values:**

<i>IX_PERFPROF_ACC_STATUS_SUCCESS</i>	success
<i>IX_PERFPROF_ACC_STATUS_FAIL</i>	fail
<i>IX_PERFPROF_ACC_STATUS_ANOTHER_UTIL_IN_PROGRESS</i>	another utility in progress
<i>IX_PERFPROF_ACC_STATUS_XCYCLE_MEASUREMENT_IN_PROGRESS</i>	measurement in progress
<i>IX_PERFPROF_ACC_STATUS_XCYCLE_NO_BASELINE</i>	no baseline yet
<i>IX_PERFPROF_ACC_STATUS_XCYCLE_MEASUREMENT_REQUEST_OUT_OF_RANGE</i>	Measurement chosen is out of range.
<i>IX_PERFPROF_ACC_STATUS_XCYCLE_PRIORITY_SET_FAIL</i>	Cannot set task priority.
<i>IX_PERFPROF_ACC_STATUS_XCYCLE_THREAD_CREATE_FAIL</i>	Fail create thread.
<i>IX_PERFPROF_ACC_STATUS_XCYCLE_PRIORITY_RESTORE_FAIL</i>	cannot restore priority
<i>IX_PERFPROF_ACC_STATUS_XCYCLE_MEASUREMENT_NOT_RUNNING</i>	xcycle not running
<i>IX_PERFPROF_ACC_STATUS_XSCALE_PMU_NUM_INVALID</i>	invalid number entered
<i>IX_PERFPROF_ACC_STATUS_XSCALE_PMU_EVENT_INVALID</i>	invalid pmu event
<i>IX_PERFPROF_ACC_STATUS_XSCALE_PMU_START_NOT_CALLED</i>	a start process was not called before attempting a stop or results

<i>IX_PERFPROF_ACC_STATUS_BUS_PMU_MODE_ERROR</i>	get invalid mode
<i>IX_PERFPROF_ACC_STATUS_BUS_PMU_PEC1_ERROR</i>	invalid pec1 entered
<i>IX_PERFPROF_ACC_STATUS_BUS_PMU_PEC2_ERROR</i>	invalid pec2 entered
<i>IX_PERFPROF_ACC_STATUS_BUS_PMU_PEC3_ERROR</i>	invalid pec3 entered
<i>IX_PERFPROF_ACC_STATUS_BUS_PMU_PEC4_ERROR</i>	invalid pec4 entered
<i>IX_PERFPROF_ACC_STATUS_BUS_PMU_PEC5_ERROR</i>	invalid pec5 entered
<i>IX_PERFPROF_ACC_STATUS_BUS_PMU_PEC6_ERROR</i>	invalid pec6 entered
<i>IX_PERFPROF_ACC_STATUS_BUS_PMU_PEC7_ERROR</i>	invalid pec7 entered
<i>IX_PERFPROF_ACC_STATUS_BUS_PMU_START_NOT_CALLED</i>	a start process was not called before attempting a stop
<i>IX_PERFPROF_ACC_STATUS_COMPONENT_NOT_SUPPORTED</i>	Device or OS does not support component.

Definition at line **469** of file **IxPerfProfAcc.h**.

```
enum IxPerfProfAccXscalePmuEvent
```

Type of Intel XScale (R) Processor PMU events supported.

Lists all Intel XScale (R) Processor PMU events. The maximum is a default value that the user should not exceed.

**Enumeration values:**

<i>IX_PERFPROF_ACC_XSCALE_PMU_EVENT_CACHE_MISS</i>	cache miss
<i>IX_PERFPROF_ACC_XSCALE_PMU_EVENT_CACHE_INSTRUCTION</i>	cache instruction
<i>IX_PERFPROF_ACC_XSCALE_PMU_EVENT_STALL</i>	event stall
<i>IX_PERFPROF_ACC_XSCALE_PMU_EVENT_INST_TLB_MISS</i>	instruction tlb miss
<i>IX_PERFPROF_ACC_XSCALE_PMU_EVENT_DATA_TLB_MISS</i>	data tlb miss
<i>IX_PERFPROF_ACC_XSCALE_PMU_EVENT_BRANCH_EXEC</i>	branch executed
<i>IX_PERFPROF_ACC_XSCALE_PMU_EVENT_BRANCH_MISPREDICT</i>	branch mispredict
<i>IX_PERFPROF_ACC_XSCALE_PMU_EVENT_INST_EXEC</i>	instruction executed
<i>IX_PERFPROF_ACC_XSCALE_PMU_EVENT_FULL_EVERYCYCLE</i>	Stall – data cache buffers are full.

<i>IX_PERFPROF_ACC_XSCALE_PMU_EVENT_ONCE</i>	This event occurs every cycle where condition present Stall – data cache buffers are full. This event occurs once for each contiguous sequence.
<i>IX_PERFPROF_ACC_XSCALE_PMU_EVENT_DATA_CACHE_ACCESS</i>	data cache access
<i>IX_PERFPROF_ACC_XSCALE_PMU_EVENT_DATA_CACHE_MISS</i>	data cache miss
<i>IX_PERFPROF_ACC_XSCALE_PMU_EVENT_DATA_CACHE_WRITEBACK</i>	data cache writeback
<i>IX_PERFPROF_ACC_XSCALE_PMU_EVENT_SW_CHANGE_PC</i>	sw change pc
<i>IX_PERFPROF_ACC_XSCALE_PMU_EVENT_MAX</i>	max value

Definition at line **429** of file **IxPerfProfAcc.h**.

## Function Documentation

```
ixPerfProfAccBusPmuPMSRGet ( UINT32 * pmsrValue )
```

Get values of PMSR.

This API gets the Previous Master Slave Register value and returns it to the calling function. This value indicates which master or slave accessed the north, south bus or sdram last. The value returned by this function is a 32 bit value and is read from location of an offset 0x0024 of the base value.

The PMSR value returned indicate the following:

```
*****
*   Bit      *   Name      *   Description                                     *
*   *   *   *   *   *   *   *   *   *   *   *   *   *   *   *   *   *   *   *   *   *   *
* [31:18] *Reserved*
*****
* [17:12] * PSS      * Indicates which of the slaves on
*          *          * ARBS was previously
*          *          * accessed by the AHBS.
*          *          * [000001] Expansion Bus
*          *          * [000010] SDRAM Controller
*          *          * [000100] PCI
*          *          * [001000] Queue Manager
*          *          * [010000] AHB-APB Bridge
*          *          * [100000] Reserved
*****
* [11:8]  * PSN      * Indicates which of the Slaves on
*          *          * ARBN was previously
*          *          * accessed the AHBN.
*          *          * [0001] SDRAM Controller
*          *          * [0010] AHB-AHB Bridge
*****
```

```

*          *          * [0100] Reserved                                     *
*          *          * [1000] Reserved                                     *
*****
* [7:4]    * PMS      * Indicates which of the Masters on                 *
*          *          * ARBS was previously                               *
*          *          * accessing the AHBS.                               *
*          *          * [0001] Gasket                                       *
*          *          * [0010] AHB-AHB Bridge                             *
*          *          * [0100] PCI                                         *
*          *          * [1000] APB                                         *
*****
* [3:0]    * PMN      * Indicates which of the Masters on                 *
*          *          * ARBN was previously                               *
*          *          * accessing the AHBN.                               *
*          *          * [0001] NPEA                                         *
*          *          * [0010] NPEB                                         *
*          *          * [0100] NPEC                                         *
*          *          * [1000] Reserved                                     *
*****

```

**Parameters:**

*\*psmrValue*      UINT32 [out] – Pointer to return PMSR value. Users need to allocate storage for psmrValue.

**Returns:**

none

- Reentrant : no
- ISR Callable : no

**ixPerfProfAccBusPmuResultsGet ( *IXPerfProfAccBusPmuResults* \* *BusPmuResults* )**

Gets values of all counters.

This function is responsible for getting all the counter values from the lower API and putting it into an array for the user.

**Parameters:**

*\*busPmuResults*   **IXPerfProfAccBusPmuResults** [out]  
                     ◇ Pointer to a structure of arrays to store all counter values.

**Returns:**

none

- Reentrant : no
- ISR Callable : no

```

ixPerfProfAccBusPmuStart ( IxPerfProfAccBusPmuMode mode,
IxPerfProfAccBusPmuEventCounters1 pecEvent1,
IxPerfProfAccBusPmuEventCounters2 pecEvent2,
IxPerfProfAccBusPmuEventCounters3 pecEvent3,
IxPerfProfAccBusPmuEventCounters4 pecEvent4,
IxPerfProfAccBusPmuEventCounters5 pecEvent5,
IxPerfProfAccBusPmuEventCounters6 pecEvent6,
IxPerfProfAccBusPmuEventCounters7 pecEvent7
)

```

Initializes all the counters and selects events to be monitored.

Function initializes all the counters and assigns the events associated with the counters. Users send in the mode and events they want to count. This API verifies if the combination chosen is appropriate and sets all the registers accordingly. Selecting HALT mode will result in an error. User should use **ixPerfProfAccBusPmuStop()** to HALT.

**Parameters:**

*mode* [in] – Mode selection.

*pecEvent1* **IxPerfProfAccBusPmuEventCounters1** [in] – Event for PEC1.

*pecEvent2* **IxPerfProfAccBusPmuEventCounters2** [in] – Event for PEC2.

*pecEvent3* **IxPerfProfAccBusPmuEventCounters3** [in] – Event for PEC3.

*pecEvent4* **IxPerfProfAccBusPmuEventCounters4** [in] – Event for PEC4.

*pecEvent5* **IxPerfProfAccBusPmuEventCounters5** [in] – Event for PEC5.

*pecEvent6* **IxPerfProfAccBusPmuEventCounters6** [in] – Event for PEC6.

*pecEvent7* **IxPerfProfAccBusPmuEventCounters7** [in] – Event for PEC7.

**Returns:**

- ◇ IX\_PERFPROF\_ACC\_STATUS\_SUCCESS – Initialization executed successfully.
- ◇ IX\_PERFPROF\_ACC\_STATUS\_BUS\_PMU\_MODE\_ERROR – Error in selection of mode. Only NORTH, SOUTH and SDRAM modes are allowed.
- ◇ IX\_PERFPROF\_ACC\_STATUS\_BUS\_PMU\_PEC1\_ERROR – Error in selection of event for PEC1
- ◇ IX\_PERFPROF\_ACC\_STATUS\_BUS\_PMU\_PEC2\_ERROR – Error in selection of event for PEC2
- ◇ IX\_PERFPROF\_ACC\_STATUS\_BUS\_PMU\_PEC3\_ERROR – Error in selection of event for PEC3
- ◇ IX\_PERFPROF\_ACC\_STATUS\_BUS\_PMU\_PEC4\_ERROR – Error in selection of event for PEC4
- ◇ IX\_PERFPROF\_ACC\_STATUS\_BUS\_PMU\_PEC5\_ERROR – Error in selection of event for PEC5
- ◇ IX\_PERFPROF\_ACC\_STATUS\_BUS\_PMU\_PEC6\_ERROR – Error in selection of event for PEC6
- ◇ IX\_PERFPROF\_ACC\_STATUS\_BUS\_PMU\_PEC7\_ERROR – Error in selection of event for PEC7
- ◇ IX\_PERFPROF\_ACC\_STATUS\_ANOTHER\_UTIL\_IN\_PROGRESS – another utility is running
- ◇ IX\_PERFPROF\_ACC\_STATUS\_FAIL – Failed to start because interrupt service routine fails to bind.



- Reentrant : no
- ISR Callable : no

**ixPerfProfAccBusPmuStop ( void )**

Stops all counters.

This function stops all the PECs by setting the halt bit in the ESR.

**Returns:**

- ◇ IX\_PERFPROF\_ACC\_STATUS\_SUCCESS – Counters successfully halted.
- ◇ IX\_PERFPROF\_ACC\_STATUS\_FAIL – Counters could'nt be halted.
- ◇ IX\_PERFPROF\_ACC\_STATUS\_BUS\_PMU\_START\_NOT\_CALLED – the **ixPerfProfAccBusPmuStart()** function is not called.

- Reentrant : no
- ISR Callable : no

**ixPerfProfAccXcycleBaselineRun ( UINT32 \* numBaselineCycle )**

Perform baseline for Xcycle.

**Parameters:**

*\*numBaselineCycle* UINT32 [out] – pointer to baseline value after calibration. Calling function are responsible for allocating memory space for this pointer.

Global Data :

- None.

This function MUST be run before the Xcycle tool can be used. This function must be run immediately when the OS boots up with no other addition programs running. Addition note : This API will measure the time needed to perform a fix amount of CPU instructions (~ 1 second worth of loops) as a highest priority task and with interrupt disabled. The time measured is known as the baseline – interpreted as the shortest time needed to complete the amount of CPU instructions. The baseline is returned as unit of time in 66Mhz clock tick.

**Returns:**

- ◇ IX\_PERFPROF\_ACC\_STATUS\_SUCCESS – successful run, result is returned
- ◇ IX\_PERFPROF\_ACC\_STATUS\_XCYCLE\_PRIORITY\_SET\_FAIL – failed to change task priority
- ◇ IX\_PERFPROF\_ACC\_STATUS\_XCYCLE\_PRIORITY\_RESTORE\_FAIL – failed to restore task priority
- ◇ IX\_PERFPROF\_ACC\_STATUS\_ANOTHER\_UTIL\_IN\_PROGRESS – another utility is running
- ◇ IX\_PERFPROF\_ACC\_STATUS\_XCYCLE\_MEASUREMENT\_IN\_PROGRESS – Xcycle tool has already started

- Reentrant : no
- ISR Callable : no

**ixPerfProfAccXcycleInProgress ( void )**

Check if Xcycle is running.

**Parameters:**

*None* Global Data :  
 ◇ None.

Check if Xcycle measuring task is running.

**Returns:**

◇ TRUE – Xcycle is running  
 ◇ FALSE – Xcycle is not running

- Reentrant : no
- ISR Callable : no

**ixPerfProfAccXcycleResultsGet ( **IxPerfProfAccXcycleResults** \* *xcycleResult* )**

Get the results of Xcycle measurement.

**Parameters:**

\**xcycleResult* **IxPerfProfAccXcycleResults** [out] – Pointer to results of last measurements.  
 Calling function are responsible for allocating memory space for this pointer.

Global Data :

- None.

Retrieve the results of last measurement. User should use **ixPerfProfAccXcycleInProgress()** to check if measurement is completed before getting the results.

**Returns:**

◇ IX\_PERFPROF\_ACC\_STATUS\_SUCCESS – successful  
 ◇ IX\_PERFPROF\_ACC\_STATUS\_FAIL – result is not complete.  
 ◇ IX\_PERFPROF\_ACC\_STATUS\_XCYCLE\_NO\_BASELINE – baseline is performed  
 ◇ IX\_PERFPROF\_ACC\_STATUS\_XCYCLE\_MEASUREMENT\_IN\_PROGRESS – Xcycle tool is still running

- Reentrant : no
- ISR Callable : no

**ixPerfProfAccXcycleStart ( UINT32 *numMeasurementsRequested* )**

Start the measurement.

**Parameters:**

*numMeasurementsRequested* UINT32 [in] – number of measurements to perform. Value can be 0 to IX\_PERFPROF\_ACC\_XCYCLE\_MAX\_NUM\_OF\_MEASUREMENTS. 0 indicate continuous measurement.

Global Data :

- None.

Start the measurements immediately. *numMeasurementsRequested* specifies number of measurements to run. If *numMeasurementsRequested* is set to 0, the measurement will be performed continuously until *IxPerfProfAccXcycleStop()* is called. It is estimated that 1 measurement takes approximately 1 second during low CPU utilization, therefore 128 measurement takes approximately 128 sec. When CPU utilization is high, the measurement will take longer. This function spawn a task the perform the measurement and returns. The measurement may continue even if this function returns.

IMPORTANT: Under heavy CPU utilization, the task spawn by this function may starve and fail to respond to stop command. User may need to kill the task manually in this case.

There are only IX\_PERFPROF\_ACC\_XCYCLE\_MAX\_NUM\_OF\_MEASUREMENTS storage available so storing is wrapped around if measurements are more than IX\_PERFPROF\_ACC\_XCYCLE\_MAX\_NUM\_OF\_MEASUREMENTS.

**Returns:**

- ◇ IX\_PERFPROF\_ACC\_STATUS\_SUCCESS – successful start, a thread is created in the background to perform measurement.
- ◇ IX\_PERFPROF\_ACC\_STATUS\_XCYCLE\_PRIORITY\_SET\_FAIL – failed to set task priority
- ◇ IX\_PERFPROF\_ACC\_STATUS\_XCYCLE\_THREAD\_CREATE\_FAIL – failed to create thread to perform measurement.
- ◇ IX\_PERFPROF\_ACC\_STATUS\_XCYCLE\_NO\_BASELINE – baseline is not available
- ◇ IX\_PERFPROF\_ACC\_STATUS\_XCYCLE\_MEASUREMENT\_REQUEST\_OUT\_OF\_RANGE – value is larger than IX\_PERFPROF\_ACC\_XCYCLE\_MAX\_NUM\_OF\_MEASUREMENTS
- ◇ IX\_PERFPROF\_ACC\_STATUS\_XCYCLE\_MEASUREMENT\_IN\_PROGRESS – Xcycle tool has already started
- ◇ IX\_PERFPROF\_ACC\_STATUS\_ANOTHER\_UTIL\_IN\_PROGRESS – another utility is running

- Reentrant : no
- ISR Callable : no

```
ixPerfProfAccXcycleStop ( void )
```

Stop the Xcycle measurement.

**Parameters:**

None Global Data :  
◇ None.

Stop Xcycle measurements immediately. If the measurements have stopped or not started, return `IX_PERFPROF_STATUS_XCYCLE_MEASUREMENT_NOT_RUNNING`. Note: This function does not stop measurement cold. The measurement thread may need a few seconds to complete the last measurement. User needs to use `ixPerfProfAccXcycleInProgress()` to determine if measurement is indeed completed.

**Returns:**

◇ `IX_PERFPROF_ACC_STATUS_SUCCESS` – successful measurement is stopped  
◇ `IX_PERFPROF_STATUS_XCYCLE_MEASUREMENT_NOT_RUNNING` – no measurement running

- Reentrant : no
- ISR Callable : no

```
ixPerfProfAccXscalePmuEventCountStart ( BOOL                clkCntDiv,  
                                         UINT32             numEvents,  
                                         IxPerfProfAccXscalePmuEvent pmuEvent1,  
                                         IxPerfProfAccXscalePmuEvent pmuEvent2,  
                                         IxPerfProfAccXscalePmuEvent pmuEvent3,  
                                         IxPerfProfAccXscalePmuEvent pmuEvent4  
                                         )
```

This API will start the clock and event counting.

**Parameters:**

*clkCntDiv* **BOOL** [in] – enables/disables the clock divider. When true, the divider is enabled and the clock count will be incremented by one at each 64th processor clock cycle. When false, the divider is disabled and the clock count will be incremented at every processor clock cycle.

*numEvents* **UINT32** [in] – the number of PMU events that are to be monitored as specified by the user. For clock counting only, this is set to zero.

*pmuEvent1* **IxPerfProfAccXscalePmuEvent** [in] – the specific PMU event to be monitored by counter 1

*pmuEvent2* **IxPerfProfAccXscalePmuEvent** [in] – the specific PMU event to be monitored by counter 2

*pmuEvent3* **IxPerfProfAccXscalePmuEvent** [in] – the specific PMU event to be monitored by counter 3

*pmuEvent4* **IxPerfProfAccXscalePmuEvent** [in] – the specific PMU event to be monitored by counter 4

This API will start the clock and Intel XScale (R) Processor PMU event counting. Up to 4 events can be monitored simultaneously. This API has to be called before `ixPerfProfAccXscalePmuEventCountStop` can be called.

**Returns:**

- ◇ IX\_PERFPROF\_ACC\_STATUS\_SUCCESS if clock and events counting are started successfully
- ◇ IX\_PERFPROF\_ACC\_STATUS\_FAIL if unable to start the counting
- ◇ IX\_PERFPROF\_ACC\_STATUS\_XSCALE\_PMU\_NUM\_INVALID if the number of events specified is out of the valid range
- ◇ IX\_PERFPROF\_ACC\_STATUS\_XSCALE\_PMU\_EVENT\_INVALID if the value of the PMU event specified does not exist
- ◇ IX\_PERFPROF\_ACC\_STATUS\_ANOTHER\_UTIL\_IN\_PROGRESS – another utility is running

- Reentrant : no
- ISR Callable : no

```
ixPerfProfAccXscalePmuEventCountStop ( IxPerfProfAccXscalePmuResults * eventCountStopResults )
```

This API will stop the clock and event counting.

**Parameters:**

*\*eventCountStopResults* **IxPerfProfAccXscalePmuResults** [out] – pointer to struct containing results of counters and their overflow. It is the users's responsibility to allocate the memory for this pointer.

This API will stop the clock and Intel XScale (R) Processor PMU events that are being counted. The results of the clock and events count will be stored in the pointer allocated by the user. It can only be called once IxPerfProfAccEventCountStart has been called.

**Returns:**

- ◇ IX\_PERFPROF\_ACC\_STATUS\_SUCCESS if clock and events counting are stopped successfully
- ◇ IX\_PERFPROF\_ACC\_STATUS\_XSCALE\_PMU\_START\_NOT\_CALLED if ixPerfProfAccXscalePmuEventCountStart is not called first.

- Reentrant : no
- ISR Callable : no

```
ixPerfProfAccXscalePmuEventSampStart ( UINT32 numEvents,
                                         IxPerfProfAccXscalePmuEvent pmuEvent1,
                                         UINT32 eventRate1,
                                         IxPerfProfAccXscalePmuEvent pmuEvent2,
                                         UINT32 eventRate2,
                                         IxPerfProfAccXscalePmuEvent pmuEvent3,
                                         UINT32 eventRate3,
                                         IxPerfProfAccXscalePmuEvent pmuEvent4,
                                         UINT32 eventRate4
                                         )
```

Starts the event based sampling.

**Parameters:**

- numEvents* UINT32 [in] – the number of PMU events that are to be monitored as specified by the user. The value should be between 1–4 events at a time.
- pmuEvent1* **IXPerfProfAccXscalePmuEvent** [in] – the specific PMU event to be monitored by counter 1
- eventRate1* UINT32 [in] – sampling rate of counter 1. The rate is the number of events before a sample taken. If 0 is specified, the full counter value (0xFFFFFFFF) is used. The rate must not be greater than the full counter value.
- pmuEvent2* **IXPerfProfAccXscalePmuEvent** [in] – the specific PMU event to be monitored by counter 2
- eventRate2* UINT32 [in] – sampling rate of counter 2. The rate is the number of events before a sample taken. If 0 is specified, the full counter value (0xFFFFFFFF) is used. The rate must not be greater than the full counter value.
- pmuEvent3* **IXPerfProfAccXscalePmuEvent** [in] – the specific PMU event to be monitored by counter 3
- eventRate3* UINT32 [in] – sampling rate of counter 3. The rate is the number of events before a sample taken. If 0 is specified, the full counter value (0xFFFFFFFF) is used. The rate must not be greater than the full counter value.
- pmuEvent4* **IXPerfProfAccXscalePmuEvent** [in] – the specific PMU event to be monitored by counter 4
- eventRate4* UINT32 [in] – sampling rate of counter 4. The rate is the number of events before a sample taken. If 0 is specified, the full counter value (0xFFFFFFFF) is used. The rate must not be greater than the full counter value.

Starts the event based sampling to determine the frequency with which events are being executed. The sampling rate is the number of events, as specified by the user, before a counter overflow interrupt is generated. A sample is taken at each counter overflow interrupt. At each sample, the value of the program counter determines the corresponding location in the code. Each of these occurrences are recorded to determine the frequency with which the Xscale code in each event is executed. This API has to be called before ixPerfProfAccXscalePmuEventSampStop can be called.

**Returns:**

- ◇ IX\_PERFPROF\_ACC\_STATUS\_SUCCESS if event based sampling is started successfully
  - ◇ IX\_PERFPROF\_ACC\_STATUS\_FAIL if unable to start the sampling
  - ◇ IX\_PERFPROF\_ACC\_STATUS\_XSCALE\_PMU\_NUM\_INVALID if the number of events specified is out of the valid range
  - ◇ IX\_PERFPROF\_ACC\_STATUS\_XSCALE\_PMU\_EVENT\_INVALID if the value of the PMU event specified does not exist
    - IX\_PERFPROF\_ACC\_STATUS\_ANOTHER\_UTIL\_IN\_PROGRESS – another utility is running
- Reentrant : no
  - ISR Callable : no

```
ixPerfProfAccXscalePmuEventSampStop ( IxPerfProfAccXscalePmuSamplePcProfile * eventProfile1,
IxPerfProfAccXscalePmuSamplePcProfile * eventProfile2,
IxPerfProfAccXscalePmuSamplePcProfile * eventProfile3,
IxPerfProfAccXscalePmuSamplePcProfile * eventProfile4
)
```

Stops the event based sampling.

**Parameters:**

- \*eventProfile1* **IxPerfProfAccXscalePmuSamplePcProfile** [out] – pointer to the array of profiles for each program counter value; the user should set the size of the array to IX\_PERFPROF\_ACC\_XSCALE\_PMU\_MAX\_PROFILE\_SAMPLES. It is the users's responsibility to allocate memory for this pointer.
- \*eventProfile2* **IxPerfProfAccXscalePmuSamplePcProfile** [out] – pointer to the array of profiles for each program counter value; the user should set the size of the array to IX\_PERFPROF\_ACC\_XSCALE\_PMU\_MAX\_PROFILE\_SAMPLES. It is the users's responsibility to allocate memory for this pointer.
- \*eventProfile3* **IxPerfProfAccXscalePmuSamplePcProfile** [out] – pointer to the array of profiles for each program counter value; the user should set the size of the array to IX\_PERFPROF\_ACC\_XSCALE\_PMU\_MAX\_PROFILE\_SAMPLES. It is the users's responsibility to allocate memory for this pointer.
- \*eventProfile4* **IxPerfProfAccXscalePmuSamplePcProfile** [out] – pointer to the array of profiles for each program counter value; the user should set the size of the array to IX\_PERFPROF\_ACC\_XSCALE\_PMU\_MAX\_PROFILE\_SAMPLES. It is the users's responsibility to allocate memory for this pointer.

This API stops the event based sampling. The results are stored in the pointers allocated by the user. It can only be called once ixPerfProfAccEventSampStart has been called.

**Returns:**

- ◇ IX\_PERFPROF\_ACC\_STATUS\_SUCCESS if event based sampling is stopped successfully
- ◇ IX\_PERFPROF\_ACC\_STATUS\_XSCALE\_PMU\_START\_NOT\_CALLED if ixPerfProfAccEventSampStart not called first.

- Reentrant : no
- ISR Callable : no

```
ixPerfProfAccXscalePmuResultsGet ( IxPerfProfAccXscalePmuResults * results )
```

Reads the current value of the counters and their overflow.

**Parameters:**

- \*results* **IxPerfProfAccXscalePmuResults** [out] – pointer to the results struct. It is the user's responsibility to allocate memory for this pointer

This API reads the value of all four event counters and the clock counter, and the associated overflows. It does not give results associated with sampling, i.e. PC and their frequencies. This API can be called at any time once a process has been started. If it is called before a process has started the user should be aware that

the values it contains are default values and might be meaningless. The values of the counters are stored in the pointer allocated by the client.

**Returns:**

– none

- Reentrant : no
- ISR Callable : no

```
ixPerfProfAccXscalePmuTimeSampStart ( UINT32 samplingRate,  
                                       BOOL   clkCntDiv  
                                       )
```

Starts the time based sampling.

**Parameters:**

*samplingRate* UINT32 [in] – sampling rate is the number of clock counts before a counter overflow interrupt is generated, at which, a sample is taken; the rate specified cannot be greater than the counter size of 32bits or set to zero.

*clkCntDiv* BOOL [in] – enables/disables the clock divider. When true, the divider is enabled and the clock count will be incremented by one at each 64th processor clock cycle. When false, the divider is disabled and the clock count will be incremented at every processor clock cycle.

This API starts the time based sampling to determine the frequency with which lines of code are being executed. Sampling is done at the rate specified by the user. At each sample, the value of the program counter is determined. Each of these occurrences are recorded to determine the frequency with which the Xscale code is being executed. This API has to be called before ixPerfProfAccXscalePmuTimeSampStop can be called.

**Returns:**

◇ IX\_PERFPROF\_ACC\_STATUS\_SUCCESS if time based sampling is started successfully  
◇ IX\_PERFPROF\_ACC\_STATUS\_FAIL if unable to start the sampling  
◇ IX\_PERFPROF\_ACC\_STATUS\_ANOTHER\_UTIL\_IN\_PROGRESS – another utility is running

- Reentrant : no
- ISR Callable : no

```
ixPerfProfAccXscalePmuTimeSampStop ( IxPerfProfAccXscalePmuEvtCnt * clkCount,  
                                     IxPerfProfAccXscalePmuSamplePcProfile * timeProfile  
                                     )
```

Stops the time based sampling.

**Parameters:**

*\*clkCount* **IxPerfProfAccXscalePmuEvtCnt** [out] – pointer to the struct containing the final clock count and its overflow. It is the user's responsibility to allocate the memory for



this pointer.

*\*timeProfile* **IxPerfProfAccXscalePmuSamplePcProfile** [out] – pointer to the array of profiles for each program counter value; the user should set the size of the array to **IX\_PERFPROF\_ACC\_XSCALE\_PMU\_MAX\_PROFILE\_SAMPLES**. It is the user's responsibility to allocate the memory for this pointer.

This API stops the time based sampling. The results are stored in the pointers allocated by the user. It can only be called once **ixPerfProfAccXscalePmuTimeSampStart** has been called.

**Returns:**

- ◇ **IX\_PERFPROF\_ACC\_STATUS\_SUCCESS** if time based sampling is stopped successfully
- ◇ **IX\_PERFPROF\_ACC\_STATUS\_XSCALE\_PMU\_START\_NOT\_CALLED** if **ixPerfProfAccXscalePmuTimeSampStart** not called first

- Reentrant : no
- ISR Callable : no

# IXP Queue Manager (qmgr) Public API

The public API for the IXP qmgr component.

## Defines

```
#define IX_QMGR_QUELOW_GROUP  
    Backward compatability for QMgr queue group select identifier,  
    IX_QMGR_QUELOW_GROUP.  
  
#define IX_QMGR_QUEUPP_GROUP  
    Backward compatability for QMgr queue group select identifier,  
    IX_QMGR_QUEUPP_GROUP.
```

## Typedefs

```
typedef void(* IxQMgrDispatcherFuncPtr )(IxQMgrDispatchGroup group)  
    QMgr Dispatcher Loop function pointer.
```

## Enumerations

```
enum IxQMgrDispatcherState {  
    IX_QMGR_DISPATCHER_LOOP_FREE,  
    IX_QMGR_DISPATCHER_LOOP_BUSY  
}  
    Queue dispatcher State.  
  
enum IxQMgrDispatchGroup {  
    IX_QMGR_GROUP_Q0_TO_Q31,  
    IX_QMGR_GROUP_Q32_TO_Q63,  
    IX_QMGR_GROUP_MAX  
}  
    QMgr queue group select identifiers.
```

## Functions

```
PUBLIC IX_STATUS ixQMgrInit (void)  
    Initialise the QMgr.  
  
PUBLIC IX_STATUS ixQMgrUnload (void)  
    Uninitialise the QMgr.  
  
PUBLIC void ixQMgrShow (void)
```

*Describe queue configuration and statistics for active queues.*

PUBLIC void **ixQMgrDispatcherLoopGet** (**IxQMgrDispatcherFuncPtr**  
\*qDispatcherFuncPtr)  
*Get QMgr DispatcherLoopRun for respective silicon device.*

PUBLIC void **ixQMgrDispatcherLoopEnable** (void)  
*Enables the Queue Manager Dispatcher.*

PUBLIC void **ixQMgrDispatcherLoopDisable** (void)  
*Disables the Queue Manager Dispatcher.*

PUBLIC  
**IxQMgrDispatcherState ixQMgrDispatcherLoopStatusGet** (void)  
*Gets the Queue dispatcher Loop status.*

PUBLIC void **ixQMgrDispatcherInterruptModeSet** (BOOL mode)  
*Notifies the ixQMgr that the Dispatcher is in Interrupt mode.*

---

## Detailed Description

The public API for the IXP qmgr component.

IxQMgr is a low level public interface to the Queue Manager

---

## Define Documentation

```
#define IX_QMGR_QUELOW_GROUP
```

Backward compatability for QMgr queue group select identifier, IX\_QMGR\_QUELOW\_GROUP.

This #define provides backward compatability for the IX\_QMGR\_QUELOW\_GROUP, which has been replaced by IX\_QMGR\_GROUP\_Q0\_TO\_Q31.

This #define has been DEPRECATED and will be removed in a future release.

Definition at line **88** of file **IxQMgr.h**.

```
#define IX_QMGR_QUEUPP_GROUP
```

Backward compatability for QMgr queue group select identifier, IX\_QMGR\_QUEUPP\_GROUP.

This #define provides backward compatability for the IX\_QMGR\_QUEUPP\_GROUP, which has been replaced by IX\_QMGR\_GROUP\_Q32\_TO\_Q63.

This #define has been DEPRECATED and will be removed in a future release.

Definition at line **104** of file **IxQMgr.h**.

---

## Typedef Documentation

### IxQMgrDispatcherFuncPtr

QMgr Dispatcher Loop function pointer.

This defines the interface for QMgr Dispatcher functions.

**Parameters:**

*group* **IxQMgrDispatchGroup** [in] – the group of the queue of which the dispatcher will run

Definition at line **118** of file **IxQMgr.h**.

---

## Enumeration Type Documentation

### enum IxQMgrDispatcherState

Queue dispatcher State.

Indicates the Queue dispatcher state busy or free.

Definition at line **47** of file **IxQMgr.h**.

### enum IxQMgrDispatchGroup

QMgr queue group select identifiers.

This enum defines the groups into which the queues are divided. Each group contains 32 queues. Each qmgr interface function that works on a group of queues takes one of these identifiers as a parameter.

**Enumeration values:**

*IX\_QMGR\_GROUP\_Q0\_TO\_Q31* Queues 0–31.

*IX\_QMGR\_GROUP\_Q32\_TO\_Q63* Queues 32–63.

Definition at line **63** of file **IxQMgr.h**.

---

# Function Documentation

```
void ixQMgrDispatcherInterruptModeSet ( BOOL mode )
```

Notifies the ixQMgr that the Dispatcher is in Interrupt mode.

**Note:**

This function records whether the Queue Dispatcher is bind to the QM Interrupt notification IRQ.

**Parameters:**

*BOOL* mode [in] – TRUE – dispatcher mode is bind to Queue Manager IRQ for queue notifications (0–63). FALSE – dispatcher is in poll mode.

**Returns:**

None

```
ixQMgrDispatcherLoopDisable ( void )
```

Disables the Queue Manager Dispatcher.

**Note:**

API used by the ixErrHdlAcc to disable the queue manager dispatcher to prevent QM Read/Write access.

**Returns:**

None

```
ixQMgrDispatcherLoopEnable ( void )
```

Enables the Queue Manager Dispatcher.

**Note:**

API used by the ixErrHdlAcc to re-enable the queue manager dispatcher.

**Returns:**

None

```
ixQMgrDispatcherLoopGet ( IxQMgrDispatcherFuncPtr * qDispatcherFuncPtr )
```

Get QMgr DispatcherLoopRun for respective silicon device.

```
IxQMgrDispatcherState ixQMgrDispatcherLoopStatusGet ( void )
```

Gets the Queue dispatcher Loop status.

**Returns:**

Returns an enum that indicates the dispatcher state (RUN or STOP)

```
ixQMgrInit ( void )
```

Initialise the QMgr.

This function must be called before any other QMgr function. It sets up internal data structures.

**Returns:**

◇ IX\_SUCCESS, the IxQMgr successfully initialised

◇ IX\_FAIL, failed to initialize the Qmgr

```
ixQMgrShow ( void )
```

Describe queue configuration and statistics for active queues.

This function shows active queues, their configurations and statistics.

**Returns:**

◇ void

```
ixQMgrUnload ( void )
```

Uninitialise the QMgr.

This function will perform the tasks required to unload the QMgr component cleanly. This includes unmapping kernel memory and unconfigures the access layer component's queue configuration.

This should be called before a soft reboot or unloading of a kernel module.

**Precondition:**

It should only be called if **ixQMgrInit** has already been called.

**Postcondition:**

No QMgr functions should be called until ixQMgrInit is called again.

**Returns:**

◇ IX\_SUCCESS, the IxQMgr successfully uninitialised

◇ IX\_FAIL, failed to uninitialize the Qmgr

# Intel (R) IXP400 Software Queue Assignments

Queue Assignments used by Ethernet, HSS, ATM and DMA access libraries. Ethernet QoS traffic class definitions are mapped by EthDB in **IxEthDBQoS.h**.

## Defines

```
#define IX_NPE_MPHYMULTIPOINT
    Global compiler switch to select between 3 possible NPE Modes Define this macro to enable MPHY mode.

#define IX_NPE_A_TXDONE_QUEUE_HIGHWATERMARK
    The NPE reserves the High Watermark for its operation. But it must be set by the Xscale.

#define IX_NPE_A_QMQ_ATM_TX_DONE
    Queue ID for ATM Transmit Done queue.

#define IX_NPE_A_QMQ_ATM_TX0
    Queue ID for ATM transmit Queue in a single phy configuration.

#define IX_NPE_A_QMQ_ATM_TXID_MIN
    Queue Manager Queue ID for ATM transmit Queue with minimum number of queue.

#define IX_NPE_A_QMQ_ATM_TXID_MAX
    Queue Manager Queue ID for ATM transmit Queue with maximum number of queue.

#define IX_NPE_A_QMQ_ATM_RX_HI
    Queue Manager Queue ID for ATM Receive high Queue.

#define IX_NPE_A_QMQ_ATM_RX_LO
    Queue Manager Queue ID for ATM Receive low Queue.

#define IX_NPE_A_QMQ_ATM_TX1
    Queue ID for ATM transmit Queue Multiply from 1 to 11.

#define IX_NPE_A_QMQ_ATM_FREE_VC0
    Hardware QMgr Queue ID for ATM Free VC Queue.

#define IX_NPE_A_QMQ_ATM_RXFREE_MIN
    The minimum queue ID for FreeVC queue.

#define IX_NPE_A_QMQ_OAM_FREE_VC
    OAM Rx Free queue ID.

#define IX_NPE_A_QMQ_HSS0_CHL_RX_TRIG
    Hardware QMgr Queue ID for HSS Port 0 Channelized Receive trigger.

#define IX_NPE_A_QMQ_HSS0_PKT_RX
```

*Hardware QMgr Queue ID for HSS Port 0 Packetized Receive.*

**#define IX\_NPE\_A\_QMQ\_HSS0\_PKT\_TX0**

*Hardware QMgr Queue ID for HSS Port 0 Packetized Transmit queue 0.*

**#define IX\_NPE\_A\_QMQ\_HSS0\_PKT\_TX1**

*Hardware QMgr Queue ID for HSS Port 0 Packetized Transmit queue 1.*

**#define IX\_NPE\_A\_QMQ\_HSS0\_PKT\_TX2**

*Hardware QMgr Queue ID for HSS Port 0 Packetized Transmit queue 2.*

**#define IX\_NPE\_A\_QMQ\_HSS0\_PKT\_TX3**

*Hardware QMgr Queue ID for HSS Port 0 Packetized Transmit queue 3.*

**#define IX\_NPE\_A\_QMQ\_HSS0\_PKT\_RX\_FREE0**

*Hardware QMgr Queue ID for HSS Port 0 Packetized Receive Free queue 0.*

**#define IX\_NPE\_A\_QMQ\_HSS0\_PKT\_RX\_FREE1**

*Hardware QMgr Queue ID for HSS Port 0 Packetized Receive Free queue 1.*

**#define IX\_NPE\_A\_QMQ\_HSS0\_PKT\_RX\_FREE2**

*Hardware QMgr Queue ID for HSS Port 0 Packetized Receive Free queue 2.*

**#define IX\_NPE\_A\_QMQ\_HSS0\_PKT\_RX\_FREE3**

*Hardware QMgr Queue ID for HSS Port 0 Packetized Receive Free queue 3.*

**#define IX\_NPE\_A\_QMQ\_HSS0\_PKT\_TX\_DONE**

*Hardware QMgr Queue ID for HSS Port 0 Packetized Transmit Done queue.*

**#define IX\_NPE\_A\_QMQ\_HSS1\_CHL\_RX\_TRIG**

*Hardware QMgr Queue ID for HSS Port 1 Channelized Receive trigger.*

**#define IX\_NPE\_A\_QMQ\_HSS1\_PKT\_RX**

*Hardware QMgr Queue ID for HSS Port 1 Packetized Receive.*

**#define IX\_NPE\_A\_QMQ\_HSS1\_PKT\_TX0**

*Hardware QMgr Queue ID for HSS Port 1 Packetized Transmit queue 0.*

**#define IX\_NPE\_A\_QMQ\_HSS1\_PKT\_TX1**

*Hardware QMgr Queue ID for HSS Port 1 Packetized Transmit queue 1.*

**#define IX\_NPE\_A\_QMQ\_HSS1\_PKT\_TX2**

*Hardware QMgr Queue ID for HSS Port 1 Packetized Transmit queue 2.*

**#define IX\_NPE\_A\_QMQ\_HSS1\_PKT\_TX3**

*Hardware QMgr Queue ID for HSS Port 1 Packetized Transmit queue 3.*

**#define IX\_NPE\_A\_QMQ\_HSS1\_PKT\_RX\_FREE0**

*Hardware QMgr Queue ID for HSS Port 1 Packetized Receive Free queue 0.*

**#define IX\_NPE\_A\_QMQ\_HSS1\_PKT\_RX\_FREE1**



*Hardware QMgr Queue ID for HSS Port 1 Packetized Receive Free queue 1.*

**#define IX\_NPE\_A\_QMQ\_HSS1\_PKT\_RX\_FREE2**

*Hardware QMgr Queue ID for HSS Port 1 Packetized Receive Free queue 2.*

**#define IX\_NPE\_A\_QMQ\_HSS1\_PKT\_RX\_FREE3**

*Hardware QMgr Queue ID for HSS Port 1 Packetized Receive Free queue 3.*

**#define IX\_NPE\_A\_QMQ\_HSS1\_PKT\_TX\_DONE**

*Hardware QMgr Queue ID for HSS Port 1 Packetized Transmit Done queue.*

**#define IX\_ETH\_ACC\_RX\_FREE\_NPEA\_Q**

*Supply Rx Buffers Ethernet Q for NPEA.*

**#define IX\_ETH\_ACC\_RX\_FREE\_NPEB\_Q**

*Supply Rx Buffers Ethernet Q for NPEB (for single port images only).*

**#define IX\_ETH\_ACC\_RX\_FREE\_NPEC\_Q**

*Supply Rx Buffers Ethernet Q for NPEC.*

**#define IX\_ETH\_ACC\_TX\_NPEA\_Q**

*Submit frame Q for NPEA.*

**#define IX\_ETH\_ACC\_TX\_NPEB\_Q**

*Submit frame Q for NPEB.*

**#define IX\_ETH\_ACC\_TX\_NPEC\_Q**

*Submit frame Q for NPEC.*

**#define IX\_ETH\_ACC\_TX\_DONE\_Q**

*Transmit complete Q for all NPEs.*

---

## Detailed Description

Queue Assignments used by Ethernet, HSS, ATM and DMA access libraries. Ethernet QoS traffic class definitions are mapped by EthDB in **IxEthDBQoS.h**.

---

## Define Documentation

```
#define IX_ETH_ACC_RX_FREE_NPEA_Q
```

Supply Rx Buffers Ethernet Q for NPEA.

Definition at line **582** of file **IxQueueAssignments.h**.

```
#define IX_ETH_ACC_RX_FREE_NPEB_Q
```

Supply Rx Buffers Ethernet Q for NPEB (for single port images only).

Definition at line **593** of file **IxQueueAssignments.h**.

```
#define IX_ETH_ACC_RX_FREE_NPEC_Q
```

Supply Rx Buffers Ethernet Q for NPEC.

Definition at line **604** of file **IxQueueAssignments.h**.

```
#define IX_ETH_ACC_TX_DONE_Q
```

Transmit complete Q for all NPEs.

Definition at line **649** of file **IxQueueAssignments.h**.

```
#define IX_ETH_ACC_TX_NPEA_Q
```

Submit frame Q for NPEA.

Definition at line **615** of file **IxQueueAssignments.h**.

```
#define IX_ETH_ACC_TX_NPEB_Q
```

Submit frame Q for NPEB.

Definition at line **627** of file **IxQueueAssignments.h**.

```
#define IX_ETH_ACC_TX_NPEC_Q
```

Submit frame Q for NPEC.

Definition at line **638** of file **IxQueueAssignments.h**.

```
#define IX_NPE_A_QMQ_ATM_FREE_VC0
```

Hardware QMgr Queue ID for ATM Free VC Queue.

There are 32 Hardware QMgr Queue ID; from IX\_NPE\_A\_QMQ\_ATM\_FREE\_VC1 to IX\_NPE\_A\_QMQ\_ATM\_FREE\_VC30

Definition at line **173** of file **IxQueueAssignments.h**.

```
#define IX_NPE_A_QMQ_ATM_RX_HI
```

Queue Manager Queue ID for ATM Receive high Queue.

Definition at line **153** of file **IxQueueAssignments.h**.

```
#define IX_NPE_A_QMQ_ATM_RX_LO
```

Queue Manager Queue ID for ATM Receive low Queue.

Definition at line **154** of file **IxQueueAssignments.h**.

```
#define IX_NPE_A_QMQ_ATM_RXFREE_MIN
```

The minimum queue ID for FreeVC queue.

Definition at line **214** of file **IxQueueAssignments.h**.

```
#define IX_NPE_A_QMQ_ATM_TX0
```

Queue ID for ATM transmit Queue in a single phy configuration.

Definition at line **89** of file **IxQueueAssignments.h**.

```
#define IX_NPE_A_QMQ_ATM_TX1
```

Queue ID for ATM transmit Queue Multiplier from 1 to 11.

Definition at line **140** of file **IxQueueAssignments.h**.

```
#define IX_NPE_A_QMQ_ATM_TX_DONE
```

Queue ID for ATM Transmit Done queue.

Definition at line **79** of file **IxQueueAssignments.h**.

```
#define IX_NPE_A_QMQ_ATM_TXID_MAX
```

Queue Manager Queue ID for ATM transmit Queue with maximum number of queue.

Definition at line **152** of file **IxQueueAssignments.h**.

```
#define IX_NPE_A_QMQ_ATM_TXID_MIN
```

Queue Manager Queue ID for ATM transmit Queue with minimum number of queue.

Definition at line **151** of file **IxQueueAssignments.h**.

```
#define IX_NPE_A_QMQ_HSS0_CHL_RX_TRIG
```

Hardware QMgr Queue ID for HSS Port 0 Channelized Receive trigger.

Definition at line **251** of file **IxQueueAssignments.h**.

```
#define IX_NPE_A_QMQ_HSS0_PKT_RX
```

Hardware QMgr Queue ID for HSS Port 0 Packetized Receive.

Definition at line **276** of file **IxQueueAssignments.h**.

```
#define IX_NPE_A_QMQ_HSS0_PKT_RX_FREE0
```

Hardware QMgr Queue ID for HSS Port 0 Packetized Receive Free queue 0.

Definition at line **326** of file **IxQueueAssignments.h**.

```
#define IX_NPE_A_QMQ_HSS0_PKT_RX_FREE1
```

Hardware QMgr Queue ID for HSS Port 0 Packetized Receive Free queue 1.

Definition at line **336** of file **IxQueueAssignments.h**.

```
#define IX_NPE_A_QMQ_HSS0_PKT_RX_FREE2
```

Hardware QMgr Queue ID for HSS Port 0 Packetized Receive Free queue 2.

Definition at line **346** of file **IxQueueAssignments.h**.

```
#define IX_NPE_A_QMQ_HSS0_PKT_RX_FREE3
```

Hardware QMgr Queue ID for HSS Port 0 Packetized Receive Free queue 3.

Definition at line **356** of file **IxQueueAssignments.h**.

```
#define IX_NPE_A_QMQ_HSS0_PKT_TX0
```

Hardware QMgr Queue ID for HSS Port 0 Packetized Transmit queue 0.

Definition at line **286** of file **IxQueueAssignments.h**.

```
#define IX_NPE_A_QMQ_HSS0_PKT_TX1
```

Hardware QMgr Queue ID for HSS Port 0 Packetized Transmit queue 1.

Definition at line **296** of file **IxQueueAssignments.h**.

```
#define IX_NPE_A_QMQ_HSS0_PKT_TX2
```

Hardware QMgr Queue ID for HSS Port 0 Packetized Transmit queue 2.

Definition at line **306** of file **IxQueueAssignments.h**.

```
#define IX_NPE_A_QMQ_HSS0_PKT_TX3
```

Hardware QMgr Queue ID for HSS Port 0 Packetized Transmit queue 3.

Definition at line **316** of file **IxQueueAssignments.h**.

```
#define IX_NPE_A_QMQ_HSS0_PKT_TX_DONE
```

Hardware QMgr Queue ID for HSS Port 0 Packetized Transmit Done queue.

Definition at line **366** of file **IxQueueAssignments.h**.

```
#define IX_NPE_A_QMQ_HSS1_CHL_RX_TRIG
```

Hardware QMgr Queue ID for HSS Port 1 Channelized Receive trigger.

Definition at line **378** of file **IxQueueAssignments.h**.

```
#define IX_NPE_A_QMQ_HSS1_PKT_RX
```

Hardware QMgr Queue ID for HSS Port 1 Packetized Receive.

Definition at line **388** of file **IxQueueAssignments.h**.

```
#define IX_NPE_A_QMQ_HSS1_PKT_RX_FREE0
```

Hardware QMgr Queue ID for HSS Port 1 Packetized Receive Free queue 0.

Definition at line **438** of file **IxQueueAssignments.h**.

```
#define IX_NPE_A_QMQ_HSS1_PKT_RX_FREE1
```

Hardware QMgr Queue ID for HSS Port 1 Packetized Receive Free queue 1.

Definition at line **448** of file **IxQueueAssignments.h**.

```
#define IX_NPE_A_QMQ_HSS1_PKT_RX_FREE2
```

Hardware QMgr Queue ID for HSS Port 1 Packetized Receive Free queue 2.

Definition at line **458** of file **IxQueueAssignments.h**.

```
#define IX_NPE_A_QMQ_HSS1_PKT_RX_FREE3
```

Hardware QMgr Queue ID for HSS Port 1 Packetized Receive Free queue 3.

Definition at line **468** of file **IxQueueAssignments.h**.

```
#define IX_NPE_A_QMQ_HSS1_PKT_TX0
```

Hardware QMgr Queue ID for HSS Port 1 Packetized Transmit queue 0.

Definition at line **398** of file **IxQueueAssignments.h**.

```
#define IX_NPE_A_QMQ_HSS1_PKT_TX1
```

Hardware QMgr Queue ID for HSS Port 1 Packetized Transmit queue 1.

Definition at line **408** of file **IxQueueAssignments.h**.

```
#define IX_NPE_A_QMQ_HSS1_PKT_TX2
```

Hardware QMgr Queue ID for HSS Port 1 Packetized Transmit queue 2.

Definition at line **418** of file **IxQueueAssignments.h**.

```
#define IX_NPE_A_QMQ_HSS1_PKT_TX3
```

Hardware QMgr Queue ID for HSS Port 1 Packetized Transmit queue 3.

Definition at line **428** of file **IxQueueAssignments.h**.

```
#define IX_NPE_A_QMQ_HSS1_PKT_TX_DONE
```

Hardware QMgr Queue ID for HSS Port 1 Packetized Transmit Done queue.

Definition at line **478** of file **IxQueueAssignments.h**.

```
#define IX_NPE_A_QMQ_OAM_FREE_VC
```

OAM Rx Free queue ID.

Definition at line **231** of file **IxQueueAssignments.h**.

```
#define IX_NPE_A_TXDONE_QUEUE_HIGHWATERMARK
```

The NPE reserves the High Watermark for its operation. But it must be set by the Xscale.

Definition at line **69** of file **IxQueueAssignments.h**.

```
#define IX_NPE_MPHYMULTIPOINT
```

Global compiler switch to select between 3 possible NPE Modes Define this macro to enable MPHY mode.

Default(No Switch) = MultiPHY Utopia2 IX\_UTOPIAMODE = 1 for single Phy Utopia1  
IX\_MPHYSINGLEPORT = 1 for single Phy Utopia2

Definition at line **53** of file **IxQueueAssignments.h**.

# Intel (R) IXP400 Software SSP Serial Port Access (IxSspAcc) API

Intel (R) IXP400 Software SSP Serial Port Access Public API.

## Data Structures

struct **IxSspAccStatsCounters**  
*contains counters of the SSP statistics*

struct **IxSspAccStatsCounters**  
*contains counters of the SSP statistics*

struct **IxSspInitVars**  
*contains all the variables required to initialize the SSP serial port hardware.*

struct **IxSspInitVars**  
*contains all the variables required to initialize the SSP serial port hardware.*

## Typedefs

typedef void(\* **RxFIFOOverrunHandler** )(void)  
*SSP Rx FIFO Overrun handler.*

typedef void(\* **RxFIFOThresholdHandler** )(void)  
*SSP Rx FIFO Threshold hit or above handler.*

typedef void(\* **TxFIFOThresholdHandler** )(void)  
*SSP Tx FIFO Threshold hit or below handler.*

## Enumerations

enum **IxSspAccDataSize** {  
    **DATA\_SIZE\_TOO\_SMALL**,  
    **DATA\_SIZE\_4**,  
    **DATA\_SIZE\_5**,  
    **DATA\_SIZE\_6**,  
    **DATA\_SIZE\_7**,  
    **DATA\_SIZE\_8**,  
    **DATA\_SIZE\_9**,  
    **DATA\_SIZE\_10**,  
    **DATA\_SIZE\_11**,  
    **DATA\_SIZE\_12**,  
    **DATA\_SIZE\_13**,



```

    DATA_SIZE_14,
    DATA_SIZE_15,
    DATA_SIZE_16,
    DATA_SIZE_TOO_BIG
}

```

*The data sizes in bits that are supported by the protocol.*

```

enum IxSspAccPortStatus {
    SSP_PORT_DISABLE,
    SSP_PORT_ENABLE,
    INVALID_SSP_PORT_STATUS
}

```

*The status of the SSP port to be set to enable/disable.*

```

enum IxSspAccFrameFormat {
    SPI_FORMAT,
    SSP_FORMAT,
    MICROWIRE_FORMAT,
    INVALID_FORMAT
}

```

*The frame format that is to be used – SPI, SSP, or Microwire.*

```

enum IxSspAccClkSource {
    ON_CHIP_CLK,
    EXTERNAL_CLK,
    INVALID_CLK_SOURCE
}

```

*The source to produce the SSP serial clock.*

```

enum IxSspAccSpiSclkPhase {
    START_ONE_END_HALF,
    START_HALF_END_ONE,
    INVALID_SPI_PHASE
}

```

*The SPI SCLK Phase: 0 – SCLK is inactive one cycle at the start of a frame and 1/2 cycle at the end of a frame. 1 – SCLK is inactive 1/2 cycle at the start of a frame and one cycle at the end of a frame.*

```

enum IxSspAccSpiSclkPolarity {
    SPI_POLARITY_LOW,
    SPI_POLARITY_HIGH,
    INVALID_SPI_POLARITY
}

```

*The SPI SCLK Polarity can be set to either low or high.*

```

enum IxSspAccMicrowireCtlWord {
    MICROWIRE_8_BIT,
    MICROWIRE_16_BIT,
    INVALID_MICROWIRE_CTL_WORD
}

```

*The Microwire control word can be either 8 or 16 bit.*

```
enum IxSspAccFifoThreshold {  
    FIFO_TSHLD_1,  
    FIFO_TSHLD_2,  
    FIFO_TSHLD_3,  
    FIFO_TSHLD_4,  
    FIFO_TSHLD_5,  
    FIFO_TSHLD_6,  
    FIFO_TSHLD_7,  
    FIFO_TSHLD_8,  
    FIFO_TSHLD_9,  
    FIFO_TSHLD_10,  
    FIFO_TSHLD_11,  
    FIFO_TSHLD_12,  
    FIFO_TSHLD_13,  
    FIFO_TSHLD_14,  
    FIFO_TSHLD_15,  
    FIFO_TSHLD_16,  
    INVALID_FIFO_TSHLD  
}
```

*The threshold in frames (each frame is defined by IxSspAccDataSize) that can be set for the FIFO to trigger a threshold exceed when checking with the ExceedThresholdCheck functions or an interrupt when it is enabled.*

```
enum IX_SSP_STATUS {  
    IX_SSP_SUCCESS,  
    IX_SSP_FAIL,  
    IX_SSP_RX_FIFO_OVERRUN_HANDLER_MISSING,  
    IX_SSP_RX_FIFO_HANDLER_MISSING,  
    IX_SSP_TX_FIFO_HANDLER_MISSING,  
    IX_SSP_FIFO_NOT_EMPTY_FOR_SETTING_CTL_CMD,  
    IX_SSP_INVALID_FRAME_FORMAT_ENUM_VALUE,  
    IX_SSP_INVALID_DATA_SIZE_ENUM_VALUE,  
    IX_SSP_INVALID_CLOCK_SOURCE_ENUM_VALUE,  
    IX_SSP_INVALID_TX_FIFO_THRESHOLD_ENUM_VALUE,  
    IX_SSP_INVALID_RX_FIFO_THRESHOLD_ENUM_VALUE,  
    IX_SSP_INVALID_SPI_PHASE_ENUM_VALUE,  
    IX_SSP_INVALID_SPI_POLARITY_ENUM_VALUE,  
    IX_SSP_INVALID_MICROWIRE_CTL_CMD_ENUM_VALUE,  
    IX_SSP_INT_UNBIND_FAIL,  
    IX_SSP_INT_BIND_FAIL,  
    IX_SSP_RX_FIFO_NOT_EMPTY,  
    IX_SSP_TX_FIFO_NOT_EMPTY,  
    IX_SSP_POLL_MODE_BLOCKING,  
    IX_SSP_TX_FIFO_HIT_BELOW_THRESHOLD,  
    IX_SSP_TX_FIFO_EXCEED_THRESHOLD,  
    IX_SSP_RX_FIFO_HIT_ABOVE_THRESHOLD,  
    IX_SSP_RX_FIFO_BELOW_THRESHOLD,  
    IX_SSP_BUSY,  
    IX_SSP_IDLE,
```

```

    IX_SSP_OVERRUN_OCCURRED,
    IX_SSP_NO_OVERRUN,
    IX_SSP_NOT_SUPPORTED,
    IX_SSP_NOT_INIT,
    IX_SSP_NULL_POINTER
}

```

*The statuses that can be returned in a SSP Serial Port Access.*

## Functions

PUBLIC

**IX\_SSP\_STATUS ixSspAccInit (IxSspInitVars \*initVarsSelected)**  
*Initializes the SSP Access module.*

PUBLIC

**IX\_SSP\_STATUS ixSspAccUninit (void)**  
*Un-initializes the SSP Serial Port Access component.*

PUBLIC

**IX\_SSP\_STATUS ixSspAccFIFODataSubmit (UINT16 \*data, UINT32 amtOfData)**  
*Inserts data into the SSP Serial Port's FIFO.*

PUBLIC

**IX\_SSP\_STATUS ixSspAccFIFODataReceive (UINT16 \*data, UINT32 amtOfData)**  
*Extract data from the SSP Serial Port's FIFO.*

PUBLIC

**IX\_SSP\_STATUS ixSspAccTxFIFOHitOrBelowThresholdCheck (void)**  
*Check if the Tx FIFO threshold has been hit or fallen below.*

PUBLIC

**IX\_SSP\_STATUS ixSspAccRxFIFOHitOrAboveThresholdCheck (void)**  
*Check if the Rx FIFO threshold has been hit or exceeded.*

PUBLIC

**IX\_SSP\_STATUS ixSspAccSSPPortStatusSet (IxSspAccPortStatus portStatusSelected)**  
*Enables/disables the SSP Serial Port hardware.*

PUBLIC

**IX\_SSP\_STATUS ixSspAccFrameFormatSelect (IxSspAccFrameFormat frameFormatSelected)**  
*Sets the frame format for the SSP Serial Port hardware.*

PUBLIC

**IX\_SSP\_STATUS ixSspAccDataSizeSelect (IxSspAccDataSize dataSizeSelected)**  
*Sets the data size for transfers.*

PUBLIC

**IX\_SSP\_STATUS ixSspAccClockSourceSelect (IxSspAccClkSource clkSourceSelected)**

*Sets the clock source of the SSP Serial Port hardware.*

PUBLIC

**IX\_SSP\_STATUS ixSspAccSerialClockRateConfigure** (UINT8 serialClockRateSelected)  
*Sets the on-chip Serial Clock Rate of the SSP Serial Port hardware.*

PUBLIC

**IX\_SSP\_STATUS ixSspAccRxFIFOIntEnable** (**RxFIFOThresholdHandler** rxFIFOIntrHandler)  
*Enables service request interrupt whenever the Rx FIFO hits its threshold.*

PUBLIC

**IX\_SSP\_STATUS ixSspAccRxFIFOIntDisable** (void)  
*Disables service request interrupt of the Rx FIFO.*

PUBLIC

**IX\_SSP\_STATUS ixSspAccTxFIFOIntEnable** (**TxFIFOThresholdHandler** txFIFOIntrHandler)  
*Enables service request interrupt of the Tx FIFO.*

PUBLIC

**IX\_SSP\_STATUS ixSspAccTxFIFOIntDisable** (void)  
*Disables service request interrupt of the Tx FIFO.*

PUBLIC

**IX\_SSP\_STATUS ixSspAccLoopbackEnable** (BOOL loopbackEnable)  
*Enables/disables the loopback mode.*

PUBLIC

**IX\_SSP\_STATUS ixSspAccSpiSclkPolaritySet** (**IxSspAccSpiSclkPolarity** spiSclkPolaritySelected)  
*Sets the SPI SCLK Polarity to Low or High.*

PUBLIC

**IX\_SSP\_STATUS ixSspAccSpiSclkPhaseSet** (**IxSspAccSpiSclkPhase** spiSclkPhaseSelected)  
*Sets the SPI SCLK Phase.*

PUBLIC **ixSspAccMicrowireControlWordSet** (**IxSspAccMicrowireCtlWord**

**IX\_SSP\_STATUS** microwireCtlWordSelected)  
*Sets the Microwire control word to 8 or 16 bit format.*

PUBLIC

**IX\_SSP\_STATUS ixSspAccTxFIFOThresholdSet** (**IxSspAccFifoThreshold** txFIFOThresholdSelected)  
*Sets the Tx FIFO Threshold.*

PUBLIC

**IX\_SSP\_STATUS ixSspAccRxFIFOThresholdSet** (**IxSspAccFifoThreshold** rxFIFOThresholdSelected)  
*Sets the Rx FIFO Threshold.*

PUBLIC

**IX\_SSP\_STATUS ixSspAccStatsGet** (**IxSspAccStatsCounters** \*sspStats)  
*Returns the SSP Statistics through the pointer passed in.*

PUBLIC void **ixSspAccStatsReset** (void)

*Resets the SSP Statistics.*

PUBLIC

**IX\_SSP\_STATUS ixSspAccShow** (void)

*Display SSP status registers and statistics counters.*

PUBLIC

**IX\_SSP\_STATUS ixSspAccSSPBusyCheck** (void)

*Determine the state of the SSP serial port hardware.*

PUBLIC UINT8 **ixSspAccTxFIFOLevelGet** (void)

*Obtain the Tx FIFO's level.*

PUBLIC UINT8 **ixSspAccRxFIFOLevelGet** (void)

*Obtain the Rx FIFO's level.*

PUBLIC

**IX\_SSP\_STATUS ixSspAccRxFIFOOverrunCheck** (void)

*Check if the Rx FIFO has overrun its FIFOs.*

---

## Detailed Description

Intel (R) IXP400 Software SSP Serial Port Access Public API.

---

## Typedef Documentation

```
typedef void(* RxFIFOOverrunHandler)(void)
```

SSP Rx FIFO Overrun handler.

This function is called for the client to handle Rx FIFO Overrun that occurs in the SSP hardware

Definition at line **252** of file **IxSspAcc.h**.

```
typedef void(* RxFIFOThresholdHandler)(void)
```

SSP Rx FIFO Threshold hit or above handler.

This function is called for the client to handle Rx FIFO threshold hit or or above that occurs in the SSP hardware

Definition at line **262** of file **IxSspAcc.h**.

```
typedef void(* TxFIFOThresholdHandler)(void)
```

SSP Tx FIFO Threshold hit or below handler.

This function is called for the client to handle Tx FIFO threshold hit or or below that occurs in the SSP hardware

Definition at line **272** of file **IxSspAcc.h**.

---

## Enumeration Type Documentation

```
enum IX_SSP_STATUS
```

The statuses that can be returned in a SSP Serial Port Access.

### *Enumeration values:*

<i>IX_SSP_SUCCESS</i>	Success status.
<i>IX_SSP_FAIL</i>	Fail status.
<i>IX_SSP_RX_FIFO_OVERRUN_HANDLER_MISSING</i>	Rx FIFO Overrun handler is NULL.
<i>IX_SSP_RX_FIFO_HANDLER_MISSING</i>	Rx FIFO threshold hit or above handler is NULL.
<i>IX_SSP_TX_FIFO_HANDLER_MISSING</i>	Tx FIFO threshold hit or below handler is NULL.
<i>IX_SSP_FIFO_NOT_EMPTY_FOR_SETTING_CTL_CMD</i>	Tx FIFO not empty and therefore microwire control command size setting is not allowed.
<i>IX_SSP_INVALID_FRAME_FORMAT_ENUM_VALUE</i>	frame format selected is invalid
<i>IX_SSP_INVALID_DATA_SIZE_ENUM_VALUE</i>	data size selected is invalid
<i>IX_SSP_INVALID_CLOCK_SOURCE_ENUM_VALUE</i>	source clock selected is invalid
<i>IX_SSP_INVALID_TX_FIFO_THRESHOLD_ENUM_VALUE</i>	Tx FIFO threshold selected is invalid.
<i>IX_SSP_INVALID_RX_FIFO_THRESHOLD_ENUM_VALUE</i>	Rx FIFO threshold selected is invalid.
<i>IX_SSP_INVALID_SPI_PHASE_ENUM_VALUE</i>	SPI phase selected is invalid.
<i>IX_SSP_INVALID_SPI_POLARITY_ENUM_VALUE</i>	SPI polarity selected is invalid.
<i>IX_SSP_INVALID_MICROWIRE_CTL_CMD_ENUM_VALUE</i>	Microwire control command selected is invalid.
<i>IX_SSP_INT_UNBIND_FAIL</i>	Interrupt unbind fail to unbind SSP interrupt.
<i>IX_SSP_INT_BIND_FAIL</i>	Interrupt bind fail during init.
<i>IX_SSP_RX_FIFO_NOT_EMPTY</i>	Rx FIFO not empty while trying to change data size.
<i>IX_SSP_TX_FIFO_NOT_EMPTY</i>	Rx FIFO not empty while trying to change data size or microwire control command size.

<i>IX_SSP_POLL_MODE_BLOCKING</i>	poll mode selected blocks interrupt mode from being selected
<i>IX_SSP_TX_FIFO_HIT_BELOW_THRESHOLD</i>	Tx FIFO level hit or below threshold.
<i>IX_SSP_TX_FIFO_EXCEED_THRESHOLD</i>	Tx FIFO level exceeded threshold.
<i>IX_SSP_RX_FIFO_HIT_ABOVE_THRESHOLD</i>	Rx FIFO level hit or exceeded threshold.
<i>IX_SSP_RX_FIFO_BELOW_THRESHOLD</i>	Rx FIFO level below threshold.
<i>IX_SSP_BUSY</i>	SSP is busy.
<i>IX_SSP_IDLE</i>	SSP is idle.
<i>IX_SSP_OVERRUN_OCCURRED</i>	SSP has experienced an overrun.
<i>IX_SSP_NO_OVERRUN</i>	SSP did not experience an overrun.
<i>IX_SSP_NOT_SUPPORTED</i>	hardware does not support SSP
<i>IX_SSP_NOT_INIT</i>	SSP Access not intialized.
<i>IX_SSP_NULL_POINTER</i>	parameter passed in is NULL

Definition at line **181** of file **IxSspAcc.h**.

#### enum IxSspAccClkSource

The source to produce the SSP serial clock.

Definition at line **90** of file **IxSspAcc.h**.

#### enum IxSspAccDataSize

The data sizes in bits that are supported by the protocol.

Definition at line **35** of file **IxSspAcc.h**.

#### enum IxSspAccFifoThreshold

The threshold in frames (each frame is defined by IxSspAccDataSize) that can be set for the FIFO to trigger a threshold exceed when checking with the ExceedThresholdCheck functions or an interrupt when it is enabled.

Definition at line **153** of file **IxSspAcc.h**.

#### enum IxSspAccFrameFormat

The frame format that is to be used – SPI, SSP, or Microwire.

Definition at line **75** of file **IxSspAcc.h**.

enum IxSspAccMicrowireCtlWord

The Microwire control word can be either 8 or 16 bit.

Definition at line **136** of file **IxSspAcc.h**.

enum IxSspAccPortStatus

The status of the SSP port to be set to enable/disable.

Definition at line **61** of file **IxSspAcc.h**.

enum IxSspAccSpiSclkPhase

The SPI SCLK Phase: 0 – SCLK is inactive one cycle at the start of a frame and 1/2 cycle at the end of a frame. 1 – SCLK is inactive 1/2 cycle at the start of a frame and one cycle at the end of a frame.

Definition at line **108** of file **IxSspAcc.h**.

enum IxSspAccSpiSclkPolarity

The SPI SCLK Polarity can be set to either low or high.

Definition at line **122** of file **IxSspAcc.h**.

---

## Function Documentation

ixSspAccClockSourceSelect ( **IxSspAccClkSource** *clkSourceSelected* )

Sets the clock source of the SSP Serial Port hardware.

### **Parameters:**

<i>IxSspAccClkSource</i> [in] <i>clkSourceSelected</i>	– The clock source from either external source on on–chip can be selected as the source
---	---

Global Data :

- None.

This API will set the clock source for the transfers via user input.

### **Returns:**

- ◇ IX\_SSP\_SUCCESS – clock source set with valid enum value
- ◇ IX\_SSP\_INVALID\_CLOCK\_SOURCE\_ENUM\_VALUE – invalid enum value



◇ IX\_SSP\_NOT\_INIT – SSP not initialized. SSP init needs to be called.

- Reentrant : yes
- ISR Callable : yes

```
ixSspAccDataSizeSelect ( IxSspAccDataSize dataSizeSelected )
```

Sets the data size for transfers.

**Parameters:**

<i>IxSspAccDataSize</i> [in]	– The data size between 4 and 16 that can be selected for data transfers
<i>dataSizeSelected</i>	

Global Data :

- None.

This API will set the data size for the transfers via user input. It will disallow the change of the data size if either of the Rx/Tx FIFO is not empty to prevent data loss. \*NOTE\*: The SSP port will be disabled if the FIFOs are found to be empty and if between the check and disabling of the SSP (which clears the FIFOs) data is received into the FIFO, it might be lost. \*NOTE\*: The FIFOs can be cleared by disabling the SSP Port if necessary to force the data size change.

**Returns:**

◇ IX\_SSP\_SUCCESS – data size set with valid enum value  
◇ IX\_SSP\_RX\_FIFO\_NOT\_EMPTY – Rx FIFO not empty, data size change is not allowed.  
◇ IX\_SSP\_TX\_FIFO\_NOT\_EMPTY – Tx FIFO not empty, data size change is not allowed.  
◇ IX\_SSP\_INVALID\_DATA\_SIZE\_ENUM\_VALUE – invalid enum value  
◇ IX\_SSP\_NOT\_INIT – SSP not initialized. SSP init needs to be called.

- Reentrant : yes
- ISR Callable : yes

```
ixSspAccFIFODataReceive ( UINT16 * data,  
                          UINT32  amtOfData  
                          )
```

Extract data from the SSP Serial Port's FIFO.

**Parameters:**

<i>UINT16</i> [in]	– pointer to the location to receive the data into "UINT32 [in] amtOfData" –
<i>*data</i>	number of data to be received.

Global Data :

- None.

This API will extract the amount of data specified by "amtOfData" from the FIFO already received by the hardware into the buffer pointed to by "data".

**Returns:**

- ◇ IX\_SSP\_SUCCESS – Data extracted successfully from FIFO
- ◇ IX\_SSP\_FAIL – FIFO has no data
- ◇ IX\_SSP\_NULL\_POINTER – data pointer passed by client is NULL
- ◇ IX\_SSP\_NOT\_INIT – SSP not initialized. SSP init needs to be called.

- Reentrant : yes
- ISR Callable : yes

```
ixSspAccFIFODataSubmit ( UINT16 * data,
                        UINT32  amtOfData
                        )
```

Inserts data into the SSP Serial Port's FIFO.

**Parameters:**

- |                                    |   |
|------------------------------------|---|
| <i>UINT16 [in]</i><br><i>*data</i> | – pointer to the location to transmit the data from "UINT32 [in] amtOfData" – number of data to be transmitted. |
|------------------------------------|---|

Global Data :

- None.

This API will insert the amount of data specified by "amtOfData" from buffer pointed to by "data" into the FIFO to be transmitted by the hardware.

**Returns:**

- ◇ IX\_SSP\_SUCCESS – Data inserted successfully into FIFO
- ◇ IX\_SSP\_FAIL – FIFO insufficient space
- ◇ IX\_SSP\_NULL\_POINTER – data pointer passed by client is NULL
- ◇ IX\_SSP\_NOT\_INIT – SSP not initialized. SSP init needs to be called.

- Reentrant : yes
- ISR Callable : yes

```
ixSspAccFrameFormatSelect ( IxSspAccFrameFormat frameFormatSelected )
```

Sets the frame format for the SSP Serial Port hardware.

**Parameters:**

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| <i>IxSspAccFrameFormat [in]</i><br><i>frameFormatSelected</i> | – The frame format of SPI, SSP or Microwire can be selected as the format |
|---|---|

Global Data :

- None.

This API will set the format for the transfers via user input. \*NOTE\*: The SSP hardware will be disabled to clear the FIFOs. Then its previous state (enabled/disabled) restored after changing the format.

**Returns:**

- ◇ IX\_SSP\_SUCCESS – frame format set with valid enum value
- ◇ IX\_SSP\_INVALID\_FRAME\_FORMAT\_ENUM\_VALUE – invalid frame format value
- ◇ IX\_SSP\_NOT\_INIT – SSP not initialized. SSP init needs to be called.

- Reentrant : yes
- ISR Callable : yes

```
ixSspAccInit ( IxSspInitVars * initVarsSelected )
```

Initializes the SSP Access module.

**Parameters:**

*IxSspAccInitVars* [in] *\*initVarsSelected* – struct containing required variables for initialization

Global Data :

- None.

This API will initialize the SSP Serial Port hardware to the user specified configuration. Then it will enable the SSP Serial Port. \*NOTE\*: Once interrupt or polling mode is selected, the mode cannot be changed via the interrupt enable/disable function but the init needs to be called again to change it.

**Returns:**

- ◇ IX\_SSP\_SUCCESS – Successfully initialize and enable the SSP serial port.
- ◇ IX\_SSP\_RX\_FIFO\_HANDLER\_MISSING – interrupt mode is selected but RX FIFO handler pointer is NULL
- ◇ IX\_SSP\_TX\_FIFO\_HANDLER\_MISSING – interrupt mode is selected but TX FIFO handler pointer is NULL
- ◇ IX\_SSP\_RX\_FIFO\_OVERRUN\_HANDLER\_MISSING – interrupt mode is selected but RX FIFO Overrun handler pointer is NULL
- ◇ IX\_SSP\_RX\_FIFO\_NOT\_EMPTY – Rx FIFO not empty, data size change is not allowed.
- ◇ IX\_SSP\_TX\_FIFO\_NOT\_EMPTY – Tx FIFO not empty, data size change is not allowed.
- ◇ IX\_SSP\_INVALID\_FRAME\_FORMAT\_ENUM\_VALUE – frame format selected is invalid
- ◇ IX\_SSP\_INVALID\_DATA\_SIZE\_ENUM\_VALUE – data size selected is invalid
- ◇ IX\_SSP\_INVALID\_CLOCK\_SOURCE\_ENUM\_VALUE – clock source selected is invalid
- ◇ IX\_SSP\_INVALID\_TX\_FIFO\_THRESHOLD\_ENUM\_VALUE – Tx FIFO threshold level selected is invalid
- ◇ IX\_SSP\_INVALID\_RX\_FIFO\_THRESHOLD\_ENUM\_VALUE – Rx FIFO threshold level selected is invalid
- ◇ IX\_SSP\_INVALID\_SPI\_PHASE\_ENUM\_VALUE – SPI phase selected is invalid
- ◇ IX\_SSP\_INVALID\_SPI\_POLARITY\_ENUM\_VALUE – SPI polarity selected is invalid

- ◇ IX\_SSP\_INVALID\_MICROWIRE\_CTL\_CMD\_ENUM\_VALUE – microwire control command size is invalid
- ◇ IX\_SSP\_INT\_UNBIND\_FAIL – interrupt handler failed to unbind SSP interrupt
- ◇ IX\_SSP\_INT\_BIND\_FAIL – interrupt handler failed to bind to SSP interrupt hardware trigger
- ◇ IX\_SSP\_NOT\_SUPPORTED – hardware does not support SSP
- ◇ IX\_SSP\_NULL\_POINTER – parameter passed in is NULL

ixSspAccLoopbackEnable ( BOOL *loopbackEnable* )

**Parameters:**

Global Data :

This API will set the mode of operation to either loopback or normal mode according to the user input.

- ◊ IX\_SSP\_SUCCESS – Loopback enabled successfully
- ◊ IX\_SSP\_NOT\_INIT – SSP not initialized. SSP init needs to be called.

ixSspAccMicrowireControlWordSet ( **IxSspAccMicrowireCtlWord** *microwireCtlWordSelected* )

***Parameters:***

Global Data :

This API is only used for the Microwire frame format and will set the control word to 8 or 16 bit format

- ◊ IX\_SSP\_SUCCESS – Microwire Control Word set with valid enum value
- ◊ IX\_SSP\_TX\_FIFO\_NOT\_EMPTY – Tx FIFO not empty, data size change is not allowed.

- ◇ IX\_SSP\_INVALID\_MICROWIRE\_CTL\_CMD\_ENUM\_VALUE – invalid enum value
- ◇ IX\_SSP\_NOT\_INIT – SSP not initialized. SSP init needs to be called.

- Reentrant : yes
- ISR Callable : yes

`ixSspAccRxFIFOHitOrAboveThresholdCheck ( void )`

Check if the Rx FIFO threshold has been hit or exceeded.

**Parameters:**

- None

Global Data :

- None.

This API will return whether the Rx FIFO level is below threshold or not

**Returns:**

- ◇ IX\_SSP\_RX\_FIFO\_HIT\_ABOVE\_THRESHOLD – Rx FIFO level hit or exceeded threshold
- ◇ IX\_SSP\_RX\_FIFO\_BELOW\_THRESHOLD – Rx FIFO level below threshold
- ◇ IX\_SSP\_NOT\_INIT – SSP not initialized. SSP init needs to be called.

- Reentrant : yes
- ISR Callable : yes

`ixSspAccRxFIFOIntDisable ( void )`

Disables service request interrupt of the Rx FIFO.

**Parameters:**

- None

Global Data :

- None.

This API will disable the service request interrupt of the Rx FIFO.

**Returns:**

- ◇ IX\_SSP\_SUCCESS – Rx FIFO Interrupt disabled successfully
- ◇ IX\_SSP\_NOT\_INIT – SSP not initialized. SSP init needs to be called.

- Reentrant : yes
- ISR Callable : yes

```
ixSspAccRxFIFOIntEnable ( RxFIFOThresholdHandler rxFIFOIntrHandler )
```

Enables service request interrupt whenever the Rx FIFO hits its threshold.

**Parameters:**

*void [in]*

\**rxFIFOIntrHandler*(UINT32)

- function pointer to the interrupt handler for the Rx FIFO exceeded.

Global Data :

- None.

This API will enable the service request interrupt for the Rx FIFO

**Returns:**

- ◇ `IX_SSP_SUCCESS` – Rx FIFO level interrupt enabled successfully
- ◇ `IX_SSP_RX_FIFO_HANDLER_MISSING` – missing handler for Rx FIFO level interrupt
- ◇ `IX_SSP_POLL_MODE_BLOCKING` – poll mode is selected at init, interrupt not allowed to be enabled. Use init to enable interrupt mode.
- ◇ `IX_SSP_NOT_INIT` – SSP not initialized. SSP init needs to be called.

- Reentrant : yes
- ISR Callable : yes

ixSspAccRxFIFOLevelGet ( void )

Obtain the Rx FIFO's level.

***Parameters:***

- None

Global Data :

- None.

This API will return the level of the Rx FIFO

**Returns:**

- ◇ 0..16; 0 can also mean SSP not initialized and will need to be init.

- Reentrant : yes
- ISR Callable : yes

**ixSspAccRxFIFOOverrunCheck ( void )**

Check if the Rx FIFO has overrun its FIFOs.

**Parameters:**

- None

Global Data :

- None.

This API will return whether the Rx FIFO has overrun its 16 FIFOs

**Returns:**

- ◇ IX\_SSP\_OVERRUN\_OCCURRED – Rx FIFO overrun occurred
- ◇ IX\_SSP\_NO\_OVERRUN – Rx FIFO did not overrun
- ◇ IX\_SSP\_NOT\_INIT – SSP not initialized. SSP init needs to be called.

- Reentrant : yes
- ISR Callable : yes

**ixSspAccRxFIFOThresholdSet ( **IxSspAccFifoThreshold** *rxFIFOThresholdSelected* )**

Sets the Rx FIFO Threshold.

**Parameters:**

- |                                   |   |
|-----------------------------------|---|
| <i>IxSspAccFifoThreshold [in]</i> | – Threshold that is set for a Tx FIFO service |
| <i>rxFIFOThresholdSelected</i>    | request to be triggered                       |

Global Data :

- None.

This API will will set the threshold for a Rx FIFO threshold to be triggered

**Returns:**

- ◇ IX\_SSP\_SUCCESS – Rx FIFO Threshold set with valid enum value
- ◇ IX\_SSP\_INVALID\_RX\_FIFO\_THRESHOLD\_ENUM\_VALUE – invalid enum value
- ◇ IX\_SSP\_NOT\_INIT – SSP not initialized. SSP init needs to be called.

- Reentrant : yes
- ISR Callable : yes

**ixSspAccSerialClockRateConfigure ( UINT8 *serialClockRateSelected* )**

Sets the on-chip Serial Clock Rate of the SSP Serial Port hardware.

**Parameters:**

*UINT8 [in]*  
*serialClockRateSelected* – The serial clock rate that can be set is between 7.2Kbps and 1.8432Mbps. The formula used is Bit rate =  $3.6864 \times 10^6 / (2 \times (\text{SerialClockRateSelected} + 1))$

Global Data :

- None.

This API will set the serial clock rate for the transfers via user input.

**Returns:**

◊ IX\_SSP\_SUCCESS – Serial clock rate configured successfully  
 ◊ IX\_SSP\_NOT\_INIT – SSP not initialized. SSP init needs to be called.

- Reentrant : yes
- ISR Callable : yes

```
ixSspAccShow ( void )
```

Display SSP status registers and statistics counters.

**Parameters:**

– None

Global Data :

- None.

This API will display the status registers of the SSP and the statistics counters.

**Returns:**

◊ IX\_SSP\_SUCCESS – SSP show called successfully.  
 ◊ IX\_SSP\_NOT\_INIT – SSP not initialized. SSP init needs to be called.

- Reentrant : yes
- ISR Callable : yes

```
ixSspAccSpiSclkPhaseSet ( IxSspAccSpiSclkPhase spiSclkPhaseSelected )
```

Sets the SPI SCLK Phase.

**Parameters:**

*IxSspAccSpiSclkPhase [in]*  
*spiSclkPhaseSelected* – Phase of either the SCLK is inactive one cycle at the start of a frame and 1/2 cycle at the end of a frame, OR the SCLK is inactive 1/2 cycle at the start of a frame and one cycle at the end of a frame.



Global Data :

- IX\_SSP\_SUCCESS – SPI Sclk phase set with valid enum value
- IX\_SSP\_INVALID\_SPI\_PHASE\_ENUM\_VALUE – invalid SPI phase value
- IX\_SSP\_NOT\_INIT – SSP not initialized. SSP init needs to be called.

This API is only used for the SPI frame format and will set the SPI SCLK phase according to user input.

**Returns:**

◇ None

- Reentrant : yes
- ISR Callable : yes

```
ixSspAccSpiSclkPolaritySet ( IxSspAccSpiSclkPolarity spiSclkPolaritySelected )
```

Sets the SPI SCLK Polarity to Low or High.

**Parameters:**

- "IxSspAccSpiSclkPolarity [in] spiSclkPolaritySelected" – SPI SCLK polarity that can be selected to either high or low

Global Data :

- None.

This API is only used for the SPI frame format and will set the SPI SCLK polarity to either low or high

**Returns:**

- ◇ IX\_SSP\_SUCCESS – SPI Sclk polarity set with valid enum value
- ◇ IX\_SSP\_INVALID\_SPI\_POLARITY\_ENUM\_VALUE – invalid SPI polarity value
- ◇ IX\_SSP\_NOT\_INIT – SSP not initialized. SSP init needs to be called.

- Reentrant : yes
- ISR Callable : yes

```
ixSspAccSSPBusyCheck ( void )
```

Determine the state of the SSP serial port hardware.

**Parameters:**

- None

Global Data :

- None.

This API will return the state of the SSP serial port hardware – busy or idle

**Returns:**

- ◇ IX\_SSP\_BUSY – SSP is busy
- ◇ IX\_SSP\_IDLE – SSP is idle.
- ◇ IX\_SSP\_NOT\_INIT – SSP not initialized. SSP init needs to be called.

- Reentrant : yes
- ISR Callable : yes

**ixSspAccSSPPortStatusSet ( IxSspAccPortStatus portStatusSelected )**

Enables/disables the SSP Serial Port hardware.

**Parameters:**

*IxSspAccPortStatus [in] portStatusSelected* – Set the SSP port to enable or disable

Global Data :

- None.

This API will enable/disable the SSP Serial Port hardware. NOTE: This function is called by init to enable the SSP after setting up the configurations and by uninit to disable the SSP.

**Returns:**

- ◇ IX\_SSP\_SUCCESS – Port status set with valid enum value
- ◇ IX\_SSP\_FAIL – invalid enum value
- ◇ IX\_SSP\_NOT\_INIT – SSP not initialized. SSP init needs to be called.

- Reentrant : yes
- ISR Callable : yes

**ixSspAccStatsGet ( IxSspAccStatsCounters \* sspStats )**

Returns the SSP Statistics through the pointer passed in.

**Parameters:**

*IxSspAccStatsCounters [in]* – SSP statistics counter will be read and written to the location pointed by this pointer.  
*\*sspStats*

Global Data :

- None.

This API will return the statistics counters of the SSP transfers.

**Returns:**

- ◇ IX\_SSP\_SUCCESS – Stats obtained into the pointer provided successfully

◇ IX\_SSP\_FAIL – client provided pointer is NULL

- Reentrant : yes
- ISR Callable : yes

#### ixSspAccStatsReset ( void )

Resets the SSP Statistics.

**Parameters:**

- None

Global Data :

- None.

This API will reset the SSP statistics counters.

**Returns:**

◇ None

- Reentrant : yes
- ISR Callable : yes

#### ixSspAccTxFIFOHitOrBelowThresholdCheck ( void )

Check if the Tx FIFO threshold has been hit or fallen below.

**Parameters:**

- None

Global Data :

- None.

This API will return whether the Tx FIFO threshold has been exceeded or not

**Returns:**

- ◇ IX\_SSP\_TX\_FIFO\_HIT\_BELOW\_THRESHOLD – Tx FIFO level hit or below threshold .
- ◇ IX\_SSP\_TX\_FIFO\_EXCEED\_THRESHOLD – Tx FIFO level exceeded threshold.
- ◇ IX\_SSP\_NOT\_INIT – SSP not initialized. SSP init needs to be called.

- Reentrant : yes
- ISR Callable : yes

ixSspAccTxFIFOIntDisable ( void )

Disables service request interrupt of the Tx FIFO.

**Parameters:**

- None

Global Data :

- None.

This API will disable the service request interrupt of the Tx FIFO

**Returns:**

- ◇ IX\_SSP\_SUCCESS – Tx FIFO Interrupt disabled successfully.
- ◇ IX\_SSP\_NOT\_INIT – SSP not initialized. SSP init needs to be called.

- Reentrant : yes
- ISR Callable : yes

ixSspAccTxFIFOIntEnable ( **TxFIFOThresholdHandler** *txFIFOIntrHandler* )

Enables service request interrupt of the Tx FIFO.

**Parameters:**

- |                                   |   |
|-----------------------------------|---|
| <i>void [in]</i>                  | – function pointer to the interrupt handler for the Tx FIFO |
| <i>*txFIFOIntrHandler(UINT32)</i> | exceeded.   |

Global Data :

- None.

This API will enable the service request interrupt of the Tx FIFO.

**Returns:**

- ◇ IX\_SSP\_SUCCESS – Tx FIFO level interrupt enabled successfully
- ◇ IX\_SSP\_TX\_FIFO\_HANDLER\_MISSING – missing handler for Tx FIFO level interrupt
- ◇ IX\_SSP\_POLL\_MODE\_BLOCKING – poll mode is selected at init, interrupt not allowed to be enabled. Use init to enable interrupt mode.
- ◇ IX\_SSP\_NOT\_INIT – SSP not initialized. SSP init needs to be called.

- Reentrant : yes
- ISR Callable : yes

ixSspAccTxFIFOLevelGet ( void )

Obtain the Tx FIFO's level.

**Parameters:**

- None

Global Data :

- None.

This API will return the level of the Tx FIFO

**Returns:**

◊ 0..16; 0 can also mean SSP not initialized and will need to be init.

- Reentrant : yes
- ISR Callable : yes

**ixSspAccTxFIFOThresholdSet ( **IxSspAccFifoThreshold** *txFIFOThresholdSelected* )**

Sets the Tx FIFO Threshold.

**Parameters:**

*IxSspAccFifoThreshold [in]*  
*txFIFOThresholdSelected*

– Threshold that is set for a Tx FIFO service request to be triggered

Global Data :

- None.

This API will set the threshold for a Tx FIFO threshold to be triggered

**Returns:**

◊ IX\_SSP\_SUCCESS – Tx FIFO Threshold set with valid enum value  
◊ IX\_SSP\_INVALID\_TX\_FIFO\_THRESHOLD\_ENUM\_VALUE – invalid enum value  
◊ IX\_SSP\_NOT\_INIT – SSP not initialized. SSP init needs to be called.

- Reentrant : yes
- ISR Callable : yes

**ixSspAccUninit ( void )**

Un-initializes the SSP Serial Port Access component.

**Parameters:**

- None

Global Data :

- None.

This API will disable the SSP Serial Port hardware. The client can call the init function again if they wish to enable the SSP.

**Returns:**

- ◊ IX\_SSP\_SUCCESS – successfully uninit SSP component
- ◊ IX\_SSP\_INT\_UNBIND\_FAIL – interrupt handler failed to unbind SSP interrupt

- Reentrant : yes
- ISR Callable : yes

# Intel (R) IXP400 Software Timer Control (IxTimerCtrl) API

The public API for the IXP400 Timer Control Component.

## Defines

#define **IX\_TIMERCTRL\_NO\_FREE\_TIMERS**  
*Timer schedule return code.*

#define **IX\_TIMERCTRL\_PARAM\_ERROR**  
*Timer schedule return code.*

## Typedefs

typedef void(\* **IxTimerCtrlTimerCallback** )(void \*userParam)  
*A typedef for a pointer to a timer callback function.*

## Enumerations

enum **IxTimerCtrlPurpose** {  
    **IxTimerCtrlAdslPurpose**,  
    **IxTimerCtrlMaxPurpose**  
}  
*List used to identify the users of timers.*

## Functions

**PUBLIC IxTimerCtrlSchedule** (**IxTimerCtrlTimerCallback** func, void \*userParam, **IX\_STATUS IxTimerCtrlPurpose** purpose, UINT32 relativeTime, unsigned \*timerId)  
*Schedules a callback function to be called after a period of "time". The callback function should not block or run for more than 100ms. This function.*

**PUBLIC IxTimerCtrlScheduleRepeating** (**IxTimerCtrlTimerCallback** func, void \*param, **IX\_STATUS IxTimerCtrlPurpose** purpose, UINT32 interval, unsigned \*timerId)  
*Schedules a callback function to be called after a period of "time". The callback function should not block or run for more than 100ms.*

**PUBLIC**  
**IX\_STATUS IxTimerCtrlCancel** (unsigned id)  
*Cancels a scheduled callback.*

**ixTimerCtrlInit** (void)

PUBLIC  
IX\_STATUS

*Initialise the Timer Control Component.*

PUBLIC void **ixTimerCtrlShow** (void)

*Display the status of the Timer Control Component.*

---

## Detailed Description

The public API for the IXP400 Timer Control Component.

---

## Define Documentation

```
#define IX_TIMERCTRL_NO_FREE_TIMERS
```

Timer schedule return code.

Indicates that the request to start a timer failed because all available timer resources are used.

Definition at line **48** of file **IxTimerCtrl.h**.

```
#define IX_TIMERCTRL_PARAM_ERROR
```

Timer schedule return code.

Indicates that the request to start a timer failed because the client has supplied invalid parameters.

Definition at line **61** of file **IxTimerCtrl.h**.

---

## Typedef Documentation

```
typedef void(* IxTimerCtrlTimerCallback)(void *userParam)
```

A typedef for a pointer to a timer callback function.

void \* – This parameter is supplied by the client when the timer is started and passed back to the client in the callback.

**Note:**

in general timer callback functions should not block or take longer than 100ms. This constraint is required to ensure that higher priority callbacks are not held up. All callbacks are called from the same thread. This thread is a shared resource. The parameter passed is provided when the timer is scheduled.



## Enumeration Type Documentation

enum IxTimerCtrlPurpose

List used to identify the users of timers.

**Note:**

The order in this list indicates priority. Components appearing higher in the list will be given priority over components lower in the list. When adding components, please insert at an appropriate position for priority ( i.e values should be less than IxTimerCtrlMaxPurpose ) .

Definition at line **93** of file **IxTimerCtrl.h**.

---

## Function Documentation

ixTimerCtrlCancel ( unsigned *id* )

Cancels a scheduled callback.

**Parameters:**

*id* unsigned [in] – the id of the callback to be cancelled.

**Returns:**

- ◇ IX\_SUCCESS – The timer was successfully stopped.
- ◇ IX\_FAIL – The id parameter did not correspond to any running timer..

**Note:**

This function is re–entrant. The function accesses a list of running timers and may suspend the calling thread if this list is being accesed by another thread.

ixTimerCtrlInit ( void )

Initialise the Timer Control Component.

**Returns:**

- ◇ IX\_SUCCESS – The timer control component initialized successfully.
- ◇ IX\_FAIL – The timer control component initialization failed, or the component was already initialized.

**Note:**

This must be done before any other API function is called. This function should be called once only and is not re–entrant.

```

ixTimerCtrlSchedule ( IxTimerCtrlTimerCallback func,
                      void *                      userParam,
                      IxTimerCtrlPurpose         purpose,
                      UINT32                      relativeTime,
                      unsigned *                   timerId
                      )

```

Schedules a callback function to be called after a period of "time". The callback function should not block or run for more than 100ms. This function.

**Parameters:**

*func*            **IxTimerCtrlTimerCallback** [in] – the callback function to be called.  
*userParam*      void [in] – a parameter to send to the callback function, can be NULL.  
*purpose*        **IxTimerCtrlPurpose** [in] – the purpose of the callback, internally this component will decide the priority of callbacks with different purpose.  
*relativeTime*    UINT32 [in] – time relative to now in milliseconds after which the callback will be called. The time must be greater than the duration of one OS tick.  
*\*timerId*        unsigned [out] – An id for the callback scheduled. This id can be used to cancel the callback.

**Returns:**

- ◇ IX\_SUCCESS – The timer was started successfully.
- ◇ IX\_TIMERCTRL\_NO\_FREE\_TIMERS – The timer was not started because the maximum number of running timers has been exceeded.
- ◇ IX\_TIMERCTRL\_PARAM\_ERROR – The timer was not started because the client has supplied a NULL callback func, or the requested timeout is less than one OS tick.

**Note:**

This function is re-entrant. The function accesses a list of running timers and may suspend the calling thread if this list is being accessed by another thread.

```

ixTimerCtrlScheduleRepeating ( IxTimerCtrlTimerCallback func,
                              void *                      param,
                              IxTimerCtrlPurpose         purpose,
                              UINT32                      interval,
                              unsigned *                   timerId
                              )

```

Schedules a callback function to be called after a period of "time". The callback function should not block or run for more than 100ms.

**Parameters:**

*func*            **IxTimerCtrlTimerCallback** [in] – the callback function to be called.  
*userParam*      void [in] – a parameter to send to the callback function, can be NULL.  
*purpose*        **IxTimerCtrlPurpose** [in] – the purpose of the callback, internally this component will decide the priority of callbacks with different purpose.  
*interval*        UINT32 [in] – the interval in milliseconds between calls to func.  
*timerId*        unsigned [out] – An id for the callback scheduled. This id can be used to cancel the

callback.

**Returns:**

- ◇ IX\_SUCCESS – The timer was started successfully.
- ◇ IX\_TIMERCTRL\_NO\_FREE\_TIMERS – The timer was not started because the maximum number of running timers has been exceeded.
- ◇ IX\_TIMERCTRL\_PARAM\_ERROR – The timer was not started because the client has supplied a NULL callback func, or the requested timeout is less than one OS tick.

**Note:**

This function is re-entrant. The function accesses a list of running timers and may suspend the calling thread if this list is being accessed by another thread.

```
ixTimerCtrlShow ( void )
```

Display the status of the Timer Control Component.

**Returns:**

void

**Note:**

Displays a list of running timers. This function is not re-entrant. This function does not suspend the calling thread.

# Intel (R) IXP400 Software Time Sync Access Component API

Public API for IxTimeSyncAcc.

## Data Structures

- struct **IxTimeSyncAccPtpMsgData**  
*Struct for data from the PTP message returned when TimeStamp available.*
- struct **IxTimeSyncAccPtpMsgData**  
*Struct for data from the PTP message returned when TimeStamp available.*
- struct **IxTimeSyncAccPtpMsgData**  
*Struct for data from the PTP message returned when TimeStamp available.*
- struct **IxTimeSyncAccStats**  
*Statistics for the PTP messages.*
- struct **IxTimeSyncAccStats**  
*Statistics for the PTP messages.*
- struct **IxTimeSyncAccStats**  
*Statistics for the PTP messages.*
- struct **IxTimeSyncAccTimeValue**  
*Struct to hold 64 bit SystemTime and TimeStamp values.*
- struct **IxTimeSyncAccTimeValue**  
*Struct to hold 64 bit SystemTime and TimeStamp values.*
- struct **IxTimeSyncAccTimeValue**  
*Struct to hold 64 bit SystemTime and TimeStamp values.*
- struct **IxTimeSyncAccUuid**  
*Struct to hold 48 bit UUID values captured in Sync or Delay\_Req messages.*
- struct **IxTimeSyncAccUuid**  
*Struct to hold 48 bit UUID values captured in Sync or Delay\_Req messages.*
- struct **IxTimeSyncAccUuid**  
*Struct to hold 48 bit UUID values captured in Sync or Delay\_Req messages.*

## Typedefs

typedef void(\* **IxTimeSyncAccTargetTimeCallback** )(IxTimeSyncAccTimeValue targetTime)  
*Callback for use by target time stamp interrupt.*

typedef void(\* **IxTimeSyncAccAuxTimeCallback** )(IxTimeSyncAccAuxMode auxMode,  
**IxTimeSyncAccTimeValue** auxTime)  
*Callback for use by auxiliary time interrupts.*

## Enumerations

enum **IxTimeSyncAccStatus** {  
    **IX\_TIMESYNCACC\_SUCCESS**,  
    **IX\_TIMESYNCACC\_INVALIDPARAM**,  
    **IX\_TIMESYNCACC\_NOTIMESTAMP**,  
    **IX\_TIMESYNCACC\_INTERRUPTMODEINUSE**,  
    **IX\_TIMESYNCACC\_FAILED**  
}

*The status as returned from the API.*

enum **IxTimeSyncAccAuxMode** {  
    **IX\_TIMESYNCACC\_AUXMODE\_MASTER**,  
    **IX\_TIMESYNCACC\_AUXMODE\_SLAVE**,  
    **IX\_TIMESYNCACC\_AUXMODE\_INVALID**  
}

*Master or Slave Auxiliary Time Stamp (Snap Shot).*

enum **IxTimeSyncAcc1588PTPPort** {  
    **IX\_TIMESYNCACC\_NPE\_A\_1588PTP\_PORT**,  
    **IX\_TIMESYNCACC\_NPE\_B\_1588PTP\_PORT**,  
    **IX\_TIMESYNCACC\_NPE\_C\_1588PTP\_PORT**,  
    **IX\_TIMESYNCACC\_NPE\_1588PORT\_INVALID**  
}

*IEEE 1588 PTP Communication Port(Channel).*

enum **IxTimeSyncAcc1588PTPPortMode** {  
    **IX\_TIMESYNCACC\_1588PTP\_PORT\_MASTER**,  
    **IX\_TIMESYNCACC\_1588PTP\_PORT\_SLAVE**,  
    **IX\_TIMESYNCACC\_1588PTP\_PORT\_ANYMODE**,  
    **IX\_TIMESYNCACC\_1588PTP\_PORT\_MODE\_INVALID**  
}

*Master or Slave mode for IEEE 1588 PTP Communication Port.*

enum **IxTimeSyncAcc1588PTPMsgType** {  
    **IX\_TIMESYNCACC\_1588PTP\_MSGTYPE\_SYNC**,  
    **IX\_TIMESYNCACC\_1588PTP\_MSGTYPE\_DELAYREQ**,  
    **IX\_TIMESYNCACC\_1588PTP\_MSGTYPE\_UNKNOWN**  
}

*1588 PTP Messages types that can be detected on communication port*

## Functions

**PUBLIC****ixTimeSyncAccPTPPortConfigSet** (**ixTimeSyncAcc1588PTPPort** ptpPort,  
**ixTimeSyncAccStatus ixTimeSyncAcc1588PTPPortMode** ptpPortMode)

*Configures the IEEE 1588 message detect on particular PTP port.*

**PUBLIC****ixTimeSyncAccPTPPortConfigGet** (**ixTimeSyncAcc1588PTPPort** ptpPort,  
**ixTimeSyncAccStatus ixTimeSyncAcc1588PTPPortMode** \*ptpPortMode)

*Retrieves IEEE 1588 PTP operation mode on particular PTP port.*

**PUBLIC****ixTimeSyncAccPTPRxPoll** (**ixTimeSyncAcc1588PTPPort** ptpPort,  
**ixTimeSyncAccStatus ixTimeSyncAccPtpMsgData** \*ptpMsgData)

*Polls the IEEE 1588 message/time stamp detect status on a particular PTP Port on the Receive side.*

**PUBLIC****ixTimeSyncAccPTPTxPoll** (**ixTimeSyncAcc1588PTPPort** ptpPort,  
**ixTimeSyncAccStatus ixTimeSyncAccPtpMsgData** \*ptpMsgData)

*Polls the IEEE 1588 message/time stamp detect status on a particular PTP Port on the Transmit side.*

**PUBLIC**  
**ixTimeSyncAccStatus ixTimeSyncAccSystemTimeSet** (**ixTimeSyncAccTimeValue** systemTime)

*Sets the System Time in the IEEE 1588 hardware assist block.*

**PUBLIC**  
**ixTimeSyncAccStatus ixTimeSyncAccSystemTimeGet** (**ixTimeSyncAccTimeValue** \*systemTime)

*Gets the System Time from the IEEE 1588 hardware assist block.*

**PUBLIC**  
**ixTimeSyncAccStatus ixTimeSyncAccTickRateSet** (UINT32 tickRate)

*Sets the Tick Rate (Frequency Scaling Value) in the IEEE 1588 hardware assist block.*

**PUBLIC**  
**ixTimeSyncAccStatus ixTimeSyncAccTickRateGet** (UINT32 \*tickRate)

*Gets the Tick Rate (Frequency Scaling Value) from the IEEE 1588 hardware assist block.*

**PUBLIC****ixTimeSyncAccTargetTimeInterruptEnable**  
**ixTimeSyncAccStatus** (**ixTimeSyncAccTargetTimeCallback** targetTimeCallback)

*Enables the interrupt to verify the condition where the System Time greater or equal to the Target Time in the IEEE 1588 hardware assist block. If the condition is true an interrupt will be sent to Intel XScale(R) Processor.*

**PUBLIC**  
**ixTimeSyncAccStatus ixTimeSyncAccTargetTimeInterruptDisable** (void)

*Disables the interrupt for the condition explained in the function description of **ixTimeSyncAccTargetTimeInterruptEnable**.*

**PUBLIC****ixTimeSyncAccTargetTimePoll** (BOOL \*ttmPollFlag,  
**IxTimeSyncAccStatus** **ixTimeSyncAccTimeValue** \*targetTime)  
*Poll to verify the condition where the System Time greater or equal to the Target Time in the IEEE 1588 hardware assist block. If the condition is true an event flag is set in the hardware.*

**PUBLIC**  
**IxTimeSyncAccStatus** **ixTimeSyncAccTargetTimeSet** (**IxTimeSyncAccTimeValue** targetTime)  
*Sets the Target Time in the IEEE 1588 hardware assist block.*

**PUBLIC**  
**IxTimeSyncAccStatus** **ixTimeSyncAccTargetTimeGet** (**IxTimeSyncAccTimeValue** \*targetTime)  
*Gets the Target Time in the IEEE 1588 hardware assist block.*

**PUBLIC****ixTimeSyncAccAuxTimeInterruptEnable** (**IxTimeSyncAccAuxMode** auxMode,  
**IxTimeSyncAccStatus** **ixTimeSyncAccAuxTimeCallback** auxTimeCallback)  
*Enables the interrupt notification for the given mode of Auxiliary Time Stamp in the IEEE 1588 hardware assist block.*

**PUBLIC**  
**IxTimeSyncAccStatus** **ixTimeSyncAccAuxTimeInterruptDisable** (**IxTimeSyncAccAuxMode** auxMode)  
*Disables the interrupt for the indicated mode of Auxiliary Time Stamp in the IEEE 1588 hardware assist block.*

**PUBLIC****ixTimeSyncAccAuxTimePoll** (**IxTimeSyncAccAuxMode** auxMode, BOOL  
**IxTimeSyncAccStatus** \*auxPollFlag, **IxTimeSyncAccTimeValue** \*auxTime)  
*Poll for the Auxiliary Time Stamp captured for the mode indicated (Master or Slave).*

**PUBLIC**  
**IxTimeSyncAccStatus** **ixTimeSyncAccReset** (void)  
*Resets the IEEE 1588 hardware assist block.*

**PUBLIC**  
**IxTimeSyncAccStatus** **ixTimeSyncAccStatsGet** (**IxTimeSyncAccStats** \*timeSyncStats)  
*Returns the IxTimeSyncAcc Statistics in the client supplied buffer.*

**PUBLIC** void **ixTimeSyncAccStatsReset** (void)  
*Reset Time Sync statistics.*

**PUBLIC**  
**IxTimeSyncAccStatus** **ixTimeSyncAccShow** (void)  
*Displays the Time Sync current status.*

---

## Detailed Description

Public API for IxTimeSyncAcc.

---

# Typedef Documentation

## IxTimeSyncAccAuxTimeCallback

Callback for use by auxiliary time interrupts.

Definition at line **188** of file **IxTimeSyncAcc.h**.

## IxTimeSyncAccTargetTimeCallback

Callback for use by target time stamp interrupt.

Definition at line **179** of file **IxTimeSyncAcc.h**.

---

# Enumeration Type Documentation

## enum IxTimeSyncAcc1588PTPMsgType

1588 PTP Messages types that can be detected on communication port

Note that client code can determine this based on master/slave mode in which it is already operating in and this information is made available for the sake of convenience only.

### *Enumeration values:*

<i>IX_TIMESYNCACC_1588PTP_MSGTYPE_SYNC</i>	PTP Sync message sent by Master or received by Slave.
<i>IX_TIMESYNCACC_1588PTP_MSGTYPE_DELAYREQ</i>	PTP Delay_Req message sent by Slave or received by Master.
<i>IX_TIMESYNCACC_1588PTP_MSGTYPE_UNKNOWN</i>	Other PTP and non-PTP message sent or received by both Master and/or Slave.

Definition at line **106** of file **IxTimeSyncAcc.h**.

## enum IxTimeSyncAcc1588PTPPort

IEEE 1588 PTP Communication Port(Channel).

### *Enumeration values:*

<i>IX_TIMESYNCACC_NPE_A_1588PTP_PORT</i>	PTP Communication Port on NPE-A.
<i>IX_TIMESYNCACC_NPE_B_1588PTP_PORT</i>	PTP Communication Port on NPE-B.
<i>IX_TIMESYNCACC_NPE_C_1588PTP_PORT</i>	PTP Communication Port on NPE-C.



*IX\_TIMESYNCACC\_NPE\_1588PORT\_INVALID*

Invalid PTP  
Communication Port.

Definition at line **70** of file **IxTimeSyncAcc.h**.

enum IxTimeSyncAcc1588PTPPortMode

Master or Slave mode for IEEE 1588 PTP Communication Port.

**Enumeration values:**

*IX\_TIMESYNCACC\_1588PTP\_PORT\_MASTER*

PTP Communication Port in Master Mode.

*IX\_TIMESYNCACC\_1588PTP\_PORT\_SLAVE*

PTP Communication Port in Slave Mode.

*IX\_TIMESYNCACC\_1588PTP\_PORT\_ANYMODE*

PTP Communication Port in ANY Mode allows time stamping of all messages including non-1588 PTP.

*IX\_TIMESYNCACC\_1588PTP\_PORT\_MODE\_INVALID* Invalid PTP Port Mode.

Definition at line **85** of file **IxTimeSyncAcc.h**.

enum IxTimeSyncAccAuxMode

Master or Slave Auxiliary Time Stamp (Snap Shot).

**Enumeration values:**

*IX\_TIMESYNCACC\_AUXMODE\_MASTER* Auxiliary Master Mode.

*IX\_TIMESYNCACC\_AUXMODE\_SLAVE* Auxiliary Slave Mode.

*IX\_TIMESYNCACC\_AUXMODE\_INVALID* Invalid Auxiliary Mode.

Definition at line **56** of file **IxTimeSyncAcc.h**.

enum IxTimeSyncAccStatus

The status as returned from the API.

**Enumeration values:**

*IX\_TIMESYNCACC\_SUCCESS*

Requested operation successful.

*IX\_TIMESYNCACC\_INVALIDPARAM*

An invalid parameter was passed.

*IX\_TIMESYNCACC\_NOTIMESTAMP*

While polling no time stamp available.

*IX\_TIMESYNCACC\_INTERRUPTMODEINUSE*

Polling not allowed while operating in interrupt mode.

*IX\_TIMESYNCACC\_FAILED*

Internal error occurred.

## Function Documentation

**IxTimeSyncAccStatus** ixTimeSyncAccAuxTimeInterruptDisable ( **IxTimeSyncAccAuxMode** *auxMode* )

Disables the interrupt for the indicated mode of Auxiliary Time Stamp in the IEEE 1588 hardware assist block.

**Parameters:**

*auxMode* [in] – Auxiliary time stamp mode (slave or master) using which the interrupt will be disabled.

This API will disable the Auxiliary Time Stamp Interrupt (Master or Slave)

- Re-entrant : yes
- ISR Callable : no

**Returns:**

- ◇ IX\_TIMESYNCACC\_SUCCESS – Operation is successful
- ◇ IX\_TIMESYNCACC\_INVALIDPARAM – Invalid parameters passed
- ◇ IX\_TIMESYNCACC\_FAILED – Internal error occurred

**IxTimeSyncAccStatus** ixTimeSyncAccAuxTimeInterruptEnable ( **IxTimeSyncAccAuxMode** *auxMode*, **IxTimeSyncAccAuxTimeCallback** *auxTimeCallback* )

Enables the interrupt notification for the given mode of Auxiliary Time Stamp in the IEEE 1588 hardware assist block.

**Parameters:**

*auxMode* [in] – Auxiliary time stamp register (slave or master) to use  
*auxTimeCallback* [in] – Callback to be invoked when interrupt fires

This API will enable the Auxiliary Master/Slave Time stamp Interrupt.

NOTE: 1) An individual callback is to be registered for each Slave and Master Auxiliary Time Stamp registers. Thus to register for both Master and Slave time stamp interrupts either the same callback or two separate callbacks the API has to be invoked twice.

2) On the IXDP465 Development Platform, the Auxiliary Timestamp signal for slave mode is tied to GPIO 8 pin. This signal is software routed by default to PCI for backwards compatibility with the IXDP425 Development Platform. This routing must be disabled for the auxiliary slave time stamp register to work properly. The following commands may be used to accomplish this. However, refer to the IXDP465 Development Platform Users Guide or the BSP/LSP documentation for more specific information.

For Linux\* (at the Redboot prompt i.e., before loading zImage):

```

mfill -b 0x54100000 -1 -1 1 -p 8
mfill -b 0x54100001 -1 -1 1 -p 0x7f
For vxWorks*, at the prompt:
intDisable(25)
ixdp400FpgaIODetach(8)

```

- Re-entrant : no
- ISR Callable : no

**Returns:**

- ◇ IX\_TIMESYNCACC\_SUCCESS – Operation is successful
- ◇ IX\_TIMESYNCACC\_INVALIDPARAM – Null parameter passed for callback or invalid auxiliary snapshot mode
- ◇ IX\_TIMESYNCACC\_FAILED – Internal error occurred

```

IxTimeSyncAccStatus ixTimeSyncAccAuxTimePoll ( IxTimeSyncAccAuxMode    auxMode,
                                                BOOL *                auxPollFlag,
                                                IxTimeSyncAccTimeValue * auxTime
                                                )

```

Poll for the Auxiliary Time Stamp captured for the mode indicated (Master or Slave).

**Parameters:**

- auxMode* [in] – Auxiliary Snapshot Register (Slave or Master) to be checked
- auxPollFlag* [out] – TRUE if the time stamp captured in auxiliary snapshot register FALSE if the time stamp not captured in auxiliary snapshot register
- auxTime* [out] – Copy the current Auxiliary Snapshot Register value into the client provided buffer

Polls for the Time stamp in the appropriate Auxiliary Snapshot Registers based on the mode specified. Return true and the contents of the Auxiliary snapshot, if it is available else return false.

Please refer to the note #2 of the API **ixTimeSyncAccAuxTimeInterruptEnable** for more information for Auxiliary Slave mode.

- Re-entrant : yes
- ISR Callable : no

**Returns:**

- ◇ IX\_TIMESYNCACC\_SUCCESS – Operation is successful
- ◇ IX\_TIMESYNCACC\_INVALIDPARAM – Null parameter passed for auxPollFlag, callback or invalid auxiliary snapshot mode
- ◇ IX\_TIMESYNCACC\_FAILED – Internal error occurred
- ◇ IX\_TIMESYNCACC\_INTERRUPTMODEINUSE – Interrupt mode in use

```

IxTimeSyncAccStatus ixTimeSyncAccPTPPortConfigGet ( IxTimeSyncAcc1588PTPPort  ptpPort,
                                                         ptpPortMode

```

**IxTimeSyncAcc1588PTPPortMode**

\*

)

Retrieves IEEE 1588 PTP operation mode on particular PTP port.

**Parameters:**

*ptpPort* [in] – PTP port

*ptpPortMode* [in]– Mode of operation of PTP port (Master or Slave)

This API will identify the time stamping capability of a PTP port by means of obtaining its mode of operation.

- Re-entrant : No
- ISR Callable : No

**Returns:**

- ◇ IX\_TIMESYNCACC\_SUCCESS – Operation is successful
- ◇ IX\_TIMESYNCACC\_INVALIDPARAM – Invalid parameters passed
- ◇ IX\_TIMESYNCACC\_FAILED – Internal error occurred

**IxTimeSyncAccStatus**

*ixTimeSyncAccPTPPortConfigSet*

( **IxTimeSyncAcc1588PTPPort**

*ptpPort*,

**IxTimeSyncAcc1588PTPPortMode** *ptpPortMode*

)

Configures the IEEE 1588 message detect on particular PTP port.

**Parameters:**

*ptpPort* [in] – PTP port to config

*ptpPortMode* [in]– Port to operate in Master or Slave mode

This API will enable the time stamping on a particular PTP port.

- Re-entrant : No
- ISR Callable : No

**Returns:**

- ◇ IX\_TIMESYNCACC\_SUCCESS – Operation is successful
- ◇ IX\_TIMESYNCACC\_INVALIDPARAM – Invalid parameters passed
- ◇ IX\_TIMESYNCACC\_FAILED – Internal error occurred

**IxTimeSyncAccStatus** *ixTimeSyncAccPTPRxPoll* ( **IxTimeSyncAcc1588PTPPort** *ptpPort*,

**IxTimeSyncAccPtpMsgData** \* *ptpMsgData*

)

Polls the IEEE 1588 message/time stamp detect status on a particular PTP Port on the Receive side.

**Parameters:**

*ptpPort* [in] – PTP port to poll  
*ptpMsgData* [out] – Current TimeStamp and other Data

This API will poll for the availability of a time stamp on the received Sync (Slave) or Delay\_Req (Master) messages. The client application will provide the buffer.

- Re-entrant : No
- ISR Callable : No

**Returns:**

- ◇ IX\_TIMESYNCACC\_SUCCESS – Operation is successful
- ◇ IX\_TIMESYNCACC\_INVALIDPARAM – Invalid parameters passed
- ◇ IX\_TIMESYNCACC\_NOTIMESTAMP – No time stamp available
- ◇ IX\_TIMESYNCACC\_FAILED – Internal error occurred

```
IxTimeSyncAccStatus ixTimeSyncAccPTPTxPoll ( IxTimeSyncAcc1588PTPPort ptpPort,  
                                              IxTimeSyncAccPtpMsgData * ptpMsgData  
                                              )
```

Polls the IEEE 1588 message/time stamp detect status on a particular PTP Port on the Transmit side.

**Parameters:**

*ptpPort* [in] – PTP port to poll  
*ptpMsgData* [out] – Current TimeStamp and other Data

This API will poll for the availability of a time stamp on the transmitted Sync (Master) or Delay\_Req (Slave) messages. The client application will provide the buffer.

- Re-entrant : No
- ISR Callable : No

**Returns:**

- ◇ IX\_TIMESYNCACC\_SUCCESS – Operation is successful
- ◇ IX\_TIMESYNCACC\_INVALIDPARAM – Invalid parameters passed
- ◇ IX\_TIMESYNCACC\_NOTIMESTAMP – No time stamp available
- ◇ IX\_TIMESYNCACC\_FAILED – Internal error occurred

```
IxTimeSyncAccStatus ixTimeSyncAccReset ( void )
```

Resets the IEEE 1588 hardware assist block.

Sets the reset bit in the IEEE1588 silicon which fully resets the silicon block

- Reentrant : yes
- ISR Callable : no

**Returns:**

- ◇ IX\_TIMESYNCACC\_SUCCESS – Operation is successful
- ◇ IX\_TIMESYNCACC\_FAILED – Internal error occurred

**IxTimeSyncAccStatus** ixTimeSyncAccShow ( void )

Displays the Time Sync current status.

This API will display status on the current configuration of the IEEE 1588 hardware assist block, contents of the various time stamp registers, outstanding interrupts and/or events.

Note that this is intended for debug only, and in contrast to the other functions, it does not clear the any of the status bits associated with active timestamps and so is passive in its nature.

- Reentrant : yes
- ISR Callable : no

**Returns:**

- ◇ IX\_TIMESYNCACC\_SUCCESS – Operation is successful
- ◇ IX\_TIMESYNCACC\_FAILED – Internal error occurred

**IxTimeSyncAccStatus** ixTimeSyncAccStatsGet ( **IxTimeSyncAccStats** \* *timeSyncStats* )

Returns the IxTimeSyncAcc Statistics in the client supplied buffer.

**Parameters:**

*timeSyncStats* [out] – TimeSync statistics counter values

This API will return the statistics of the received or transmitted messages.

NOTE: 1) These counters are updated only when the client polls for the time stamps or interrupt are enabled. This is because the IxTimeSyncAcc module does not either transmit or receive messages and does only run the code when explicit requests received by client application.

2) These statistics reflect the number of valid PTP messages exchanged in Master and Slave modes but includes all the messages (including valid non-PTP messages) while operating in the Any mode.

- Reentrant : no
- ISR Callable : no

**Returns:**

- ◇ IX\_TIMESYNCACC\_SUCCESS – Operation is successful
- ◇ IX\_TIMESYNCACC\_INVALIDPARAM – NULL parameter passed
- ◇ IX\_TIMESYNCACC\_FAILED – Internal error occurred

**void** ixTimeSyncAccStatsReset ( void )

Reset Time Sync statistics.

This API will reset the statistics counters of the TimeSync access layer.

- Reentrant : yes
- ISR Callable: no

**Returns:**

◇ None

**IxTimeSyncAccStatus** ixTimeSyncAccSystemTimeGet ( **IxTimeSyncAccTimeValue** \* *systemTime* )

Gets the System Time from the IEEE 1588 hardware assist block.

**Parameters:**

*systemTime* [out] – Copy the current System Time into the client application provided buffer

This API will get the SystemTime from IEEE1588 block and return to client

- Re-entrant : no
- ISR Callable : no

**Returns:**

◇ IX\_TIMESYNCACC\_SUCCESS – Operation is successful  
◇ IX\_TIMESYNCACC\_INVALIDPARAM – Invalid parameters passed  
◇ IX\_TIMESYNCACC\_FAILED – Internal error occurred

**IxTimeSyncAccStatus** ixTimeSyncAccSystemTimeSet ( **IxTimeSyncAccTimeValue** *systemTime* )

Sets the System Time in the IEEE 1588 hardware assist block.

**Parameters:**

*systemTime* [in] – Value to set System Time

This API will set the SystemTime to given value.

- Re-entrant : yes
- ISR Callable : no

**Returns:**

◇ IX\_TIMESYNCACC\_SUCCESS – Operation is successful  
◇ IX\_TIMESYNCACC\_FAILED – Internal error occurred

**IxTimeSyncAccStatus** ixTimeSyncAccTargetTimeGet ( **IxTimeSyncAccTimeValue** \* *targetTime* )

Gets the Target Time in the IEEE 1588 hardware assist block.

**Parameters:**

*targetTime* [out] – Copy current time to client provided buffer

This API will get the Target Time from IEEE 1588 block and return to the client application

- Re-entrant : yes
- ISR Callable : no

**Returns:**

- ◇ IX\_TIMESYNCACC\_SUCCESS – Operation is successful
- ◇ IX\_TIMESYNCACC\_INVALIDPARAM – Null parameter passed
- ◇ IX\_TIMESYNCACC\_FAILED – Internal error occurred

**IxTimeSyncAccStatus** ixTimeSyncAccTargetTimeInterruptDisable ( void )

Disables the interrupt for the condition explained in the function description of **ixTimeSyncAccTargetTimeInterruptEnable**.

This API will disable the Target Time interrupt.

NOTE: The client application needs to ensure that the APIs **ixTimeSyncAccTargetTimeInterruptEnable**, **ixTimeSyncAccTargetTimeSet** and **ixTimeSyncAccTargetTimeInterruptDisable** are accessed in mutual exclusive manner with respect to each other.

- Re-entrant : no
- ISR Callable : yes

**Returns:**

- ◇ IX\_TIMESYNCACC\_SUCCESS – Operation is successful
- ◇ IX\_TIMESYNCACC\_FAILED – Internal error occurred

**IxTimeSyncAccStatus** ( **IxTimeSyncAccTargetTimeCallback***targetTimeCallback* )  
**ixTimeSyncAccTargetTimeInterruptEnable**

Enables the interrupt to verify the condition where the System Time greater or equal to the Target Time in the IEEE 1588 hardware assist block. If the condition is true an interrupt will be sent to Intel XScale(R) Processor.

**Parameters:**

*targetTimeCallback* [in] – Callback to be invoked when interrupt fires

This API will enable the Target Time reached/hit condition interrupt.

NOTE: The client application needs to ensure that the APIs **ixTimeSyncAccTargetTimeInterruptEnable**, **ixTimeSyncAccTargetTimeSet** and **ixTimeSyncAccTargetTimeInterruptDisable** are accessed in mutual exclusive manner with respect to each other.



- Re-entrant : no
- ISR Callable : yes

**Returns:**

- ◇ IX\_TIMESYNCACC\_SUCCESS – Operation is successful
- ◇ IX\_TIMESYNCACC\_INVALIDPARAM – Null parameter passed for callback
- ◇ IX\_TIMESYNCACC\_FAILED – Internal error occurred

```
IxTimeSyncAccStatus ixTimeSyncAccTargetTimePoll ( BOOL * ttmPollFlag,
                                                    IxTimeSyncAccTimeValue * targetTime
                                                    )
```

Poll to verify the condition where the System Time greater or equal to the Target Time in the IEEE 1588 hardware assist block. If the condition is true an event flag is set in the hardware.

**Parameters:**

- ttmPollFlag* [out] – TRUE if the target time reached/hit condition event set FALSE if the target time reached/hit condition event is not set
- targetTime* [out] – Capture current targetTime into client provided buffer

Poll the target time reached/hit condition status. Return true and the current target time value, if the condition is true else return false.

NOTE: The client application will need to clear the event flag that will be set as long as the condition that the System Time greater or equal to the Target Time is valid, in one of the following ways: 1) Invoke the API to change the target time 2) Change the system timer value

- Re-entrant : yes
- ISR Callable : no

**Returns:**

- ◇ IX\_TIMESYNCACC\_SUCCESS – Operation is successful
- ◇ IX\_TIMESYNCACC\_INVALIDPARAM – Null parameter passed
- ◇ IX\_TIMESYNCACC\_FAILED – Internal error occurred
- ◇ IX\_TIMESYNCACC\_INTERRUPTMODEINUSE – Interrupt mode in use

```
IxTimeSyncAccStatus ixTimeSyncAccTargetTimeSet ( IxTimeSyncAccTimeValue targetTime )
```

Sets the Target Time in the IEEE 1588 hardware assist block.

**Parameters:**

- targetTime* [in] – Value to set Target Time

This API will set the Target Time to a given value.

NOTE: The client application needs to ensure that the APIs **ixTimeSyncAccTargetTimeInterruptEnable**, **ixTimeSyncAccTargetTimeSet** and **ixTimeSyncAccTargetTimeInterruptDisable** are accessed in mutual exclusive manner with respect to each other.

- Reentrant : no
- ISR Callable : yes

**Returns:**

- ◇ IX\_TIMESYNCACC\_SUCCESS – Operation is successful
- ◇ IX\_TIMESYNCACC\_FAILED – Internal error occurred

**IxTimeSyncAccStatus** ixTimeSyncAccTickRateGet ( UINT32 \* *tickRate* )

Gets the Tick Rate (Frequency Scaling Value) from the IEEE 1588 hardware assist block.

**Parameters:**

*tickRate* [out] – Current Tick Rate value in the IEEE 1588 block

This API will get the TickRate on IEE15588 block. Refer to **ixTimeSyncAccTickRateSet** for notes on usage of this value.

- Reentrant : yes
- ISR Callable : no

**Returns:**

- ◇ IX\_TIMESYNCACC\_SUCCESS – Operation is successful
- ◇ IX\_TIMESYNCACC\_INVALIDPARAM – Invalid parameters passed
- ◇ IX\_TIMESYNCACC\_FAILED – Internal error occurred

**IxTimeSyncAccStatus** ixTimeSyncAccTickRateSet ( UINT32 *tickRate* )

Sets the Tick Rate (Frequency Scaling Value) in the IEEE 1588 hardware assist block.

**Parameters:**

*tickRate* [in] – Value to set Tick Rate

This API will set the Tick Rate (Frequency Scaling Value) in the IEEE 1588 block to the given value. The Accumulator register (not client visible) is incremented by this TickRate value every clock cycle. When the Accumulator overflows, the SystemTime is incremented by one. This TickValue can therefore be used to adjust the system timer.

- Re-entrant : yes
- ISR Callable : no

**Returns:**

- ◇ IX\_TIMESYNCACC\_SUCCESS – Operation is successful
- ◇ IX\_TIMESYNCACC\_FAILED – Internal error occurred

# Intel (R) IXP400 Software Types (IxTypes)

Basic data types used by the IXP400 project.

## Defines

```
#define OK  
#define ERROR
```

## Typedefs

```
typedef int(* FUNCPTR )(void)  
typedef int STATUS
```

---

## Detailed Description

Basic data types used by the IXP400 project.

# Intel (R) IXP400 Software UART Access (IxUARTAcc) API

IXP400 UARTAcc Driver Public API.

## Modules

### Defines for Default Values

*Default values which can be used for UART configuration.*

### Defines for IOCTL Commands

*IOCTL Commands (Request codes) which can be used with **ixUARTIoctl**.*

**Defines for IOCTL Arguments** *POSIX style IOCTL arguments which can be used with **ixUARTIoctl**.*

## Data Structures

struct **ixUARTDev** *Device descriptor for the UART.*

struct **ixUARTDev** *Device descriptor for the UART.*

struct **ixUARTStats** *Statistics for the UART.*

struct **ixUARTStats** *Statistics for the UART.*

## Enumerations

```
enum ixUARTMode {  
    INTERRUPT,  
    POLLED,  
    LOOPBACK  
} The mode to set to UART to.
```

## Functions

**PUBLIC IX\_STATUS ixUARTInit (ixUARTDev \*pUART)** *Initialise the UART. This puts the chip in a quiescent state.*

**PUBLIC IX\_STATUS ixUARTPollOutput (ixUARTDev \*pUART, int outChar)** *Transmit a character in*

*polled mode.*

PUBLIC IX\_STATUS **ixUARTPollInput** (ixUARTDev \*pUART, char \*inChar) *Receive a character in polled mode.*

PUBLIC IX\_STATUS **ixUARTIoctl** (ixUARTDev \*pUART, int cmd, void \*arg) *Perform I/O control routines on the device.*

---

## Detailed Description

IXP400 UARTAcc Driver Public API.

---

## Enumeration Type Documentation

enum ixUARTMode

The mode to set to UART to.

**Enumeration values:**

*INTERRUPT* Interrupt mode – Not supported yet.

*POLLED* Polled mode.

*LOOPBACK* Loopback mode.

Definition at line **308** of file **IxUART.h**.

---

## Function Documentation

IX\_STATUS ixUARTInit ( **ixUARTDev** \* *pUART* )

Initialise the UART. This puts the chip in a quiescent state.

**Parameters:**

*pUART* **ixUARTDev** [in] – pointer to UART structure describing our device.

**Precondition:**

The base address for the UART must contain a valid value. Also the baud rate and hardware options must contain sensible values otherwise the defaults will be used as defined in ixUART.h

**Postcondition:**

UART is initialized and ready to send and receive data.

**Note:**

This function should only be called once per device.

**Return values:**

- IX\_SUCCESS* – UART device successfully initialised.
- IX\_FAIL* – Critical error, device not initialised.

```
IX_STATUS ixUARTIoctl ( ixUARTDev * pUART,
                        int          cmd,
                        void *       arg
                        )
```

Perform I/O control routines on the device.

**Parameters:**

- pUART* **ixUARTDev** [in] – pointer to UART structure describing our device.
- cmd* int [in] – an ioctl request code.
- arg* void\* [in] – optional argument used to set the device mode, baud rate, and hardware options.

**Return values:**

- IX\_SUCCESS* – requested feature was set/read successfully.
- IX\_FAIL* – error setting/reading the requested feature.

**See also:**

**IoctlCommandDefines**

**IoctlArgDefines**

```
IX_STATUS ixUARTPollInput ( ixUARTDev * pUART,
                            char *       inChar
                            )
```

Receive a character in polled mode.

**Parameters:**

- pUART* **ixUARTDev** [in] – pointer to UART structure describing our device.
- \*inChar* char [in] – character read from the device.

**Precondition:**

UART device must be initialised.

**Return values:**

- IX\_SUCCESS* – character was successfully read.
- IX\_FAIL* – input buffer empty (try again).

```
IX_STATUS ixUARTPollOutput ( ixUARTDev * pUART,  
                             int           outChar  
                             )
```

Transmit a character in polled mode.

**Parameters:**

*pUART* **ixUARTDev** [out] – pointer to UART structure describing our device.

*outChar* int [out] – character to transmit.

**Precondition:**

UART device must be initialised.

**Return values:**

*IX\_SUCCESS* – character was successfully transmitted.

*IX\_FAIL* – output buffer is full (try again).

# Defines for Default Values

## [Intel (R) IXP400 Software UART Access (IxUARTAcc) API]

Default values which can be used for UART configuration.

### Defines

**#define IX\_UART\_DEF\_OPTS**

*The default hardware options to set the UART to – no flow control, 8 bit word, 1 stop bit, no parity.*

**#define IX\_UART\_DEF\_XMIT**

*The default UART FIFO size – must be no bigger than 64.*

**#define IX\_UART\_DEF\_BAUD**

*The default UART baud rate – 9600.*

**#define IX\_UART\_MIN\_BAUD**

*The minimum UART baud rate – 9600.*

**#define IX\_UART\_MAX\_BAUD**

*The maximum UART baud rate – 926100.*

**#define IX\_UART\_XTAL**

*The UART clock speed.*

---

## Detailed Description

Default values which can be used for UART configuration.

*See also:*

**ixUARTDev**

---

## Define Documentation

**#define IX\_UART\_DEF\_BAUD**

The default UART baud rate – 9600.

Definition at line **72** of file **IxUART.h**.

**#define IX\_UART\_DEF\_OPTS**



The default hardware options to set the UART to – no flow control, 8 bit word, 1 stop bit, no parity.

Definition at line **54** of file **IxUART.h**.

```
#define IX_UART_DEF_XMIT
```

The default UART FIFO size – must be no bigger than 64.

Definition at line **63** of file **IxUART.h**.

```
#define IX_UART_MAX_BAUD
```

The maximum UART baud rate – 926100.

Definition at line **90** of file **IxUART.h**.

```
#define IX_UART_MIN_BAUD
```

The minimum UART baud rate – 9600.

Definition at line **81** of file **IxUART.h**.

```
#define IX_UART_XTAL
```

The UART clock speed.

Definition at line **99** of file **IxUART.h**.

# Defines for IOCTL Commands

## [Intel (R) IXP400 Software UART Access (IxUARTAcc) API]

IOCTL Commands (Request codes) which can be used with **ixUARTIoctl**.

### Defines

```
#define IX_BAUD_SET
    Set the baud rate.

#define IX_BAUD_GET
    Get the baud rate.

#define IX_MODE_SET
    Set the UART mode of operation.

#define IX_MODE_GET
    Get the current UART mode of operation.

#define IX_OPTS_SET
    Set the UART device options.

#define IX_OPTS_GET
    Get the UART device options.

#define IX_STATS_GET
    Get the UART statistics.
```

---

### Detailed Description

IOCTL Commands (Request codes) which can be used with **ixUARTIoctl**.

---

### Define Documentation

```
#define IX_BAUD_GET
```

Get the baud rate.

Definition at line **129** of file **IxUART.h**.

```
#define IX_BAUD_SET
```

Set the baud rate.

Definition at line **120** of file **IxUART.h**.

```
#define IX_MODE_GET
```

Get the current UART mode of operation.

Definition at line **145** of file **IxUART.h**.

```
#define IX_MODE_SET
```

Set the UART mode of operation.

Definition at line **136** of file **IxUART.h**.

```
#define IX_OPTS_GET
```

Get the UART device options.

Definition at line **163** of file **IxUART.h**.

```
#define IX_OPTS_SET
```

Set the UART device options.

Definition at line **154** of file **IxUART.h**.

```
#define IX_STATS_GET
```

Get the UART statistics.

Definition at line **172** of file **IxUART.h**.

# Defines for IOCTL Arguments

## [Intel (R) IXP400 Software UART Access (IxUARTAcc) API]

POSIX style IOCTL arguments which can be used with **ixUARTIoctl**.

### Defines

**#define CLOCAL**

*Software flow control.*

**#define CREAD**

*Enable interrupt receiver.*

**#define CSIZE**

*Characters size.*

**#define CS5**

*5 bits*

**#define CS6**

*6 bits*

**#define CS7**

*7 bits*

**#define CS8**

*8 bits*

**#define STOPB**

*Send two stop bits (else one).*

**#define PARENB**

*Parity detection enabled (else disabled).*

**#define PARODD**

*Odd parity (else even).*

---

### Detailed Description

POSIX style IOCTL arguments which can be used with **ixUARTIoctl**.

*See also:*

**ixUARTMode**

---

# Define Documentation

## #define CLOCAL

Software flow control.

Definition at line **197** of file **IxUART.h**.

## #define CREAD

Enable interrupt receiver.

Definition at line **209** of file **IxUART.h**.

## #define CS5

5 bits

Definition at line **233** of file **IxUART.h**.

## #define CS6

6 bits

Definition at line **245** of file **IxUART.h**.

## #define CS7

7 bits

Definition at line **257** of file **IxUART.h**.

## #define CS8

8 bits

Definition at line **269** of file **IxUART.h**.

## #define CSIZE

Characters size.

Definition at line **221** of file **IxUART.h**.

```
#define PARENB
```

Parity detection enabled (else disabled).

Definition at line **290** of file **IxUART.h**.

```
#define PARODD
```

Odd parity (else even).

Definition at line **302** of file **IxUART.h**.

```
#define STOPB
```

Send two stop bits (else one).

Definition at line **278** of file **IxUART.h**.

# Intel (R) IXP400 Software Version ID (IxVersionId)

Version Identifiers.

## Defines

**#define IX\_VERSION\_ID**

*Version Identifier String.*

**#define IX\_VERSION\_ADSL\_ID**

*This string will be updated with each customer release of the IXP400 ADSL driver package.*

**#define IX\_VERSION\_USBRNDIS\_ID**

*This string will be updated with each customer release of the IXP400 USB Client driver package.*

**#define IX\_VERSION\_I2C\_LINUX\_ID**

*This string will be updated with each customer release of the IXP400 I2C Linux\* driver package.*

**#define LINUX\_ETHERNET\_DRIVER\_PATCH\_ID**

*Linux\* Ethernet Driver Patch Version Identifier String.*

**#define LINUX\_ETHERNET\_README\_ID**

*Linux\* Ethernet Readme version Identifier String.*

**#define LINUX\_I2C\_DRIVER\_README\_ID**

*Linux\* I2C driver Readme version Identifier String.*

**#define IX\_VERSION\_INTERNAL\_ID**

*Internal Release Identifier String.*

**#define IX\_VERSION\_COMPATIBLE\_TORNADO**

*Compatible Tornado Version Identifier.*

**#define IX\_VERSION\_COMPATIBLE\_LINUX**

*Compatible Linux\* Version Identifier.*

---

## Detailed Description

Version Identifiers.

---

## Define Documentation

```
#define IX_VERSION_ADSL_ID
```

This string will be updated with each customer release of the IXP400 ADSL driver package.

Definition at line **36** of file **IxVersionId.h**.

```
#define IX_VERSION_COMPATIBLE_LINUX
```

Compatible Linux\* Version Identifier.

Definition at line **88** of file **IxVersionId.h**.

```
#define IX_VERSION_COMPATIBLE_TORNADO
```

Compatible Tornado Version Identifier.

Definition at line **83** of file **IxVersionId.h**.

```
#define IX_VERSION_I2C_LINUX_ID
```

This string will be updated with each customer release of the IXP400 I2C Linux\* driver package.

Definition at line **49** of file **IxVersionId.h**.

```
#define IX_VERSION_ID
```

Version Identifier String.

This string will be updated with each customer release of the IXP400 Software.

Definition at line **30** of file **IxVersionId.h**.

```
#define IX_VERSION_INTERNAL_ID
```

Internal Release Identifier String.

This string will be updated with each internal release (SQA drop) of the IXP400 Software.

Definition at line **78** of file **IxVersionId.h**.

```
#define IX_VERSION_USBRNDIS_ID
```

This string will be updated with each customer release of the IXP400 USB Client driver package.

Definition at line **43** of file **IxVersionId.h**.



```
#define LINUX_ETHERNET_DRIVER_PATCH_ID
```

Linux\* Ethernet Driver Patch Version Identifier String.

This string will be updated with each release of Linux\* Ethernet Patch

Definition at line **56** of file **IxVersionId.h**.

```
#define LINUX_ETHERNET_README_ID
```

Linux\* Ethernet Readme version Identifier String.

This string will be updated with each release of Linux\* Ethernet Readme

Definition at line **63** of file **IxVersionId.h**.

```
#define LINUX_I2C_DRIVER_README_ID
```

Linux\* I2C driver Readme version Identifier String.

This string will be updated with each release of Linux\* I2C Driver Readme

Definition at line **70** of file **IxVersionId.h**.

# Intel (R) IXP400 Software Codelets

Intel (R) IXP400 Software codelets.

## Modules

**Intel (R) IXP400 Software Crypto  
Access Codelet**

*(IxCryptoAccCodelet) API Intel (R) IXP400 Software Crypto  
Access Codelet API*

---

## Detailed Description

Intel (R) IXP400 Software codelets.

# Intel (R) IXP400 Software Crypto Access Codelet

## [Intel (R) IXP400 Software Codelets]

(IxCryptoAccCodelet) API Intel (R) IXP400 Software Crypto Access Codelet API

### Defines

```
#define INLINE

#define IX_CRYPTOACC_CODELET_CRYPTOACC_CFG
    Selects the interface's (to the NPE) to be initialized by the codelet. Use one of the values defined in IxCryptoAccCfg. IX_CRYPTO_ACC_CFG_CRYPTO_WEP_NPE_ACC_EN: Enable's access to the Crypto NPE and WEP NPE.

#define IX_CRYPTOACC_CODELET_NPEC_IMAGE_ID
    The build ID for NPE C image, default is IX_NPEDL_NPEIMAGE_NPEC_CRYPTO_AES_CCM_ETH.

#define IX_CRYPTOACC_CODELET_NPEA_IMAGE_ID
    The build ID for NPE A image, default is IX_NPEDL_NPEIMAGE_NPEA_WEP.

#define PERFORMANCE_WINDOW_SIZE
    Number of crypto packets/requests need to be sent in for performance benchmarking (sampling size), 1 unit represents 1000 of requests (100 requests for EAU).

#define IX_CRYPTOACC_CODELET_CRYPTO_MBUF_POOL_SIZE
    Size of MBuf pool, ie number of buffers to circulate.

#define IX_CRYPTOACC_CODELET_BATCH_LEN
    Number of packets/requests per sampling for performance benchmarking.

#define IX_CRYPTOACC_CODELET_QMGR_DISPATCHER_PRIORITY
    Recommended priority of queue manager dispatch loop.

#define IX_CRYPTOACC_CODELET_QMGR_DISPATCHER_THREAD_STACK_SIZE
    Recommended stack size for queue manager dispatcher thread.

#define IX_CRYPTOACC_CODELET_XSCALE_TICK
    The XScale tick is 66 MHz. The ixOsaiOsIxp400TimestampResolutionGet() function returns 66666666, thus need to divide by a million.

#define IX_CRYPTOACC_CODELET_REGISTER_WAIT_TIME
    The codelet register wait time (in ms) in a for loop.

#define IX_CRYPTOACC_CODELET_PERFORM_WAIT_TIME
    The codelet perform wait time (in ms) in a for loop.

#define IX_CRYPTOACC_CODELET_MAX_TIME_WAIT
```

*Maximum time (in ms) to wait before exiting the program.*

**#define IX\_CRYPTO\_ACC\_CODELET\_PKE\_PERFORM\_WAIT\_TIME**  
*Maximum time (in ms) to wait before exiting the program.*

**#define IX\_CRYPTO\_ACC\_CODELET\_MAX\_COUNT**  
*Maximum counter to wait before exiting the program.*

**#define IX\_CRYPTO\_ACC\_CODELET\_PKE\_EAU\_TOTAL\_OP**  
*Total Pke Eau operation for one window size.*

**#define IX\_CRYPTO\_ACC\_CODELET\_PKE\_TOTAL\_OP**  
*Total Pke RNG/SHA operation for one window size.*

**#define IX\_CRYPTO\_ACC\_CODELET\_SLEEP\_WAIT**  
*Delay time (in ms) for printf to avoid rpc error.*

**#define IX\_CRYPTOACC\_CODELET\_MIN\_CRYPTOPKT\_SIZE**  
*The minimum packet/data size.*

**#define IX\_CRYPTOACC\_CODELET\_MAX\_CRYPTOPKT\_SIZE**  
*The maximum packet/data size.*

**#define IX\_CRYPTOACC\_CODELET\_QMGR\_DISPATCHER\_MODE**  
*QMgr Dispatcher Mode, whether in interrupt (TRUE) or poll (FALSE) mode.*

**#define IX\_CRYPTOACC\_PKE\_EAU\_EXP\_CONFIG\_FE\_MODE**  
*Set the PKE EAU modular exponential configuration for fast exponent.*

**#define IX\_CRYPTOACC\_PKE\_EAU\_EXP\_CONFIG\_SE\_MODE**  
*Set the PKE EAU modular exponential configuration for short exponent.*

## Functions

**IX\_STATUS ixCryptoAccCodeletMain** (INT32 srvIndex, UINT32 dataBLenOrOprWLen)

*This is the entry point function to the codelet to choose the service for the codelet and data/operand length to be used. This is the main function of the codelet where crypto contexts registration and crypto perform services are done. Based on the selected operation and length, data/operands are sent to cryptoAcc for processing.*

---

## Detailed Description

(IxCryptoAccCodelet) API Intel (R) IXP400 Software Crypto Access Codelet API

The codelet demonstrates how the Security Hardware Accelerator API can be used for performing various cryptographic operations. For demonstration purposes, various cryptographic operations (called services in

this codelet) are preconfigured in an array. Users can specify a particular service with a "service index" from the list below. Various services shown are:

Encryption and decryption, using DES ECB  
Authentication calculation and check, using MD5  
Combined encryption and decryption, using DES CBC and SHA1  
CCM for 802.11i  
ARC4 with WEP CRC computations on XScale  
ARC4 with WEP CRC computations on NPE  
Pseudo-random number generator (RNG) on PKE Crypto Engine  
Hashing (SHA1) on PKE Crypto Engine  
Arithmetic operations (modular exponential, big number modular reduction,  
addition, subtraction, and multiplication) on PKE Crypto Engine.

The codelet shows how to initialize the required components (like Qmgr, NPE's) and the Security Hardware Accelerator. This initialization is done only once for the very first request. Every invocation of the codelet for a specific service results in the context registration followed by execution of the operation. Once the operation completes, the contexts are un-registered. If the operation completes successfully performance statistics are printed. If there is an error, statistics are not printed and an error message is displayed.  
The codelet shows the following :

The codelet demonstrates how the Network Processor Engine (NPE) is initialised, how the NPE image is downloaded to the NPE, and how the NPE is started.

The codelet demonstrates how the Queue Manager is initialised to polling or interrupt mode.

The codelet shows how to set up the callback functions and how to register crypto contexts with cryptoAcc access component.

The codelet demonstrates how the registration should be done for the different operations using the register API.

The codelet demonstrates how the perform API can be used after successful registration.

The codelet demonstrates how to use XScaleWepPerform function and NpeWepPerform function

The codelet demonstrates the use of the unregister API in the event of re-starting the above mentioned operation.

The codelet demonstrates how to use PKE API for RNG, SHA, and EAU and how to setup callback functions.

The codelet measures the performance of the Security Hardware Accelerator for each of the operations listed above.

Configuration parameters for Performance benchmarking are

#### **Default Performance Sampling Size**

Sampling rate	: 1,000 (100 for EAU)
Number of Samples	: 20
Total Samples	: 20,000 (2,000 for EAU)

#### **Default mbuf Pool Setting**

Number of mbufs in pool	: 20
Min of mbufs needed in pool	: 2 (for crypto context registration purpose)

User may choose to run different operation with different data/operand lengths. The performance rate of a selected operation with the selected length will be displayed after throughput rate has been captured for a predefined performance sampling size. If an error occurs any time in the codelet, the performance numbers will not be displayed and error message will be printed.

#### **Notes for Performance Benchmarking:**

Data are generated in XScale with random payload. No explicit verification of payload will be carried out in the codelet.

Encrypted data are sent to NPE again for decryption and same applies to authentication operation. Data payload is verified implicitly through this feedback system.

Throughput rate is captured from the point where data is sent to NPE for processing to the point where NPE completes the encryption and/or authentication operation and notifies XScale through callback.

No external data generator or benchmarking devices involved in this codelet. Throughput rate is captured using XScale timestamp.

Performance of PKE functions are captured from the time the function is called until the PKE has finished the operations and callback is invoked.

Time taken for codelet to complete the operation depends on the length selected. Larger data will take more time to complete.

## **VxWorks\* User Guide**

**ixCryptoAccCodeletMain()** function is used as the entry point of execution for cryptoAcc Codelet.

It allows user to enter selection for various operations described below with different data/operand length.

### *Usage :*

*>ixCryptoAccCodeletMain (serviceIndex, dataBLenOrOprWLen)*

*Where serviceIndex should be one of the following:*

- 0 : Lists the set of services demonstrated.*
- 1 : Encryption and Decryption using DES(ECB)*
- 2 : Encryption and Decryption using DES(CBC)*
- 3 : Encryption and Decryption using 3DES(ECB)*
- 4 : Encryption and Decryption using 3DES(CBC)*
- 5 : Encryption and Decryption using AES(ECB)*
- 6 : Encryption and Decryption using AES(CBC)*
- 7 : Encryption and Decryption using AES(CTR)*
- 8 : Encryption and Decryption using AES-CCM*
- 9 : Encryption and Decryption using ARC4 on XScale*
- 10 : Encryption and Decryption using ARC4 on WAN-NPE*
- 11 : Authentication calculation and verification using MD5*
- 12 : Authentication calculation and verification using SHA1*
- 13 : Authentication calculation and verification WEP CRC on XScale*
- 14 : Authentication calculation and verification WEP CRC on WAN-NPE*
- 15 : A combined mode of operation using DES(ECB) + MD5*
- 16 : A combined mode of operation using DES(CBC) + MD5*
- 17 : A combined mode of operation using DES(ECB) + SHA1*
- 18 : A combined mode of operation using DES(CBC) + SHA1*
- 19 : A combined mode of operation using 3DES(ECB) + MD5*
- 20 : A combined mode of operation using 3DES(CBC) + MD5*
- 21 : A combined mode of operation using 3DES(ECB) + SHA1*
- 22 : A combined mode of operation using 3DES(CBC) + SHA1*
- 23 : A combined mode of operation using AES(ECB) + MD5*
- 24 : A combined mode of operation using AES(CBC) + MD5*
- 25 : A combined mode of operation using AES(CTR) + MD5*
- 26 : A combined mode of operation using AES(ECB) + SHA1*
- 27 : A combined mode of operation using AES(CBC) + SHA1*
- 28 : A combined mode of operation using AES(CTR) + SHA1*
- 29 : A combined mode of operation using ARC4 + WEP CRC on XScale*
- 30 : A combined mode of operation using ARC4 + WEP CRC on WAN-NPE*
- 31 : PKE RNG pseudo-random number*
- 32 : PKE SHA1 hashing operation*

```

33 : PKE EAU modular exponential operation
34 : PKE EAU large number modular reduction operation
35 : PKE EAU large number addition operation
36 : PKE EAU large number subtraction operation
37 : PKE EAU large number multiplication operation

```

Where dataBLenOrOprWLen (data byte length or operand word length):  
 Data length ranges from 64 bytes to 65456 bytes, if cipher algorithm is DES/3DES, data length must be multiple of 8-byte (cipher block length); while AES algorithm must have data length that is multiple of 16-byte in size. For ARC4 algorithm block length there is no such restriction (because block size is 1 byte). If cipher mode is CCM, there is no restriction on the data length being a multiple of cipher block length.

For PKE EAU, RNG and SHA operands' range, please refer to the **ixCryptoAcc.h** file.

For EAU operation, each operand length allocates 8 bits. All others operations take the whole word of dataBLenOrOprWLen.  
 For example: WLen = 0x00ccbbaa.  
 modular exponential: aa is M, bb is N, and cc is e  
 large number modular reduction: aa is A, bb is N  
 large number add/sub/mul: aa is A, bb is B  
 others: 0x00ccbbaa

## Linux\* User Guide

The **ixCryptoAccCodeletMain()** is the entry point of cryptoAcc codelet.

The selected operation will be executed when user issues 'insmod' at command prompt.

### Usage :

```

>insmod ixp400_codelets_cryptoAcc.o serviceIndex= dataBLenOrOprWLen=
Where x should be one of the following numbers:

```

```

0 : Lists all set of services demonstrated.
1 : Encryption and Decryption using DES(ECB)
2 : Encryption and Decryption using DES(CBC)
3 : Encryption and Decryption using 3DES(ECB)
4 : Encryption and Decryption using 3DES(CBC)
5 : Encryption and Decryption using AES(ECB)
6 : Encryption and Decryption using AES(CBC)
7 : Encryption and Decryption using AES(CTR)
8 : Encryption and Decryption using AES-CCM
9 : Encryption and Decryption using ARC4 on XScale
10 : Encryption and Decryption using ARC4 on WAN-NPE
11 : Authentication calculation and verification using MD5

```



```

12 : Authentication calculation and verification using SHA1
13 : Authentication calculation and verification WEP CRC on XScale
14 : Authentication calculation and verification WEP CRC on WAN-NPE
15 : A combined mode of operation using DES(ECB) + MD5
16 : A combined mode of operation using DES(CBC) + MD5
17 : A combined mode of operation using DES(ECB) + SHA1
18 : A combined mode of operation using DES(CBC) + SHA1
19 : A combined mode of operation using 3DES(ECB) + MD5
20 : A combined mode of operation using 3DES(CBC) + MD5
21 : A combined mode of operation using 3DES(ECB) + SHA1
22 : A combined mode of operation using 3DES(CBC) + SHA1
23 : A combined mode of operation using AES(ECB) + MD5
24 : A combined mode of operation using AES(CBC) + MD5
25 : A combined mode of operation using AES(CTR) + MD5
26 : A combined mode of operation using AES(ECB) + SHA1
27 : A combined mode of operation using AES(CBC) + SHA1
28 : A combined mode of operation using AES(CTR) + SHA1
29 : A combined mode of operation using ARC4 + WEP CRC on XScale
30 : A combined mode of operation using ARC4 + WEP CRC on WAN-NPE
31 : PKE RNG pseudo-random number
32 : PKE SHA1 hashing operation
33 : PKE EAU modular exponential operation
34 : PKE EAU large number modular reduction operation
35 : PKE EAU large number addition operation
36 : PKE EAU large number subtraction operation
37 : PKE EAU large number multiplication operation

```

Where dataBLenOrOprWLen (data byte length or operand word length):  
Data length ranges from 64 bytes to 65456 bytes, if cipher algorithm is DES/3DES, data length must be multiple of 8-byte (cipher block length); while AES algorithm must have data length that is multiple of 16-byte in size. For ARC4 algorithm block length there is no such restriction (because block size is 1 byte).  
If cipher mode is CCM, there is no restriction on the data length being a multiple of cipher block length.

For PKE EAU, RNG and SHA operands' range, please refer to the **IxCryptoAcc.h** file.

For EAU operation, each operand length allocates 8 bits. All other operations take the whole word of dataBLenOrOprWLen.

For example: WLen = 0x00ccbbaa.

modular exponential: aa is M, bb is N, and cc is e

large number modular reduction: aa is A, bb is N

large number add/sub/mul: aa is A, bb is B

others: 0x00ccbbaa

---

## Define Documentation

```
#define IX_CRYPTACC_CODELET_MAX_COUNT
```

Maximum counter to wait before exiting the program.

Definition at line **456** of file **IxCryptoAccCodelet.h**.

```
#define IX_CRYPTO_ACC_CODELET_PKE_EAU_TOTAL_OP
```

Total Pke Eau operation for one window size.

Definition at line **466** of file **IxCryptoAccCodelet.h**.

```
#define IX_CRYPTO_ACC_CODELET_PKE_PERFORM_WAIT_TIME
```

Maximum time (in ms) to wait before exiting the program.

Definition at line **446** of file **IxCryptoAccCodelet.h**.

```
#define IX_CRYPTO_ACC_CODELET_PKE_TOTAL_OP
```

Total Pke RNG/SHA operation for one window size.

Definition at line **476** of file **IxCryptoAccCodelet.h**.

```
#define IX_CRYPTO_ACC_CODELET_SLEEP_WAIT
```

Delay time (in ms) for printf to avoid rpc error.

Definition at line **486** of file **IxCryptoAccCodelet.h**.

```
#define IX_CRYPTOACC_CODELET_BATCH_LEN
```

Number of packets/requests per sampling for performance benchmarking.

Definition at line **374** of file **IxCryptoAccCodelet.h**.

```
#define IX_CRYPTOACC_CODELET_CRYPTOMBUF_POOL_SIZE
```

Size of MBuf pool, ie number of buffers to circulate.

Definition at line **359** of file **IxCryptoAccCodelet.h**.

```
#define IX_CRYPTOACC_CODELET_CRYPTOACC_CFG
```

Selects the interface's (to the NPE) to be initialized by the codelet. Use one of the values defined in

IxCryptoAccCfg. IX\_CRYPTO\_ACC\_CFG\_CRYPTOWEP\_NPE\_ACC\_EN: Enable's access to the Crypto NPE and WEP NPE.

Definition at line **306** of file **IxCryptoAccCodelet.h**.

```
#define IX_CRYPTOACC_CODELET_MAX_CRYPTOPKT_SIZE
```

The maximum packet/data size.

Definition at line **506** of file **IxCryptoAccCodelet.h**.

```
#define IX_CRYPTOACC_CODELET_MAX_TIME_WAIT
```

Maximum time (in ms) to wait before exiting the program.

Definition at line **436** of file **IxCryptoAccCodelet.h**.

```
#define IX_CRYPTOACC_CODELET_MIN_CRYPTOPKT_SIZE
```

The minimum packet/data size.

Definition at line **496** of file **IxCryptoAccCodelet.h**.

```
#define IX_CRYPTOACC_CODELET_NPEA_IMAGE_ID
```

The build ID for NPE A image, default is IX\_NPEDL\_NPEIMAGE\_NPEA\_WEP.

**Note:**

Please refer to **IxNpeDI.h** for NPE image definition

Definition at line **333** of file **IxCryptoAccCodelet.h**.

```
#define IX_CRYPTOACC_CODELET_NPEC_IMAGE_ID
```

The build ID for NPE C image, default is IX\_NPEDL\_NPEIMAGE\_NPEC\_CRYPTOWEP\_AES\_CCM\_ETH.

**Note:**

Please refer to **IxNpeDI.h** for NPE image definition

Definition at line **320** of file **IxCryptoAccCodelet.h**.

```
#define IX_CRYPTOACC_CODELET_PERFORM_WAIT_TIME
```

The codelet perform wait time (in ms) in a for loop.

Definition at line **426** of file **IxCryptoAccCodelet.h**.

```
#define IX_CRYPTOACC_CODELET_QMGR_DISPATCHER_MODE
```

QMgr Dispatcher Mode, whether in interrupt (TRUE) or poll (FALSE) mode.

Note:

1. QMgr dispatcher can be run in both poll mode and interrupt mode in vxWorks platform.
2. In linux platform (with Linux\* kernel 2.4 and below), QMgr Dispatcher is NOT advisable to run in poll mode. Task scheduling in poll mode runs tasks sequentially (non-preemptive) that cause the performance rate to drop tremendously. Thus the performance rate displayed in Linux\* platform using poll mode is not accurate. Performance rate is more accurate when QMgr dispatcher is running in interrupt mode.

Definition at line **532** of file **IxCryptoAccCodelet.h**.

```
#define IX_CRYPTOACC_CODELET_QMGR_DISPATCHER_PRIORITY
```

Recommended priority of queue manager dispatch loop.

Definition at line **384** of file **IxCryptoAccCodelet.h**.

```
#define IX_CRYPTOACC_CODELET_QMGR_DISPATCHER_THREAD_STACK_SIZE
```

Recommended stack size for queue manager dispatcher thread.

Definition at line **394** of file **IxCryptoAccCodelet.h**.

```
#define IX_CRYPTOACC_CODELET_REGISTER_WAIT_TIME
```

The codelet register wait time (in ms) in a for loop.

Definition at line **416** of file **IxCryptoAccCodelet.h**.

```
#define IX_CRYPTOACC_CODELET_XSCALE_TICK
```

The XScale tick is 66 MHz. The ixOsaiOsIxp400TimestampResolutionGet() function returns 66666666, thus need to divide by a million.

Definition at line **405** of file **IxCryptoAccCodelet.h**.

```
#define IX_CRYPTOACC_PKE_EAU_EXP_CONFIG_FE_MODE
```

Set the PKE EAU modular exponential configuration for fast exponent.

Definition at line **543** of file **IxCryptoAccCodelet.h**.

```
#define IX_CRYPTOACC_PKE_EAU_EXP_CONFIG_SE_MODE
```

Set the PKE EAU modular exponential configuration for short exponent.

Definition at line **553** of file **IxCryptoAccCodelet.h**.

```
#define PERFORMANCE_WINDOW_SIZE
```

Number of crypto packets/requests need to be sent in for performance benchmarking (sampling size), 1 unit represents 1000 of requests (100 requests for EAU).

Definition at line **349** of file **IxCryptoAccCodelet.h**.

---

## Function Documentation

```
ixCryptoAccCodeletMain ( INT32  srvIndex,  
                        UINT32  dataBLenOrOprWLen  
                        )
```

This is the entry point function to the codelet to choose the service for the codelet and data/operand length to be used. This is the main function of the codelet where crypto contexts registration and crypto perform services are done. Based on the selected operation and length, data/operands are sent to cryptoAcc for processing.

### **Parameters:**

<i>srvIndex</i>	INT32 [in] – type of service to be invoked choose from one of the following pre-configured values.
-----------------	--

0	: Lists all set of services demonstrated.
1	: Encryption and Decryption using DES(ECB)
2	: Encryption and Decryption using DES(CBC)
3	: Encryption and Decryption using 3DES(ECB)
4	: Encryption and Decryption using 3DES(CBC)
5	: Encryption and Decryption using AES(ECB)
6	: Encryption and Decryption using AES(CBC)
7	: Encryption and Decryption using AES(CTR)
8	: Encryption and Decryption using AES-CCM
9	: Encryption and Decryption using ARC4 on XScale
10	: Encryption and Decryption using ARC4 on WAN-NPE
11	: Authentication calculation and verification using MD5
12	: Authentication calculation and verification using SHA1
13	: Authentication calculation and verification WEP CRC on XScale
14	: Authentication calculation and verification WEP CRC on WAN-NPE

15 : A combined mode of operation using DES(ECB) + MD5  
 16 : A combined mode of operation using DES(CBC) + MD5  
 17 : A combined mode of operation using DES(ECB) + SHA1  
 18 : A combined mode of operation using DES(CBC) + SHA1  
 19 : A combined mode of operation using 3DES(ECB) + MD5  
 20 : A combined mode of operation using 3DES(CBC) + MD5  
 21 : A combined mode of operation using 3DES(ECB) + SHA1  
 22 : A combined mode of operation using 3DES(CBC) + SHA1  
 23 : A combined mode of operation using AES(ECB) + MD5  
 24 : A combined mode of operation using AES(CBC) + MD5  
 25 : A combined mode of operation using AES(CTR) + MD5  
 26 : A combined mode of operation using AES(ECB) + SHA1  
 27 : A combined mode of operation using AES(CBC) + SHA1  
 28 : A combined mode of operation using AES(CTR) + SHA1  
 29 : A combined mode of operation using ARC4 + WEP CRC on XScale  
 30 : A combined mode of operation using ARC4 + WEP CRC on WAN-N  
 31 : PKE RNG pseudo-random number  
 32 : PKE SHA1 hashing operation  
 33 : PKE EAU modular exponential operation  
 34 : PKE EAU large number modular reduction operation  
 35 : PKE EAU large number addition operation  
 36 : PKE EAU large number subtraction operation  
 37 : PKE EAU large number multiplication operation

*dataBLenOrOprWLen* `UINT32` [in] – data length in bytes or operand length in words

**Returns:**

`IX_STATUS`

◊ `IX_SUCCESS` – codelet runs successfully

◊ `IX_FAIL` – codelet fails

# IX\_OSAL\_ATTRIBUTE\_PACKED Struct Reference

## [Intel (R) IXP400 Software Ethernet Database (IxEthDB) API]

The IEEE 802.3 Ethernet MAC address structure.

### Data Fields

UINT8 **macAddress** [IX\_IEEE803\_MAC\_ADDRESS\_SIZE]

---

### Detailed Description

The IEEE 802.3 Ethernet MAC address structure.

The data should be packed with bytes xx:xx:xx:xx:xx:xx

**Note:**

The data must be packed in network byte order.

Definition at line **236** of file **IxEthDB.h**.

---

The documentation for this struct was generated from the following file:

- **IxEthDB.h**

# IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig Struct Reference

## [Intel (R) IXP400 Software ATM Driver Access (IxAtmdAcc) Utopia Control API]

Utopia configuration.

### Data Fields

**IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtTxConfig\_ utTxConfig**  
*Tx config Utopia register.*

**IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtTxStatsConfig\_ utTxStatsConfig**  
*Tx stats config Utopia register.*

**IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtTxDefineIdle\_ utTxDefineIdle**  
*Tx idle cell config Utopia register.*

**IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtTxEnableFields\_ utTxEnableFields**  
*Tx enable Utopia register.*

**IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtTxTransTable0\_ utTxTransTable0**  
*Tx translation table.*

**IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtTxTransTable1\_ utTxTransTable1**  
*Tx translation table.*

**IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtTxTransTable2\_ utTxTransTable2**  
*Tx translation table.*

**IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtTxTransTable3\_ utTxTransTable3**  
*Tx translation table.*

**IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtTxTransTable4\_ utTxTransTable4**  
*Tx translation table.*

**IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtTxTransTable5\_ utTxTransTable5**  
*Tx translation table.*

**IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtRxConfig\_ utRxConfig**  
*Rx config Utopia register.*

**IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtRxStatsConfig\_ utRxStatsConfig**  
*Rx stats config Utopia register.*

**IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtRxDefineIdle\_ utRxDefineIdle**  
*Rx idle cell config Utopia register.*



<b>IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtRxEnableFields_</b>	<b>utRxEnableFields</b> <i>Rx enable Utopia register.</i>
<b>IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtRxTransTable0_</b>	<b>utRxTransTable0</b> <i>Rx translation table.</i>
<b>IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtRxTransTable1_</b>	<b>utRxTransTable1</b> <i>Rx translation table.</i>
<b>IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtRxTransTable2_</b>	<b>utRxTransTable2</b> <i>Rx translation table.</i>
<b>IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtRxTransTable3_</b>	<b>utRxTransTable3</b> <i>Rx translation table.</i>
<b>IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtRxTransTable4_</b>	<b>utRxTransTable4</b> <i>Rx translation table.</i>
<b>IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtRxTransTable5_</b>	<b>utRxTransTable5</b> <i>Rx translation table.</i>
<b>IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtSysConfig_</b>	<b>utSysConfig</b> <i>NPE debug config.</i>

---

## Detailed Description

Utopia configuration.

This structure is used to set the Utopia parameters

- contains the values of Utopia registers, to be set during initialisation
- contains debug commands for NPE, to be used during development steps

### *Note:*

- the exact description of all parameters is done in the Utopia reference documents.

Definition at line **979** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

---

## Field Documentation

```
struct IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtRxConfig_ IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::utRxConfig
```

Rx config Utopia register.

```
struct IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtRxDefineIdle_ IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::utRxDefineIdle
```

Rx idle cell config Utopia register.

```
struct IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtRxEnableFields_ IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::utRxEnableFields
```

Rx enable Utopia register.

```
struct IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtRxStatsConfig_ IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::utRxStatsConfig
```

Rx stats config Utopia register.

```
struct IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtRxTransTable0_ IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::utRxTransTable0
```

Rx translation table.

```
struct IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtRxTransTable1_ IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::utRxTransTable1
```

Rx translation table.

```
struct IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtRxTransTable2_ IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::utRxTransTable2
```

Rx translation table.

```
struct IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtRxTransTable3_ IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::utRxTransTable3
```

Rx translation table.

```
struct IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtRxTransTable4_ IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::utRxTransTable4
```

Rx translation table.

```
struct IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtRxTransTable5_ IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::utRxTransTable5
```

Rx translation table.

```
struct IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtSysConfig_ IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::utSysConfig
```

NPE debug config.

```
struct IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtTxConfig_ IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::utTxConfig
```

Tx config Utopia register.

```
struct IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtTxDefineIdle_ IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::utTxDefineIdle
```

Tx idle cell config Utopia register.

```
struct IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtTxEnableFields_ IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::utTxEnableFields
```

Tx enable Utopia register.

```
struct IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtTxStatsConfig_ IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::utTxStatsConfig
```

Tx stats config Utopia register.

```
struct IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtTxTransTable0_ IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::utTxTransTable0
```

Tx translation table.

```
struct IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtTxTransTable1_ IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::utTxTransTable1
```

Tx translation table.

```
struct IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtTxTransTable2_ IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::utTxTransTable2
```

Tx translation table.

```
struct IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtTxTransTable3_ IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::utTxTransTable3
```

Tx translation table.

```
struct IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtTxTransTable4_ IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::utTxTransTable4
```

Tx translation table.

```
struct IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtTxTransTable5_ IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::utTxTransTable5
```

Tx translation table.

---

The documentation for this struct was generated from the following file:

- **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**

# IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtRxConfig\_ Struct Reference

## [Intel (R) IXP400 Software ATM Driver Access (IxAtmdAcc) Utopia Control API]

Utopia Rx config Register.

### Data Fields

unsigned

int **rxInterface**:1

*[31] Utopia Receive Interface*

unsigned

int **rxMode**:1

*[30] Utopia Receive Mode*

unsigned

int **rxOctet**:1

*[29] Utopia Receive cell transfer protocol*

unsigned

int **rxParity**:1

*[28] Utopia Receive Parity Checking enable*

unsigned

int **rxEvenParity**:1

*[27] Utopia Receive Parity Mode*

- 1 – Check for Even Parity
- 0 – Check for Odd Parity.

unsigned

int **rxHEC**:1

*[26] RxHEC Header Error Check Mode*

unsigned

int **rxCOSET**:1

*[25] If enabled the HEC is Exclusive-OR'ed with the value 0x55 before being tested with the received HEC*

unsigned

int **rxHECpass**:1

*[24] Specifies if the incoming cell HEC byte should be transferred after optional processing to the*

*NPE2 Coprocessor Bus Interface or if it should be discarded*

unsigned

int **reserved\_1**:1

*[23] These bits are always 0*

unsigned

int **rxCellSize**:7

*[22:16] Receive cell size*

unsigned

int **rxHashEnbGFC**:1

*[15] Specifies if the VPI field [11:8]/GFC field should be included in the Hash data input or if the bits should be padded with 1Æb0*

unsigned

int **rxPreHash**:1

*[14] Enable Pre-hash value generation*

unsigned

int **reserved\_2**:1

*[13] These bits are always 0*

unsigned

int **rxAddrRange**:5

*[12:8] In ATM master, MPHY mode, this register specifies the upper limit of the PHY polling logical range*

unsigned

int **reserved\_3**:3

*[7-5] These bits are always 0 .*

unsigned

int **rxPHYAddr**:5

*[4:0] When configured as a slave in an MPHY system this register specifies the physical address of the PHY*

---

## Detailed Description

Utopia Rx config Register.

Definition at line **1316** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

---

## Field Documentation

```
unsigned int IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtRxConfig::reserved_1
```

[23] These bits are always 0

Definition at line **1359** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

```
unsigned int IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtRxConfig::reserved_2
```

[13] These bits are always 0

Definition at line **1376** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

```
unsigned int IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtRxConfig::reserved_3
```

[7–5] These bits are always 0 .

Definition at line **1383** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

```
unsigned int IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtRxConfig::rxAddrRange
```

[12:8] In ATM master, MPHY mode, this register specifies the upper limit of the PHY polling logical range

The number of active PHYs are RxAddrRange + 1.

Definition at line **1378** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

```
unsigned int IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtRxConfig::rxCellSize
```

[22:16] Receive cell size

Configures the receive cell size. Values between 52–64 are valid

Definition at line **1361** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

```
unsigned int IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtRxConfig::rxCOSET
```

[25] If enabled the HEC is Exclusive–ORÆed with the value 0x55 before being tested with the received HEC

- 1 – Enable HEC ExOR with value 0x55.
- 0 – Use generated HEC value.

Definition at line **1348** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

```
unsigned int IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtRxConfig::rxEvenParity
```

#### [27] Utopia Receive Parity Mode

- 1 – Check for Even Parity
- 0 – Check for Odd Parity.

Definition at line **1339** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

```
unsigned int IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtRxConfig_::rxHashEnbGFC
```

[15] Specifies if the VPI field [11:8]/GFC field should be included in the Hash data input or if the bits should be padded with 1Æb0

- 1 – VPI [11:8]/GFC field valid and used in Hash residue calculation.
- 0 – VPI [11:8]/GFC field padded with 1Æb0

Definition at line **1364** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

```
unsigned int IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtRxConfig_::rxHEC
```

#### [26] RxHEC Header Error Check Mode

Enables/disables cell header error checking on the received cell header.

- 1 – HEC checking enabled
- 0 – HEC checking disabled

Definition at line **1343** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

```
unsigned int IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtRxConfig_::rxHECpass
```

[24] Specifies if the incoming cell HEC byte should be transferred after optional processing to the NPE2 Coprocessor Bus Interface or if it should be discarded

- 1 – HEC maintained 53-byte/UDC cell sent to NPE2.
- 0 – HEC discarded 52-byte/UDC cell sent to NPE2 coprocessor.

Definition at line **1353** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

```
unsigned int IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtRxConfig_::rxInterface
```

#### [31] Utopia Receive Interface

The following encoding is used to set the Utopia Receive interface as ATM master or PHY slave:

- 1 – PHY



- 0 – ATM

Definition at line **1319** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

```
unsigned int IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtRxConfig_::rxMode
```

[30] Utopia Receive Mode

The following encoding is used to set the Utopia Receive mode to SPHY or MPHY:

- 1 – SPHY
- 0 – MPHY

Definition at line **1324** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

```
unsigned int IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtRxConfig_::rxOctet
```

[29] Utopia Receive cell transfer protocol

Used to set the Utopia cell transfer protocol to Octet–level handshaking. Note this is only applicable in SPHY mode.

- 1 – Octet–handshaking enabled
- 0 – Cell–handshaking enabled

Definition at line **1329** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

```
unsigned int IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtRxConfig_::rxParity
```

[28] Utopia Receive Parity Checking enable

- 1 – Parity checking enabled
- 0 – Parity checking disabled

Definition at line **1335** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

```
unsigned int IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtRxConfig_::rxPHYAddr
```

[4:0] When configured as a slave in an MPHY system this register specifies the physical address of the PHY

Definition at line **1384** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

```
unsigned int IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtRxConfig_::rxPreHash
```

[14] Enable Pre-hash value generation

Specifies if the incoming cell data should be pre-hashed to allow VPI/VCI header look-up in a hash table.

- 1 – Pre-hashing enabled
- 0 – Pre-hashing disabled

Definition at line **1370** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

---

The documentation for this struct was generated from the following file:

- **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**

# IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtRxDefinIdle\_ Struct Reference

## [Intel (R) IXP400 Software ATM Driver Access (IxAtmdAcc) Utopia Control API]

Utopia Rx idle cells config Register.

### Data Fields

unsigned int **vpi**:12

*[31:20] ATM VPI [11:0] OR GFC [3:0] and VPI [7:0]*

- *Note: if VCIdleRxGFC is set to 0 the GFC field is ignored in test*

unsigned int **vci**:16

*[19:4] ATM VCI [15:0]*

unsigned int **pti**:3

*[3:1] ATM PTI PTI [2:0]*

- *Note: if VCIdleRxPTI is set to 0 the PTI field is ignored in test.*

unsigned int **clp**:1

*[0] ATM CLP [0]*

- *Note: if VCIdleRxCLP is set to 0 the CLP field is ignored in test.*

---

## Detailed Description

Utopia Rx idle cells config Register.

Definition at line **1418** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

---

## Field Documentation

unsigned int IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtRxDefineIdle\_::clp

[0] ATM CLP [0]

- Note: if VCIdleRxCLP is set to 0 the CLP field is ignored in test.

Definition at line **1429** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

unsigned int IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtRxDefineIdle\_::pti

[3:1] ATM PTI PTI [2:0]

- Note: if VCIdleRxPTI is set to 0 the PTI field is ignored in test.

Definition at line **1426** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

unsigned int IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtRxDefineIdle\_::vci

[19:4] ATM VCI [15:0]

Definition at line **1424** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

unsigned int IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtRxDefineIdle\_::vpi

[31:20] ATM VPI [11:0] OR GFC [3:0] and VPI [7:0]

- Note: if VCIdleRxGFC is set to 0 the GFC field is ignored in test

Definition at line **1421** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

---

The documentation for this struct was generated from the following file:

- **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**

# IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtRxEnableFields\_ Struct Reference

## [Intel (R) IXP400 Software ATM Driver Access (IxAtmdAcc) Utopia Control API]

Utopia Rx enable Register.

### Data Fields

unsigned

int **defineRxIdleGFC**:1

*[31] This register is used to include or exclude the GFC field of the ATM header when testing for Idle cells*

unsigned

int **defineRxIdlePTI**:1

*[30] This register is used to include or exclude the PTI field of the ATM header when testing for Idle cells*

unsigned

int **defineRxIdleCLP**:1

*[29] This register is used to include or exclude the CLP field of the ATM header when testing for Idle cells*

unsigned

int **phyStatsRxEnb**:1

*[28] This register is used to enable or disable ATM statistics gathering based on the specified PHY address as defined in RxStatsConfig register*

unsigned

int **vcStatsRxEnb**:1

*[27] This register is used to enable or disable ATM statistics gathering based on a specific VPI/VCI address*

unsigned

int **vcStatsRxGFC**:1

*[26] This register is used to include or exclude the GFC field of the ATM header when ATM VPI/VCI statistics are enabled*

unsigned

int **vcStatsRxPTI**:1

*[25] This register is used to include or exclude the PTI field of the ATM header when ATM VPI/VCI statistics are enabled*

unsigned

int **vcStatsRxCLP**:1

*[24] This register is used to include or exclude the CLP field of the ATM header when ATM VPI/VCI statistics are enabled*

unsigned

int **discardHecErr**:1

*[23] Discard cells with an invalid HEC*

unsigned

int **discardParErr**:1

*[22] Discard cells containing parity errors*

unsigned

int **discardIdle**:1

*[21] Discard Idle Cells based on DefineIdle register values*

- 1 – Discard IDLE cells
- 0 – IDLE cells passed

unsigned

int **enbHecErrCnt**:1

*[20] Enable Receive HEC Error Count*

unsigned

int **enbParErrCnt**:1

*[19] Enable Parity Error Count*

- 1 – Enable count of received cells containing Parity errors
- 0 – No count is maintained

unsigned

int **enbIdleCellCnt**:1

*[18] Enable Receive Idle Cell Count*

unsigned

int **enbSizeErrCnt**:1

*[17] Enable Receive Size Error Count*

unsigned

int **enbRxCellCnt**:1

*[16] Enable Receive Valid Cell Count of non-idle/non-error cells*

unsigned

int **reserved\_1**:3

*[15:13] These bits are always 0*

unsigned

int **rxCellOvrInt**:1

*[12] Enable CBI Utopia Receive Status Condition if the RxCellCount register overflows*

unsigned

int **invalidHecOvrInt**:1

*[11] Enable CBI Receive Status Condition if the InvalidHecCount register overflows*

unsigned

int **invalidParOvrInt**:1

*[10] Enable CBI Receive Status Condition if the InvalidParCount register overflows*

- 1 – CBI Receive Condition asserted

unsigned

int **invalidSizeOvrInt**:1

*[9] Enable CBI Receive Status Condition if the InvalidSizeCount register overflows*

unsigned

int **rxIdleOvrInt**:1

*[8] Enable CBI Receive Status Condition if the RxIdleCount overflows*

unsigned

int **reserved\_2**:3

*[7:5] These bits are always 0*

unsigned

int **rxAddrMask**:5

*[4:0] This register is used as a mask to allow the user to increase the PHY receive address range*

---

## Detailed Description

Utopia Rx enable Register.

Definition at line **1438** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

---

## Field Documentation

```
unsigned int IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtRxEnableFields_::defineRxIdleCLP
```

[29] This register is used to include or exclude the CLP field of the ATM header when testing for Idle cells

- 1 – CLP field is valid.
- 0 – CLP field ignored.

Definition at line **1451** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

```
unsigned int IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtRxEnableFields_::defineRxIdleGFC
```

[31] This register is used to include or exclude the GFC field of the ATM header when testing for Idle cells

- 1 – GFC field is valid.
- 0 – GFC field ignored.

Definition at line **1441** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

```
unsigned int IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtRxEnableFields_::defineRxIdlePTI
```

[30] This register is used to include or exclude the PTI field of the ATM header when testing for Idle cells

- 1 – PTI field is valid.
- 0 – PTI field ignored.

Definition at line **1446** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

```
unsigned int IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtRxEnableFields_::discardHecErr
```

[23] Discard cells with an invalid HEC

- 1 – Discard cells with HEC errors
- 0 – Cells with HEC errors are passed

Definition at line **1483** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

```
unsigned int IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtRxEnableFields_::discardIdle
```

[21] Discard Idle Cells based on DefineIdle register values

- 1 – Discard IDLE cells
- 0 – IDLE cells passed

Definition at line **1491** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

```
unsigned int IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtRxEnableFields_::discardParErr
```

[22] Discard cells containing parity errors

- 1 – Discard cells with parity errors
- 0 – Cells with parity errors are passed

Definition at line **1487** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.



unsigned int IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtrxEnableFields\_::enbHecErrCnt

[20] Enable Receive HEC Error Count

- 1 – Enable count of received cells containing HEC errors
- 0 – No count is maintained.

Definition at line **1495** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

unsigned int IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtrxEnableFields\_::enbIdleCellCnt

[18] Enable Receive Idle Cell Count

- 1 – Enable count of Idle cells received.
- 0 – No count is maintained.

Definition at line **1503** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

unsigned int IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtrxEnableFields\_::enbParErrCnt

[19] Enable Parity Error Count

- 1 – Enable count of received cells containing Parity errors
- 0 – No count is maintained

Definition at line **1499** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

unsigned int IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtrxEnableFields\_::enbRxCellCnt

[16] Enable Receive Valid Cell Count of non-idle/non-error cells

- 1 – Enable count of valid cells received – non-idle/non-error
- 0 – No count is maintained.

Definition at line **1511** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

unsigned int IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtrxEnableFields\_::enbSizeErrCnt

[17] Enable Receive Size Error Count

- 1 – Enable count of received cells of incorrect size

- 0 – No count is maintained.

Definition at line **1507** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

```
unsigned int IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtrxEnableFields_::invalidHecOvrInt
```

[11] Enable CBI Receive Status Condition if the InvalidHecCount register overflows

- 1 – CBI Receive Condition asserted.
- 0 – No CBI Receive Condition asserted

Definition at line **1522** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

```
unsigned int IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtrxEnableFields_::invalidParOvrInt
```

[10] Enable CBI Receive Status Condition if the InvalidParCount register overflows

- 1 – CBI Receive Condition asserted
- 0 – No CBI Receive Condition asserted

Definition at line **1527** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

```
unsigned int IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtrxEnableFields_::invalidSizeOvrInt
```

[9] Enable CBI Receive Status Condition if the InvalidSizeCount register overflows

- 1 – CBI Receive Status Condition asserted.
- 0 – No CBI Receive Status asserted

Definition at line **1532** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

```
unsigned int IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtrxEnableFields_::phyStatsRxEnb
```

[28] This register is used to enable or disable ATM statistics gathering based on the specified PHY address as defined in RxStatsConfig register

- 1 – Enable statistics for specified receive PHY address.
- 0 – Disable statistics for specified receive PHY address.

Definition at line **1456** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

```
unsigned int IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtrxEnableFields_::reserved_1
```

[15:13] These bits are always 0

Definition at line **1515** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

```
unsigned int IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtRxEnableFields_::reserved_2
```

[7:5] These bits are always 0

Definition at line **1541** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

```
unsigned int IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtRxEnableFields_::rxAddrMask
```

[4:0] This register is used as a mask to allow the user to increase the PHY receive address range

The register should be programmed with the address-range limit, i.e. if set to 0x3 the address range increases to a maximum of 4 addresses.

Definition at line **1543** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

```
unsigned int IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtRxEnableFields_::rxCellOvrInt
```

[12] Enable CBI Utopia Receive Status Condition if the RxCellCount register overflows

- 1 – CBI Receive Status asserted.
- 0 – No CBI Receive Status asserted.

Definition at line **1517** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

```
unsigned int IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtRxEnableFields_::rxIdleOvrInt
```

[8] Enable CBI Receive Status Condition if the RxIdleCount overflows

- 1 – CBI Receive Condition asserted.
- 0 – No CBI Receive Condition asserted

Definition at line **1537** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

```
unsigned int IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtRxEnableFields_::vcStatsRxCLP
```

[24] This register is used to include or exclude the CLP field of the ATM header when ATM VPI/VCI statistics are enabled

- 1 – CLP field is valid.
- 0 – CLP field ignored.

Definition at line **1478** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

```
unsigned int IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtrxEnableFields_::vcStatsRxEnb
```

[27] This register is used to enable or disable ATM statistics gathering based on a specific VPI/VCI address

- 1 – Enable statistics for specified VPI/VCI address.
- 0 – Disable statistics for specified VPI/VCI address.

Definition at line **1462** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

```
unsigned int IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtrxEnableFields_::vcStatsRxGFC
```

[26] This register is used to include or exclude the GFC field of the ATM header when ATM VPI/VCI statistics are enabled

GFC is only available at the UNI and uses the first 4-bits of the VPI field.

- 1 – GFC field is valid.
- 0 – GFC field ignored.

Definition at line **1467** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

```
unsigned int IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtrxEnableFields_::vcStatsRxPTI
```

[25] This register is used to include or exclude the PTI field of the ATM header when ATM VPI/VCI statistics are enabled

- 1 – PTI field is valid.
- 0 – PTI field ignored.

Definition at line **1473** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

---

The documentation for this struct was generated from the following file:

- **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**

# IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtRxStatsConfig\_ Struct Reference

## [Intel (R) IXP400 Software ATM Driver Access (IxAtmdAcc) Utopia Control API]

Utopia Rx stats config Register.

### Data Fields

unsigned int **vpi**:12

*[31:20] ATM VPI VPI [11:0] OR GFC [3:0] and VPI [7:0]*

- *Note: if VCStatsRxGFC is set to 0 the GFC field is ignored in test*

unsigned int **vci**:16

*[19:4] VCI [15:0] or PHY Address [4]*

unsigned int **pti**:3

*[3:1] PTI [2:0] or or PHY Address [3:1]*

- *Note: if VCStatsRxPTI is set to 0 the PTI field is ignored in test*

unsigned int **clp**:1

*[0] CLP [0] or PHY Address [0]*

- *Note: if VCStatsRxCLP is set to 0 the CLP field is ignored in test*

---

## Detailed Description

Utopia Rx stats config Register.

Definition at line **1394** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

---

## Field Documentation

unsigned int IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtRxStatsConfig\_::clp

[0] CLP [0] or PHY Address [0]

- Note: if VCStatsRxCLP is set to 0 the CLP field is ignored in test
- Note: if VCStatsRxEnb is set to 0 only the PHY port address is used for statistics gathering..

Definition at line **1407** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

unsigned int IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtRxStatsConfig\_::pti

[3:1] PTI [2:0] or or PHY Address [3:1]

- Note: if VCStatsRxPTI is set to 0 the PTI field is ignored in test
- Note: if VCStatsRxEnb is set to 0 only the PHY port address is used for statistics gathering..

Definition at line **1402** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

unsigned int IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtRxStatsConfig\_::vci

[19:4] VCI [15:0] or PHY Address [4]

Definition at line **1400** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

unsigned int IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtRxStatsConfig\_::vpi

[31:20] ATM VPI VPI [11:0] OR GFC [3:0] and VPI [7:0]

- Note: if VCStatsRxGFC is set to 0 the GFC field is ignored in test

Definition at line **1397** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

---

The documentation for this struct was generated from the following file:

- **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**

# IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtRxTransTable0\_ Struct Reference

## [Intel (R) IXP400 Software ATM Driver Access (IxAtmdAcc) Utopia Control API]

Utopia Rx translation table Register.

### Data Fields

- unsigned int **phy0**:5  
*[31–27] Rx Mapping value of logical phy 0*
- unsigned int **phy1**:5  
*[26–22] Rx Mapping value of logical phy 1*
- unsigned int **phy2**:5  
*[21–17] Rx Mapping value of logical phy 2*
- unsigned int **reserved\_1**:1  
*[16] These bits are always 0*
- unsigned int **phy3**:5  
*[15–11] Rx Mapping value of logical phy 3*
- unsigned int **phy4**:5  
*[10–6] Rx Mapping value of logical phy 4*
- unsigned int **phy5**:5  
*[5–1] Rx Mapping value of logical phy 5*
- unsigned int **reserved\_2**:1  
*[0] These bits are always 0*
- 

### Detailed Description

Utopia Rx translation table Register.

Definition at line 1554 of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

---

### Field Documentation

unsigned int IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtRxTransTable0\_::phy0

[31–27] Rx Mapping value of logical phy 0

Definition at line **1557** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

unsigned int IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtrxTransTable0\_::phy1

[26–22] Rx Mapping value of logical phy 1

Definition at line **1559** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

unsigned int IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtrxTransTable0\_::phy2

[21–17] Rx Mapping value of logical phy 2

Definition at line **1561** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

unsigned int IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtrxTransTable0\_::phy3

[15–11] Rx Mapping value of logical phy 3

Definition at line **1565** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

unsigned int IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtrxTransTable0\_::phy4

[10–6] Rx Mapping value of logical phy 4

Definition at line **1567** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

unsigned int IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtrxTransTable0\_::phy5

[5–1] Rx Mapping value of logical phy 5

Definition at line **1569** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

unsigned int IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtrxTransTable0\_::reserved\_1

[16] These bits are always 0

Definition at line **1563** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

unsigned int IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtrxTransTable0\_::reserved\_2



[0] These bits are always 0

Definition at line **1571** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

---

The documentation for this struct was generated from the following file:

- **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**

# IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtRxTransTable1\_ Struct Reference

## [Intel (R) IXP400 Software ATM Driver Access (IxAtmdAcc) Utopia Control API]

Utopia Rx translation table Register.

### Data Fields

- unsigned int **phy6**:5  
*[31–27] Rx Mapping value of logical phy 6*
- unsigned int **phy7**:5  
*[26–22] Rx Mapping value of logical phy 7*
- unsigned int **phy8**:5  
*[21–17] Rx Mapping value of logical phy 8*
- unsigned int **reserved\_1**:1  
*[16–0] These bits are always 0*
- unsigned int **phy9**:5  
*[15–11] Rx Mapping value of logical phy 3*
- unsigned int **phy10**:5  
*[10–6] Rx Mapping value of logical phy 4*
- unsigned int **phy11**:5  
*[5–1] Rx Mapping value of logical phy 5*
- unsigned int **reserved\_2**:1  
*[0] These bits are always 0*

---

## Detailed Description

Utopia Rx translation table Register.

Definition at line **1581** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

---

## Field Documentation

unsigned int IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtRxTransTable1\_::phy10

[10–6] Rx Mapping value of logical phy 4

Definition at line **1594** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

```
unsigned int IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtRxTransTable1_::phy11
```

[5–1] Rx Mapping value of logical phy 5

Definition at line **1596** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

```
unsigned int IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtRxTransTable1_::phy6
```

[31–27] Rx Mapping value of logical phy 6

Definition at line **1584** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

```
unsigned int IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtRxTransTable1_::phy7
```

[26–22] Rx Mapping value of logical phy 7

Definition at line **1586** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

```
unsigned int IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtRxTransTable1_::phy8
```

[21–17] Rx Mapping value of logical phy 8

Definition at line **1588** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

```
unsigned int IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtRxTransTable1_::phy9
```

[15–11] Rx Mapping value of logical phy 3

Definition at line **1592** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

```
unsigned int IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtRxTransTable1_::reserved_1
```

[16–0] These bits are always 0

Definition at line **1590** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

```
unsigned int IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtRxTransTable1_::reserved_2
```

[0] These bits are always 0

Definition at line **1598** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

---

The documentation for this struct was generated from the following file:

- **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**

# IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtRxTransTable2\_ Struct Reference

## [Intel (R) IXP400 Software ATM Driver Access (IxAtmdAcc) Utopia Control API]

Utopia Rx translation table Register.

### Data Fields

- unsigned int **phy12**:5  
*[31–27] Rx Mapping value of logical phy 6*
- unsigned int **phy13**:5  
*[26–22] Rx Mapping value of logical phy 7*
- unsigned int **phy14**:5  
*[21–17] Rx Mapping value of logical phy 8*
- unsigned int **reserved\_1**:1  
*[16–0] These bits are always 0*
- unsigned int **phy15**:5  
*[15–11] Rx Mapping value of logical phy 3*
- unsigned int **phy16**:5  
*[10–6] Rx Mapping value of logical phy 4*
- unsigned int **phy17**:5  
*[5–1] Rx Mapping value of logical phy 5*
- unsigned int **reserved\_2**:1  
*[0] These bits are always 0*

---

### Detailed Description

Utopia Rx translation table Register.

Definition at line **1608** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

---

### Field Documentation

unsigned int IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtRxTransTable2\_::phy12

[31–27] Rx Mapping value of logical phy 6

Definition at line **1611** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

```
unsigned int IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtRxTransTable2_::phy13
```

[26–22] Rx Mapping value of logical phy 7

Definition at line **1613** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

```
unsigned int IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtRxTransTable2_::phy14
```

[21–17] Rx Mapping value of logical phy 8

Definition at line **1615** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

```
unsigned int IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtRxTransTable2_::phy15
```

[15–11] Rx Mapping value of logical phy 3

Definition at line **1619** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

```
unsigned int IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtRxTransTable2_::phy16
```

[10–6] Rx Mapping value of logical phy 4

Definition at line **1621** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

```
unsigned int IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtRxTransTable2_::phy17
```

[5–1] Rx Mapping value of logical phy 5

Definition at line **1623** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

```
unsigned int IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtRxTransTable2_::reserved_1
```

[16–0] These bits are always 0

Definition at line **1617** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

```
unsigned int IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtRxTransTable2_::reserved_2
```

[0] These bits are always 0

Definition at line **1625** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

---

The documentation for this struct was generated from the following file:

- **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**

# IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtRxTransTable3\_ Struct Reference

## [Intel (R) IXP400 Software ATM Driver Access (IxAtmdAcc) Utopia Control API]

Utopia Rx translation table Register.

### Data Fields

- unsigned int **phy18**:5  
*[31–27] Rx Mapping value of logical phy 6*
- unsigned int **phy19**:5  
*[26–22] Rx Mapping value of logical phy 7*
- unsigned int **phy20**:5  
*[21–17] Rx Mapping value of logical phy 8*
- unsigned int **reserved\_1**:1  
*[16–0] These bits are always 0*
- unsigned int **phy21**:5  
*[15–11] Rx Mapping value of logical phy 3*
- unsigned int **phy22**:5  
*[10–6] Rx Mapping value of logical phy 4*
- unsigned int **phy23**:5  
*[5–1] Rx Mapping value of logical phy 5*
- unsigned int **reserved\_2**:1  
*[0] These bits are always 0*

---

### Detailed Description

Utopia Rx translation table Register.

Definition at line **1633** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

---

### Field Documentation

unsigned int IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtRxTransTable3\_::phy18



[31–27] Rx Mapping value of logical phy 6

Definition at line **1636** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

```
unsigned int IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtRxTransTable3_::phy19
```

[26–22] Rx Mapping value of logical phy 7

Definition at line **1638** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

```
unsigned int IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtRxTransTable3_::phy20
```

[21–17] Rx Mapping value of logical phy 8

Definition at line **1640** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

```
unsigned int IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtRxTransTable3_::phy21
```

[15–11] Rx Mapping value of logical phy 3

Definition at line **1644** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

```
unsigned int IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtRxTransTable3_::phy22
```

[10–6] Rx Mapping value of logical phy 4

Definition at line **1646** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

```
unsigned int IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtRxTransTable3_::phy23
```

[5–1] Rx Mapping value of logical phy 5

Definition at line **1648** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

```
unsigned int IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtRxTransTable3_::reserved_1
```

[16–0] These bits are always 0

Definition at line **1642** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

```
unsigned int IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtRxTransTable3_::reserved_2
```

[0] These bits are always 0

Definition at line **1650** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

---

The documentation for this struct was generated from the following file:

- **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**

# IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtRxTransTable4\_ Struct Reference

## [Intel (R) IXP400 Software ATM Driver Access (IxAtmdAcc) Utopia Control API]

Utopia Rx translation table Register.

### Data Fields

- unsigned int **phy24**:5  
*[31–27] Rx Mapping value of logical phy 6*
- unsigned int **phy25**:5  
*[26–22] Rx Mapping value of logical phy 7*
- unsigned int **phy26**:5  
*[21–17] Rx Mapping value of logical phy 8*
- unsigned int **reserved\_1**:1  
*[16–0] These bits are always 0*
- unsigned int **phy27**:5  
*[15–11] Rx Mapping value of logical phy 3*
- unsigned int **phy28**:5  
*[10–6] Rx Mapping value of logical phy 4*
- unsigned int **phy29**:5  
*[5–1] Rx Mapping value of logical phy 5*
- unsigned int **reserved\_2**:1  
*[0] These bits are always 0*

---

### Detailed Description

Utopia Rx translation table Register.

Definition at line **1658** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

---

### Field Documentation

unsigned int IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtRxTransTable4\_::phy24

[31–27] Rx Mapping value of logical phy 6

Definition at line **1661** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

unsigned int IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtRxTransTable4\_::phy25

[26–22] Rx Mapping value of logical phy 7

Definition at line **1663** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

unsigned int IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtRxTransTable4\_::phy26

[21–17] Rx Mapping value of logical phy 8

Definition at line **1665** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

unsigned int IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtRxTransTable4\_::phy27

[15–11] Rx Mapping value of logical phy 3

Definition at line **1669** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

unsigned int IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtRxTransTable4\_::phy28

[10–6] Rx Mapping value of logical phy 4

Definition at line **1671** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

unsigned int IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtRxTransTable4\_::phy29

[5–1] Rx Mapping value of logical phy 5

Definition at line **1673** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

unsigned int IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtRxTransTable4\_::reserved\_1

[16–0] These bits are always 0

Definition at line **1667** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

unsigned int IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtRxTransTable4\_::reserved\_2

[0] These bits are always 0

Definition at line **1675** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

---

The documentation for this struct was generated from the following file:

- **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**

# IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtRxTransTable5\_ Struct Reference

## [Intel (R) IXP400 Software ATM Driver Access (IxAtmdAcc) Utopia Control API]

Utopia Rx translation table Register.

### Data Fields

unsigned int **phy30**:5  
*[31–27] Rx Mapping value of logical phy 6*

unsigned int **reserved\_1**:27  
*[26–0] These bits are always 0*

---

### Detailed Description

Utopia Rx translation table Register.

Definition at line **1683** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

---

### Field Documentation

unsigned int IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtRxTransTable5\_::phy30

[31–27] Rx Mapping value of logical phy 6

Definition at line **1686** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

unsigned int IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtRxTransTable5\_::reserved\_1

[26–0] These bits are always 0

Definition at line **1688** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

---

The documentation for this struct was generated from the following file:

- **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**

# IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtSysConfig\_ Struct Reference

## [Intel (R) IXP400 Software ATM Driver Access (IxAtmdAcc) Utopia Control API]

NPE setup Register.

### Data Fields

unsigned int **reserved\_1**:2

*[31–30] These bits are always 0*

unsigned int **txEnbFSM**:1

*[29] Enables the operation of the Utopia Transmit FSM*

- 1 – FSM enabled
- 0 – FSM inactive

unsigned int **rxEnbFSM**:1

*[28] Enables the operation of the Utopia Receive FSM*

- 1 – FSM enabled
- 0 – FSM inactive

unsigned int **disablePins**:1

*[27] Disable Utopia interface I/O pins forcing the signals to an inactive state*

unsigned int **tstLoop**:1

*[26] Test Loop Back Enable*

unsigned int **txReset**:1

*[25] Resets the Utopia Coprocessor transmit module to a known state*

unsigned int **rxReset**:1

*[24] Resets the Utopia Coprocessor receive module to a known state*

unsigned int **reserved\_2**:24

*[23–0] These bits are always 0*

## Detailed Description

NPE setup Register.

Definition at line **1697** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

---

## Field Documentation

unsigned int IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtSysConfig\_::disablePins

[27] Disable Utopia interface I/O pins forcing the signals to an inactive state

Note that this bit is set on reset and must be de-asserted

- 0 – Normal data transfer
- 1 – Utopia interface pins are forced inactive

Definition at line **1709** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

unsigned int IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtSysConfig\_::reserved\_1

[31–30] These bits are always 0

Definition at line **1700** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

unsigned int IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtSysConfig\_::reserved\_2

[23–0] These bits are always 0

Definition at line **1736** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

unsigned int IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtSysConfig\_::rxEnbFSM

[28] Enables the operation of the Utopia Receive FSM

- 1 – FSM enabled
- 0 – FSM inactive

Definition at line **1705** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

unsigned int IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtSysConfig\_::rxReset

[24] Resets the Utopia Coprocessor receive module to a known state



- Note: All receive configuration and status registers will be reset to their reset values.
- 0 – Normal operating mode
- 1 – Reset receive modules

Definition at line **1729** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

```
unsigned int IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtSysConfig_::tstLoop
```

[26] Test Loop Back Enable

- Note: For loop back to function RxMode and Tx Mode must both be set to single PHY mode.
- 0 – Loop back
- 1 – Normal operating mode

Definition at line **1715** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

```
unsigned int IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtSysConfig_::txEnbFSM
```

[29] Enables the operation of the Utopia Transmit FSM

- 1 – FSM enabled
- 0 – FSM inactive

Definition at line **1701** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

```
unsigned int IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtSysConfig_::txReset
```

[25] Resets the Utopia Coprocessor transmit module to a known state

- Note: All transmit configuration and status registers will be reset to their reset values.
- 0 – Normal operating mode,
- 1 – Reset transmit modules

Definition at line **1722** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

---

The documentation for this struct was generated from the following file:

- **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**

# IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtTxConfig\_ Struct Reference

## [Intel (R) IXP400 Software ATM Driver Access (IxAtmdAcc) Utopia Control API]

Utopia Tx Config Register.

### Data Fields

unsigned

int **reserved\_1**:1

*[31] These bits are always 0.*

unsigned

int **txInterface**:1

*[30] Utopia Transmit Interface*

unsigned

int **txMode**:1

*[29] Utopia Transmit Mode*

unsigned

int **txOctet**:1

*[28] Utopia Transmit cell transfer protocol*

unsigned

int **txParity**:1

*[27] Utopia Transmit parity enabled when set*

unsigned

int **txEvenParity**:1

*[26] Utopia Transmit Parity Mode*

- 1 – Even Parity Generated

unsigned

int **txHEC**:1

*[25] Header Error Check Insertion Mode*

unsigned

int **txCOSET**:1

*[24] If enabled the HEC is Exclusive-ORÆed with the value 0x55 before being presented on the Utopia bus*

unsigned  
int **reserved\_2**:1  
*[23] These bits are always 0*

unsigned  
int **txCellSize**:7  
*[22:16] Transmit expected cell size*

unsigned  
int **reserved\_3**:3  
*[15:13] These bits are always 0*

unsigned  
int **txAddrRange**:5  
*[12:8] When configured as an ATM master in MPHY mode this register specifies the upper limit of the PHY polling logical range*

unsigned  
int **reserved\_4**:3  
*[7:5] These bits are always 0*

unsigned  
int **txPHYAddr**:5  
*[4:0] When configured as a slave in an MPHY system this register specifies the physical address of the PHY*

---

## Detailed Description

Utopia Tx Config Register.

Definition at line **986** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

---

## Field Documentation

unsigned int IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtTxConfig::reserved\_1

[31] These bits are always 0.

Definition at line **989** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

unsigned int IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtTxConfig::reserved\_2

[23] These bits are always 0

Definition at line **1027** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

unsigned int IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtTxConfig\_::reserved\_3

[15:13] These bits are always 0

Definition at line **1032** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

unsigned int IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtTxConfig\_::reserved\_4

[7:5] These bits are always 0

Definition at line **1037** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

unsigned int IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtTxConfig\_::txAddrRange

[12:8] When configured as an ATM master in MPHY mode this register specifies the upper limit of the PHY polling logical range

The number of active PHYs are TxAddrRange + 1.

Definition at line **1033** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

unsigned int IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtTxConfig\_::txCellSize

[22:16] Transmit expected cell size

Configures the cell size for the transmit module: Values between 52–64 are valid.

Definition at line **1029** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

unsigned int IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtTxConfig\_::txCOSET

[24] If enabled the HEC is Exclusive–ORÆed with the value 0x55 before being presented on the Utopia bus

- 1 – Enable HEC ExOR with value 0x55
- 0 – Use generated HEC value.

Definition at line **1021** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

unsigned int IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtTxConfig\_::txEvenParity

[26] Utopia Transmit Parity Mode

- 1 – Even Parity Generated

- 0 – Odd Parity Generated.

Definition at line **1012** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

```
unsigned int IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtTxConfig_::txHEC
```

[25] Header Error Check Insertion Mode

Specifies if the transmit cell header check byte is calculated and inserted when set.

- 1 – Generate HEC.
- 0 – Disable HEC generation.

Definition at line **1016** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

```
unsigned int IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtTxConfig_::txInterface
```

[30] Utopia Transmit Interface

The following encoding is used to set the Utopia Transmit interface as ATM master or PHY slave:

- 1 – PHY
- 0 – ATM

Definition at line **990** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

```
unsigned int IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtTxConfig_::txMode
```

[29] Utopia Transmit Mode

The following encoding is used to set the Utopia Transmit mode to SPHY or MPHY:

- 1 – SPHY
- 0 – MPHY

Definition at line **996** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

```
unsigned int IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtTxConfig_::txOctet
```

[28] Utopia Transmit cell transfer protocol

Used to set the Utopia cell transfer protocol to Octet–level handshaking. Note this is only applicable in SPHY mode.

- 1 – Octet–handshaking enabled

- 0 – Cell–handshaking enabled

Definition at line **1001** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

```
unsigned int IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtTxConfig_::txParity
```

[27] Utopia Transmit parity enabled when set

TxEvenParity defines the parity format odd/even.

- 1 – Enable Parity generation.
- 0 – ut\_op\_prtly held low.

Definition at line **1007** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

```
unsigned int IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtTxConfig_::txPHYAddr
```

[4:0] When configured as a slave in an MPHY system this register specifies the physical address of the PHY

Definition at line **1038** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

---

The documentation for this struct was generated from the following file:

- **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**

# IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtTxDefinIdle\_ Struct Reference

## [Intel (R) IXP400 Software ATM Driver Access (IxAtmdAcc) Utopia Control API]

Utopia Tx idle cells Register.

### Data Fields

unsigned int **vpi**:12

*[31:20] ATM VPI [11:0] OR GFC [3:0] and VPI [7:0]*

- *Note: if VCIdleTxGFC is set to 0 the GFC field is ignored in test*

unsigned int **vci**:16

*[19:4] ATM VCI [15:0]*

unsigned int **pti**:3

*[3:1] ATM PTI PTI [2:0]*

- *Note: if VCIdleTxPTI is set to 0 the PTI field is ignored in test.*

unsigned int **clp**:1

*[0] ATM CLP [0]*

- *Note: if VCIdleTxCLP is set to 0 the CLP field is ignored in test.*

---

## Detailed Description

Utopia Tx idle cells Register.

Definition at line **1076** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

---

# Field Documentation

unsigned int IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtTxDefineIdle\_::clp

[0] ATM CLP [0]

- Note: if VCIdleTxCLP is set to 0 the CLP field is ignored in test.

Definition at line **1087** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

unsigned int IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtTxDefineIdle\_::pti

[3:1] ATM PTI PTI [2:0]

- Note: if VCIdleTxPTI is set to 0 the PTI field is ignored in test.

Definition at line **1084** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

unsigned int IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtTxDefineIdle\_::vci

[19:4] ATM VCI [15:0]

Definition at line **1082** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

unsigned int IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtTxDefineIdle\_::vpi

[31:20] ATM VPI [11:0] OR GFC [3:0] and VPI [7:0]

- Note: if VCIdleTxGFC is set to 0 the GFC field is ignored in test

Definition at line **1079** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

---

The documentation for this struct was generated from the following file:

- **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**



# IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtTxEnableFields\_ Struct Reference

## [Intel (R) IXP400 Software ATM Driver Access (IxAtmdAcc) Utopia Control API]

Utopia Tx ienable fields Register.

### Data Fields

- unsigned int **defineTxIdleGFC**:1  
*[31] This register is used to include or exclude the GFC field of the ATM header when testing for Idle cells*
- unsigned int **defineTxIdlePTI**:1  
*[30] This register is used to include or exclude the PTI field of the ATM header when testing for Idle cells*
- unsigned int **defineTxIdleCLP**:1  
*[29] This register is used to include or exclude the CLP field of the ATM header when testing for Idle cells*
- unsigned int **phyStatsTxEnb**:1  
*[28] This register is used to enable or disable ATM statistics gathering based on the specified PHY address as defined in TxStatsConfig register*
- unsigned int **vcStatsTxEnb**:1  
*[27] This register is used to change the ATM statistics—gathering mode from the specified logical PHY address to a specific VPI/VCI address*
- unsigned int **vcStatsTxGFC**:1  
*[26] This register is used to include or exclude the GFC field of the ATM header when ATM VPI/VCI statistics are enabled*
- unsigned int **vcStatsTxPTI**:1  
*[25] This register is used to include or exclude the PTI field of the ATM header when ATM VPI/VCI statistics are enabled*
- unsigned int **vcStatsTxCLP**:1  
*[24] This register is used to include or exclude the CLP field of the ATM header when ATM VPI/VCI statistics are enabled*
- unsigned int **reserved\_1**:3  
*[23–21] These bits are always 0*
- unsigned int **txPollStsInt**:1  
*[20] Enable the assertion of the ucp\_tx\_poll\_sts condition where there is a change in*

*polling status*

unsigned int **txCellOvrInt**:1

*[19] Enable TxCellCount overflow CBI Transmit Status condition assertion*

unsigned int **txIdleCellOvrInt**:1

*[18] Enable TxIdleCellCount overflow Transmit Status Condition*

- 1 – If TxIdleCellCountOvr is set assert the Transmit Status Condition
- 0 – No CBI Transmit Status condition assertion..

unsigned int **enbIdleCellCnt**:1

*[17] Enable Transmit Idle Cell Count*

unsigned int **enbTxCellCnt**:1

*[16] Enable Transmit Valid Cell Count of non-idle/non-error cells*

- 1 – Enable count of valid cells transmitted– non-idle/non-error
- 0 – No count is maintained.

unsigned int **reserved\_2**:16

*[15:0] These bits are always 0*

---

## Detailed Description

Utopia Tx ienable fields Register.

Definition at line **1098** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

---

## Field Documentation

unsigned int IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtTxEnableFields\_::defineTxIdleCLP

[29] This register is used to include or exclude the CLP field of the ATM header when testing for Idle cells

- 1 – CLP field is valid.
- 0 – CLP field ignored.

Definition at line **1111** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

unsigned int IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtTxEnableFields\_::defineTxIdleGFC

[31] This register is used to include or exclude the GFC field of the ATM header when testing for Idle cells

- 1 – GFC field is valid.
- 0 – GFC field ignored.

Definition at line **1101** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

```
unsigned int IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtTxEnableFields_::defineTxIdlePTI
```

[30] This register is used to include or exclude the PTI field of the ATM header when testing for Idle cells

- 1 – PTI field is valid
- 0 – PTI field ignored.

Definition at line **1106** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

```
unsigned int IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtTxEnableFields_::enbIdleCellCnt
```

[17] Enable Transmit Idle Cell Count

- 1 – Enable count of Idle cells transmitted.
- 0 – No count is maintained.

Definition at line **1161** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

```
unsigned int IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtTxEnableFields_::enbTxCellCnt
```

[16] Enable Transmit Valid Cell Count of non-idle/non-error cells

- 1 – Enable count of valid cells transmitted–  
non-idle/non-error
- 0 – No count is maintained.

Definition at line **1165** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

```
unsigned int IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtTxEnableFields_::phyStatsTxEnb
```

[28] This register is used to enable or disable ATM statistics gathering based on the specified PHY address as defined in TxStatsConfig register

- 1 – Enable statistics for specified transmit PHY address.
- 0 – Disable statistics for specified transmit PHY address.

Definition at line **1116** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

unsigned int IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtTxEnableFields\_::reserved\_1

[23–21] These bits are always 0

Definition at line **1145** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

unsigned int IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtTxEnableFields\_::reserved\_2

[15:0] These bits are always 0

Definition at line **1169** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

unsigned int IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtTxEnableFields\_::txCellOvrInt

[19] Enable TxCellCount overflow CBI Transmit Status condition assertion

- 1 – If TxCellCountOvr is set assert the Transmit Status Condition.
- 0 – No CBI Transmit Status condition assertion

Definition at line **1152** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

unsigned int IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtTxEnableFields\_::txIdleCellOvrInt

[18] Enable TxIdleCellCount overflow Transmit Status Condition

- 1 – If TxIdleCellCountOvr is set assert the Transmit Status Condition
- 0 – No CBI Transmit Status condition assertion..

Definition at line **1157** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

unsigned int IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtTxEnableFields\_::txPollStsInt

[20] Enable the assertion of the ucp\_tx\_poll\_sts condition where there is a change in polling status

- 1 – ucp\_tx\_poll\_sts asserted whenever there is a change in status
- 0 – ucp\_tx\_poll\_sts asserted if ANY transmit PHY is available

Definition at line **1147** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

unsigned int IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtTxEnableFields\_::vcStatsTxCLP

[24] This register is used to include or exclude the CLP field of the ATM header when ATM VPI/VCI statistics are enabled

- 1 – CLP field is valid
- 0 – CLP field ignored.

Definition at line **1140** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

```
unsigned int IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtTxEnableFields_::vcStatsTxEnb
```

[27] This register is used to change the ATM statistics–gathering mode from the specified logical PHY address to a specific VPI/VCI address

- 1 – Enable statistics for specified VPI/VCI address.
- 0 – Disable statistics for specified VPI/VCI address

Definition at line **1122** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

```
unsigned int IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtTxEnableFields_::vcStatsTxGFC
```

[26] This register is used to include or exclude the GFC field of the ATM header when ATM VPI/VCI statistics are enabled

GFC is only available at the UNI and uses the first 4–bits of the VPI field.

- 1 – GFC field is valid
- 0 – GFC field ignored.

Definition at line **1128** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

```
unsigned int IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtTxEnableFields_::vcStatsTxPTI
```

[25] This register is used to include or exclude the PTI field of the ATM header when ATM VPI/VCI statistics are enabled

- 1 – PTI field is valid
- 0 – PTI field ignored.

Definition at line **1135** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

---

The documentation for this struct was generated from the following file:

- **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**

# IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtTxStatsConfig\_ Struct Reference

## [Intel (R) IXP400 Software ATM Driver Access (IxAtmdAcc) Utopia Control API]

Utopia Tx stats Register.

### Data Fields

unsigned int **vpi**:12

*[31:20] ATM VPI [11:0] OR GFC [3:0] and VPI [7:0]*

- *Note: if VCStatsTxGFC is set to 0 the GFC field is ignored in test*

unsigned int **vci**:16

*[19:4] ATM VCI [15:0] or PHY Address[4]*

unsigned int **pti**:3

*[3:1] ATM PTI [2:0] or PHY Address[3:1]*

- *Note: if VCStatsTxPTI is set to 0 the PTI field is ignored in test*

unsigned int **clp**:1

*[0] ATM CLP or PHY Address [0]*

- *Note: if VCStatsTxCLP is set to 0 the CLP field is ignored in test*

---

## Detailed Description

Utopia Tx stats Register.

Definition at line **1050** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

---

## Field Documentation

unsigned int IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtTxStatsConfig\_::clp

[0] ATM CLP or PHY Address [0]

- Note: if VCStatsTxCLP is set to 0 the CLP field is ignored in test
- Note: if VCStatsTxEnb is set to 0 only the transmit PHY port address as defined by this register is used for ATM statistics [4:0].

Definition at line **1063** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

unsigned int IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtTxStatsConfig\_::pti

[3:1] ATM PTI [2:0] or PHY Address[3:1]

- Note: if VCStatsTxPTI is set to 0 the PTI field is ignored in test
- Note: if VCStatsTxEnb is set to 0 only the transmit PHY port address as defined by this register is used for ATM statistics [4:0].

Definition at line **1058** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

unsigned int IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtTxStatsConfig\_::vci

[19:4] ATM VCI [15:0] or PHY Address[4]

Definition at line **1056** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

unsigned int IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtTxStatsConfig\_::vpi

[31:20] ATM VPI [11:0] OR GFC [3:0] and VPI [7:0]

- Note: if VCStatsTxGFC is set to 0 the GFC field is ignored in test

Definition at line **1053** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

---

The documentation for this struct was generated from the following file:

- **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**

# IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtTxTransTable0\_ Struct Reference

## [Intel (R) IXP400 Software ATM Driver Access (IxAtmdAcc) Utopia Control API]

Utopia Tx translation table Register.

### Data Fields

- unsigned int **phy0**:5  
*[31–27] Tx Mapping value of logical phy 0*
- unsigned int **phy1**:5  
*[26–22] Tx Mapping value of logical phy 1*
- unsigned int **phy2**:5  
*[21–17] Tx Mapping value of logical phy 2*
- unsigned int **reserved\_1**:1  
*[16] These bits are always 0.*
- unsigned int **phy3**:5  
*[15–11] Tx Mapping value of logical phy 3*
- unsigned int **phy4**:5  
*[10–6] Tx Mapping value of logical phy 4*
- unsigned int **phy5**:5  
*[5–1] Tx Mapping value of logical phy 5*
- unsigned int **reserved\_2**:1  
*[0] These bits are always 0*

---

### Detailed Description

Utopia Tx translation table Register.

Definition at line 1177 of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

---

### Field Documentation

unsigned int IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtTxTransTable0\_::phy0



[31–27] Tx Mapping value of logical phy 0

Definition at line **1180** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

```
unsigned int IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtTxTransTable0_::phy1
```

[26–22] Tx Mapping value of logical phy 1

Definition at line **1182** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

```
unsigned int IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtTxTransTable0_::phy2
```

[21–17] Tx Mapping value of logical phy 2

Definition at line **1184** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

```
unsigned int IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtTxTransTable0_::phy3
```

[15–11] Tx Mapping value of logical phy 3

Definition at line **1188** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

```
unsigned int IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtTxTransTable0_::phy4
```

[10–6] Tx Mapping value of logical phy 4

Definition at line **1190** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

```
unsigned int IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtTxTransTable0_::phy5
```

[5–1] Tx Mapping value of logical phy 5

Definition at line **1192** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

```
unsigned int IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtTxTransTable0_::reserved_1
```

[16] These bits are always 0.

Definition at line **1186** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

```
unsigned int IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtTxTransTable0_::reserved_2
```

[0] These bits are always 0

Definition at line **1194** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

---

The documentation for this struct was generated from the following file:

- **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**

# IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtTxTransTable1\_ Struct Reference

## [Intel (R) IXP400 Software ATM Driver Access (IxAtmdAcc) Utopia Control API]

Utopia Tx translation table Register.

### Data Fields

- unsigned int **phy6**:5  
*[31–27] Tx Mapping value of logical phy 6*
- unsigned int **phy7**:5  
*[26–22] Tx Mapping value of logical phy 7*
- unsigned int **phy8**:5  
*[21–17] Tx Mapping value of logical phy 8*
- unsigned int **reserved\_1**:1  
*[16–0] These bits are always 0*
- unsigned int **phy9**:5  
*[15–11] Tx Mapping value of logical phy 3*
- unsigned int **phy10**:5  
*[10–6] Tx Mapping value of logical phy 4*
- unsigned int **phy11**:5  
*[5–1] Tx Mapping value of logical phy 5*
- unsigned int **reserved\_2**:1  
*[0] These bits are always 0*

---

### Detailed Description

Utopia Tx translation table Register.

Definition at line **1202** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

---

### Field Documentation

unsigned int IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtTxTransTable1\_::phy10

[10–6] Tx Mapping value of logical phy 4

Definition at line **1215** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

```
unsigned int IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtTxTransTable1_::phy11
```

[5–1] Tx Mapping value of logical phy 5

Definition at line **1217** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

```
unsigned int IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtTxTransTable1_::phy6
```

[31–27] Tx Mapping value of logical phy 6

Definition at line **1205** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

```
unsigned int IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtTxTransTable1_::phy7
```

[26–22] Tx Mapping value of logical phy 7

Definition at line **1207** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

```
unsigned int IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtTxTransTable1_::phy8
```

[21–17] Tx Mapping value of logical phy 8

Definition at line **1209** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

```
unsigned int IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtTxTransTable1_::phy9
```

[15–11] Tx Mapping value of logical phy 3

Definition at line **1213** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

```
unsigned int IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtTxTransTable1_::reserved_1
```

[16–0] These bits are always 0

Definition at line **1211** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

```
unsigned int IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtTxTransTable1_::reserved_2
```

[0] These bits are always 0

Definition at line **1219** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

---

The documentation for this struct was generated from the following file:

- **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**

# IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtTxTransTable2\_ Struct Reference

## [Intel (R) IXP400 Software ATM Driver Access (IxAtmdAcc) Utopia Control API]

Utopia Tx translation table Register.

### Data Fields

- unsigned int **phy12**:5  
*[31–27] Tx Mapping value of logical phy 6*
- unsigned int **phy13**:5  
*[26–22] Tx Mapping value of logical phy 7*
- unsigned int **phy14**:5  
*[21–17] Tx Mapping value of logical phy 8*
- unsigned int **reserved\_1**:1  
*[16–0] These bits are always 0*
- unsigned int **phy15**:5  
*[15–11] Tx Mapping value of logical phy 3*
- unsigned int **phy16**:5  
*[10–6] Tx Mapping value of logical phy 4*
- unsigned int **phy17**:5  
*[5–1] Tx Mapping value of logical phy 5*
- unsigned int **reserved\_2**:1  
*[0] These bits are always 0*

---

### Detailed Description

Utopia Tx translation table Register.

Definition at line 1227 of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

---

### Field Documentation

unsigned int IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtTxTransTable2\_::phy12

[31–27] Tx Mapping value of logical phy 6

Definition at line **1230** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

```
unsigned int IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtTxTransTable2_::phy13
```

[26–22] Tx Mapping value of logical phy 7

Definition at line **1232** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

```
unsigned int IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtTxTransTable2_::phy14
```

[21–17] Tx Mapping value of logical phy 8

Definition at line **1234** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

```
unsigned int IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtTxTransTable2_::phy15
```

[15–11] Tx Mapping value of logical phy 3

Definition at line **1238** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

```
unsigned int IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtTxTransTable2_::phy16
```

[10–6] Tx Mapping value of logical phy 4

Definition at line **1240** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

```
unsigned int IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtTxTransTable2_::phy17
```

[5–1] Tx Mapping value of logical phy 5

Definition at line **1242** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

```
unsigned int IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtTxTransTable2_::reserved_1
```

[16–0] These bits are always 0

Definition at line **1236** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

```
unsigned int IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtTxTransTable2_::reserved_2
```

[0] These bits are always 0

Definition at line **1244** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

---

The documentation for this struct was generated from the following file:

- **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**



# IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtTxTransTable3\_ Struct Reference

## [Intel (R) IXP400 Software ATM Driver Access (IxAtmdAcc) Utopia Control API]

Utopia Tx translation table Register.

### Data Fields

- unsigned int **phy18**:5  
*[31–27] Tx Mapping value of logical phy 6*
- unsigned int **phy19**:5  
*[26–22] Tx Mapping value of logical phy 7*
- unsigned int **phy20**:5  
*[21–17] Tx Mapping value of logical phy 8*
- unsigned int **reserved\_1**:1  
*[16–0] These bits are always 0*
- unsigned int **phy21**:5  
*[15–11] Tx Mapping value of logical phy 3*
- unsigned int **phy22**:5  
*[10–6] Tx Mapping value of logical phy 4*
- unsigned int **phy23**:5  
*[5–1] Tx Mapping value of logical phy 5*
- unsigned int **reserved\_2**:1  
*[0] These bits are always 0*

---

## Detailed Description

Utopia Tx translation table Register.

Definition at line 1252 of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

---

## Field Documentation

unsigned int IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtTxTransTable3\_::phy18

[31–27] Tx Mapping value of logical phy 6

Definition at line **1255** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

```
unsigned int IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtTxTransTable3_::phy19
```

[26–22] Tx Mapping value of logical phy 7

Definition at line **1257** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

```
unsigned int IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtTxTransTable3_::phy20
```

[21–17] Tx Mapping value of logical phy 8

Definition at line **1259** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

```
unsigned int IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtTxTransTable3_::phy21
```

[15–11] Tx Mapping value of logical phy 3

Definition at line **1263** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

```
unsigned int IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtTxTransTable3_::phy22
```

[10–6] Tx Mapping value of logical phy 4

Definition at line **1265** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

```
unsigned int IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtTxTransTable3_::phy23
```

[5–1] Tx Mapping value of logical phy 5

Definition at line **1267** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

```
unsigned int IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtTxTransTable3_::reserved_1
```

[16–0] These bits are always 0

Definition at line **1261** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

```
unsigned int IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtTxTransTable3_::reserved_2
```

[0] These bits are always 0

Definition at line **1269** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

---

The documentation for this struct was generated from the following file:

- **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**

# IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtTxTransTable4\_ Struct Reference

## [Intel (R) IXP400 Software ATM Driver Access (IxAtmdAcc) Utopia Control API]

Utopia Tx translation table Register.

### Data Fields

- unsigned int **phy24**:5  
*[31–27] Tx Mapping value of logical phy 6*
- unsigned int **phy25**:5  
*[26–22] Tx Mapping value of logical phy 7*
- unsigned int **phy26**:5  
*[21–17] Tx Mapping value of logical phy 8*
- unsigned int **reserved\_1**:1  
*[16–0] These bits are always 0*
- unsigned int **phy27**:5  
*[15–11] Tx Mapping value of logical phy 3*
- unsigned int **phy28**:5  
*[10–6] Tx Mapping value of logical phy 4*
- unsigned int **phy29**:5  
*[5–1] Tx Mapping value of logical phy 5*
- unsigned int **reserved\_2**:1  
*[0] These bits are always 0*

---

### Detailed Description

Utopia Tx translation table Register.

Definition at line 1277 of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

---

### Field Documentation

unsigned int IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtTxTransTable4\_::phy24

[31–27] Tx Mapping value of logical phy 6

Definition at line **1280** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

```
unsigned int IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtTxTransTable4_::phy25
```

[26–22] Tx Mapping value of logical phy 7

Definition at line **1282** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

```
unsigned int IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtTxTransTable4_::phy26
```

[21–17] Tx Mapping value of logical phy 8

Definition at line **1284** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

```
unsigned int IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtTxTransTable4_::phy27
```

[15–11] Tx Mapping value of logical phy 3

Definition at line **1288** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

```
unsigned int IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtTxTransTable4_::phy28
```

[10–6] Tx Mapping value of logical phy 4

Definition at line **1290** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

```
unsigned int IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtTxTransTable4_::phy29
```

[5–1] Tx Mapping value of logical phy 5

Definition at line **1292** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

```
unsigned int IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtTxTransTable4_::reserved_1
```

[16–0] These bits are always 0

Definition at line **1286** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

```
unsigned int IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtTxTransTable4_::reserved_2
```

[0] These bits are always 0

Definition at line **1294** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

---

The documentation for this struct was generated from the following file:

- **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**

# IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtTxTransTable5\_ Struct Reference

## [Intel (R) IXP400 Software ATM Driver Access (IxAtmdAcc) Utopia Control API]

Utopia Tx translation table Register.

### Data Fields

unsigned int **phy30**:5  
*[31–27] Tx Mapping value of logical phy 6*

unsigned int **reserved\_1**:27  
*[26–0] These bits are always 0*

---

### Detailed Description

Utopia Tx translation table Register.

Definition at line **1302** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

---

### Field Documentation

unsigned int IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtTxTransTable5\_::phy30

[31–27] Tx Mapping value of logical phy 6

Definition at line **1305** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

unsigned int IxAtmdAccUtopiaConfig::UtTxTransTable5\_::reserved\_1

[26–0] These bits are always 0

Definition at line **1307** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

---

The documentation for this struct was generated from the following file:

- **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**

# IxAtmdAccUtopiaStatus Struct Reference

## [Intel (R) IXP400 Software ATM Driver Access (IxAtmdAcc) Utopia Control API]

Utopia status.

### Data Fields

unsigned int **utTxCellCount**  
*count of cells transmitted*

unsigned int **utTxIdleCellCount**  
*count of idle cells transmitted*

**IxAtmdAccUtopiaStatus::UtTxCellConditionStatus\_ utTxCellConditionStatus**  
*Tx cells condition status.*

unsigned int **utRxCellCount**  
*count of cell received*

unsigned int **utRxIdleCellCount**  
*count of idle cell received*

unsigned int **utRxInvalidHECount**  
*count of invalid cell received because of HEC errors*

unsigned int **utRxInvalidParCount**  
*count of invalid cell received because of parity errors*

unsigned int **utRxInvalidSizeCount**  
*count of invalid cell received because of cell size errors*

**IxAtmdAccUtopiaStatus::UtRxCellConditionStatus\_ utRxCellConditionStatus**  
*Rx cells condition status.*

---

### Detailed Description

Utopia status.

This structure is used to set/get the Utopia status parameters

- contains debug cell counters, to be accessed during a read operation



**Note:**

- the exact description of all parameters is done in the Utopia reference documents.

Definition at line **1753** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

---

## Field Documentation

```
struct IxAtmdAccUtopiaStatus::UtRxCellConditionStatus_  
IxAtmdAccUtopiaStatus::utRxCellConditionStatus
```

Rx cells condition status.

```
unsigned int IxAtmdAccUtopiaStatus::utRxCellCount
```

count of cell received

Definition at line **1794** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

```
unsigned int IxAtmdAccUtopiaStatus::utRxIdleCellCount
```

count of idle cell received

Definition at line **1795** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

```
unsigned int IxAtmdAccUtopiaStatus::utRxInvalidHECount
```

count of invalid cell received because of HEC errors

Definition at line **1796** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

```
unsigned int IxAtmdAccUtopiaStatus::utRxInvalidParCount
```

count of invalid cell received because of parity errors

Definition at line **1799** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

```
unsigned int IxAtmdAccUtopiaStatus::utRxInvalidSizeCount
```

count of invalid cell received because of cell size errors

Definition at line **1802** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

```
struct IxAtmdAccUtopiaStatus::UtTxCellConditionStatus_  
IxAtmdAccUtopiaStatus::utTxCellConditionStatus
```

Tx cells condition status.

```
unsigned int IxAtmdAccUtopiaStatus::utTxCellCount
```

count of cells transmitted

Definition at line **1756** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

```
unsigned int IxAtmdAccUtopiaStatus::utTxIdleCellCount
```

count of idle cells transmitted

Definition at line **1758** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

---

The documentation for this struct was generated from the following file:

- **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**

# IxAtmdAccUtopiaStatus::UtRxCellConditionStatus\_ Struct Reference

## [Intel (R) IXP400 Software ATM Driver Access (IxAtmdAcc) Utopia Control API]

Utopia Rx Status Register.

### Data Fields

unsigned int **reserved\_1**:3

*[31:29] These bits are always 0.*

unsigned int **rxCellCountOvr**:1

*[28] This bit is set if the RxCellCount register overflows*

unsigned int **invalidHecCountOvr**:1

*[27] This bit is set if the InvalidHecCount register overflows.*

unsigned int **invalidParCountOvr**:1

*[26] This bit is set if the InvalidParCount register overflows.*

unsigned int **invalidSizeCountOvr**:1

*[25] This bit is set if the InvalidSizeCount register overflows.*

unsigned int **rxIdleCountOvr**:1

*[24] This bit is set if the RxIdleCount register overflows.*

unsigned int **reserved\_2**:4

*[23:20] These bits are always 0*

unsigned int **rxFIFO2Underflow**:1

*[19] This bit is set if 64–byte Receive FIFO2 indicates a FIFO underflow error condition*

unsigned int **rxFIFO1Underflow**:1

*[18] This bit is set if 64–byte Receive FIFO1 indicates a FIFO underflow error condition*

unsigned int **rxFIFO2Overflow**:1

*[17] This bit is set if 64–byte Receive FIFO2 indicates a FIFO overflow error condition*

unsigned int **rxFIFO1Overflow**:1

*[16] This bit is set if 64–byte Receive FIFO1 indicates a FIFO overflow error condition*

unsigned int **reserved\_3**:16

*[15:0] These bits are always 0*

## Detailed Description

Utopia Rx Status Register.

Definition at line **1812** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

---

## Field Documentation

unsigned int IxAtmdAccUtopiaStatus::UtRxCellConditionStatus\_::invalidHecCountOvr

[27] This bit is set if the InvalidHecCount register overflows.

Definition at line **1817** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

unsigned int IxAtmdAccUtopiaStatus::UtRxCellConditionStatus\_::invalidParCountOvr

[26] This bit is set if the InvalidParCount register overflows.

Definition at line **1818** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

unsigned int IxAtmdAccUtopiaStatus::UtRxCellConditionStatus\_::invalidSizeCountOvr

[25] This bit is set if the InvalidSizeCount register overflows.

Definition at line **1819** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

unsigned int IxAtmdAccUtopiaStatus::UtRxCellConditionStatus\_::reserved\_1

[31:29] These bits are always 0.

Definition at line **1815** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

unsigned int IxAtmdAccUtopiaStatus::UtRxCellConditionStatus\_::reserved\_2

[23:20] These bits are always 0

Definition at line **1821** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

unsigned int IxAtmdAccUtopiaStatus::UtRxCellConditionStatus\_::reserved\_3

[15:0] These bits are always 0

Definition at line **1834** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

```
unsigned int IxAtmdAccUtopiaStatus::UtRxCellConditionStatus_::rxCellCountOvr
```

[28] This bit is set if the RxCellCount register overflows

Definition at line **1816** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

```
unsigned int IxAtmdAccUtopiaStatus::UtRxCellConditionStatus_::rxFIFO1Overflow
```

[16] This bit is set if 64–byte Receive FIFO1 indicates a FIFO overflow error condition

Definition at line **1831** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

```
unsigned int IxAtmdAccUtopiaStatus::UtRxCellConditionStatus_::rxFIFO1Underflow
```

[18] This bit is set if 64–byte Receive FIFO1 indicates a FIFO underflow error condition

Definition at line **1825** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

```
unsigned int IxAtmdAccUtopiaStatus::UtRxCellConditionStatus_::rxFIFO2Overflow
```

[17] This bit is set if 64–byte Receive FIFO2 indicates a FIFO overflow error condition

Definition at line **1828** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

```
unsigned int IxAtmdAccUtopiaStatus::UtRxCellConditionStatus_::rxFIFO2Underflow
```

[19] This bit is set if 64–byte Receive FIFO2 indicates a FIFO underflow error condition

Definition at line **1822** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

```
unsigned int IxAtmdAccUtopiaStatus::UtRxCellConditionStatus_::rxIdleCountOvr
```

[24] This bit is set if the RxIdleCount register overflows.

Definition at line **1820** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

---

The documentation for this struct was generated from the following file:

- **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**

# IxAtmdAccUtopiaStatus::UtTxCellConditionStatus\_ Struct Reference

## [Intel (R) IXP400 Software ATM Driver Access (IxAtmdAcc) Utopia Control API]

Utopia Tx Status Register.

### Data Fields

unsigned int **reserved\_1**:2

*[31:30] These bits are always 0*

unsigned int **txFIFO2Underflow**:1

*[29] This bit is set if 64-byte Transmit FIFO2 indicates a FIFO underflow error condition*

unsigned int **txFIFO1Underflow**:1

*[28] This bit is set if 64-byte Transmit FIFO1 indicates a FIFO underflow error condition*

unsigned int **txFIFO2Overflow**:1

*[27] This bit is set if 64-byte Transmit FIFO2 indicates a FIFO overflow error condition*

unsigned int **txFIFO1Overflow**:1

*[26] This bit is set if 64-byte Transmit FIFO1 indicates a FIFO overflow error condition*

unsigned int **txIdleCellCountOvr**:1

*[25] This bit is set if the TxIdleCellCount register overflows*

unsigned int **txCellCountOvr**:1

*[24] This bit is set if the TxCellCount register overflows*

unsigned int **reserved\_2**:24

*[23:0] These bits are always 0*

---

## Detailed Description

Utopia Tx Status Register.

Definition at line 1765 of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

---

## Field Documentation

unsigned int IxAtmdAccUtopiaStatus::UtTxCellConditionStatus\_::reserved\_1

[31:30] These bits are always 0

Definition at line **1768** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

```
unsigned int IxAtmdAccUtopiaStatus::UtTxCellConditionStatus_::reserved_2
```

[23:0] These bits are always 0

Definition at line **1791** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

```
unsigned int IxAtmdAccUtopiaStatus::UtTxCellConditionStatus_::txCellCountOvr
```

[24] This bit is set if the TxCellCount register overflows

Definition at line **1788** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

```
unsigned int IxAtmdAccUtopiaStatus::UtTxCellConditionStatus_::txFIFO1Overflow
```

[26] This bit is set if 64–byte Transmit FIFO1 indicates a FIFO overflow error condition

Definition at line **1781** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

```
unsigned int IxAtmdAccUtopiaStatus::UtTxCellConditionStatus_::txFIFO1Underflow
```

[28] This bit is set if 64–byte Transmit FIFO1 indicates a FIFO underflow error condition

Definition at line **1773** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

```
unsigned int IxAtmdAccUtopiaStatus::UtTxCellConditionStatus_::txFIFO2Overflow
```

[27] This bit is set if 64–byte Transmit FIFO2 indicates a FIFO overflow error condition

Definition at line **1777** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

```
unsigned int IxAtmdAccUtopiaStatus::UtTxCellConditionStatus_::txFIFO2Underflow
```

[29] This bit is set if 64–byte Transmit FIFO2 indicates a FIFO underflow error condition

Definition at line **1769** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

```
unsigned int IxAtmdAccUtopiaStatus::UtTxCellConditionStatus_::txIdleCellCountOvr
```

[25] This bit is set if the TxIdleCellCount register overflows

Definition at line **1785** of file **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**.

---

The documentation for this struct was generated from the following file:

- **IxAtmdAccCtrl.h**



# IxAtmmPortCfg Struct Reference

## [Intel (R) IXP400 Software ATM Manager (IxAtmm) API]

Structure contains port-specific information required to initialize IxAtmm, and specifically, the IXP400 UTOPIA Level-2 device.

### Data Fields

unsigned **reserved\_1**:11

*[31:21] Should be zero*

unsigned **UtopiaTxPhyAddr**:5

*[20:16] Address of the transmit (Tx) PHY for this port on the 5-bit UTOPIA Level-2 address bus*

unsigned **reserved\_2**:11

*[15:5] Should be zero*

unsigned **UtopiaRxPhyAddr**:5

*[4:0] Address of the receive (Rx) PHY for this port on the 5-bit UTOPIA Level-2 address bus*

---

### Detailed Description

Structure contains port-specific information required to initialize IxAtmm, and specifically, the IXP400 UTOPIA Level-2 device.

Definition at line **161** of file **IxAtmm.h**.

---

### Field Documentation

unsigned IxAtmmPortCfg::reserved\_1

*[31:21] Should be zero*

Definition at line **162** of file **IxAtmm.h**.

unsigned IxAtmmPortCfg::reserved\_2

*[15:5] Should be zero*

Definition at line **167** of file **IxAtmm.h**.

unsigned IxAtmmPortCfg::UtopiaRxPhyAddr

[4:0] Address of the receive (Rx) PHY for this port on the 5-bit UTOPIA Level-2 address bus

Definition at line **168** of file **IxAtmm.h**.

unsigned IxAtmmPortCfg::UtopiaTxPhyAddr

[20:16] Address of the transmit (Tx) PHY for this port on the 5-bit UTOPIA Level-2 address bus

Definition at line **163** of file **IxAtmm.h**.

---

The documentation for this struct was generated from the following file:

- **IxAtmm.h**

# IxAtmmVc Struct Reference

## [Intel (R) IXP400 Software ATM Manager (IxAtmm) API]

This structure describes the required attributes of a virtual connection.

### Data Fields

unsigned **vpi**  
*VPI value of this virtual connection.*

unsigned **vci**  
*VCI value of this virtual connection.*

**IxAtmmVcDirection direction**  
*VC direction.*

**IxAtmTrafficDescriptor trafficDesc**  
*Traffic descriptor of this virtual connection.*

---

### Detailed Description

This structure describes the required attributes of a virtual connection.

Definition at line **136** of file **IxAtmm.h**.

---

### Field Documentation

**IxAtmmVcDirection** IxAtmmVc::direction

VC direction.

Definition at line **139** of file **IxAtmm.h**.

**IxAtmTrafficDescriptor** IxAtmmVc::trafficDesc

Traffic descriptor of this virtual connection.

This structure is defined by the **Intel (R) IXP400 Software ATM Transmit Scheduler (IxAtmSch) API** component.

Definition at line **143** of file **IxAtmm.h**.

unsigned IxAtmmVc::vci

VCI value of this virtual connection.

Definition at line **138** of file **IxAtmm.h**.

unsigned IxAtmmVc::vpi

VPI value of this virtual connection.

Definition at line **137** of file **IxAtmm.h**.

---

The documentation for this struct was generated from the following file:

- **IxAtmm.h**

# IxAtmScheduleTable Struct Reference

## [Intel (R) IXP400 Software ATM Types (IxAtmTypes)]

This structure defines a schedule table which gives details on which data (from which VCs) should be transmitted for a forthcoming period of time for a particular port and the order in which that data should be transmitted.

### Data Fields

unsigned **tableSize**  
*Number of entries.*

unsigned **totalCellSlots**  
*Number of cells.*

**IxAtmScheduleTableEntry \* table**  
*Pointer to schedule entries.*

---

### Detailed Description

This structure defines a schedule table which gives details on which data (from which VCs) should be transmitted for a forthcoming period of time for a particular port and the order in which that data should be transmitted.

The schedule table consists of a series of entries each of which will schedule one or more cells from a particular registered VC. The total number of cells scheduled and the total number of entries in the table are also indicated.

Definition at line **355** of file **IxAtmTypes.h**.

---

### Field Documentation

**IxAtmScheduleTableEntry\*** IxAtmScheduleTable::table

Pointer to schedule entries.

Pointer to an array containing tableSize entries

Definition at line **368** of file **IxAtmTypes.h**.

unsigned IxAtmScheduleTable::tableSize

Number of entries.

Indicates the total number of entries in the table.

Definition at line **357** of file **IxAtmTypes.h**.

unsigned IxAtmScheduleTable::totalCellSlots

Number of cells.

Indicates the total number of ATM cells which are scheduled by all the entries in the table.

Definition at line **362** of file **IxAtmTypes.h**.

---

The documentation for this struct was generated from the following file:

- **IxAtmTypes.h**

# IxAtmScheduleTableEntry Struct Reference

## [Intel (R) IXP400 Software ATM Types (IxAtmTypes)]

ATM Schedule Table entry.

### Data Fields

**IxAtmConnId** **connId**

*connection Id*

unsigned int **numberOfCells**

*number of cells to transmit*

---

### Detailed Description

ATM Schedule Table entry.

This IxAtmScheduleTableEntry is used by an ATM scheduler to inform IxAtmdAcc about the data to transmit (in term of cells per VC)

This structure defines

- the number of cells to be transmitted (numberOfCells)
- the VC connection to be used for transmission (connId).

**Note:**

- When the connection Id value is IX\_ATM\_IDLE\_CELLS\_CONNID, the corresponding number of idle cells will be transmitted to the hardware.

Definition at line **323** of file **IxAtmTypes.h**.

---

### Field Documentation

**IxAtmConnId** IxAtmScheduleTableEntry::connId

connection Id

Identifier of VC from which cells are to be transmitted. When this value is IX\_ATM\_IDLE\_CELLS\_CONNID, this indicates that the system should transmit the specified number of idle cells. Unknown connIds result in the transmission of idle cells.

Definition at line **325** of file **IxAtmTypes.h**.

unsigned int IxAtmScheduleTableEntry::numberOfCells

number of cells to transmit

The number of contiguous cells to schedule from this VC at this point. The valid range is from 1 to *IX\_ATM\_SCHEDULETABLE\_MAXCELLS\_PER\_ENTRY*. This number can swap over mbufs and pdus. OverScheduling results in the transmission of idle cells.

Definition at line **333** of file **IxAtmTypes.h**.

---

The documentation for this struct was generated from the following file:

- **IxAtmTypes.h**



# IxAtmTrafficDescriptor Struct Reference

## [Intel (R) IXP400 Software ATM Types (IxAtmTypes)]

Structure describing an ATM traffic contract for a Virtual Connection (VC).

### Data Fields

**IxAtmServiceCategory atmService**

*ATM service category.*

UINT64 **pcr**

*Peak Cell Rate – cells per second.*

UINT64 **cdvt**

*Cell Delay Variation Tolerance – in nanoseconds.*

UINT64 **scr**

*Sustained Cell Rate – cells per second.*

UINT64 **mbs**

*Max Burst Size – cells.*

UINT64 **mcr**

*Minimum Cell Rate – cells per second.*

UINT64 **mfs**

*Max Frame Size – cells.*

---

### Detailed Description

Structure describing an ATM traffic contract for a Virtual Connection (VC).

Structure is used to specify the requested traffic contract for a VC to the IxAtmSch component using the **ixAtmSchVcModelSetup** interface.

These parameters are defined by the ATM forum working group (<http://www.atmforum.com>).

#### *Note:*

Typical values for a voice channel 64 Kbit/s

◇ atmService *IX\_ATM\_RTVBR*

◇ pcr 400 (include IP overhead, and AAL5 trailer)

◇ cdvt 5000000 (5 ms)

◇ scr = pcr

Typical values for a data channel 800 Kbit/s

- ◇ atmService *IX\_ATM\_UBR*
- ◇ pcr 1962 (include IP overhead, and AAL5 trailer)
- ◇ cdvt 5000000 (5 ms)

Definition at line **262** of file **IxAtmTypes.h**.

---

## Field Documentation

### **IxAtmServiceCategory** IxAtmTrafficDescriptor::atmService

ATM service category.

Definition at line **264** of file **IxAtmTypes.h**.

### UINT64 IxAtmTrafficDescriptor::cdvt

Cell Delay Variation Tolerance – in nanoseconds.

Definition at line **266** of file **IxAtmTypes.h**.

### UINT64 IxAtmTrafficDescriptor::mbs

Max Burst Size – cells.

Definition at line **268** of file **IxAtmTypes.h**.

### UINT64 IxAtmTrafficDescriptor::mcr

Minimum Cell Rate – cells per second.

Definition at line **269** of file **IxAtmTypes.h**.

### UINT64 IxAtmTrafficDescriptor::mfs

Max Frame Size – cells.

Definition at line **270** of file **IxAtmTypes.h**.

### UINT64 IxAtmTrafficDescriptor::pcr

Peak Cell Rate – cells per second.

Definition at line **265** of file **IxAtmTypes.h**.

UINT64 IxAtmTrafficDescriptor::scr

Sustained Cell Rate – cells per second.

Definition at line **267** of file **IxAtmTypes.h**.

---

The documentation for this struct was generated from the following file:

- **IxAtmTypes.h**

# IxCryptoAccAuthCtx Struct Reference

## [Intel (R) IXP400 Software Security (IxCryptoAcc) API]

Structure storing authentication configuration parameters required to perform security functionality.

### Data Fields

**IxCryptoAccAuthAlgo authAlgo**

*authentication algorithm – MD5, SHA1, WEP\_CRC*

**UINT32 authDigestLen**

*Digest length in bytes.*

**UINT32 authKeyLen**

*Hash key length in bytes.*

**UINT32 aadLen**

*Additional Authentication Data (AAD) length in bytes.*

```
union {  
    UINT8  authKey  
[IX_CRYPTO_ACC_MAX_AUTH_KEY_LENGTH]  
    UINT8  sha1Key  
[IX_CRYPTO_ACC_MAX_AUTH_KEY_LENGTH]  
    UINT8  md5Key  
[IX_CRYPTO_ACC_MAX_AUTH_KEY_LENGTH]  
}
```

**key**

*Hash key, key is not required for WEP\_CRC.*

---

## Detailed Description

Structure storing authentication configuration parameters required to perform security functionality.

Structure is used to specify the authentication context required for using the **Intel (R) IXP400 Software Security (IxCryptoAcc) API** interface.

Definition at line **516** of file **IxCryptoAcc.h**.

---

# Field Documentation

UINT32 IxCryptoAccAuthCtx::aadLen

Additional Authentication Data (AAD) length in bytes.

This is the 16 bytes of initial block (called B0, in RFC 3610 and CCM Initial block in 802.11i spec), followed by additional authentication data (lengths– defined in respective standards).

Definition at line **523** of file **IxCryptoAcc.h**.

**IxCryptoAccAuthAlgo** IxCryptoAccAuthCtx::authAlgo

authentication algorithm – MD5, SHA1, WEP\_CRC

Definition at line **518** of file **IxCryptoAcc.h**.

UINT32 IxCryptoAccAuthCtx::authDigestLen

Digest length in bytes.

Definition at line **521** of file **IxCryptoAcc.h**.

UINT8 IxCryptoAccAuthCtx::authKey[IX\_CRYPTACC\_MAX\_AUTH\_KEY\_LENGTH]

default hash key array

Definition at line **532** of file **IxCryptoAcc.h**.

UINT32 IxCryptoAccAuthCtx::authKeyLen

Hash key length in bytes.

Definition at line **522** of file **IxCryptoAcc.h**.

union { ... } IxCryptoAccAuthCtx::key

Hash key, key is not required for WEP\_CRC.

UINT8 IxCryptoAccAuthCtx::md5Key[IX\_CRYPTACC\_MAX\_AUTH\_KEY\_LENGTH]

MD5 key.

Definition at line **536** of file **IxCryptoAcc.h**.

```
UINT8 IxCryptoAccAuthCtx::sha1Key[IX_CRYPTACC_MAX_AUTH_KEY_LENGTH]
```

SHA1 key.

Definition at line **535** of file **IxCryptoAcc.h**.

---

The documentation for this struct was generated from the following file:

- **IxCryptoAcc.h**

# IxCryptoAccCipherCtx Struct Reference

## [Intel (R) IXP400 Software Security (IxCryptoAcc) API]

Structure storing cipher configuration parameters required to perform security functionality.

### Data Fields

**IxCryptoAccCipherAlgo cipherAlgo**

*Cipher Algorithm – DES, 3DES, AES, ARC4.*

**IxCryptoAccCipherMode cipherMode**

*Cipher mode – ECB, CBC, CTR, CCM.*

**UINT32 cipherKeyLen**

*Cipher key length in bytes.*

union {

**UINT8 cipherKey**

[IX\_CRYPTO\_ACC\_MAX\_CIPHER\_KEY\_LENGTH]

**UINT8 desKey** [IX\_CRYPTO\_ACC\_DES\_KEY\_64]

**UINT8 tripleDesKey** [IX\_CRYPTO\_ACC\_3DES\_KEY\_192]

**UINT8 aesKey128** [IX\_CRYPTO\_ACC\_AES\_KEY\_128]

**UINT8 aesKey192** [IX\_CRYPTO\_ACC\_AES\_KEY\_192]

**UINT8 aesKey256** [IX\_CRYPTO\_ACC\_AES\_KEY\_256]

}

**key**

*Cipher key, key is not required for ARC4 during registration.*

**UINT32 cipherBlockLen**

*Cipher block length in bytes.*

**UINT32 cipherInitialVectorLen**

*Length of IV in bytes.*

---

## Detailed Description

Structure storing cipher configuration parameters required to perform security functionality.

Structure is used to specify the cipher context required for using the **Intel (R) IXP400 Software Security (IxCryptoAcc) API** interface.

### Note:

SPI (Security Parameter Index) is not needed for crypto context registration as CTR counter block construction is client's responsibility

Definition at line **479** of file **IxCryptoAcc.h**.

---

## Field Documentation

UINT8 IxCryptoAccCipherCtx::aesKey128[IX\_CRYPTACC\_AES\_KEY\_128]

AES-128 key.

Definition at line **493** of file **IxCryptoAcc.h**.

UINT8 IxCryptoAccCipherCtx::aesKey192[IX\_CRYPTACC\_AES\_KEY\_192]

AES-192 key.

Definition at line **494** of file **IxCryptoAcc.h**.

UINT8 IxCryptoAccCipherCtx::aesKey256[IX\_CRYPTACC\_AES\_KEY\_256]

AES-256 key.

Definition at line **495** of file **IxCryptoAcc.h**.

**IxCryptoAccCipherAlgo** IxCryptoAccCipherCtx::cipherAlgo

Cipher Algorithm – DES, 3DES, AES, ARC4.

Definition at line **481** of file **IxCryptoAcc.h**.

UINT32 IxCryptoAccCipherCtx::cipherBlockLen

Cipher block length in bytes.

(DES/3DES – 8 bytes, AES – 16 bytes) (ARC4 – 1 byte)

Definition at line **499** of file **IxCryptoAcc.h**.

UINT32 IxCryptoAccCipherCtx::cipherInitialVectorLen

Length of IV in bytes.

Definition at line **504** of file **IxCryptoAcc.h**.



UINT8 IxCryptoAccCipherCtx::cipherKey[IX\_CRYPTTO\_ACC\_MAX\_CIPHER\_KEY\_LENGTH]

default key array

Definition at line **488** of file **IxCryptoAcc.h**.

UINT32 IxCryptoAccCipherCtx::cipherKeyLen

Cipher key length in bytes.

Definition at line **485** of file **IxCryptoAcc.h**.

**IxCryptoAccCipherMode** IxCryptoAccCipherCtx::cipherMode

Cipher mode – ECB, CBC, CTR, CCM.

Definition at line **484** of file **IxCryptoAcc.h**.

UINT8 IxCryptoAccCipherCtx::desKey[IX\_CRYPTTO\_ACC\_DES\_KEY\_64]

DES key.

Definition at line **491** of file **IxCryptoAcc.h**.

union { ... } IxCryptoAccCipherCtx::key

Cipher key, key is not required for ARC4 during registration.

UINT8 IxCryptoAccCipherCtx::tripleDesKey[IX\_CRYPTTO\_ACC\_3DES\_KEY\_192]

3DES key

Definition at line **492** of file **IxCryptoAcc.h**.

---

The documentation for this struct was generated from the following file:

- **IxCryptoAcc.h**

# IxCryptoAccCtx Struct Reference

## [Intel (R) IXP400 Software Security (IxCryptoAcc) API]

Structure storing configuration parameters required to perform security functionality.

### Data Fields

**IxCryptoAccOperation** operation

*Types of operation.*

**IxCryptoAccCipherCtx** cipherCtx

*Cipher context.*

**IxCryptoAccAuthCtx** authCtx

*Authentication context.*

**BOOL** useDifferentSrcAndDestMbufs

*If TRUE, data is read from srcMbuf, result is written to destMbuf (non in-place operation).*

---

## Detailed Description

Structure storing configuration parameters required to perform security functionality.

Structure is used to specify the crypto context (hardware accelerator context) required for using the **Intel (R) IXP400 Software Security (IxCryptoAcc) API** interface.

Definition at line **550** of file **IxCryptoAcc.h**.

---

## Field Documentation

**IxCryptoAccAuthCtx** IxCryptoAccCtx::authCtx

Authentication context.

Definition at line **554** of file **IxCryptoAcc.h**.

**IxCryptoAccCipherCtx** IxCryptoAccCtx::cipherCtx

Cipher context.

Definition at line **553** of file **IxCryptoAcc.h**.

**IxCryptoAccOperation** IxCryptoAccCtx::operation

Types of operation.

Definition at line **552** of file **IxCryptoAcc.h**.

**BOOL** IxCryptoAccCtx::useDifferentSrcAndDestMbufs

If TRUE, data is read from srcMbuf, result is written to destMbuf (non in-place operation).

If FALSE data is read from srcMbuf, and written back to srcMbuf (in-place operation). Default is FALSE. Note that only the crypted/authenticated data that is copied, not the entire source mbuf.

Definition at line **555** of file **IxCryptoAcc.h**.

---

The documentation for this struct was generated from the following file:

- **IxCryptoAcc.h**

# IxCryptoAccPkeEauBnAddSubMulOperands Struct Reference

## [Intel (R) IXP400 Software Security (IxCryptoAcc) API]

Structure storing input operands for large number addition (Carry |  $R = A + B$ ) or subtraction operation (Borrow |  $R = A - B$ ) or multiplication ( $R = A * B$ ).

## Data Fields

**IxCryptoAccPkeEauOperand A**

*A : 1st operand of addition/subtraction/ multiplication.*

**IxCryptoAccPkeEauOperand B**

*B : 2nd operand of addition/subtraction multiplication.*

---

## Detailed Description

Structure storing input operands for large number addition (Carry |  $R = A + B$ ) or subtraction operation (Borrow |  $R = A - B$ ) or multiplication ( $R = A * B$ ).

Definition at line **606** of file **IxCryptoAcc.h**.

---

## Field Documentation

**IxCryptoAccPkeEauOperand IxCryptoAccPkeEauBnAddSubMulOperands::A**

A : 1st operand of addition/subtraction/ multiplication.

Definition at line **608** of file **IxCryptoAcc.h**.

**IxCryptoAccPkeEauOperand IxCryptoAccPkeEauBnAddSubMulOperands::B**

B : 2nd operand of addition/subtraction multiplication.

Definition at line **610** of file **IxCryptoAcc.h**.

---

The documentation for this struct was generated from the following file:

- **IxCryptoAcc.h**

# IxCryptoAccPkeEauBnModOperands Struct Reference

[Intel (R) IXP400 Software Security (IxCryptoAcc) API]

Structure storing input operands for large number modular reduction operation ( $R = A \bmod N$ ).

## Data Fields

**IxCryptoAccPkeEauOperand A**

*A : Operand for modular reduction.*

**IxCryptoAccPkeEauOperand N**

*N : modulus.*

---

## Detailed Description

Structure storing input operands for large number modular reduction operation ( $R = A \bmod N$ ).

Definition at line **619** of file **IxCryptoAcc.h**.

---

## Field Documentation

**IxCryptoAccPkeEauOperand** IxCryptoAccPkeEauBnModOperands::A

A : Operand for modular reduction.

Definition at line **621** of file **IxCryptoAcc.h**.

**IxCryptoAccPkeEauOperand** IxCryptoAccPkeEauBnModOperands::N

N : modulus.

Definition at line **622** of file **IxCryptoAcc.h**.

---

The documentation for this struct was generated from the following file:

- **IxCryptoAcc.h**

# IxCryptoAccPkeEauInOperands Union Reference

## [Intel (R) IXP400 Software Security (IxCryptoAcc) API]

Union storing input operands required for all EAU operations. These input operands will be supplied to **IxCryptoAccPkeEauPerform** interface to perform EAU functionalities.

## Data Fields

**IxCryptoAccPkeEauModExpOperands** **modExpOpr**

*Modular exponential input operands.*

**IxCryptoAccPkeEauBnAddSubMulOperands** **bnAddSubMulOpr**

*Large number addition or subtraction or multiplication input operands.*

**IxCryptoAccPkeEauBnModOperands** **bnModOpr**

*Modular reduction input operands.*

---

## Detailed Description

Union storing input operands required for all EAU operations. These input operands will be supplied to **IxCryptoAccPkeEauPerform** interface to perform EAU functionalities.

Definition at line **631** of file **IxCryptoAcc.h**.

---

## Field Documentation

**IxCryptoAccPkeEauBnAddSubMulOperands** IxCryptoAccPkeEauInOperands::bnAddSubMulOpr

Large number addition or subtraction or multiplication input operands.

Definition at line **637** of file **IxCryptoAcc.h**.

**IxCryptoAccPkeEauBnModOperands** IxCryptoAccPkeEauInOperands::bnModOpr

Modular reduction input operands.

Definition at line **641** of file **IxCryptoAcc.h**.

**IxCryptoAccPkeEauModExpOperands** IxCryptoAccPkeEauInOperands::modExpOpr

Modular exponential input operands.

Definition at line **633** of file **IxCryptoAcc.h**.

---

The documentation for this union was generated from the following file:

- **IxCryptoAcc.h**

# IxCryptoAccPkeEauModExpOperands Struct Reference

## [Intel (R) IXP400 Software Security (IxCryptoAcc) API]

Structure storing input operands for large number modular exponential operation ( $C = M^e \bmod N$ ).

### Data Fields

**IxCryptoAccPkeEauOperand M**

*M : Base operand.*

**IxCryptoAccPkeEauOperand e**

*e : exponent*

**IxCryptoAccPkeEauOperand N**

*N : modulus.*

---

## Detailed Description

Structure storing input operands for large number modular exponential operation ( $C = M^e \bmod N$ ).

Definition at line **593** of file **IxCryptoAcc.h**.

---

## Field Documentation

**IxCryptoAccPkeEauOperand IxCryptoAccPkeEauModExpOperands::e**

e : exponent

Definition at line **596** of file **IxCryptoAcc.h**.

**IxCryptoAccPkeEauOperand IxCryptoAccPkeEauModExpOperands::M**

M : Base operand.

Definition at line **595** of file **IxCryptoAcc.h**.

**IxCryptoAccPkeEauOperand IxCryptoAccPkeEauModExpOperands::N**



N : modulus.

Definition at line **597** of file **IxCryptoAcc.h**.

---

The documentation for this struct was generated from the following file:

- **IxCryptoAcc.h**

# IxCryptoAccPkeEauOperand Struct Reference

## [Intel (R) IXP400 Software Security (IxCryptoAcc) API]

Structure storing operand / result data pointer and length for EAU functionality performing through **IxCryptoAccPkeEauPerform** interface.

### Data Fields

UINT32 \* **pData**

*Data pointer which contains EAU input operand or output result.*

UINT32 **dataLen**

*data length in words (multiple of 32-bit)*

---

### Detailed Description

Structure storing operand / result data pointer and length for EAU functionality performing through **IxCryptoAccPkeEauPerform** interface.

Definition at line **575** of file **IxCryptoAcc.h**.

---

### Field Documentation

UINT32 IxCryptoAccPkeEauOperand::dataLen

data length in words (multiple of 32-bit)

Definition at line **579** of file **IxCryptoAcc.h**.

UINT32\* IxCryptoAccPkeEauOperand::pData

Data pointer which contains EAU input operand or output result.

Definition at line **577** of file **IxCryptoAcc.h**.

---

The documentation for this struct was generated from the following file:

- **IxCryptoAcc.h**

# IxCryptoCodeletServiceParam Struct Reference

Structure holding various configuration parameters for demonstration purposes.

## Data Fields

**IxCryptoAccOperation frwdOperation**

*Opcode for forward operation.*

**IxCryptoAccOperation revOperation**

*Opcode for reverse operation.*

**IxCryptoAccCipherAlgo cipherAlgo**

*Cipher Algorithm.*

**IxCryptoAccCipherMode cipherMode**

*Cipher Mode.*

**UINT32 cipherKeyLen**

*Cipher Key Length.*

**UINT32 cipherBlockLen**

*Cipher Algorithm's Block Length.*

**UINT32 cipherInitialVectorLen**

*Initial vector length.*

**IxCryptoAccAuthAlgo authAlgo**

*Authentication Algorithm.*

**UINT32 authKeyLen**

*Authentication Key Length.*

**UINT32 authDigestLen**

*Authentication Digest Length.*

**UINT32 aadLen**

*Additional Authentication Data Length (used in CCM mode of operation).*

**BOOL useDifferentSrcAndDestMbufs**

*Use different source and destination buffers.*

**BOOL invokeXScaleWepPerform**

*Perform this request using XScaleWepPerform function (note only ARC4 and WEP CRC requests are valid).*

**UINT8 infoString [IX\_CRYPTOAAC\_CODELET\_MAX\_STR\_SIZE]**

*Information about the type of request.*

---

## Detailed Description

Structure holding various configuration parameters for demonstration purposes.

This structure is only defined and used by this codelet. It holds various parameters that are required to register a context and invoke "perform" requests on the cryptoAcc component.

Definition at line **61** of file **IxCryptoAccCodelet\_p.h**.

---

## Field Documentation

**UINT32 IxCryptoCodeletServiceParam::aadLen**

Additional Authentication Data Length (used in CCM mode of operation).

Definition at line **73** of file **IxCryptoAccCodelet\_p.h**.

**IxCryptoAccAuthAlgo IxCryptoCodeletServiceParam::authAlgo**

Authentication Algorithm.

Definition at line **70** of file **IxCryptoAccCodelet\_p.h**.

**UINT32 IxCryptoCodeletServiceParam::authDigestLen**

Authentication Digest Length.

Definition at line **72** of file **IxCryptoAccCodelet\_p.h**.

**UINT32 IxCryptoCodeletServiceParam::authKeyLen**

Authentication Key Length.

Definition at line **71** of file **IxCryptoAccCodelet\_p.h**.

**IxCryptoAccCipherAlgo IxCryptoCodeletServiceParam::cipherAlgo**

Cipher Algorithm.

Definition at line **65** of file **IxCryptoAccCodelet\_p.h**.

UINT32 IxCryptoCodeletServiceParam::cipherBlockLen

Cipher Algorithm's Block Length.

Definition at line **68** of file **IxCryptoAccCodelet\_p.h**.

UINT32 IxCryptoCodeletServiceParam::cipherInitialVectorLen

Initial vector length.

Definition at line **69** of file **IxCryptoAccCodelet\_p.h**.

UINT32 IxCryptoCodeletServiceParam::cipherKeyLen

Cipher Key Length.

Definition at line **67** of file **IxCryptoAccCodelet\_p.h**.

**IxCryptoAccCipherMode** IxCryptoCodeletServiceParam::cipherMode

Cipher Mode.

Definition at line **66** of file **IxCryptoAccCodelet\_p.h**.

**IxCryptoAccOperation** IxCryptoCodeletServiceParam::frwdOperation

Opcode for forward operation.

Definition at line **63** of file **IxCryptoAccCodelet\_p.h**.

UINT8 IxCryptoCodeletServiceParam::infoString[IX\_CRYPTOACC\_CODELET\_MAX\_STR\_SIZE]

Information about the type of request.

Definition at line **86** of file **IxCryptoAccCodelet\_p.h**.

BOOL IxCryptoCodeletServiceParam::invokeXScaleWepPerform

Perform this request using XScaleWepPerform function (note only ARC4 and WEP CRC requests are valid.

Definition at line **80** of file **IxCryptoAccCodelet\_p.h**.

## **IxCryptoAccOperation** IxCryptoCodeletServiceParam::revOperation

Opcode for reverse operation.

Definition at line **64** of file **IxCryptoAccCodelet\_p.h**.

## **BOOL** IxCryptoCodeletServiceParam::useDifferentSrcAndDestMbufs

Use different source and destination buffers.

Definition at line **77** of file **IxCryptoAccCodelet\_p.h**.

---

The documentation for this struct was generated from the following file:

- **IxCryptoAccCodelet\_p.h**

# IxErrHdlAccRecoveryStatistics Struct Reference

## [IXP400 Soft–Error Handler Driver (ixErrHdlAcc) API]

Debug Statistical Data Structure.

### Data Fields

UINT32 **totalNPEAEvent**  
UINT32 **totalNPEBEvent**  
UINT32 **totalNPECEvent**  
UINT32 **totalAQMEvent**  
UINT32 **totalNPEARecoveryPass**  
UINT32 **totalNPEBRecoveryPass**  
UINT32 **totalNPECRecoveryPass**  
UINT32 **totalAQMRecoveryPass**

---

### Detailed Description

Debug Statistical Data Structure.

Definition at line **101** of file **IxErrHdlAcc.h**.

---

The documentation for this struct was generated from the following file:

- **IxErrHdlAcc.h**

# IxEthAccMacAddr Struct Reference

## [Intel (R) IXP400 Software Ethernet Access (IxEthAcc) API]

Definition of the IEEE 802.3 Ethernet MAC address structure.

### Data Fields

UINT8 **macAddress** [IX\_IEEE803\_MAC\_ADDRESS\_SIZE]  
*MAC address.*

---

### Detailed Description

Definition of the IEEE 802.3 Ethernet MAC address structure.

The data should be packed with bytes xx:xx:xx:xx:xx:xx

**Note:**

The data must be packed in network byte order.

Definition at line **99** of file **IxEthAcc.h**.

---

### Field Documentation

UINT8 IxEthAccMacAddr::macAddress[IX\_IEEE803\_MAC\_ADDRESS\_SIZE]

MAC address.

Definition at line **101** of file **IxEthAcc.h**.

---

The documentation for this struct was generated from the following file:

- **IxEthAcc.h**



# IxEthAccNe Struct Reference

[Intel (R) IXP400 Software Ethernet Access (IxEthAcc) API, Intel (R) IXP400 Software Ethernet Access (IxEthAcc) API, Intel (R) IXP400 Software Ethernet Access (IxEthAcc) API]

Definition of service-specific informations.

## Data Fields

UINT32 **ixReserved\_next**

*reserved for chaining*

UINT32 **ixReserved\_lengths**

*reserved for buffer lengths*

UINT32 **ixReserved\_data**

*reserved for buffer pointer*

UINT8 **ixDestinationPortId**

*Destination portId for this packet, if known by NPE.*

UINT8 **ixSourcePortId**

*Source portId for this packet.*

UINT16 **ixFlags**

*BitField of option for this frame.*

UINT8 **ixQoS**

*QoS class of the frame.*

UINT8 **ixPadLength**

*Size of pad field in bytes (min 0 – max 16).*

UINT16 **ixVlanTCI**

*Vlan TCI.*

UINT8 **ixDestMac** [IX\_IEEE803\_MAC\_ADDRESS\_SIZE]

*Destination MAC address.*

UINT8 **ixSourceMac** [IX\_IEEE803\_MAC\_ADDRESS\_SIZE]

*Source MAC address.*

## Detailed Description

Definition of service-specific informations.

This structure defines the Ethernet service-specific informations and enable QoS and VLAN features.

Definition at line **170** of file **IxEthAcc.h**.

---

## Field Documentation

UINT8 IxEthAccNe::ixDestinationPortId

Destination portId for this packet, if known by NPE.

Definition at line **175** of file **IxEthAcc.h**.

UINT8 IxEthAccNe::ixDestMac[IX\_IEEE803\_MAC\_ADDRESS\_SIZE]

Destination MAC address.

Definition at line **181** of file **IxEthAcc.h**.

UINT16 IxEthAccNe::ixFlags

BitField of option for this frame.

Definition at line **177** of file **IxEthAcc.h**.

UINT8 IxEthAccNe::ixPadLength

Size of pad field in bytes (min 0 – max 16).

Definition at line **179** of file **IxEthAcc.h**.

UINT8 IxEthAccNe::ixQoS

QoS class of the frame.

Definition at line **178** of file **IxEthAcc.h**.

UINT32 IxEthAccNe::ixReserved\_data

reserved for buffer pointer

Definition at line **174** of file **IxEthAcc.h**.

UINT32 IxEthAccNe::ixReserved\_lengths

reserved for buffer lengths

Definition at line **173** of file **IxEthAcc.h**.

UINT32 IxEthAccNe::ixReserved\_next

reserved for chaining

Definition at line **172** of file **IxEthAcc.h**.

UINT8 IxEthAccNe::ixSourceMac[IX\_IEEE803\_MAC\_ADDRESS\_SIZE]

Source MAC address.

Definition at line **182** of file **IxEthAcc.h**.

UINT8 IxEthAccNe::ixSourcePortId

Source portId for this packet.

Definition at line **176** of file **IxEthAcc.h**.

UINT16 IxEthAccNe::ixVlanTCI

Vlan TCI.

Definition at line **180** of file **IxEthAcc.h**.

---

The documentation for this struct was generated from the following file:

- **IxEthAcc.h**

# IxEthDBPortDefinition Struct Reference

[Intel (R) IXP400 Software Ethernet Database Port Definitions  
(IxEthDBPortDefs)]

Port Definition – a structure contains the Port type and capabilities.

## Data Fields

**IxEthDBPortType** type  
**IxEthDBPortCapability** capabilities

---

## Detailed Description

Port Definition – a structure contains the Port type and capabilities.

Definition at line **46** of file **IxEthDBPortDefs.h**.

---

The documentation for this struct was generated from the following file:

- **IxEthDBPortDefs.h**

# IxEthDBWiFiRecData Struct Reference

[Intel (R) IXP400 Software Ethernet Database (IxEthDB) API]

The user wi-fi input parameters structure.

## Data Fields

<b>IxEthDBWiFiRecordType</b>	<b>recType</b>
<b>IxEthDBWiFiVlanTag</b>	<b>vlanTagFlag</b>
	UINT32 <b>logicalPortID</b>
	UINT8 <b>padLength</b>
	UINT8 <b>gatewayMacAddr</b> [IX_IEEE803_MAC_ADDRESS_SIZE]
	UINT8 <b>bssid</b> [IX_IEEE803_MAC_ADDRESS_SIZE]

---

## Detailed Description

The user wi-fi input parameters structure.

### *Note:*

The data must be packed in network byte order.

Definition at line **275** of file **IxEthDB.h**.

---

The documentation for this struct was generated from the following file:

- **IxEthDB.h**

# IxEthEthObjStats Struct Reference

## [Intel (R) IXP400 Software Ethernet Access (IxEthAcc) API]

This struct defines the statistics returned by this component.

### Data Fields

UINT32 **dot3StatsAlignmentErrors**

*link error count (rx)*

UINT32 **dot3StatsFCSErrors**

*link error count (rx)*

UINT32 **dot3StatsInternalMacReceiveErrors**

*link error count (rx)*

UINT32 **RxOverrunDiscards**

*NPE: discarded frames count (rx).*

UINT32 **RxLearnedEntryDiscards**

*NPE: discarded frames count(rx).*

UINT32 **RxLargeFramesDiscards**

*NPE: discarded frames count(rx).*

UINT32 **RxSTPBlockedDiscards**

*NPE: discarded frames count(rx).*

UINT32 **RxVLANTypeFilterDiscards**

*NPE: discarded frames count (rx).*

UINT32 **RxVLANIdFilterDiscards**

*NPE: discarded frames count (rx).*

UINT32 **RxInvalidSourceDiscards**

*NPE: discarded frames count (rx).*

UINT32 **RxBlackListDiscards**

*NPE: discarded frames count (rx).*

UINT32 **RxWhiteListDiscards**

*NPE: discarded frames count (rx).*

UINT32 **RxUnderflowEntryDiscards**

*NPE: discarded frames count (rx).*

UINT32 **dot3StatsSingleCollisionFrames**

*link error count (tx)*

UINT32 **dot3StatsMultipleCollisionFrames**

*link error count (tx)*

UINT32 **dot3StatsDeferredTransmissions**

*link error count (tx)*

UINT32 **dot3StatsLateCollisions**

*link error count (tx)*

UINT32 **dot3StatsExcessiveCollisions**

*link error count (tx)*

UINT32 **dot3StatsInternalMacTransmitErrors**

*link error count (tx)*

UINT32 **dot3StatsCarrierSenseErrors**

*link error count (tx)*

UINT32 **TxLargeFrameDiscards**

*NPE: discarded frames count (tx).*

UINT32 **TxVLANIdFilterDiscards**

*NPE: discarded frames count (tx).*

UINT32 **TxUnderrunDiscards**

*NPE: discarded frames count (tx).*

UINT32 **MacRecoveryTriggered**

*MAC recovery count.*

UINT32 **RxValidFramesTotalOctets**

UINT32 **RxUcastPkts**

UINT32 **RxBcastPkts**

UINT32 **RxMcastPkts**

UINT32 **RxPkts64Octets**

UINT32 **RxPkts65to127Octets**

UINT32 **RxPkts128to255Octets**

UINT32 **RxPkts256to511Octets**

UINT32 **RxPkts512to1023Octets**

UINT32 **RxPkts1024to1518Octets**

UINT32 **RxInternalNPETransmitErrors**

UINT32 **TxInternalNPETransmitErrors**

---

## Detailed Description

This struct defines the statistics returned by this component.

The component returns MIB2 EthObj variables which are obtained from the hardware or maintained by this component.

Definition at line **2458** of file **IxEthAcc.h**.

---

## Field Documentation

UINT32 IxEthEthObjStats::dot3StatsAlignmentErrors

link error count (rx)

Definition at line **2463** of file **IxEthAcc.h**.

UINT32 IxEthEthObjStats::dot3StatsCarrierSenseErrors

link error count (tx)

Definition at line **2482** of file **IxEthAcc.h**.

UINT32 IxEthEthObjStats::dot3StatsDeferredTransmissions

link error count (tx)

Definition at line **2478** of file **IxEthAcc.h**.

UINT32 IxEthEthObjStats::dot3StatsExcessiveCollisions

link error count (tx)

Definition at line **2480** of file **IxEthAcc.h**.

UINT32 IxEthEthObjStats::dot3StatsFCSErrors

link error count (rx)

Definition at line **2464** of file **IxEthAcc.h**.

UINT32 IxEthEthObjStats::dot3StatsInternalMacReceiveErrors

link error count (rx)

Definition at line **2465** of file **IxEthAcc.h**.



#### UINT32 IxEthEthObjStats::dot3StatsInternalMacTransmitErrors

link error count (tx)

Definition at line **2481** of file **IxEthAcc.h**.

#### UINT32 IxEthEthObjStats::dot3StatsLateCollisions

link error count (tx)

Definition at line **2479** of file **IxEthAcc.h**.

#### UINT32 IxEthEthObjStats::dot3StatsMultipleCollisionFrames

link error count (tx)

Definition at line **2477** of file **IxEthAcc.h**.

#### UINT32 IxEthEthObjStats::dot3StatsSingleCollisionFrames

link error count (tx)

Definition at line **2476** of file **IxEthAcc.h**.

#### UINT32 IxEthEthObjStats::MacRecoveryTriggered

MAC recovery count.

Definition at line **2486** of file **IxEthAcc.h**.

#### UINT32 IxEthEthObjStats::RxBlackListDiscards

NPE: discarded frames count (rx).

Definition at line **2473** of file **IxEthAcc.h**.

#### UINT32 IxEthEthObjStats::RxInvalidSourceDiscards

NPE: discarded frames count (rx).

Definition at line **2472** of file **IxEthAcc.h**.

#### UINT32 IxEthEthObjStats::RxLargeFramesDiscards

NPE: discarded frames count(rx).

Definition at line **2468** of file **IxEthAcc.h**.

#### UINT32 IxEthEthObjStats::RxLearnedEntryDiscards

NPE: discarded frames count(rx).

Definition at line **2467** of file **IxEthAcc.h**.

#### UINT32 IxEthEthObjStats::RxOverrunDiscards

NPE: discarded frames count (rx).

Definition at line **2466** of file **IxEthAcc.h**.

#### UINT32 IxEthEthObjStats::RxSTPBlockedDiscards

NPE: discarded frames count(rx).

Definition at line **2469** of file **IxEthAcc.h**.

#### UINT32 IxEthEthObjStats::RxUnderflowEntryDiscards

NPE: discarded frames count (rx).

Definition at line **2475** of file **IxEthAcc.h**.

#### UINT32 IxEthEthObjStats::RxVLANIdFilterDiscards

NPE: discarded frames count (rx).

Definition at line **2471** of file **IxEthAcc.h**.

#### UINT32 IxEthEthObjStats::RxVLANTypeFilterDiscards

NPE: discarded frames count (rx).

Definition at line **2470** of file **IxEthAcc.h**.

#### UINT32 IxEthEthObjStats::RxWhiteListDiscards

NPE: discarded frames count (rx).

Definition at line **2474** of file **IxEthAcc.h**.

#### UINT32 IxEthEthObjStats::TxLargeFrameDiscards

NPE: discarded frames count (tx).

Definition at line **2483** of file **IxEthAcc.h**.

#### UINT32 IxEthEthObjStats::TxUnderrunDiscards

NPE: discarded frames count (tx).

Definition at line **2485** of file **IxEthAcc.h**.

#### UINT32 IxEthEthObjStats::TxVLANIdFilterDiscards

NPE: discarded frames count (tx).

Definition at line **2484** of file **IxEthAcc.h**.

---

The documentation for this struct was generated from the following file:

- **IxEthAcc.h**

# IxHssAccConfigParams Struct Reference

## [Intel (R) IXP400 Software HSS Access (IxHssAcc) API]

Structure containing HSS configuration parameters.

### Data Fields

**IxHssAccPortConfig txPortConfig**

*HSS tx port configuration.*

**IxHssAccPortConfig rxPortConfig**

*HSS rx port configuration.*

unsigned **numChannelised**

*The number of channelised timeslots (0–32).*

unsigned **hssPktChannelCount**

*The number of packetised clients (0 – 4).*

UINT8 **channelisedIdlePattern**

*The byte to be transmitted on channelised service when there is no client data to tx.*

BOOL **loopback**

*The HSS loopback state.*

unsigned **packetizedIdlePattern**

*The data to be transmitted on packetised service when there is no client data to tx.*

**IxHssAccClkSpeed clkSpeed**

*The HSS clock speed.*

---

## Detailed Description

Structure containing HSS configuration parameters.

Definition at line **563** of file **IxHssAcc.h**.

---

## Field Documentation

UINT8 IxHssAccConfigParams::channelisedIdlePattern

The byte to be transmitted on channelised service when there is no client data to tx.

Definition at line **571** of file **IxHssAcc.h**.

**IxHssAccClkSpeed** IxHssAccConfigParams::clkSpeed

The HSS clock speed.

Definition at line **578** of file **IxHssAcc.h**.

unsigned IxHssAccConfigParams::hssPktChannelCount

The number of packetised clients (0 – 4).

Definition at line **569** of file **IxHssAcc.h**.

BOOL IxHssAccConfigParams::loopback

The HSS loopback state.

Definition at line **574** of file **IxHssAcc.h**.

unsigned IxHssAccConfigParams::numChannelised

The number of channelised timeslots (0–32).

Definition at line **567** of file **IxHssAcc.h**.

unsigned IxHssAccConfigParams::packetizedIdlePattern

The data to be transmitted on packetised service when there is no client data to tx.

Definition at line **575** of file **IxHssAcc.h**.

**IxHssAccPortConfig** IxHssAccConfigParams::rxPortConfig

HSS rx port configuration.

Definition at line **566** of file **IxHssAcc.h**.

**IxHssAccPortConfig** IxHssAccConfigParams::txPortConfig

HSS tx port configuration.

Definition at line **565** of file **IxHssAcc.h**.

---

The documentation for this struct was generated from the following file:

- **IxHssAcc.h**

# IxHssAccHdlcMode Struct Reference

## [Intel (R) IXP400 Software HSS Access (IxHssAcc) API]

This structure contains 56Kbps, HDLC–mode configuration parameters.

### Data Fields

BOOL **hdlc56kMode**

*56kbps(TRUE)/64kbps(FALSE) HDLC*

**IxHssAcc56kEndianness** **hdlc56kEndian**

*56kbps data endianness*

- *ignored if hdlc56kMode is FALSE*

BOOL **hdlc56kUnusedBitPolarity0**

*The polarity '0'(TRUE)/'1'(FALSE) of the unused bit while in 56kbps mode*

- *ignored if hdlc56kMode is FALSE.*

---

## Detailed Description

This structure contains 56Kbps, HDLC–mode configuration parameters.

Definition at line **585** of file **IxHssAcc.h**.

---

## Field Documentation

**IxHssAcc56kEndianness** IxHssAccHdlcMode::hdlc56kEndian

56kbps data endianness

- ignored if hdlc56kMode is FALSE

Definition at line **588** of file **IxHssAcc.h**.

BOOL IxHssAccHdlcMode::hdlc56kMode

56kbps(TRUE)/64kbps(FALSE) HDLC

Definition at line **587** of file **IxHssAcc.h**.

BOOL IxHssAccHdlcMode::hdlc56kUnusedBitPolarity0

The polarity '0'(TRUE)/'1'(FALSE) of the unused bit while in 56kbps mode

- ignored if hdlc56kMode is FALSE.

Definition at line **590** of file **IxHssAcc.h**.

---

The documentation for this struct was generated from the following file:

- **IxHssAcc.h**



# IxHssAccPktHdlcFraming Struct Reference

## [Intel (R) IXP400 Software HSS Access (IxHssAcc) API]

This structure contains information required by the NPE to configure the HDLC co-processor.

## Data Fields

**IxHssAccPktHdlcIdleType** **hdlcIdleType**

*What to transmit when a HDLC port is idle.*

**IxHssAccBitEndian** **dataEndian**

*The HDLC data endianness.*

**IxHssAccPktCrcType** **crcType**

*The CRC type to be used for this HDLC port.*

---

## Detailed Description

This structure contains information required by the NPE to configure the HDLC co-processor.

Definition at line **600** of file **IxHssAcc.h**.

---

## Field Documentation

**IxHssAccPktCrcType** IxHssAccPktHdlcFraming::crcType

The CRC type to be used for this HDLC port.

Definition at line **604** of file **IxHssAcc.h**.

**IxHssAccBitEndian** IxHssAccPktHdlcFraming::dataEndian

The HDLC data endianness.

Definition at line **603** of file **IxHssAcc.h**.

**IxHssAccPktHdlcIdleType** IxHssAccPktHdlcFraming::hdlcIdleType

What to transmit when a HDLC port is idle.

Definition at line **602** of file **IxHssAcc.h**.

---

The documentation for this struct was generated from the following file:

- **IxHssAcc.h**

# IxHssAccPortConfig Struct Reference

## [Intel (R) IXP400 Software HSS Access (IxHssAcc) API]

Structure containing HSS port configuration parameters.

### Data Fields

**IxHssAccFrmSyncType frmSyncType**  
*frame sync pulse type (tx/rx)*

**IxHssAccFrmSyncEnable frmSyncIO**  
*how the frame sync pulse is used (tx/rx)*

**IxHssAccClkEdge frmSyncClkEdge**  
*frame sync clock edge type (tx/rx)*

**IxHssAccClkEdge dataClkEdge**  
*data clock edge type (tx/rx)*

**IxHssAccClkDir clkDirection**  
*clock direction (tx/rx)*

**IxHssAccFrmPulseUsage frmPulseUsage**  
*whether to use the frame sync pulse or not (tx/rx)*

**IxHssAccDataRate dataRate**  
*data rate in relation to the clock (tx/rx)*

**IxHssAccDataPolarity dataPolarity**  
*data polarity type (tx/rx)*

**IxHssAccBitEndian dataEndianness**  
*data endianness (tx/rx)*

**IxHssAccDrainMode drainMode**  
*tx pin open drain mode (tx)*

**IxHssAccSOFType fBitUsage**  
*start of frame types (tx/rx)*

**IxHssAccDataEnable dataEnable**  
*whether or not to drive the data pins (tx)*

**IxHssAccTxSigType voice56kType**  
*how to drive the data pins for voice56k type (tx)*

**IxHssAccTxSigType unassignedType**

*how to drive the data pins for unassigned type (tx)*

**IxHssAccFbType fBitType**

*how to drive the Fbit (tx)*

**IxHssAcc56kEndianness voice56kEndian**

*56k data endianness when using the 56k type (tx)*

**IxHssAcc56kSel voice56kSel**

*56k data transmission type when using the 56k type (tx)*

unsigned **frmOffset**

*frame pulse offset in bits wrt the first timeslot (0–1023) (tx/rx)*

unsigned **maxFrmSize**

*frame size in bits (1–1024) (tx/rx)*

---

## Detailed Description

Structure containing HSS port configuration parameters.

Note: All of these are used for TX. Only some are specific to RX.

Definition at line **525** of file **IxHssAcc.h**.

---

## Field Documentation

**IxHssAccClkDir** IxHssAccPortConfig::clkDirection

clock direction (tx/rx)

Definition at line **533** of file **IxHssAcc.h**.

**IxHssAccClkEdge** IxHssAccPortConfig::dataClkEdge

data clock edge type (tx/rx)

Definition at line **532** of file **IxHssAcc.h**.

**IxHssAccDataEnable** IxHssAccPortConfig::dataEnable

whether or not to drive the data pins (tx)

Definition at line **542** of file **IxHssAcc.h**.

**IxHssAccBitEndian** IxHssAccPortConfig::dataEndianness

data endianness (tx/rx)

Definition at line **539** of file **IxHssAcc.h**.

**IxHssAccDataPolarity** IxHssAccPortConfig::dataPolarity

data polarity type (tx/rx)

Definition at line **538** of file **IxHssAcc.h**.

**IxHssAccDataRate** IxHssAccPortConfig::dataRate

data rate in relation to the clock (tx/rx)

Definition at line **536** of file **IxHssAcc.h**.

**IxHssAccDrainMode** IxHssAccPortConfig::drainMode

tx pin open drain mode (tx)

Definition at line **540** of file **IxHssAcc.h**.

**IxHssAccFbType** IxHssAccPortConfig::fBitType

how to drive the Fbit (tx)

Definition at line **548** of file **IxHssAcc.h**.

**IxHssAccSOFTType** IxHssAccPortConfig::fBitUsage

start of frame types (tx/rx)

Definition at line **541** of file **IxHssAcc.h**.

unsigned IxHssAccPortConfig::frmOffset

frame pulse offset in bits wrt the first timeslot (0–1023) (tx/rx)

Definition at line **553** of file **IxHssAcc.h**.

**IxHssAccFrmPulseUsage** IxHssAccPortConfig::frmPulseUsage

whether to use the frame sync pulse or not (tx/rx)

Definition at line **534** of file **IxHssAcc.h**.

**IxHssAccClkEdge** IxHssAccPortConfig::frmSyncClkEdge

frame sync clock edge type (tx/rx)

Definition at line **530** of file **IxHssAcc.h**.

**IxHssAccFrmSyncEnable** IxHssAccPortConfig::frmSyncIO

how the frame sync pulse is used (tx/rx)

Definition at line **528** of file **IxHssAcc.h**.

**IxHssAccFrmSyncType** IxHssAccPortConfig::frmSyncType

frame sync pulse type (tx/rx)

Definition at line **527** of file **IxHssAcc.h**.

unsigned IxHssAccPortConfig::maxFrmSize

frame size in bits (1–1024) (tx/rx)

Definition at line **555** of file **IxHssAcc.h**.

**IxHssAccTxSigType** IxHssAccPortConfig::unassignedType

how to drive the data pins for unassigned type (tx)

Definition at line **546** of file **IxHssAcc.h**.

**IxHssAcc56kEndianness** IxHssAccPortConfig::voice56kEndian

56k data endianness when using the 56k type (tx)

Definition at line **549** of file **IxHssAcc.h**.

**IxHssAcc56kSel** IxHssAccPortConfig::voice56kSel

56k data transmission type when using the 56k type (tx)

Definition at line **551** of file **IxHssAcc.h**.

**IxHssAccTxSigType** IxHssAccPortConfig::voice56kType

how to drive the data pins for voice56k type (tx)

Definition at line **544** of file **IxHssAcc.h**.

---

The documentation for this struct was generated from the following file:

- **IxHssAcc.h**

# IxI2cInitVars Struct Reference

## [Intel (R) IXP400 Software I2C Driver(IxI2cDrv) API]

contains all the variables required to initialize the I2C unit

### Data Fields

**IxI2cSpeedMode I2cSpeedSelect**

*Select either normal (100kbps) or fast mode (400kbps).*

**IxI2cFlowMode I2cFlowSelect**

*Select interrupt or poll mode.*

**IxI2cMasterReadCallbackP MasterReadCBP**

*The master read callback pointer.*

**IxI2cMasterWriteCallbackP MasterWriteCBP**

*The master write callback pointer.*

**IxI2cSlaveReadCallbackP SlaveReadCBP**

*The slave read callback pointer.*

**IxI2cSlaveWriteCallbackP SlaveWriteCBP**

*The slave write callback pointer.*

**IxI2cGenCallCallbackP GenCallCBP**

*The general call callback pointer.*

**BOOL I2cGenCallResponseEnable**

*Enable/disable the unit to respond to general calls.*

**BOOL I2cSlaveAddrResponseEnable**

*Enable/disable the unit to respond to the slave address set in ISAR.*

**BOOL SCLEnable**

*Enable/disable the unit from driving the SCL line during master mode operation.*

**UINT8 I2cHWAddr**

*The address the unit will response to as a slave device.*

---

### Detailed Description

contains all the variables required to initialize the I2C unit



Structure to be filled and used for calling initialization

Definition at line **253** of file **IxI2cDrv.h**.

---

## Field Documentation

**IxI2cGenCallCallbackP** IxI2cInitVars::GenCallCBP

The general call callback pointer.

Definition at line **267** of file **IxI2cDrv.h**.

**IxI2cFlowMode** IxI2cInitVars::I2cFlowSelect

Select interrupt or poll mode.

Definition at line **257** of file **IxI2cDrv.h**.

**BOOL** IxI2cInitVars::I2cGenCallResponseEnable

Enable/disable the unit to respond to general calls.

Definition at line **268** of file **IxI2cDrv.h**.

**UINT8** IxI2cInitVars::I2cHWAddr

The address the unit will response to as a slave device.

Definition at line **276** of file **IxI2cDrv.h**.

**BOOL** IxI2cInitVars::I2cSlaveAddrResponseEnable

Enable/disable the unit to respond to the slave address set in ISAR.

Definition at line **270** of file **IxI2cDrv.h**.

**IxI2cSpeedMode** IxI2cInitVars::I2cSpeedSelect

Select either normal (100kbps) or fast mode (400kbps).

Definition at line **255** of file **IxI2cDrv.h**.

#### **IxI2cMasterReadCallbackP** IxI2cInitVars::MasterReadCBP

The master read callback pointer.

Definition at line **259** of file **IxI2cDrv.h**.

#### **IxI2cMasterWriteCallbackP** IxI2cInitVars::MasterWriteCBP

The master write callback pointer.

Definition at line **261** of file **IxI2cDrv.h**.

#### **BOOL** IxI2cInitVars::SCLEnable

Enable/disable the unit from driving the SCL line during master mode operation.

Definition at line **273** of file **IxI2cDrv.h**.

#### **IxI2cSlaveReadCallbackP** IxI2cInitVars::SlaveReadCBP

The slave read callback pointer.

Definition at line **263** of file **IxI2cDrv.h**.

#### **IxI2cSlaveWriteCallbackP** IxI2cInitVars::SlaveWriteCBP

The slave write callback pointer.

Definition at line **265** of file **IxI2cDrv.h**.

---

The documentation for this struct was generated from the following file:

- **IxI2cDrv.h**

# Ixl2cStatsCounters Struct Reference

## [Intel (R) IXP400 Software I2C Driver(Ixl2cDrv) API]

contains results of counters and their overflow

### Data Fields

UINT32 **ixI2cMasterXmitCounter**

*Total bytes transmitted as master.*

UINT32 **ixI2cMasterFailedXmitCounter**

*Total bytes failed for transmission as master.*

UINT32 **ixI2cMasterRcvCounter**

*Total bytes received as master.*

UINT32 **ixI2cMasterFailedRcvCounter**

*Total bytes failed for receival as master.*

UINT32 **ixI2cSlaveXmitCounter**

*Total bytes transmitted as slave.*

UINT32 **ixI2cSlaveFailedXmitCounter**

*Total bytes failed for transmission as slave.*

UINT32 **ixI2cSlaveRcvCounter**

*Total bytes received as slave.*

UINT32 **ixI2cSlaveFailedRcvCounter**

*Total bytes failed for receival as slave.*

UINT32 **ixI2cGenAddrCallSucceedCounter**

*Total bytes successfully transmitted for general address.*

UINT32 **ixI2cGenAddrCallFailedCounter**

*Total bytes failed transmission for general address.*

UINT32 **ixI2cArbLossCounter**

*Total instances of arbitration loss has occured.*

---

### Detailed Description

contains results of counters and their overflow

Structure contains all values of counters and associated overflows.

Definition at line **285** of file **IxI2cDrv.h**.

---

## Field Documentation

UINT32 IxI2cStatsCounters::ixI2cArbLossCounter

Total instances of arbitration loss has occurred.

Definition at line **307** of file **IxI2cDrv.h**.

UINT32 IxI2cStatsCounters::ixI2cGenAddrCallFailedCounter

Total bytes failed transmission for general address.

Definition at line **305** of file **IxI2cDrv.h**.

UINT32 IxI2cStatsCounters::ixI2cGenAddrCallSucceedCounter

Total bytes successfully transmitted for general address.

Definition at line **303** of file **IxI2cDrv.h**.

UINT32 IxI2cStatsCounters::ixI2cMasterFailedRcvCounter

Total bytes failed for receival as master.

Definition at line **293** of file **IxI2cDrv.h**.

UINT32 IxI2cStatsCounters::ixI2cMasterFailedXmitCounter

Total bytes failed for transmission as master.

Definition at line **289** of file **IxI2cDrv.h**.

UINT32 IxI2cStatsCounters::ixI2cMasterRcvCounter

Total bytes received as master.

Definition at line **291** of file **IxI2cDrv.h**.

UINT32 IxI2cStatsCounters::ixI2cMasterXmitCounter

Total bytes transmitted as master.

Definition at line **287** of file **IxI2cDrv.h**.

UINT32 IxI2cStatsCounters::ixI2cSlaveFailedRcvCounter

Total bytes failed for receival as slave.

Definition at line **301** of file **IxI2cDrv.h**.

UINT32 IxI2cStatsCounters::ixI2cSlaveFailedXmitCounter

Total bytes failed for transmission as slave.

Definition at line **297** of file **IxI2cDrv.h**.

UINT32 IxI2cStatsCounters::ixI2cSlaveRcvCounter

Total bytes received as slave.

Definition at line **299** of file **IxI2cDrv.h**.

UINT32 IxI2cStatsCounters::ixI2cSlaveXmitCounter

Total bytes transmitted as slave.

Definition at line **295** of file **IxI2cDrv.h**.

---

The documentation for this struct was generated from the following file:

- **IxI2cDrv.h**

# IxNpeDIImageId Struct Reference

## [Intel (R) IXP Image ID Definition]

Image Id to identify each image contained in an image library.

### Data Fields

**IxNpeDINpeId npeId**  
*NPE ID.*

**IxNpeDIDeviceId deviceId**  
*Device Id.*

**IxNpeDIFunctionalityId functionalityId**  
*Build ID indicates functionality of image.*

**IxNpeDIMajor major**  
*Major Release Number.*

**IxNpeDIMinor minor**  
*Minor Revision Number.*

---

## Detailed Description

Image Id to identify each image contained in an image library.

See **ixNpeDINpeInitAndStart** for more information.

Definition at line **251** of file **IxNpeDI.h**.

---

## Field Documentation

**IxNpeDIDeviceId** IxNpeDIImageId::deviceId

Device Id.

Definition at line **254** of file **IxNpeDI.h**.

**IxNpeDIFunctionalityId** IxNpeDIImageId::functionalityId

Build ID indicates functionality of image.

Definition at line **255** of file **IxNpeDl.h**.

**IxNpeDlMajor** IxNpeDlImageId::major

Major Release Number.

Definition at line **256** of file **IxNpeDl.h**.

**IxNpeDlMinor** IxNpeDlImageId::minor

Minor Revision Number.

Definition at line **257** of file **IxNpeDl.h**.

**IxNpeDlNpeId** IxNpeDlImageId::npeId

NPE ID.

Definition at line **253** of file **IxNpeDl.h**.

---

The documentation for this struct was generated from the following file:

- **IxNpeDl.h**

# IxNpeMhMessage Struct Reference

## [Intel (R) IXP Software NPE Message Handler (IxNpeMh) API]

The 2–word message structure to send to and receive from the NPEs.

### Data Fields

UINT32 **data** [2]

*the actual data of the message*

---

### Detailed Description

The 2–word message structure to send to and receive from the NPEs.

Definition at line **93** of file **IxNpeMh.h**.

---

### Field Documentation

UINT32 IxNpeMhMessage::data[2]

the actual data of the message

Definition at line **95** of file **IxNpeMh.h**.

---

The documentation for this struct was generated from the following file:

- **IxNpeMh.h**



# IxParityENAccAHBErrorTransaction Struct Reference

[Intel (R) IXP400 Software Parity Error Notifier (IxParityENAcc) API, Intel (R) IXP400 Software Parity Error Notifier (IxParityENAcc) API, Intel (R) IXP400 Software Parity Error Notifier (IxParityENAcc) API]

The Master and Slave on the AHB bus interface whose transaction might have resulted in the parity error notification to Intel XScale(R) Processor.

## Data Fields

**IxParityENAccAHBErrorMaster** **ahbErrorMaster**  
*Master on AHB bus.*

**IxParityENAccAHBErrorSlave** **ahbErrorSlave**  
*Slave on AHB bus.*

---

## Detailed Description

The Master and Slave on the AHB bus interface whose transaction might have resulted in the parity error notification to Intel XScale(R) Processor.

NOTE: This information may be used in the data abort exception handler to differentiate between the Intel XScale(R) Processor and non–Intel XScale(R) Processor access to the SDRAM memory.

Definition at line **368** of file **IxParityENAcc.h**.

---

## Field Documentation

**IxParityENAccAHBErrorMaster** IxParityENAccAHBErrorTransaction::ahbErrorMaster

Master on AHB bus.

Definition at line **370** of file **IxParityENAcc.h**.

**IxParityENAccAHBErrorSlave** IxParityENAccAHBErrorTransaction::ahbErrorSlave

Slave on AHB bus.

Definition at line **371** of file **IxParityENAcc.h**.

---

The documentation for this struct was generated from the following file:

- **IxParityENAcc.h**

# IxParityENAccEbcConfig Struct Reference

[Intel (R) IXP400 Software Parity Error Notifier (IxParityENAcc) API, Intel (R) IXP400 Software Parity Error Notifier (IxParityENAcc) API, Intel (R) IXP400 Software Parity Error Notifier (IxParityENAcc) API]

Expansion Bus Controller parity detection is to be enabled or disabled.

## Data Fields

**IxParityENAccConfigOption ebcCs0Enabled**

*Expansion Bus Controller – Chip Select 0.*

**IxParityENAccConfigOption ebcCs1Enabled**

*Expansion Bus Controller – Chip Select 1.*

**IxParityENAccConfigOption ebcCs2Enabled**

*Expansion Bus Controller – Chip Select 2.*

**IxParityENAccConfigOption ebcCs3Enabled**

*Expansion Bus Controller – Chip Select 3.*

**IxParityENAccConfigOption ebcCs4Enabled**

*Expansion Bus Controller – Chip Select 4.*

**IxParityENAccConfigOption ebcCs5Enabled**

*Expansion Bus Controller – Chip Select 5.*

**IxParityENAccConfigOption ebcCs6Enabled**

*Expansion Bus Controller – Chip Select 6.*

**IxParityENAccConfigOption ebcCs7Enabled**

*Expansion Bus Controller – Chip Select 7.*

**IxParityENAccConfigOption ebcExtMstEnabled**

*External Master on Expansion bus.*

**IxParityENAccParityType parityOddEven**

*Parity – Odd or Even.*

---

## Detailed Description

Expansion Bus Controller parity detection is to be enabled or disabled.

Note: All the Chip Select(s) and External Masters will have the same parity

Definition at line **113** of file **IxParityENAcc.h**.

---

## Field Documentation

**IxParityENAccConfigOption** IxParityENAccEbcConfig::ebcCs0Enabled

Expansion Bus Controller – Chip Select 0.

Definition at line **115** of file **IxParityENAcc.h**.

**IxParityENAccConfigOption** IxParityENAccEbcConfig::ebcCs1Enabled

Expansion Bus Controller – Chip Select 1.

Definition at line **116** of file **IxParityENAcc.h**.

**IxParityENAccConfigOption** IxParityENAccEbcConfig::ebcCs2Enabled

Expansion Bus Controller – Chip Select 2.

Definition at line **117** of file **IxParityENAcc.h**.

**IxParityENAccConfigOption** IxParityENAccEbcConfig::ebcCs3Enabled

Expansion Bus Controller – Chip Select 3.

Definition at line **118** of file **IxParityENAcc.h**.

**IxParityENAccConfigOption** IxParityENAccEbcConfig::ebcCs4Enabled

Expansion Bus Controller – Chip Select 4.

Definition at line **119** of file **IxParityENAcc.h**.

**IxParityENAccConfigOption** IxParityENAccEbcConfig::ebcCs5Enabled

Expansion Bus Controller – Chip Select 5.

Definition at line **120** of file **IxParityENAcc.h**.

**IxParityENAccConfigOption** IxParityENAccEbcConfig::ebcCs6Enabled

Expansion Bus Controller – Chip Select 6.

Definition at line **121** of file **IxParityENAcc.h**.

**IxParityENAccConfigOption** IxParityENAccEbcConfig::ebcCs7Enabled

Expansion Bus Controller – Chip Select 7.

Definition at line **122** of file **IxParityENAcc.h**.

**IxParityENAccConfigOption** IxParityENAccEbcConfig::ebcExtMstEnabled

External Master on Expansion bus.

Definition at line **123** of file **IxParityENAcc.h**.

**IxParityENAccParityType** IxParityENAccEbcConfig::parityOddEven

Parity – Odd or Even.

Definition at line **124** of file **IxParityENAcc.h**.

---

The documentation for this struct was generated from the following file:

- **IxParityENAcc.h**

# IxParityENAccEbcParityErrorStats Struct Reference

[Intel (R) IXP400 Software Parity Error Notifier (IxParityENAcc) API, Intel (R) IXP400 Software Parity Error Notifier (IxParityENAcc) API, Intel (R) IXP400 Software Parity Error Notifier (IxParityENAcc) API]

Expansion Bus Controller parity error statistics.

## Data Fields

UINT32 **parityErrorsInbound**

*Odd bit parity errors on inbound transfers.*

UINT32 **parityErrorsOutbound**

*Odd bit parity errors on outbound transfers.*

---

## Detailed Description

Expansion Bus Controller parity error statistics.

Definition at line **216** of file **IxParityENAcc.h**.

---

## Field Documentation

UINT32 IxParityENAccEbcParityErrorStats::parityErrorsInbound

Odd bit parity errors on inbound transfers.

Definition at line **218** of file **IxParityENAcc.h**.

UINT32 IxParityENAccEbcParityErrorStats::parityErrorsOutbound

Odd bit parity errors on outbound transfers.

Definition at line **219** of file **IxParityENAcc.h**.

---

The documentation for this struct was generated from the following file:

- **IxParityENAcc.h**

# IxParityENAccHWParityConfig Struct Reference

[Intel (R) IXP400 Software Parity Error Notifier (IxParityENAcc) API, Intel (R) IXP400 Software Parity Error Notifier (IxParityENAcc) API, Intel (R) IXP400 Software Parity Error Notifier (IxParityENAcc) API]

Parity error configuration of the Hardware Blocks.

## Data Fields

**IxParityENAccNpeConfig npeAConfig**

*NPE A parity detection is to be enabled/disabled.*

**IxParityENAccNpeConfig npeBConfig**

*NPE B parity detection is to be enabled/disabled.*

**IxParityENAccNpeConfig npeCConfig**

*NPE C parity detection is to be enabled/disabled.*

**IxParityENAccMcuConfig mcuConfig**

*MCU pairty detection is to be enabled/disabled.*

**IxParityENAccConfigOption swcpEnabled**

*SWCP parity detection is to be enabled.*

**IxParityENAccConfigOption aqmEnabled**

*AQM parity detection is to be enabled.*

**IxParityENAccPbcConfig pbcConfig**

*PCI Bus Controller parity detection is to be enabled/disabled.*

**IxParityENAccEbcConfig ebcConfig**

*Expansion Bus Controller parity detection is to be enabled/disabled.*

---

## Detailed Description

Parity error configuration of the Hardware Blocks.

Definition at line 149 of file IxParityENAcc.h.

---

## Field Documentation

**IxParityENAccConfigOption** IxParityENAccHWParityConfig::aqmEnabled

AQM parity detection is to be enabled.

Definition at line **156** of file **IxParityENAcc.h**.

**IxParityENAccEbcConfig** IxParityENAccHWParityConfig::ebcConfig

Expansion Bus Controller parity detection is to be enabled/disabled.

Definition at line **158** of file **IxParityENAcc.h**.

**IxParityENAccMcuConfig** IxParityENAccHWParityConfig::mcuConfig

MCU pairty detection is to be enabled/disabled.

Definition at line **154** of file **IxParityENAcc.h**.

**IxParityENAccNpeConfig** IxParityENAccHWParityConfig::npeAConfig

NPE A parity detection is to be enabled/disabled.

Definition at line **151** of file **IxParityENAcc.h**.

**IxParityENAccNpeConfig** IxParityENAccHWParityConfig::npeBConfig

NPE B parity detection is to be enabled/disabled.

Definition at line **152** of file **IxParityENAcc.h**.

**IxParityENAccNpeConfig** IxParityENAccHWParityConfig::npeCConfig

NPE C parity detection is to be enabled/disabled.

Definition at line **153** of file **IxParityENAcc.h**.

**IxParityENAccPbcConfig** IxParityENAccHWParityConfig::pbcConfig

PCI Bus Controller parity detection is to be enabled/disabled.

Definition at line **157** of file **IxParityENAcc.h**.

**IxParityENAccConfigOption** IxParityENAccHWParityConfig::swcpEnabled



SWCP parity detection is to be enabled.

Definition at line **155** of file **IxParityENAcc.h**.

---

The documentation for this struct was generated from the following file:

- **IxParityENAcc.h**

# IxParityENAccMcuConfig Struct Reference

[Intel (R) IXP400 Software Parity Error Notifier (IxParityENAcc) API, Intel (R) IXP400 Software Parity Error Notifier (IxParityENAcc) API, Intel (R) IXP400 Software Parity Error Notifier (IxParityENAcc) API]

MCU pairty detection is to be enabled/disabled.

## Data Fields

**IxParityENAccConfigOption singlebitDetectEnabled**

*Single-bit parity error detection.*

**IxParityENAccConfigOption singlebitCorrectionEnabled**

*Single-bit parity error correction.*

**IxParityENAccConfigOption multibitDetectionEnabled**

*Multi-bit parity error detection.*

---

## Detailed Description

MCU pairty detection is to be enabled/disabled.

Definition at line **96** of file **IxParityENAcc.h**.

---

## Field Documentation

**IxParityENAccConfigOption IxParityENAccMcuConfig::multibitDetectionEnabled**

Multi-bit parity error detection.

Definition at line **100** of file **IxParityENAcc.h**.

**IxParityENAccConfigOption IxParityENAccMcuConfig::singlebitCorrectionEnabled**

Single-bit parity error correction.

Definition at line **99** of file **IxParityENAcc.h**.

**IxParityENAccConfigOption IxParityENAccMcuConfig::singlebitDetectEnabled**

Single-bit parity error detection.

Definition at line **98** of file **IxParityENAcc.h**.

---

The documentation for this struct was generated from the following file:

- **IxParityENAcc.h**

# IxParityENAccMcuParityErrorStats Struct Reference

[Intel (R) IXP400 Software Parity Error Notifier (IxParityENAcc) API, Intel (R) IXP400 Software Parity Error Notifier (IxParityENAcc) API, Intel (R) IXP400 Software Parity Error Notifier (IxParityENAcc) API]

DDR Memory Control Unit parity error statistics.

## Data Fields

UINT32 **parityErrorsSingleBit**

*Parity errors of the type Single-Bit.*

UINT32 **parityErrorsMultiBit**

*Parity errors of the type Multi-Bit.*

UINT32 **parityErrorsOverflow**

*Parity errors when more than two parity errors occurred.*

---

## Detailed Description

DDR Memory Control Unit parity error statistics.

Note: There could be two outstanding parity errors at any given time whose address details captured. If there is no room for the new interrupt then it would be treated as overflow parity condition.

Definition at line **187** of file **IxParityENAcc.h**.

---

## Field Documentation

UINT32 IxParityENAccMcuParityErrorStats::parityErrorsMultiBit

Parity errors of the type Multi-Bit.

Definition at line **190** of file **IxParityENAcc.h**.

UINT32 IxParityENAccMcuParityErrorStats::parityErrorsOverflow

Parity errors when more than two parity errors occurred.

Definition at line **191** of file **IxParityENAcc.h**.

UINT32 IxParityENAccMcuParityErrorStats::parityErrorsSingleBit

Parity errors of the type Single-Bit.

Definition at line **189** of file **IxParityENAcc.h**.

---

The documentation for this struct was generated from the following file:

- **IxParityENAcc.h**

# IxParityENAccNpeConfig Struct Reference

[Intel (R) IXP400 Software Parity Error Notifier (IxParityENAcc) API, Intel (R) IXP400 Software Parity Error Notifier (IxParityENAcc) API, Intel (R) IXP400 Software Parity Error Notifier (IxParityENAcc) API]

NPE parity detection is to be enabled/disabled.

## Data Fields

**IxParityENAccConfigOption ideEnabled**

*NPE IMem, DMem and External.*

**IxParityENAccParityType parityOddEven**

*Parity – Odd or Even.*

---

## Detailed Description

NPE parity detection is to be enabled/disabled.

Definition at line **82** of file **IxParityENAcc.h**.

---

## Field Documentation

**IxParityENAccConfigOption** IxParityENAccNpeConfig::ideEnabled

NPE IMem, DMem and External.

Definition at line **84** of file **IxParityENAcc.h**.

**IxParityENAccParityType** IxParityENAccNpeConfig::parityOddEven

Parity – Odd or Even.

Definition at line **85** of file **IxParityENAcc.h**.

---

The documentation for this struct was generated from the following file:

- **IxParityENAcc.h**

# IxParityENAccNpeParityErrorStats Struct Reference

[Intel (R) IXP400 Software Parity Error Notifier (IxParityENAcc) API, Intel (R) IXP400 Software Parity Error Notifier (IxParityENAcc) API, Intel (R) IXP400 Software Parity Error Notifier (IxParityENAcc) API]

NPE parity error statistics.

## Data Fields

UINT32 **parityErrorsIMem**

*Parity errors in Instruction Memory.*

UINT32 **parityErrorsDMMem**

*Parity errors in Data Memory.*

UINT32 **parityErrorsExternal**

*Parity errors in NPE External Entities.*

---

## Detailed Description

NPE parity error statistics.

Definition at line **169** of file **IxParityENAcc.h**.

---

## Field Documentation

UINT32 IxParityENAccNpeParityErrorStats::parityErrorsDMMem

Parity errors in Data Memory.

Definition at line **172** of file **IxParityENAcc.h**.

UINT32 IxParityENAccNpeParityErrorStats::parityErrorsExternal

Parity errors in NPE External Entities.

Definition at line **173** of file **IxParityENAcc.h**.

UINT32 IxParityENAccNpeParityErrorStats::parityErrorsIMem

Parity errors in Instruction Memory.

Definition at line **171** of file **IxParityENAcc.h**.

---

The documentation for this struct was generated from the following file:

- **IxParityENAcc.h**



# IxParityENAccParityErrorContextMessage Struct Reference

[Intel (R) IXP400 Software Parity Error Notifier (IxParityENAcc) API, Intel (R) IXP400 Software Parity Error Notifier (IxParityENAcc) API, Intel (R) IXP400 Software Parity Error Notifier (IxParityENAcc) API]

Parity Error Context Message.

## Data Fields

**IxParityENAccParityErrorSource** **pecParitySource**

*Source info of parity error.*

**IxParityENAccParityErrorAccess** **pecAccessType**

*Read or Write Access Read – NPE, SWCP, AQM, DDR MCU, PCI Bus Ctrlr, Exp Bus Ctrlr (Outbound) Write – DDR MCU, PCI Bus Ctrlr, Exp Bus Ctrlr (Inbound i.e., External Master).*

**IxParityENAccParityErrorAddress** **pecAddress**

*Address faulty location Valid only for AQM, DDR MCU, Exp Bus Ctrlr.*

**IxParityENAccParityErrorData** **pecData**

*Data read from the faulty location Valid only for AQM and DDR MCU For DDR MCU it is the bit location of the Single-bit parity.*

**IxParityENAccParityErrorRequester** **pecRequester**

*Requester of SDRAM memory access Valid only for the DDR MCU.*

**IxParityENAccAHBErrorTransaction** **ahbErrorTran**

*Master and Slave information on the last AHB Error Transaction.*

---

## Detailed Description

Parity Error Context Message.

Definition at line 381 of file **IxParityENAcc.h**.

---

## Field Documentation

**IxParityENAccAHBErrorTransaction** IxParityENAccParityErrorContextMessage::ahbErrorTran

Master and Slave information on the last AHB Error Transaction.

Definition at line **400** of file **IxParityENAcc.h**.

#### **IxParityENAccParityErrorAccess** IxParityENAccParityErrorContextMessage::pecAccessType

Read or Write Access Read – NPE, SWCP, AQM, DDR MCU, PCI Bus Ctrlr, Exp Bus Ctrlr (Outbound)  
Write – DDR MCU, PCI Bus Ctrlr, Exp Bus Ctrlr (Inbound i.e., External Master).

Definition at line **384** of file **IxParityENAcc.h**.

#### **IxParityENAccParityErrorAddress** IxParityENAccParityErrorContextMessage::pecAddress

Address faulty location Valid only for AQM, DDR MCU, Exp Bus Ctrlr.

Definition at line **391** of file **IxParityENAcc.h**.

#### **IxParityENAccParityErrorData** IxParityENAccParityErrorContextMessage::pecData

Data read from the faulty location Valid only for AQM and DDR MCU For DDR MCU it is the bit location of the Single-bit parity.

Definition at line **394** of file **IxParityENAcc.h**.

#### **IxParityENAccParityErrorSource** IxParityENAccParityErrorContextMessage::pecParitySource

Source info of parity error.

Definition at line **383** of file **IxParityENAcc.h**.

#### **IxParityENAccParityErrorRequester** IxParityENAccParityErrorContextMessage::pecRequester

Requester of SDRAM memory access Valid only for the DDR MCU.

Definition at line **398** of file **IxParityENAcc.h**.

---

The documentation for this struct was generated from the following file:

- **IxParityENAcc.h**

# IxParityENAccParityErrorStats Struct Reference

[Intel (R) IXP400 Software Parity Error Notifier (IxParityENAcc) API, Intel (R) IXP400 Software Parity Error Notifier (IxParityENAcc) API, Intel (R) IXP400 Software Parity Error Notifier (IxParityENAcc) API]

Parity Error Statistics for the all the hardware blocks.

## Data Fields

**IxParityENAccNpeParityErrorStats npeStats**

*NPE parity error statistics.*

**IxParityENAccMcuParityErrorStats mcuStats**

*MCU parity error statistics.*

**IxParityENAccPbcParityErrorStats pbcStats**

*PBC parity error statistics.*

**IxParityENAccEbcParityErrorStats ebcStats**

*EBC parity error statistics.*

UINT32 **swcpStats**

*SWCP parity error statistics.*

UINT32 **aqmStats**

*AQM parity error statistics.*

---

## Detailed Description

Parity Error Statistics for the all the hardware blocks.

Definition at line **230** of file **IxParityENAcc.h**.

---

## Field Documentation

UINT32 IxParityENAccParityErrorStats::aqmStats

AQM parity error statistics.

Definition at line **237** of file **IxParityENAcc.h**.

#### **IxParityENAccEbcParityErrorStats** IxParityENAccParityErrorStats::ebcStats

EBC parity error statistics.

Definition at line **235** of file **IxParityENAcc.h**.

#### **IxParityENAccMcuParityErrorStats** IxParityENAccParityErrorStats::mcuStats

MCU parity error statistics.

Definition at line **233** of file **IxParityENAcc.h**.

#### **IxParityENAccNpeParityErrorStats** IxParityENAccParityErrorStats::npeStats

NPE parity error statistics.

Definition at line **232** of file **IxParityENAcc.h**.

#### **IxParityENAccPbcParityErrorStats** IxParityENAccParityErrorStats::pbcStats

PBC parity error statistics.

Definition at line **234** of file **IxParityENAcc.h**.

#### **UINT32** IxParityENAccParityErrorStats::swcpStats

SWCP parity error statistics.

Definition at line **236** of file **IxParityENAcc.h**.

---

The documentation for this struct was generated from the following file:

- **IxParityENAcc.h**

# IxParityENAccPbcConfig Struct Reference

[Intel (R) IXP400 Software Parity Error Notifier (IxParityENAcc) API, Intel (R) IXP400 Software Parity Error Notifier (IxParityENAcc) API, Intel (R) IXP400 Software Parity Error Notifier (IxParityENAcc) API]

PCI Bus Controller parity detection is to be enabled or disabled.

## Data Fields

**IxParityENAccConfigOption pbcInitiatorEnabled**

*PCI Bus Controller as PCI Initiator.*

**IxParityENAccConfigOption pbcTargetEnabled**

*PCI Bus Controller as PCI Target.*

---

## Detailed Description

PCI Bus Controller parity detection is to be enabled or disabled.

Definition at line 135 of file **IxParityENAcc.h**.

---

## Field Documentation

**IxParityENAccConfigOption** IxParityENAccPbcConfig::pbcInitiatorEnabled

PCI Bus Controller as PCI Initiator.

Definition at line 137 of file **IxParityENAcc.h**.

**IxParityENAccConfigOption** IxParityENAccPbcConfig::pbcTargetEnabled

PCI Bus Controller as PCI Target.

Definition at line 138 of file **IxParityENAcc.h**.

---

The documentation for this struct was generated from the following file:

- **IxParityENAcc.h**

# IxParityENAccPbcParityErrorStats Struct Reference

[Intel (R) IXP400 Software Parity Error Notifier (IxParityENAcc) API, Intel (R) IXP400 Software Parity Error Notifier (IxParityENAcc) API, Intel (R) IXP400 Software Parity Error Notifier (IxParityENAcc) API]

PCI Bus Controller parity error statistics.

## Data Fields

UINT32 **parityErrorsPciInitiator**  
*Parity errors received as a PCI Initiator.*

UINT32 **parityErrorsPciTarget**  
*Parity errors received as a PCI Target.*

---

## Detailed Description

PCI Bus Controller parity error statistics.

Definition at line **202** of file **IxParityENAcc.h**.

---

## Field Documentation

UINT32 IxParityENAccPbcParityErrorStats::parityErrorsPciInitiator

Parity errors received as a PCI Initiator.

Definition at line **204** of file **IxParityENAcc.h**.

UINT32 IxParityENAccPbcParityErrorStats::parityErrorsPciTarget

Parity errors received as a PCI Target.

Definition at line **205** of file **IxParityENAcc.h**.

---

The documentation for this struct was generated from the following file:

- **IxParityENAcc.h**

# IxPerfProfAccBusPmuResults Struct Reference

## [Intel (R) IXP400 Software Performance Profiling (IxPerfProfAcc) API]

Results obtained from running the Bus Pmu component. The results are obtained when the get functions is called.

## Data Fields

UINT32 **statsToGetLower27Bit** [IX\_PERFPROF\_ACC\_BUS\_PMU\_MAX\_PPCS]  
*Lower 27 Bit of counter value.*

UINT32 **statsToGetUpper32Bit** [IX\_PERFPROF\_ACC\_BUS\_PMU\_MAX\_PPCS]  
*Upper 32 Bit of counter value.*

---

## Detailed Description

Results obtained from running the Bus Pmu component. The results are obtained when the get functions is called.

Definition at line **167** of file **IxPerfProfAcc.h**.

---

## Field Documentation

UINT32  
IxPerfProfAccBusPmuResults::statsToGetLower27Bit[IX\_PERFPROF\_ACC\_BUS\_PMU\_MAX\_PPCS]

Lower 27 Bit of counter value.

Definition at line **169** of file **IxPerfProfAcc.h**.

UINT32  
IxPerfProfAccBusPmuResults::statsToGetUpper32Bit[IX\_PERFPROF\_ACC\_BUS\_PMU\_MAX\_PPCS]

Upper 32 Bit of counter value.

Definition at line **170** of file **IxPerfProfAcc.h**.

---

The documentation for this struct was generated from the following file:

- **IxPerfProfAcc.h**

# IxPerfProfAccXcycleResults Struct Reference

[Intel (R) IXP400 Software Performance Profiling (IxPerfProfAcc) API]

Results obtained from Xcycle run.

## Data Fields

float **maxIdlePercentage**  
*maximum percentage of Idle cycles*

float **minIdlePercentage**  
*minimum percentage of Idle cycles*

float **aveIdlePercentage**  
*average percentage of Idle cycles*

UINT32 **totalMeasurements**  
*total number of measurement made*

---

## Detailed Description

Results obtained from Xcycle run.

Definition at line **153** of file **IxPerfProfAcc.h**.

---

## Field Documentation

float IxPerfProfAccXcycleResults::aveIdlePercentage

average percentage of Idle cycles

Definition at line **157** of file **IxPerfProfAcc.h**.

float IxPerfProfAccXcycleResults::maxIdlePercentage

maximum percentage of Idle cycles

Definition at line **155** of file **IxPerfProfAcc.h**.

float IxPerfProfAccXcycleResults::minIdlePercentage



minimum percentage of Idle cycles

Definition at line **156** of file **IxPerfProfAcc.h**.

UINT32 IxPerfProfAccXcycleResults::totalMeasurements

total number of measurement made

Definition at line **158** of file **IxPerfProfAcc.h**.

---

The documentation for this struct was generated from the following file:

- **IxPerfProfAcc.h**

# IxPerfProfAccXscalePmuEvtCnt Struct Reference

[Intel (R) IXP400 Software Performance Profiling (IxPerfProfAcc) API]

contains results of a counter

## Data Fields

UINT32 **lower32BitsEventCount**

*lower 32bits value of the event counter*

UINT32 **upper32BitsEventCount**

*upper 32bits value of the event counter*

---

## Detailed Description

contains results of a counter

Structure contains the results of a counter, which are split into the lower and upper 32 bits of the final count

Definition at line **123** of file **IxPerfProfAcc.h**.

---

## Field Documentation

UINT32 IxPerfProfAccXscalePmuEvtCnt::lower32BitsEventCount

lower 32bits value of the event counter

Definition at line **125** of file **IxPerfProfAcc.h**.

UINT32 IxPerfProfAccXscalePmuEvtCnt::upper32BitsEventCount

upper 32bits value of the event counter

Definition at line **126** of file **IxPerfProfAcc.h**.

---

The documentation for this struct was generated from the following file:

- **IxPerfProfAcc.h**

# IxPerfProfAccXscalePmuResults Struct Reference

[Intel (R) IXP400 Software Performance Profiling (IxPerfProfAcc) API]

contains results of counters and their overflow

## Data Fields

UINT32 **clk\_value**

*current value of clock counter*

UINT32 **clk\_samples**

*number of clock counter overflows*

UINT32 **event1\_value**

*current value of event 1 counter*

UINT32 **event1\_samples**

*number of event 1 counter overflows*

UINT32 **event2\_value**

*current value of event 2 counter*

UINT32 **event2\_samples**

*number of event 2 counter overflows*

UINT32 **event3\_value**

*current value of event 3 counter*

UINT32 **event3\_samples**

*number of event 3 counter overflows*

UINT32 **event4\_value**

*current value of event 4 counter*

UINT32 **event4\_samples**

*number of event 4 counter overflows*

---

## Detailed Description

contains results of counters and their overflow

Structure contains all values of counters and associated overflows. The specific event and clock counters are determined by the user

Definition at line **135** of file **IxPerfProfAcc.h**.

---

## Field Documentation

UINT32 IxPerfProfAccXscalePmuResults::clk\_samples

number of clock counter overflows

Definition at line **138** of file **IxPerfProfAcc.h**.

UINT32 IxPerfProfAccXscalePmuResults::clk\_value

current value of clock counter

Definition at line **137** of file **IxPerfProfAcc.h**.

UINT32 IxPerfProfAccXscalePmuResults::event1\_samples

number of event 1 counter overflows

Definition at line **140** of file **IxPerfProfAcc.h**.

UINT32 IxPerfProfAccXscalePmuResults::event1\_value

current value of event 1 counter

Definition at line **139** of file **IxPerfProfAcc.h**.

UINT32 IxPerfProfAccXscalePmuResults::event2\_samples

number of event 2 counter overflows

Definition at line **142** of file **IxPerfProfAcc.h**.

UINT32 IxPerfProfAccXscalePmuResults::event2\_value

current value of event 2 counter

Definition at line **141** of file **IxPerfProfAcc.h**.

UINT32 IxPerfProfAccXscalePmuResults::event3\_samples

number of event 3 counter overflows

Definition at line **144** of file **IxPerfProfAcc.h**.

UINT32 IxPerfProfAccXscalePmuResults::event3\_value

current value of event 3 counter

Definition at line **143** of file **IxPerfProfAcc.h**.

UINT32 IxPerfProfAccXscalePmuResults::event4\_samples

number of event 4 counter overflows

Definition at line **146** of file **IxPerfProfAcc.h**.

UINT32 IxPerfProfAccXscalePmuResults::event4\_value

current value of event 4 counter

Definition at line **145** of file **IxPerfProfAcc.h**.

---

The documentation for this struct was generated from the following file:

- **IxPerfProfAcc.h**

# IxPerfProfAccXscalePmuSamplePcProfile Struct Reference

[Intel (R) IXP400 Software Performance Profiling (IxPerfProfAcc) API]

contains summary of samples taken

## Data Fields

UINT32 **programCounter**

*the program counter value of the sample*

UINT32 **freq**

*the frequency of the occurrence of the sample*

---

## Detailed Description

contains summary of samples taken

Structure contains all details of each program counter value – frequency that PC occurs

Definition at line **111** of file **IxPerfProfAcc.h**.

---

## Field Documentation

UINT32 IxPerfProfAccXscalePmuSamplePcProfile::freq

the frequency of the occurrence of the sample

Definition at line **114** of file **IxPerfProfAcc.h**.

UINT32 IxPerfProfAccXscalePmuSamplePcProfile::programCounter

the program counter value of the sample

Definition at line **113** of file **IxPerfProfAcc.h**.

---

The documentation for this struct was generated from the following file:

- **IxPerfProfAcc.h**

# IxSspAccStatsCounters Struct Reference

[Intel (R) IXP400 Software SSP Serial Port Access (IxSspAcc) API, Intel (R) IXP400 Software SSP Serial Port Access (IxSspAcc) API]

contains counters of the SSP statistics

## Data Fields

UINT32 **ixSspRcvCounter**  
*Total frames received.*

UINT32 **ixSspXmitCounter**  
*Total frames transmitted.*

UINT32 **ixSspOverflowCounter**  
*Total occurrences of overflow.*

---

## Detailed Description

contains counters of the SSP statistics

Structure contains all values of counters and associated overflows.

Definition at line **348** of file **IxSspAcc.h**.

---

## Field Documentation

UINT32 IxSspAccStatsCounters::ixSspOverflowCounter

Total occurrences of overflow.

Definition at line **352** of file **IxSspAcc.h**.

UINT32 IxSspAccStatsCounters::ixSspRcvCounter

Total frames received.

Definition at line **350** of file **IxSspAcc.h**.

UINT32 IxSspAccStatsCounters::ixSspXmitCounter

Total frames transmitted.

Definition at line **351** of file **IxSspAcc.h**.

---

The documentation for this struct was generated from the following file:

- **IxSspAcc.h**



# IxSspInitVars Struct Reference

[Intel (R) IXP400 Software SSP Serial Port Access (IxSspAcc) API, Intel (R) IXP400 Software SSP Serial Port Access (IxSspAcc) API]

contains all the variables required to initialize the SSP serial port hardware.

## Data Fields

**IxSspAccFrameFormat FrameFormatSelected**

*Select between SPI, SSP and Microwire.*

**IxSspAccDataSize DataSizeSelected**

*Select between 4 and 16.*

**IxSspAccClkSource ClkSourceSelected**

*Select clock source to be on-chip or external.*

**IxSspAccFifoThreshold TxFIFOThresholdSelected**

*Select Tx FIFO threshold between 1 to 16.*

**IxSspAccFifoThreshold RxFIFOThresholdSelected**

*Select Rx FIFO threshold between 1 to 16.*

**BOOL RxFIFOIntrEnable**

*Enable/disable Rx FIFO threshold interrupt.*

**BOOL TxFIFOIntrEnable**

*Enable/disable Tx FIFO threshold interrupt.*

**RxFIFOThresholdHandler RxFIFOThsldHdlr**

*Pointer to function to handle a Rx FIFO interrupt.*

**TxFIFOThresholdHandler TxFIFOThsldHdlr**

*Pointer to function to handle a Tx FIFO interrupt.*

**RxFIFOOverrunHandler RxFIFOOverrunHdlr**

*Pointer to function to handle a Rx FIFO overrun interrupt.*

**BOOL LoopbackEnable**

*Select operation mode to be normal or loopback mode.*

**IxSspAccSpiSclkPhase SpiSclkPhaseSelected**

*Select SPI SCLK phase to start with one inactive cycle and end with 1/2 inactive cycle or start with 1/2 inactive cycle and end with one inactive cycle.*

**IxSspAccSpiSclkPolarity SpiSclkPolaritySelected**

*Select SPI SCLK idle state to be low or high.*

## **IxSspAccMicrowireCtlWord MicrowireCtlWordSelected**

*Select Microwire control format to be 8 or 16-bit.*

## **UINT8 SerialClkRateSelected**

*Select between 0 (1.8432Mbps) and 255 (7.2Kbps).*

---

## Detailed Description

contains all the variables required to initialize the SSP serial port hardware.

Structure to be filled and used for calling initialization

Definition at line **286** of file **IxSspAcc.h**.

---

## Field Documentation

### **IxSspAccClkSource** IxSspInitVars::ClkSourceSelected

Select clock source to be on-chip or external.

Definition at line **291** of file **IxSspAcc.h**.

### **IxSspAccDataSize** IxSspInitVars::DataSizeSelected

Select between 4 and 16.

Definition at line **290** of file **IxSspAcc.h**.

### **IxSspAccFrameFormat** IxSspInitVars::FrameFormatSelected

Select between SPI, SSP and Microwire.

Definition at line **288** of file **IxSspAcc.h**.

### **BOOL** IxSspInitVars::LoopbackEnable

Select operation mode to be normal or loopback mode.

Definition at line **315** of file **IxSspAcc.h**.

#### **IxSspAccMicrowireCtlWord** IxSspInitVars::MicrowireCtlWordSelected

Select Microwire control format to be 8 or 16-bit.

(Only used in Microwire format).

Definition at line **330** of file **IxSspAcc.h**.

#### **BOOL** IxSspInitVars::RxFIFOIntrEnable

Enable/disable Rx FIFO threshold interrupt.

Disabling this interrupt will require the use of the polling function **RxFIFOExceedThresholdCheck**.

Definition at line **299** of file **IxSspAcc.h**.

#### **RxFIFOOverrunHandler** IxSspInitVars::RxFIFOOverrunHdlr

Pointer to function to handle a Rx FIFO overrun interrupt.

Definition at line **313** of file **IxSspAcc.h**.

#### **IxSspAccFifoThreshold** IxSspInitVars::RxFIFOThresholdSelected

Select Rx FIFO threshold between 1 to 16.

Definition at line **297** of file **IxSspAcc.h**.

#### **RxFIFOThresholdHandler** IxSspInitVars::RxFIFOThsldHdlr

Pointer to function to handle a Rx FIFO interrupt.

Definition at line **309** of file **IxSspAcc.h**.

#### **UINT8** IxSspInitVars::SerialClkRateSelected

Select between 0 (1.8432Mbps) and 255 (7.2Kbps).

The formula used is Bit rate =  $3.6864 \times 10^6 / (2 \times (\text{SerialClkRateSelect} + 1))$

Definition at line **333** of file **IxSspAcc.h**.

### **IxSspAccSpiSclkPhase** IxSspInitVars::SpiSclkPhaseSelected

Select SPI SCLK phase to start with one inactive cycle and end with 1/2 inactive cycle or start with 1/2 inactive cycle and end with one inactive cycle.

(Only used in SPI format).

Definition at line **318** of file **IxSspAcc.h**.

### **IxSspAccSpiSclkPolarity** IxSspInitVars::SpiSclkPolaritySelected

Select SPI SCLK idle state to be low or high.

(Only used in SPI format).

Definition at line **326** of file **IxSspAcc.h**.

### **BOOL** IxSspInitVars::TxFIFOIntrEnable

Enable/disable Tx FIFO threshold interrupt.

Disabling this interrupt will require the use of the polling function `TxFIFOExceedThresholdCheck`.

Definition at line **304** of file **IxSspAcc.h**.

### **IxSspAccFifoThreshold** IxSspInitVars::TxFIFOThresholdSelected

Select Tx FIFO threshold between 1 to 16.

Definition at line **294** of file **IxSspAcc.h**.

### **TxFIFOThresholdHandler** IxSspInitVars::TxFIFOThsldHdlr

Pointer to function to handle a Tx FIFO interrupt.

Definition at line **311** of file **IxSspAcc.h**.

---

The documentation for this struct was generated from the following file:

- **IxSspAcc.h**

# IxTimeSyncAccPtpMsgData Struct Reference

[Intel (R) IXP400 Software Time Sync Access Component API, Intel (R) IXP400 Software Time Sync Access Component API, Intel (R) IXP400 Software Time Sync Access Component API]

Struct for data from the PTP message returned when TimeStamp available.

## Data Fields

**IxTimeSyncAcc1588PTPMsgType** **ptpMsgType**

*PTP Messages type.*

**IxTimeSyncAccTimeValue** **ptpTimeStamp**

*64 bit TimeStamp value from PTP Message*

**IxTimeSyncAccUuid** **ptpUuid**

*48 bit UUID value from the PTP Message*

**UINT16** **ptpSequenceNumber**

*16 bit Sequence Number from PTP Message*

---

## Detailed Description

Struct for data from the PTP message returned when TimeStamp available.

Definition at line **151** of file **IxTimeSyncAcc.h**.

---

## Field Documentation

**IxTimeSyncAcc1588PTPMsgType** IxTimeSyncAccPtpMsgData::ptpMsgType

PTP Messages type.

Definition at line **153** of file **IxTimeSyncAcc.h**.

**UINT16** IxTimeSyncAccPtpMsgData::ptpSequenceNumber

16 bit Sequence Number from PTP Message

Definition at line **156** of file **IxTimeSyncAcc.h**.

**IxTimeSyncAccTimeValue** IxTimeSyncAccPtpMsgData::ptpTimeStamp

64 bit TimeStamp value from PTP Message

Definition at line **154** of file **IxTimeSyncAcc.h**.

**IxTimeSyncAccUuid** IxTimeSyncAccPtpMsgData::ptpUuid

48 bit UUID value from the PTP Message

Definition at line **155** of file **IxTimeSyncAcc.h**.

---

The documentation for this struct was generated from the following file:

- **IxTimeSyncAcc.h**

# IxTimeSyncAccStats Struct Reference

[Intel (R) IXP400 Software Time Sync Access Component API, Intel (R) IXP400 Software Time Sync Access Component API, Intel (R) IXP400 Software Time Sync Access Component API]

Statistics for the PTP messages.

## Data Fields

UINT32 **rxMsgs**

*Count of timestamps for received PTP Messages.*

UINT32 **txMsgs**

*Count of timestamps for transmitted PTP Messages.*

---

## Detailed Description

Statistics for the PTP messages.

Definition at line **166** of file **IxTimeSyncAcc.h**.

---

## Field Documentation

UINT32 IxTimeSyncAccStats::rxMsgs

Count of timestamps for received PTP Messages.

Definition at line **168** of file **IxTimeSyncAcc.h**.

UINT32 IxTimeSyncAccStats::txMsgs

Count of timestamps for transmitted PTP Messages.

Definition at line **169** of file **IxTimeSyncAcc.h**.

---

The documentation for this struct was generated from the following file:

- **IxTimeSyncAcc.h**

# IxTimeSyncAccTimeValue Struct Reference

[Intel (R) IXP400 Software Time Sync Access Component API, Intel (R) IXP400 Software Time Sync Access Component API, Intel (R) IXP400 Software Time Sync Access Component API]

Struct to hold 64 bit SystemTime and TimeStamp values.

## Data Fields

UINT32 **timeValueLowWord**

*Lower 32 bits of the time value.*

UINT32 **timeValueHighWord**

*Upper 32 bits of the time value.*

---

## Detailed Description

Struct to hold 64 bit SystemTime and TimeStamp values.

Definition at line **125** of file **IxTimeSyncAcc.h**.

---

## Field Documentation

UINT32 IxTimeSyncAccTimeValue::timeValueHighWord

Upper 32 bits of the time value.

Definition at line **128** of file **IxTimeSyncAcc.h**.

UINT32 IxTimeSyncAccTimeValue::timeValueLowWord

Lower 32 bits of the time value.

Definition at line **127** of file **IxTimeSyncAcc.h**.

---

The documentation for this struct was generated from the following file:

- **IxTimeSyncAcc.h**



# IxTimeSyncAccUuid Struct Reference

[Intel (R) IXP400 Software Time Sync Access Component API, Intel (R) IXP400 Software Time Sync Access Component API, Intel (R) IXP400 Software Time Sync Access Component API]

Struct to hold 48 bit UUID values captured in Sync or Delay\_Req messages.

## Data Fields

UINT32 **uuidValueLowWord**

*The lower 32 bits of the UUID.*

UINT16 **uuidValueHighHalfword**

*The upper 16 bits of the UUID.*

---

## Detailed Description

Struct to hold 48 bit UUID values captured in Sync or Delay\_Req messages.

Definition at line **138** of file **IxTimeSyncAcc.h**.

---

## Field Documentation

UINT16 IxTimeSyncAccUuid::uuidValueHighHalfword

The upper 16 bits of the UUID.

Definition at line **141** of file **IxTimeSyncAcc.h**.

UINT32 IxTimeSyncAccUuid::uuidValueLowWord

The lower 32 bits of the UUID.

Definition at line **140** of file **IxTimeSyncAcc.h**.

---

The documentation for this struct was generated from the following file:

- **IxTimeSyncAcc.h**

# ixUARTDev Struct Reference

[Intel (R) IXP400 Software UART Access (IxUARTAcc) API, Intel (R) IXP400 Software UART Access (IxUARTAcc) API]

Device descriptor for the UART.

## Data Fields

UINT8 \* **addr**  
*device base address*

**ixUARTMode** **mode**  
*interrupt, polled or loopback*

int **baudRate**  
*baud rate*

int **freq**  
*UART clock frequency.*

int **options**  
*hardware options*

int **fifoSize**  
*FIFO xmit size.*

**ixUARTStats** **stats**  
*device statistics*

---

## Detailed Description

Device descriptor for the UART.

Definition at line 333 of file **IxUART.h**.

---

## Field Documentation

UINT8\* ixUARTDev::addr

device base address

Definition at line 335 of file **IxUART.h**.

**int ixUARTDev::baudRate**

baud rate

Definition at line **337** of file **IxUART.h**.

**int ixUARTDev::fifoSize**

FIFO xmit size.

Definition at line **340** of file **IxUART.h**.

**int ixUARTDev::freq**

UART clock frequency.

Definition at line **338** of file **IxUART.h**.

**ixUARTMode ixUARTDev::mode**

interrupt, polled or loopback

Definition at line **336** of file **IxUART.h**.

**int ixUARTDev::options**

hardware options

Definition at line **339** of file **IxUART.h**.

**ixUARTStats ixUARTDev::stats**

device statistics

Definition at line **342** of file **IxUART.h**.

---

The documentation for this struct was generated from the following file:

- **IxUART.h**

# ixUARTStats Struct Reference

[Intel (R) IXP400 Software UART Access (IxUARTAcc) API, Intel (R) IXP400 Software UART Access (IxUARTAcc) API]

Statistics for the UART.

## Data Fields

UINT32 **rxCount**  
UINT32 **txCount**  
UINT32 **overrunErr**  
UINT32 **parityErr**  
UINT32 **framingErr**  
UINT32 **breakErr**

---

## Detailed Description

Statistics for the UART.

Definition at line **319** of file **IxUART.h**.

---

The documentation for this struct was generated from the following file:

- **IxUART.h**